

Christ messages

Old Testaments		New Testaments
Genesis	Daniel	Matthew
Exodus	Hosea	Mark
Leviticus	Joel	Luke
Numbers	Amos	John
Deuteronomy	Jonah	Acts
Joshua	Micah	Romans
Judges	Nahum	1 Corinthians
Ruth	Habakkuk	2 Corinthians
1 Samuel	Zephaniah	Galatians
2 Samuel	Haggai	Ephesians
1 Kings	Zechariah	Philippians
2 Kings	Malachi	Colossians
1 Chronicles		1 Thessalonians
2 Chronicles		2 Thessalonians
Ezra		1 Timothy
Nehemiah		2 Timothy
Esther		Titus
Job		Hebrews
Psalms		James
Proverbs		1 Peter
Ecclesiastes		2 Peter
Song of Solomon		1 John
Isaiah		Revelation
Jeremiah		
Ezekiel		

Genesis

Bible

- 696. Christ, who created the heavens and the earth with God (Gen 1:1)
- 697. Christ, who is the true light (Gen 1:3)
- 698. God created man in His own image. (Gen 1:26-27)
- 699. God commanded us to save all nations by the Gospel (Gen 1:28)
- 700. Christ, who is the true rest (Gen 2:2-3)
- 701. Christ, who is our life (Gen 2:7)
- 702. The promise of eternal life and death (Gen 2:17)
- 703. Christ, who loved us like Himself (Gen 2:22-24)
- 704. Satan's Temptation (Gen 3:4-5)
- 705. Adam and Eve's disobedience (Gen 3:6)
- 706.
- 707. God's eternal promise-Christ (Gen 3:15)
- 708. Christ, who will be sacrificed for us (Gen 3:21)
- 709. Only Christ is the true sacrifice. (Gen 4:4)
- 710. What happens if we don't believe in and wait Christ (Gen 4:7-8)
- 711. Christ who came to save us like Cain (Gen 4:15)
- 712. Seth preached the coming Christ, who is God's eternal promise. (Gen 4:25-26)
- 713. We are the image of God. (Gen 5:1-3)
- 714. Noah received the gospel from Lamech, who lived with Adam (Gen 5:25-31)
- 715. Noah preached the righteousness, Christ (Gen 6:8-9)
- 716. God's eternal covenant to Noah-Christ (Gen 6:18)
- 717. Christ, who is the true ark (Gen 7:1)
- 718. God's eternal covenant to Abraham – Christ (Gen 12:2)
- 719. The gospel that was preached to Abraham (Gen 12:3)
- 720. Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 12:7)
- 721. The altar that Abraham built to the Lord: Christ (Gen 12:8)
- 722. God protected the coming of Christ. (Gen 12:17-20)

- 723. Christ, who is the priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek (Gen 14:17-20)
- 724. Abraham believed in Christ to come through his offspring. (Gen 15:5-6)
- 725. Abraham was recognized as righteous by God through faith in the coming Christ. (Gen 15:6)
- 726. The unchanging covenant that God swore: Christ (Gen 15:17)
- 727. The circumcision of Christ (Gen 17:9-13)
- 728. Christ, who will come through Isaac (Gen 17:19, 21)
- 730. If we had not believed in Christ, we would have been like Sodom and Gomorrah. (Gen 19:27-28)
- 731. God protected the coming of Christ. II (Gen 20:7)
- 733. God who gave God's only begotten Son for us (Gen 22:1-2)
- 734. Christ, who is the Lamb of God who died on our behalf (Gen 22:12-13)
- 735. Abraham believed in the resurrection. (Gen 22:5)
- 736. Christ to come as Abraham's descendant (Gen 22:17-18)
- 737. Christ coming as the descendant of Isaac and Rebekah (Gen 24:59-60, 67)
- 738. Christ to come through Jacob (Gen 25:22-23)
- 740. Christ, the eternal promise God gave to Isaac (Gen 26:2-4)
- 741. Isaac worshiped God and waited for Christ to come (Gen 26:25)
- 742. Jacob who inherited Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 27:26-29)
- 744. Christ, who is the true ladder to meet God (Gen 28:12)
- 745. God's eternal covenant that was delivered to Jacob: Christ (Gen 28:11-14)
- 746. Christ as Immanuel who will be with us forever (Gen 28:15)

- 749. Tamar held the covenant of descendants. (Gen 38:13-15)
- 750. Christ to come through Judah (Gen 49:8-10)
- 751. Jacob buried in Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 46:4)
- 752. God who will lead the Israelites to Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 48:21)
- 753. Joseph wanted to be buried in Canaan, the land where Christ will come. (Gen 50:24-25)

696. Christ, who created the heavens and the earth with God (Gen 1:1)
Jn 1:1-3, 1 Cor 8:6, Col 1:15-16, Heb 1:2

Jesus Christ created the heavens and the earth with God in the beginning. (Genesis 1:1, John 1:1-3, 1 Corinthians 8:6)

Genesis 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

1 Corinthians 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

All things were created for Christ. (Col 1:15-16, Hebrews 1:2)

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Hebrews 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

697. Christ, who is the true light (Gen 1:3)
2 Cor 4:6, Jn 1:4-5,9-12, Jn 3:19, Jn 8:12, Jn 12:46

God has given us the light of knowing God, Jesus Christ. (Genesis 1:3, 2 Corinthians 4:6)

Genesis 1:3 And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.

2 Corinthians 4:6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

Jesus is the true light of God who came into the world. (John 1:4-5, 9-12, John 3:19, John 8:12, John 12:46)

John 1:4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men.

5 And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not.

9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

John 3:19 And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil.

John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

John 12:46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

698. God created man in His own image. (Gen 1:26-27)

2 Cor 4:4, Col 1:15, Col 3:10, Ps 82:6, 1 Cor 11:7, Ps 82:6, Acts 17:28-29, Lk 3:38

God created man in His own image. (Genesis 1:26-27)

Genesis 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

The true image of God is Christ. So we are made by Christ.(2 Corinthians 4:4, Colossians 1:15)

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Colossians 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

God, who made us in His image, is our Father. (Luke 3:38, Psalm 82:6, Acts 17:28-29)

Luke 3:38 Which was the son of Enos, which was the son of Seth, which was the son of Adam, which was the son of God.

Psalm 82:6 I have said, Ye are gods; and all of you are children of the most High.

Acts 17:28 For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.

29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, the image of God we have is restored. (Col 3:10)

Col 3:10 And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:

699. God commanded us to save all nations by the Gospel (Gen 1:28)
Mt 28:18-19, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

God commanded the first man, Adam, to rule over everything on the earth. (Genesis 1:28)

Genesis 1:28 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

Jesus, the Christ, has commanded us to go to all men and tell them that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 28:18-20, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

700. Christ, who is the true rest (Gen 2:2-3)

Ex 16:29, Deut 5:15, Heb 4:8, Mt 11:28, Mt 12:8, Mk 2:28, Lk 6:5

God created the heavens and the earth and rested. (Genesis 2:2-3)

Genesis 2:2 And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made.

3 And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made.

God gave the people of Israel the Sabbath. (Ex 16:29, Deut 5:15)

Ex 16:29 See, for that the Lord hath given you the sabbath, therefore he giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day.

Deut 5:15 And remember that thou wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and that the Lord thy God brought thee out thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched out arm: therefore the Lord thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day.

God has given us the true rest, Christ. Jesus is the true rest, the Christ. (Heb 4:8, Matthew 11:28, Matthew 12:8, Mark 2:28, Luke 6:5)

Heb 4:8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day.

Matthew 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Matthew 12:8 For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day.

Mark 2:28 Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

Luke 6:5 And he said unto them, That the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

701. Christ, who is our life (Gen 2:7)
Lam 4:20, Jn 20:22, 1 Cor 15:45, Col 3:4

When God created us, he breathed the breath of life into us so that we could become human. (Genesis 2:7)

Genesis 2:7 And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

The breath of our nostrils who has come into us is Christ. That is, we were made by Christ. (Lamentations 4:20)

Lamentations 4:20 The breath of our nostrils, the anointed of the Lord, was taken in their pits, of whom we said, Under his shadow we shall live among the heathen.

Jesus, the Christ, breathes the Holy Spirit into us so that we can live anew. (John 20:20, 1 Corinthians 15:45)

John 20:20 And when he had so said, he shewed unto them his hands and his side. Then were the disciples glad, when they saw the Lord.

1 Corinthians 15:45 And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam was made a quickening spirit.

Therefore, Christ is our life. (Col 3:4)

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

702. The promise of eternal life and death (Gen 2:17)

Rom 7:10, Deut 30:19-20, Jn 1:1,14, Rev 19:13, Rom 9:33, Isa 8:14, Isa 28:16

God told Adam that if he ate of the forbidden fruit, he would surely die. (Genesis 2:17)

Gen 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

The word of God becomes life to those who keep it and death to those who do not keep it. (Romans 7:10)

Romans 7:10 And the commandment, which was ordained to life, I found to be unto death.

God said that keeping the word of God is life. (Deut 30:19-20)

Deut 30:19 I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live:

20 That thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey his voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto him: for he is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.

Jesus is the Word of God who became flesh. (John 1:14, Rev 19:13)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ have life, and those who do not believe in it will face eternal death. (Rom 9:33, Isa 8:14, Isa 28:16)

Rom 9:33 As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

Isa 8:14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

Isa 28:16 Therefore thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

703. Christ, who loved us like Himself (Gen 2:22-24)
Rom 5:14, Eph 5:31-32

Adam is a type of Christ, who is to come. (Romans 5:14)

Romans 5:14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.

As the church, we are the bride of that Christ. (Eph 5:31)

Eph 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

God made us Eves by taking a rib from Adam, a type of Christ. So Christ loves us as himself. (Genesis 2:22-24)

Genesis 2:22 And the rib, which the Lord God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man.

23 And Adam said, This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man.

24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.

704. Satan's Temptation (Gen 3:4-5)

Gen 2:17, Jn 8:44, 2 Cor 11:3, Isa 14:12-15

God commanded Adam not to eat the fruit of good and evil. God warned Adam that on the day he ate of the forbidden fruit he would surely die. (Genesis 2:17)

Genesis 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

The fallen angel Satan deceived Adam into eating the forbidden fruit. (Isa 14:12-15, Gen 3:4-5)

Isa 14:12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!

13 For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north:

14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

Gen 3:4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:

5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

Satan, the devil, is trying to deceive the unbelievers so that they cannot believe that Jesus is the Christ, and even the believers so that they cannot deeply believe that Jesus is the Christ. (John 8:44, 2 Corinthians 4:4, 2 Corinthians 11:3)

John 8:44 Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

2 Corinthians 11:3 But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

705. Adam and Eve's Disobedience and its Consequences (Gen 3:6-8)

1 Tim 2:14, Hos 6:7, Gen 3:17-19, Gen 2:17, Rom 3:23, Rom 6:23, Isa 59:2, Jn 8:44

God told Adam not to eat of the forbidden fruit and warned that the day he ate of it he would surely die. (Genesis 2:17)

Genesis 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

However, Adam was deceived by Satan and broke God's covenant and ate of the forbidden fruit. (Genesis 3:6, 1 Tim 2:14, Hos 6:7)

Genesis 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

1 Tim 2:14 And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived was in the transgression.

Hos 6:7 But they like men have transgressed the covenant: there have they dealt treacherously against me.

As a result of Adam's disobedience to God's covenant, all problems came to mankind.

First, man turned away from God because of his disobedience. (Genesis 3:7-8, Isaiah 59:2, Romans 3:23)

Genesis 3:7 And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons.

8 And they heard the voice of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the Lord God amongst the trees of the garden.

Isaiah 59:2 But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.

Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

Second, man was subject to all curses. (Genesis 3:17-19)

Genesis 3:17 And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life;

18 Thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field;

19 In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return.

Third, and all human beings have come to live as slaves to Satan. (John 8:44)

John 8:44 Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

Fourth, and all human beings met physical death and eternal death. (Romans 6:23)

Romans 6:23 For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

707. God's eternal promise-Christ (Gen 3:15)

Isa 7:14, Lk 1:31-35, Gal 4:4, 1 Jn 3:8, Heb 2:14, Mk 10:45, Jn 14:6

God has promised to send Christ to us to save us from eternal damnation and death. (Genesis 3:15, Isaiah 7:14)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Isaiah 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Christ, God's eternal promise, came to this earth as a descendant of a woman. That Christ is Jesus. (Luke 1:31-35, Gal 4:4)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

34 Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?

35 And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

Jesus, the Christ, came to this earth and destroyed the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8, Hebrews 2:14)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Hebrews 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

Jesus, the Christ, died on the cross to save us. (Mark 10:45)

Mark 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Jesus, the Christ, has opened the way for us to meet God. (John 14:6)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

708. Christ, who will be sacrificed for us (Gen 3:21)
Lev 1:5-6, Lev 17:11, Rom 3:25

To protect Adam and Eve, sinners, God slaughtered animals and made clothes with skins and clothed them. This implies that Christ will be sacrificed for us. (Genesis 3:21)

Genesis 3:21 Unto Adam also and to his wife did the Lord God make coats of skins, and clothed them.

In the Old Testament, God allowed the blood of animals to be shed for the sins of the Israelites to be forgiven. (Lev 1:5, Lev 17:11)

Lev 1:5 And he shall kill the bullock before the Lord: and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall bring the blood, and sprinkle the blood round about upon the altar that is by the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

Lev 17:11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.

Jesus became the propitiation sacrifice to forgive our sins. (Romans 3:25)

Romans 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

709. Only Christ is the true sacrifice. (Gen 4:4)
Heb 11:4, Jn 14:6, Acts 4:12

In the Old Testament, Cain offered grain as a sacrifice to God. But God did not accept Cain's sacrifice. On the other hand, Abel offered a sacrifice to God as the firstborn of a sheep, and God accepted Abel's sacrifice. (Genesis 4:4)

Genesis 4:4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering:

Abel's firstborn signifies the coming Christ. Christ alone is the true sacrifice. (Heb 11:4)

Heb 11:4 By faith Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaketh.

Jesus is the only way to meet God and the way to salvation. (John 14:6, Acts 4:12)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

710. What happens if we don't believe in and wait Christ (Gen 4:7-8)
Heb 11:6, 1 Jn 3:12, 1 Pt 5:8, Jn 8:34,44, Jude 1:11

Cain did not believe and did not wait for the Christ he had heard from his father Adam. As a result, he became a slave to sin. (Genesis 4:7-8, 1 John 3:12, Jude 1:11, John 8:34, 44)

Genesis 4:7 If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him.

8 And Cain talked with Abel his brother: and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him.

1 John 3:12 Not as Cain, who was of that wicked one, and slew his brother. And wherefore slew he him? Because his own works were evil, and his brother's righteous.

Jude 1:11 Woe unto them! for they have gone in the way of Cain, and ran greedily after the error of Balaam for reward, and perished in the gainsaying of Core.

John 8:34 Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.
44 Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

We should be sober and watchful, trusting in Christ and waiting for Christ. (1 Peter 5:8, Hebrews 11:6)

1 Peter 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

Hebrews 11:6 But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

711. Christ who came to save us like Cain (Gen 4:15)
Ezk 18:23, Ezk 33:11, Ex 12:13, Lk 5:32

In the Old Testament, God protected Cain, a sinner. (Genesis 4:15)

Genesis 4:15 And the Lord said unto him, Therefore whosoever slayeth Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold. And the Lord set a mark upon Cain, lest any finding him should kill him.

God wants the wicked to turn, repent and be saved. (Ezekiel 18:23, Ezekiel 33:11)

Ezekiel 18:23 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

Ezekiel 33:11 Say unto them, As I live, saith the Lord God, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways; for why will ye die, O house of Israel?

Jesus, the Christ, came to save us, sinners like Cain. (Luke 5:32)

Luke 5:32 I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.

712. Seth preached the coming Christ, who is God's eternal promise. (Gen 4:25-26)
Gen 3:15, Gen 12:8, Joel 2:32, Acts 2:21, Rom 10:13, Heb 11:1-2, Heb 11:13

After the death of his second son, Abel, Adam gave birth to a third son, Seth. Seth conveyed to the people the promises of God that he had received from Adam. So from then on people could call on the name of Jehovah. (Genesis 3:15, Gen 4:25-26)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Gen 4:25 And Adam knew his wife again; and she bare a son, and called his name Seth: For God, said she, hath appointed me another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew.

26 And to Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name Enos: then began men to call upon the name of the Lord.

In the Old Testament, when offering sacrifices to God, the name of the Lord was called. Calling on the name of Jehovah was the only way people could be saved. (Genesis 12:8, Joel 2:32)

Genesis 12:8 And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched his tent, having Bethel on the west, and Hai on the east: and there he builded an altar unto the Lord, and called upon the name of the Lord.

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

To call on the name of the Lord is to believe and call on Jesus as the Son of God and the Christ. (Acts 2:21, Romans 10:13)

Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Romans 10:13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

The forefathers of the Old Testament were saved through faith in the coming Christ, the eternal promise of God. (Heb 11:1-2, Heb 11:13)

Heb 11:1 Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.

2 For by it the elders obtained a good report.

Heb 11:13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.

713. We are the image of God. (Gen 5:1-3)
2 Cor 4:4, Col 1:15, Rom 8:29, Lk 3:38

Adam was created in the image of God. Adam's sons were born in Adam's likeness. That is, they too were begotten in the image of God. After all, everyone is born in the image of God. (Genesis 5:1-3, Luke 3:38)

Genesis 5:1 This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created man, in the likeness of God made he him;

2 Male and female created he them; and blessed them, and called their name Adam, in the day when they were created.

3 And Adam lived an hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness, and after his image; and called his name Seth:

Luke 3:38 Which was the son of Enos, which was the son of Seth, which was the son of Adam, which was the son of God.

The true image of God is Christ. After all, we are created through Christ. (2 Corinthians 4:4, Col 1:15, Romans 8:29)

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

Romans 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

714. Noah received the gospel from Methuselah, who lived with Adam (Gen 5:25-31)
Gen 3:15, Gen 5:3-5

Noah's grandfather Methuselah lived at the same time as Adam. So Methuselah could receive the gospel directly from Adam. Noah lived at the same time as Noah's grandfather Methuselah. So Noah could receive the gospel from Methuselah. So Noah received the correct gospel from Methuselah.

Gen 5:25 And Methuselah lived an hundred eighty and seven years, and begat Lamech.

26 And Methuselah lived after he begat Lamech seven hundred eighty and two years, and begat sons and daughters:

27 And all the days of Methuselah were nine hundred sixty and nine years: and he died.

28 And Lamech lived an hundred eighty and two years, and begat a son:

29 And he called his name Noah, saying, This same shall comfort us concerning our work and toil of our hands, because of the ground which the Lord hath cursed.

30 And Lamech lived after he begat Noah five hundred ninety and five years, and begat sons and daughters:

31 And all the days of Lamech were seven hundred seventy and seven years: and he died.

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Gen 5:3 And Adam lived an hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness, and after his image; and called his name Seth:

4 And the days of Adam after he had begotten Seth were eight hundred years: and he begat sons and daughters:

5 And all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years: and he died.

715. Noah preached the righteousness, Christ (Gen 6:8-9)
Rom 3:24, Gen 3:15, 2 Pt 2:5, Heb 11:7, Rom 1:17

Noah believed in the coming Christ because he had received favor from God. So Noah became righteous. (Genesis 3:15, Genesis 6:8-9, Romans 3:24, Romans 1:17)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Genesis 6:8 But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord.

9 These are the generations of Noah: Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations, and Noah walked with God.

Romans 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

Romans 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Noah built the ark at the command of God, preaching the righteousness of God, Christ. (2 Peter 2:5, Hebrews 11:7)

2 Peter 2:5 And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly;

Hebrews 11:7 By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith.

716. God's eternal covenant to Noah-Christ (Gen 6:18)

Gen 3:15, Gen 9:16, Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16, Dan 9:26, Heb 8:8

The covenant God promised to Noah was the coming Christ. (Gen 6:18, Gen 3:15, Gen 9:16)

Gen 6:18 But with thee will I establish my covenant; and thou shalt come into the ark, thou, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons' wives with thee.

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Gen 9:16 And the bow shall be in the cloud; and I will look upon it, that I may remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is upon the earth.

The covenant God promised to Abraham was the coming Christ. (Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16)

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

The covenant God promised to Daniel was the coming Christ. (Dan 9:26)

Dan 9:26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.

The covenant God promised to Jeremiah was the coming Christ. (Hebrews 8:8)

Hebrews 8:8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

717. The Ark of Salvation, Christ (Genesis 7:1)

Gen 7:7, Psalm 46:1-3, Matthew 11:28, John 14:6, Matthew 24:38-39, Luke 17:26-27, 1 Peter 3:20-21

Noah and his family entered the ark and were saved. (Genesis 7:1,7, 1 Peter 3:20-21)

Genesis 7:1 And the Lord said unto Noah, Come thou and all thy house into the ark; for thee have I seen righteous before me in this generation.

7 And Noah went in, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him, into the ark, because of the waters of the flood.

1 Peter 3:20 Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.

21 The like figure whereunto even baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:

God is our refuge and salvation. (Psalm 46:1-3)

Psalm 46:1 God is our refuge and strength, a very present help in trouble.

2 Therefore will not we fear, though the earth be removed, and though the mountains be carried into the midst of the sea;

3 Though the waters thereof roar and be troubled, though the mountains shake with the swelling thereof. Selah.

Jesus, the Christ, is the way of salvation and the eternal refuge. (John 14:6, Matt 11:28)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Matt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Everyone except Noah and Noah's family did not realize that they could be saved only in the ark, so they all perished. Likewise, all who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will be judged. (Matthew 24:38-39, Luke 17:26-27)

Matthew 24:38 For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark,

39 And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Luke 17:26 And as it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man.

27 They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all.

718. God's eternal covenant to Abraham - Christ (Gen 12:2) Gen 22:17-18, Gen 24:7, Gal 3:16, Heb 11:8, Acts 3:25, Gal 3:8, Jn 8:56

God promised Abraham that all peoples under the world would be blessed through his descendants. (Gen 12:2, Gen 22:17-18, Acts 3:25, Gal 3:8)

Gen 12:2 And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing:

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Acts 3:25 Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

Gal 3:8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed.

Abraham believed in Christ who would come as his descendant and went to Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Heb 11:8, John 8:56)

Heb 11:8 By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went.

John 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

The descendant God promised to Abraham is Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

719. The Gospel that God preached to Abraham (Genesis 12:3)

Gal 3:8, Acts 3:25, Gen 18:18, Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16, Matthew 28:18-19

The gospel that God preached to Abraham is that Christ will come as Abraham's descendant and will bless all peoples. (Gen 12:3, Gen 18:18, Gen 22:18, Gal 3:8, Acts 3:25)

Gen 12:3 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

Gen 18:18 Seeing that Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him?

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed.

Acts 3:25 Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The descendant that God promised Abraham is Jesus, the Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

We must proclaim to all nations that Jesus is the Christ, so that they may be blessed. (Mt 28:18-19)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

720. Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 12:7)
Mt 2:4-6, Mic 5:2

God promised Abraham the land of Canaan. (Genesis 12:7)

Genesis 12:7 And the Lord appeared unto Abram, and said, Unto thy seed will I give this land: and there builded he an altar unto the Lord, who appeared unto him.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come to Bethlehem in the land of Canaan. (Mic 5:2)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

The land of Canaan is the land where Christ will come. Christ came to Bethlehem in the land of Canaan. (Matthew 2:4-6)

Matthew 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

721. The altar that Abraham built to the Lord: Christ (Gen 12:8) Gen 4:26, Gen 13:4, Gen 21:33, Joel 2:32, Acts 2:21, Rom 10:13

Abraham offered sacrifices to God and called on the name of the Lord. (Gen. 12:8, Gen. 13:4, Gen. 21:33)

Gen. 12:8 And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched his tent, having Bethel on the west, and Hai on the east: and there he builded an altar unto the Lord, and called upon the name of the Lord.

Gen. 13:4 Unto the place of the altar, which he had make there at the first: and there Abram called on the name of the Lord.

Gen. 21:33 And Abraham planted a grove in Beersheba, and called there on the name of the Lord, the everlasting God.

Seth gave birth to a son, and at that time people called on the name of the LORD. (Genesis 4:26)

Genesis 4:26 And to Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name Enos: then began men to call upon the name of the Lord.

The Old Testament prophesies that those who call on the name of the Lord will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ and call on the name of Jesus will be saved. (Acts 2:21, Romans 10:13)

Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Romans 10:13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

722. God protected the coming of Christ. (Gen 12:17-20)
Gen 17:16, Mt 2:13-16

Christ comes as the descendant of Abraham and Sarah. So when King Pharaoh tried to take Sarah as her wife, God brought disaster upon the king to protect the way of Christ. (Gen. 17:16, Gen. 12:17-20)

Gen. 17:16 And I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her: yea, I will bless her, and she shall be a mother of nations; kings of people shall be of her.

Gen. 12:17 And the Lord plagued Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai Abram's wife.
18 And Pharaoh called Abram and said, What is this that thou hast done unto me? why didst thou not tell me that she was thy wife?

19 Why saidst thou, She is my sister? so I might have taken her to me to wife: now therefore behold thy wife, take her, and go thy way.

20 And Pharaoh commanded his men concerning him: and they sent him away, and his wife, and all that he had.

King Herod killed all the children of Israel to kill the little Christ. But God protected Christ by allowing Joseph to flee to Egypt. (Mt 2:13-16)

Mt 2:13 And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him.

14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt:

15 And was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Out of Egypt have I called my son.

16 Then Herod, when he saw that he was mocked of the wise men, was exceeding wroth, and sent forth, and slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all the coasts thereof, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently inquired of the wise men.

723. Christ, who is the priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek (Gen 14:17-20) Heb 5:6,8-10, Heb 7:1-3,11,17,21, Ps 110:4,

In the Old Testament, Abraham received a blessing from Melchizedek, the priest of God. (Genesis 14:17-20)

Genesis 14:17 And the king of Sodom went out to meet him after his return from the slaughter of Chedorlaomer, and of the kings that were with him, at the valley of Shaveh, which is the king's dale.

18 And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he was the priest of the most high God.

19 And he blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth:

20 And blessed be the most high God, which hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him tithes of all.

In the Old Testament, God said that the coming Christ was an eternal priest according to the order of Melchizedek. (Psalm 110:4)

Psalm 110:4 The Lord hath sworn, and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek.

Jesus, the Son of God, is the priest of God according to the order of Melchizedek. (Heb 7:1-3, 11,17,21, Heb 5:6,8-10)

Heb 7:1 For this Melchisedec, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him;

2 To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace;

3 Without father, without mother, without descent, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life; but made like unto the Son of God; abideth a priest continually.

11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

21 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 5:6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

724. Abraham believed in Christ to come through his offspring. (Gen 15:5-6) Jn 8:56, Rom 4:18-25, Heb 11:8-10

Abraham believed that all nations would be blessed through Christ, who would come as his descendant. (Genesis 15:5-6, Romans 4:18-25)

Genesis 15:5 And he brought him forth abroad, and said, Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them: and he said unto him, So shall thy seed be.

6 And he believed in the Lord; and he counted it to him for righteousness.

Romans 4:18 Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be.

19 And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sarah's womb:

20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God;

21 And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

22 And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness.

23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him;

24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

When Abraham gave birth to his son Isaac, he rejoiced thinking about Christ, who would come as the descendant of Isaac. (John 8:56)

John 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

When Abraham arrived in Canaan, the land where Christ would come, he did not build a house, but built a tent and waited for Christ to come. (Heb 11:8-10)

Heb 11:8 By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went.

9 By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise:

10 For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God.

725. Abraham was recognized as righteous by God through faith in the coming Christ. (Gen 15:6)
Jn 8:56, Rom 4:3,9,16, Gal 3:6, James 2:23

Abraham was justified by faith in the promised Christ to come.

Gen 15:6 And he believed in the Lord; and he counted it to him for righteousness.

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

Rom 4:3 For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness.

9 Cometh this blessedness then upon the circumcision only, or upon the uncircumcision also? for we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness.

16 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,

Gal 3:6 Even as Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness.

James 2:23 And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness: and he was called the Friend of God.

726. The unchanging covenant that God swore: Christ (Gen 15:17)
Heb 6:13-14,17, Gal 3:16-17, Jer 34:18-20

In the Old Testament, two people who made a promise cut an animal and passed between them. This means that anyone who does not keep this promise will be split apart and die like this animal. (Jeremiah 34:18-20)

Jeremiah 34:18 And I will give the men that have transgressed my covenant, which have not performed the words of the covenant which they had made before me, when they cut the calf in twain, and passed between the parts thereof,
19 The princes of Judah, and the princes of Jerusalem, the eunuchs, and the priests, and all the people of the land, which passed between the parts of the calf;
20 I will even give them into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of them that seek their life: and their dead bodies shall be for meat unto the fowls of the heaven, and to the beasts of the earth.

God has promised us blessings and walked alone through the pieces of meat. This means that God will surely keep this promise. (Gen 15:17)

Gen 15:17 And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

God has promised to bless us by swearing by Himself. (Heb 6:13-14,17)

Heb 6:13 For when God made promise to Abraham, because he could swear by no greater, he sware by himself,
14 Saying, Surely blessing I will bless thee, and multiplying I will multiply thee.
17 Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath:

The unchanging covenant that God has sworn is Christ. He has blessed us through Christ. (Gal 3:16-17)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.
17 And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.

727. The circumcision of Christ (Gen 17:9-13)
Col 2:11-12, Gal 6:12-15, Rom 2:29

In the Old Testament, God required people to be circumcised in order to become His people. (Genesis 17:9-13)

Genesis 17:9 And God said unto Abraham, Thou shalt keep my covenant therefore, thou, and thy seed after thee in their generations.

10 This is my covenant, which ye shall keep, between me and you and thy seed after thee; Every man child among you shall be circumcised.

11 And ye shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin; and it shall be a token of the covenant betwixt me and you.

12 And he that is eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every man child in your generations, he that is born in the house, or bought with money of any stranger, which is not of thy seed.

13 He that is born in thy house, and he that is bought with thy money, must needs be circumcised: and my covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.

The physical circumcision that God required in the Old Testament was to explain spiritual circumcision. We are spiritually circumcised by believing that Jesus died for us and that God raised him up again. (Col 2:11-12, Gal 6:12-15, Romans 2:29)

Col 2:11 In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ:

12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

Gal 6:12 As many as desire to make a fair shew in the flesh, they constrain you to be circumcised; only lest they should suffer persecution for the cross of Christ.

13 For neither they themselves who are circumcised keep the law; but desire to have you circumcised, that they may glory in your flesh.

14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

15 For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature.

Romans 2:29 But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.

728. Christ, who will come through Isaac (Gen 17:19, 21)
Gen 21:2-3, Gen 22:16-18, Gal 3:16, Rom 9:7-8, Gal 4:21-23

God promised to send Christ through the descendants of Abraham's son Isaac. (Genesis 17:19,21, Gen 21:2-3, Romans 9:7-8, Gal 4:21-23)

Genesis 17:19 And God said, Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed; and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him.

21 But my covenant will I establish with Isaac, which Sarah shall bear unto thee at this set time in the next year.

Gen 21:2 For Sarah conceived, and bare Abraham a son in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him.

3 And Abraham called the name of his son that was born unto him, whom Sarah bare to him, Isaac.

Romans 9:7 Neither, because they are the seed of Abraham, are they all children: but, In Isaac shall thy seed be called.

8 That is, They which are the children of the flesh, these are not the children of God: but the children of the promise are counted for the seed.

Gal 4:21 Tell me, ye that desire to be under the law, do ye not hear the law?

22 For it is written, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a freewoman.

23 But he who was of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman was by promise.

All people will be blessed through Christ who will come as Abraham's descendant. (Gen 22:16-18, Gal 3:16)

Gen 22:16 And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son:

17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

730. If we had not believed in Christ, we would have been like Sodom and Gomorrah. (Gen 19:27-28) Rom 9:27-29, Mt 10:14-15, Mt 11:23-24, 2 Pt 2:6

God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah because of the ungodliness of the people living in Sodom and Gomorrah. (Gen 19:27-28)

Gen 19:27 And Abraham gat up early in the morning to the place where he stood before the Lord:

28 And he looked toward Sodom and Gomorrah, and toward all the land of the plain, and beheld, and, lo, the smoke of the country went up as the smoke of a furnace.

If we do not accept Jesus as the Christ, we will be judged like the land of Sodom and Gomorrah. (Matthew 10:14-15)

Matthew 10:14 And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when ye depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet.

15 Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgment, than for that city.

If Jesus had shown his power in Sodom, the people of Sodom would have believed in Jesus as the Christ. However, in this age, people do not believe in Jesus as the Christ. So this age will be judged. (Mt 11:23-24)

Mt 11:23 And thou, Capernaum, which art exalted unto heaven, shalt be brought down to hell: for if the mighty works, which have been done in thee, had been done in Sodom, it would have remained until this day.

24 But I say unto you, That it shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment, than for thee.

After all, among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel will believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Romans 9:27-29)

Romans 9:27 Esaias also crieth concerning Israel, Though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved:

28 For he will finish the work, and cut it short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth.

29 And as Esaias said before, Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.

After seeing the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, we must wake up and firmly believe in Jesus as the Christ. (2 Peter 2:6)

2 Peter 2:6 And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrha into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly;

731. God protected the coming of Christ. II (Gen 20:7)
Gen 17:19, Gen 21:2, Mt 1:2,16, Lk 3:23,34

God protected Abraham's wife. Because Christ will come as the descendant of Abraham's wife. (Gen 20:7, Gen 17:19)

Gen 20:7 Now therefore restore the man his wife; for he is a prophet, and he shall pray for thee, and thou shalt live: and if thou restore her not, know thou that thou shalt surely die, thou, and all that are thine.

Gen 17:19 And God said, Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed; and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him.

Abraham had a son Isaac by Sarah. And Christ came as the descendant of Isaac. (Gen 21:2, Matthew 1:2,16, Luke 3:23,34)

Gen 21:2 For Sarah conceived, and bare Abraham a son in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him.

Matthew 1:2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;
16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Luke 3:23 And Jesus himself began to be about thirty years of age, being (as was supposed) the son of Joseph, which was the son of Heli,

34 Which was the son of Jacob, which was the son of Isaac, which was the son of Abraham, which was the son of Thara, which was the son of Nachor,

733. God who gave God's only begotten Son for us (Gen 22:1-2)
Jn 3:16, Rom 8:32, 1 Jn 4:9-10, Mt 3:16-17, Lk 3:21-22

God told Abraham to sacrifice Isaac, Abraham's only son, as a burnt offering. (Gen 22:1-2)

Gen 22:1 And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham, and said unto him, Abraham: and he said, Behold, here I am.

2 And he said, Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of.

Jesus is the only begotten Son of God. (Matthew 3:16-17, Luke 3:21-22)

Matthew 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Luke 3:21 Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened,

22 And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

God killed His only begotten Son to save us. (John 3:16, Romans 8:32, 1 John 4:9-10)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Romans 8:32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?

1 John 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

734. Christ, who is the Lamb of God who died on our behalf (Gen 22:12-13) Gen 22:12-13, Heb 9:12, Jn 1:29, 1 Jn 4:10, Gal 1:4, Isa 53:5

Abraham offered Isaac as a burnt offering to God, but God made a ram to offer it as a burnt offering. Like the ram, Abraham had a foreknowledge that Christ would die for Abraham's sins. (Gen 22:12-13)

Gen 22:12 And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him: for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from me.

13 And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind him a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die for us. (Isa 53:5)

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

God loves us and sent His Son as a propitiation to forgive our sins. (1 John 4:10)

1 John 4:10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who died to take away the sins of the world. (John 1:29)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Jesus offered his body to God as a propitiation to save us. (Heb 9:12, Gal 1:4)

Heb 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Gal 1:4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father:

735. Abraham believed in the resurrection. (Gen 22:5)
Rom 4:17, Heb 11:17-19

When Abraham offered his son Isaac as a burnt offering to God, he believed that God would raise him from the dead.

Gen 22:5 And Abraham said unto his young men, Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.

Rom 4:17 (As it is written, I have made thee a father of many nations,) before him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were.

Heb 11:17 By faith Abraham, when he was tried, offered up Isaac: and he that had received the promises offered up his only begotten son,

18 Of whom it was said, That in Isaac shall thy seed be called:

19 Accounting that God was able to raise him up, even from the dead; from whence also he received him in a figure.

736. Christ to come as Abraham's descendant (Gen 22:17-18)
Mt 1:1, Gen 3:15, Gal 3:16, 1 Jn 3:8, Gal 3:6-8,14

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come and break Satan's head. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

God promised Abraham that Christ would come as Abraham's descendant. He also promised that the Christ would come and obtain the door of the enemy. (Gen 22:17-18)

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Jesus is the Christ, the descendant of Abraham. (Mt 1:1, Gal 3:16)

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

Jesus is the Christ who destroyed the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Abraham was recognized righteous by believing in the coming Christ. Likewise, if we too believe that Jesus is the Christ, then he becomes a descendant of Abraham. (Gal 3:6-8,14)

Gal 3:6 Even as Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness.

7 Know ye therefore that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham.

8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed.

14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

737. Christ coming as the descendant of Isaac and Rebekah (Gen 24:59-60, 67)
Gen 17:16, Gen 22:17, Rom 9:10

Christ came as the descendant of Isaac and Rebekah.

Gen 24:59 And they sent away Rebekah their sister, and her nurse, and Abraham's servant, and his men.

60 And they blessed Rebekah, and said unto her, Thou art our sister, be thou the mother of thousands of millions, and let thy seed possess the gate of those which hate them.

67 And Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent, and took Rebekah, and she became his wife; and he loved her: and Isaac was comforted after his mother's death.

Gen 17:16 And I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her: yea, I will bless her, and she shall be a mother of nations; kings of people shall be of her.

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

Rom 9:10 And not only this; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, even by our father Isaac;

738. Christ to come as the descendant of Jacob (Gen 25:22-23)
Gen 27:26-29, Rom 9:10-13, Mal 1:2

It was prophesied that Jacob would become a stronger people than Esau. (Genesis 25:22-23)

Genesis 25:22 And the children struggled together within her; and she said, If it be so, why am I thus? And she went to enquire of the Lord.

23 And the Lord said unto her, Two nations are in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other people; and the elder shall serve the younger.

Isaac blesses Jacob to occupy the land where Christ will come and prophesies that Christ will come as Jacob's descendant. (Gen 27:26-29)

Gen 27:26 And his father Isaac said unto him, Come near now, and kiss me, my son.

27 And he came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, See, the smell of my son is as the smell of a field which the Lord hath blessed:

28 Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine:

29 Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee: cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee.

God loved Jacob more than Esau because God had chosen to send Christ as the descendant of Jacob. (Rom 9:10-13, Mal 1:2)

Rom 9:10 And not only this; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, even by our father Isaac;

11 (For the children being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth;)

12 It was said unto her, The elder shall serve the younger.

13 As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.

Mal 1:2 I have loved you, saith the Lord. Yet ye say, Wherein hast thou loved us? Was not Esau Jacob's brother? saith the Lord: yet I loved Jacob,

740. Christ, the eternal promise God gave to Isaac (Gen 26:2-4)
Gal 3:16, Gen 22:17-18,

God also blessed Isaac to take possession of Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Gen. 26:2-4)

Gen. 26:2 And the Lord appeared unto him, and said, Go not down into Egypt; dwell in the land which I shall tell thee of:

3 Sojourn in this land, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee; for unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I swore unto Abraham thy father;

4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

God promised Abraham that through his descendants he would gain the gates of the enemy and that all nations would be blessed. (Gen 22:17-18)

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

The offspring that God promised to Abraham and Isaac is Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

741. Isaac worshiped God and waited for Christ to come (Gen 26:25) Gen 12:8, Gen 13:4, Gen 21:33, Joel 2:32, Rom 10:13, Acts 2:21

Isaac built an altar to God, offered sacrifices, and waited for Christ to come. (Gen. 26:25, Gen. 12:8, Gen. 13:4, Gen. 21:33)

Gen. 26:25 And he builded an altar there, and called upon the name of the Lord, and pitched his tent there: and there Isaac's servants digged a well.

Gen. 12:8 And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched his tent, having Bethel on the west, and Hai on the east: and there he builded an altar unto the Lord, and called upon the name of the Lord.

Gen. 13:4 Unto the place of the altar, which he had make there at the first: and there Abram called on the name of the Lord.

Gen. 21:33 And Abraham planted a grove in Beersheba, and called there on the name of the Lord, the everlasting God.

The Old Testament prophesied that those who call on the name of the Jehovah will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

To call on the name of Jehovah is to believe that Jesus is the Christ and to call on Jesus as Lord. Those who call on Jesus as Lord will be saved. (Romans 10:13, Acts 2:21)

Romans 10:13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

742. Jacob who inherited Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 27:26-29) Heb 11:20, Deut 7:13, Deut 11:9, Deut 33:28, Mic 5:2, Mt 2:4-6

Jacob received the blessing from his father Isaac to take Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Gen 27:26-29, Hebrews 11:20)

Gen 27:26 And his father Isaac said unto him, Come near now, and kiss me, my son.

27 And he came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, See, the smell of my son is as the smell of a field which the Lord hath blessed:

28 Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine:

29 Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee: cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee.

Hebrews 11:20 By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau concerning things to come.

The land God promised to the Israelites is Canaan, the land where Christ will come. (Deut. 7:13, Deut. 11:9, Deut. 33:28)

Deut. 7:13 And he will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee: he will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which he sware unto thy fathers to give thee.

Deut. 11:9 And that ye may prolong your days in the land, which the Lord sware unto your fathers to give unto them and to their seed, a land that floweth with milk and honey.

Deut. 33:28 Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would be born in Bethlehem in the land of Canaan. (Mic 5:2)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Jesus is the Christ who was born in Bethlehem in the land of Canaan according to the prophecy of the Old Testament. (Matthew 2:4-6)

Mt 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

744. Christ, who is the true ladder to meet God (Gen 28:12)
Jn 1:51, Jn 14:6, Acts 4:12, Mk 15:38, Heb 10:20

In a dream Jacob saw a ladder reaching heaven and angels ascending and descending on it. (Gen 28:12)

Gen 28:12 And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it.

Jesus said that the heavens would be opened and people would see angels ascending and descending upon him. (John 1:51)

John 1:51 And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.

Jesus is the only way to meet God. (John 14:6, Acts 4:12)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

By dying on the cross, Jesus opened the way to meet God. (Mark 15:38, Heb 10:20)

Mark 15:38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom.

Heb 10:20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

745. God's eternal covenant that was delivered to Jacob: Christ (Gen 28:13-14)
Gen 22:17-18, Gal 3:16

God also made the eternal covenant He made to Abraham and Isaac to Jacob.

Gen 28:13 And, behold, the Lord stood above it, and said, I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed;

14 And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed.

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

746. Christ as Immanuel who will be with us forever (Gen 28:15)
Jos 1:5,9, Isa 7:14, Mt 1:23, Mt 28:20, Phil 1:6

God is with Jacob until he accomplishes everything he has promised. (Gen. 28:15)

Gen. 28:15 And, behold, I am with thee, and will keep thee in all places whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land; for I will not leave thee, until I have done that which I have spoken to thee of.

God promised Joshua that He would always be with him. (Joshua 1:5,9)

Joshua 1:5 here shall not any man be able to stand before thee all the days of thy life: as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee: I will not fail thee, nor forsake thee.

9 Have not I commanded thee? Be strong and of a good courage; be not afraid, neither be thou dismayed: for the Lord thy God is with thee whithersoever thou goest.

The Old Testament prophesied that the Son of God would come to this earth and be with us. (Isa 7:14)

Isa 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Jesus is the Christ, the Emmanuel, prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mt 1:23)

Mt 1:23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

Jesus commands world evangelization to all who believe in Himself as the Christ and is with them. (Mt 28:20)

Mt 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Jesus accomplishes world evangelization through us. (Phil 1:6)

Phil 1:6 eing confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:

749. Tamar held the covenant of descendants. (Gen 38:13-15)
Gen 38:18, Gen 38:24-30, Mt 1:1-3

Tamar held onto the covenant of Christ to come and slept with her father-in-law. (Gen 38:13-15,18)

Gen 38:13 And it was told Tamar, saying, Behold thy father in law goeth up to Timnath to shear his sheep.
14 And she put her widow's garments off from her, and covered her with a vail, and wrapped herself, and sat in an open place, which is by the way to Timnath; for she saw that Shelah was grown, and she was not given unto him to wife.
15 When Judah saw her, he thought her to be an harlot; because she had covered her face.
18 And he said, What pledge shall I give thee? And she said, Thy signet, and thy bracelets, and thy staff that is in thine hand. And he gave it her, and came in unto her, and she conceived by him.

Tamar begat Perez by Judah. Christ came as the descendant of Perez. (Gen 38:24-30, Mt 1:1-3)

Gen 38:24 And it came to pass about three months after, that it was told Judah, saying, Tamar thy daughter in law hath played the harlot; and also, behold, she is with child by whoredom. And Judah said, Bring her forth, and let her be burnt.
25 When she was brought forth, she sent to her father in law, saying, By the man, whose these are, am I with child: and she said, Discern, I pray thee, whose are these, the signet, and bracelets, and staff.
26 And Judah acknowledged them, and said, She hath been more righteous than I; because that I gave her not to Shelah my son. And he knew her again no more.
27 And it came to pass in the time of her travail, that, behold, twins were in her womb.
28 And it came to pass, when she travailed, that the one put out his hand: and the midwife took and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread, saying, This came out first.
29 And it came to pass, as he drew back his hand, that, behold, his brother came out: and she said, How hast thou broken forth? this breach be upon thee: therefore his name was called Pharez.
30 And afterward came out his brother, that had the scarlet thread upon his hand: and his name was called Zarah.

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.
2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;
3 And Judas begat Phares and Zara of Thamar; and Phares begat Esrom; and Esrom begat Aram;

750. Christ as the descendant of Judah (Gen. 49:8-10)
Hebrews 7:14, Revelation 5:5, Matthew 1:1-3

Jacob blessed Judah and prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah. (Gen 49:8-10)

Gen 49:8 Judah, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before thee.

9 Judah is a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up?

10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Jesus is the Christ, the descendant of Judah. (Matthew 1:1-3, Hebrews 7:14, Revelation 5:5)

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;

3 And Judas begat Phares and Zara of Tamar; and Phares begat Esrom; and Esrom begat Aram;

Hebrews 7:14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

Revelation 5:5 And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

751. Jacob buried in Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 46:4)
Gen 47:29-31, Gen 50:1-6

God said that Jacob would be buried in Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Gen 46:4)

Gen 46:4 I will go down with thee into Egypt; and I will also surely bring thee up again: and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes.

Jacob firmly commanded Joseph to bury him in Canaan, the land where Christ would come when he died. (Gen 47:29-31)

Gen 47:29 And the time drew nigh that Israel must die: and he called his son Joseph, and said unto him, If now I have found grace in thy sight, put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh, and deal kindly and truly with me; bury me not, I pray thee, in Egypt:

30 But I will lie with my fathers, and thou shalt carry me out of Egypt, and bury me in their buryingplace. And he said, I will do as thou hast said.

31 And he said, Swear unto me. And he swore unto him. And Israel bowed himself upon the bed's head.

After Jacob's death, he is buried in Canaan, the land where Christ will come. (Genesis 50:1-6)

Genesis 50:1 And Joseph fell upon his father's face, and wept upon him, and kissed him.

2 And Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father: and the physicians embalmed Israel.

3 And forty days were fulfilled for him; for so are fulfilled the days of those which are embalmed: and the Egyptians mourned for him threescore and ten days.

4 And when the days of his mourning were past, Joseph spake unto the house of Pharaoh, saying, If now I have found grace in your eyes, speak, I pray you, in the ears of Pharaoh, saying,

5 My father made me swear, saying, Lo, I die: in my grave which I have digged for me in the land of Canaan, there shalt thou bury me. Now therefore let me go up, I pray thee, and bury my father, and I will come again.

6 And Pharaoh said, Go up, and bury thy father, according as he made thee swear.

752. God who will lead the Israelites to Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 48:21) Gen 50:24, Gen 15:16, Gen 26:3-4, Gal 3:16, Ex 3:8

Jacob told Joseph that God would lead the Israelites to the land where Christ would come, Canaan. (Gen 48:21, Gen 50:24)

Gen 48:21 And Israel said unto Joseph, Behold, I die: but God shall be with you, and bring you again unto the land of your fathers.

Gen 50:24 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I die: and God will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land unto the land which he sware to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

The land of Canaan is the land where Christ will come, the land where God will lead the Israelites. (Ex 3:8)

Ex 3:8 And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites.

The land of Canaan is the land where Christ will come, and through him all peoples under the heavens will be blessed. (Gen. 26:3-4)

Gen. 26:3 Sojourn in this land, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee; for unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I sware unto Abraham thy father;
4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

Jesus is the offspring that God promised to Abraham, the Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

753. Joseph wanted to be buried in Canaan, the land where Christ will come. (Gen 50:24-25)
Ex 13:19, Heb 11:22, Jos 24:32

Joseph told his brothers to bury his ashes in Canaan, the land God had promised to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. (Genesis 50:24-25, Hebrews 11:22)

Genesis 50:24 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I die: and God will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land unto the land which he sware to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

25 And Joseph took an oath of the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones from hence.

Hebrews 11:22 By faith Joseph, when he died, made mention of the departing of the children of Israel; and gave commandment concerning his bones.

When Moses left Egypt, he took Joseph's skull and took it with him. (Ex 13:19)

Ex 13:19 And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him: for he had straitly sworn the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you; and ye shall carry up my bones away hence with you.

Joshua buried Joseph's bones in the land of Canaan. (Joshua 24:32)

Joshua 24:32 And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem, in a parcel of ground which Jacob bought of the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem for an hundred pieces of silver: and it became the inheritance of the children of Joseph.

Exodus

Bible

- 754. God, who protected Christ's coming (Ex 1:15-22)
- 756. God of resurrection (Ex 3:6)
- 757. God of covenant (Ex 3:6)
- 758. God who will lead the Israelites out of Egypt to Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 3:8-10)
- 759. God I am, Christ I am (Ex 3:13-14)
- 760. Christ as a sacrifice to Jehovah God (Ex 3:18)
- 761. God who will raise up a prophet like Moses, Christ and deliver us from Satan's hand (Ex 6:13)
- 762. God who wants to proclaim Christ to the world through the Exodus (Ex 9:16)
- 763. God who made known that God can be known only through Christ through the last plague (Ex 7:5)
- 764. The only way to Exodus: the blood of Christ, the Passover Lamb (Ex 12:3-7)
- 765. Christ, who is the bread of life (Ex 12:8-11)
- 766. The meaning of the Passover: God saves us by the blood of Christ (Ex 12:13)
- 767. Christ, who is the Passover Lamb (Ex 12:46)
- 768. The feast of unleavened bread commemorating buried with Christ (Ex 13:5-10)
- 770. Gospel to be engraved in our heart (Ex 13:8-10)
- 772. When we believe in Christ, God fights for us. (Ex 14:13-15)
- 773. The song of Moses, the song of the Lamb (Ex 15:1-8)
- 774. Our healer God, our healer Christ (Ex 15:22-26)
- 775. Christ, who is the bread of life (Ex 16:4)
- 776. Christ, who is the Lord of the Sabbath (Ex 16:23)
- 777. Christ, who is the spiritual Rock (Ex 17:5-6)
- 778. God's glory, Christ (Ex 16:6-8)
- 779. The ministry of making disciples for world evangelization (Ex 18: 13-24)
- 780. God who makes us a kingdom of priests when we believe in Christ, the covenant of God (Ex 19:3-6)
- 781. God who made us clean with the blood of Christ, the Lamb of God (Ex 19:10)
- 782. Only Trinity God (Ex 20:3)
- 783. Blessings for those who love God and keep His commandments (Ex 20:4-6)

- 784. Ten Commandments: Love God, Love souls (Ex 20:6)
- 785. God who killed Christ, who is the true image of God, to save us, who are the image of God. (Ex 21:23-25)
- 786. Three festivals : Shadows of things that were to come (Ex 23:14)
- 788. Christ, who is the new covenant (Ex 24:4-8)
- 789. Christ, who is the true temple (Ex 25:8-9)
- 790. Christ, who is the true way to meet God (Ex 25:21-22)
- 791. Christ, who is the bread of life (Ex 25:30)
- 792. Christ, who is the true light (Ex 25:31)
- 793. Christ, who tore His body, the veil and opened the way to meet God (Ex 26:33)
- 794. Christ, who has perfected us for all time by one offering (Ex 27:1)
- 795. God clothed us with Christ. (Ex 28:2-3)
- 796. The High Priest, Christ (Ex 28:29-30)
- 798. Christ, the innocent High Priest (Ex 28:36-37)
- 799. Christ, who took all of our sins. (Ex 29:10-11)
- 800. Christ as a sin offering (Ex 29:10-14)
- 801. Christ, who is the sacrifice of the peace offering (Ex 29:15-18)
- 802. Christ as the burnt offering (Ex 29:42)
- 803. Christ intercedes for us. (Ex 30:1)
- 804. Christ as our atonement place (Ex 30:6)
- 805. Christ, who is the true priest (Ex 30:30)
- 806. Christ, who is Lord of the Sabbath (Ex 31:13)
- 807. Christ, the True Mediator (Ex 32:31-32)
- 809. Christ, the only way to meet God (Ex 33:18-23)
- 810. God, who manifests Himself as God, Jesus, who manifests Himself as the Christ (Ex 34:5-6)
- 811. A jealous God (Ex 34:14)
- 812. Moses' veil stripped in Christ (Ex 34:29-33)
- 813. God's glory, Christ (Ex 40:34-35)

754. God, who protected Christ's coming (Ex 1:15-22)
Mt 2:13-16

Pharaoh, king of Egypt, feared that the people of Israel would prosper, so he ordered that if an Israelite woman gave birth to a boy, the child should be killed. But God protected the coming of Christ. (Ex 1:15-22)

Ex 1:15 And the king of Egypt spake to the Hebrew midwives, of which the name of the one was Shiprah, and the name of the other Puah:

16 And he said, When ye do the office of a midwife to the Hebrew women, and see them upon the stools; if it be a son, then ye shall kill him: but if it be a daughter, then she shall live.

17 But the midwives feared God, and did not as the king of Egypt commanded them, but saved the men children alive.

18 And the king of Egypt called for the midwives, and said unto them, Why have ye done this thing, and have saved the men children alive?

19 And the midwives said unto Pharaoh, Because the Hebrew women are not as the Egyptian women; for they are lively, and are delivered ere the midwives come in unto them.

20 Therefore God dealt well with the midwives: and the people multiplied, and waxed very mighty.

21 And it came to pass, because the midwives feared God, that he made them houses.

22 And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying, Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river, and every daughter ye shall save alive.

When King Herod knew that Christ was born, he killed the children who were born to kill Christ. However, God made the Joseph family flee to Egypt to protect Christ who was born. (Mt 2:13-16)

Mt 2:13 And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him.

14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt:

15 And was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Out of Egypt have I called my son.

16 Then Herod, when he saw that he was mocked of the wise men, was exceeding wroth, and sent forth, and slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all the coasts thereof, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently inquired of the wise men.

756. God of resurrection (Ex 3:6)
Mt 22:32, Mk 12:26, Lk 20:37-38

God appeared to Moses and revealed that he was the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. This means that the dead Abraham, Isaac and Jacob will be resurrected.

Ex 3:6 Moreover he said, I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God.

Mt 22:32 I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob? God is not the God of the dead, but of the living.

Mk 12:26 And as touching the dead, that they rise: have ye not read in the book of Moses, how in the bush God spake unto him, saying, I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob?

Lk 20:37 Now that the dead are raised, even Moses shewed at the bush, when he calleth the Lord the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.

38 For he is not a God of the dead, but of the living: for all live unto him.

757. God of covenant (Ex 3:6)

Gen 3:15, 22:17-18, 26:4, 28:13-14, Gal 3:16

God is the God of the covenant who made the covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. (Ex 3:6)

Ex 3:6 Moreover he said, I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God.

God promised to send Christ to the first man, Adam. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

God promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would send Christ as their descendant. (Gen 22:17-18, Gen 26:4, Gen 28:13-14)

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gen 26:4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

Gen 28:13 And, behold, the Lord stood above it, and said, I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed;
14 And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed.

Jesus is the Christ God promised to Abraham and his descendants. (Gal. 3:16)

Gal. 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

758. God who will lead the Israelites out of Egypt to Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Gen 3:8-10)
Gen 15:16-21, 46:4, 50:24, Ex 6:5-8, 12:51, 13:5, Jer 11:5

After Adam and Eve sinned against God, they lived a life of fear. (Genesis 3:8-10)

Genesis 3:8 And they heard the voice of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the Lord God amongst the trees of the garden.

9 And the Lord God called unto Adam, and said unto him, Where art thou?

10 And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; and I hid myself.

To mankind suffering from fear and curse, God has promised to send Christ. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

God promised Abraham that he would lead him to the land where Christ would come. (Genesis 15:16-21)

Genesis 15:16 But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again: for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet full.

17 And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

18 In the same day the Lord made a covenant with Abram, saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates:

19 The Kenites, and the Kenizzites, and the Kadmonites,

20 And the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Rephaims,

21 And the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.

God promised to lead Jacob's descendants into Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Gen 46:4, Gen 50:24)

Gen 46:4 will go down with thee into Egypt; and I will also surely bring thee up again: and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes.

Gen 50:24 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I die: and God will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land unto the land which he sware to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

God promised to lead Jacob's descendants into Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Ex 6:5-8, Ex 12:51, Ex 13:5, Jer 11:5)

Ex 6:5 And I have also heard the groaning of the children of Israel, whom the Egyptians keep in bondage; and I have remembered my covenant.

6 Wherefore say unto the children of Israel, I am the Lord, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great judgments:

7 And I will take you to me for a people, and I will be to you a God: and ye shall know that I am the Lord your God, which bringeth you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians.

8 And I will bring you in unto the land, concerning the which I did swear to give it to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob; and I will give it you for an heritage: I am the Lord.

Ex 12:51 And it came to pass the selfsame day, that the Lord did bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their armies.

Ex 13:5 And it came to pass the selfsame day, that the Lord did bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their armies.

Jer 11:5 That I may perform the oath which I have sworn unto your fathers, to give them a land flowing with milk and honey, as it is this day. Then answered I, and said, So be it, O Lord.

759. God I am, Christ I am (Ex 3:13-14)
Rev 1:4,8, 4:8, Jn 8:58, Heb 13:8, Rev 22:13

God is the I AM. (Ex 3:13-14)

Ex 3:13 And Moses said unto God, Behold, when I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The God of your fathers hath sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, What is his name? what shall I say unto them?
14 And God said unto Moses, I Am That I Am: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I Am hath sent me unto you.

Jesus Christ is the I AM. And he is the beginning and the end. (Rev 1:4,8, John 8:58, Heb 13:8, Rev 22:13)

Rev 1:4 John to the seven churches which are in Asia: Grace be unto you, and peace, from him which is, and which was, and which is to come; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne;
8 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty.

John 8:58 Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.

Heb 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.

Rev 22:13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

760. Christ as a sacrifice to Jehovah God (Ex 3:18)

Ex 5:3, 7:16, 8:20, 27, 9:13, Jn 1:29,36, Acts 8:32, 2 Cor 5:21

Moses asked Pharaoh to send the Israelites into the wilderness to offer sacrifices to God. The sacrifice to be offered in the wilderness typifies Christ, the Lamb who will die for us. (Ex 3:18, Ex 5:3, Ex 7:16, Ex 8:20,27, Ex 9:13)

Ex 3:18 And they shall hearken to thy voice: and thou shalt come, thou and the elders of Israel, unto the king of Egypt, and ye shall say unto him, The Lord God of the Hebrews hath met with us: and now let us go, we beseech thee, three days' journey into the wilderness, that we may sacrifice to the Lord our God.

Ex 5:3 And they said, The God of the Hebrews hath met with us: let us go, we pray thee, three days' journey into the desert, and sacrifice unto the Lord our God; lest he fall upon us with pestilence, or with the sword.

Ex 7:16 And thou shalt say unto him, The Lord God of the Hebrews hath sent me unto thee, saying, Let my people go, that they may serve me in the wilderness: and, behold, hitherto thou wouldest not hear.

Ex 8:20 And the Lord said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh; lo, he cometh forth to the water; and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord, Let my people go, that they may serve me.

27 We will go three days' journey into the wilderness, and sacrifice to the Lord our God, as he shall command us.

Ex 9:13 And the Lord said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord God of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be slain as a Lamb. (Acts 8:32)

Acts 8:32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world. (John 1:29,36)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

God bore all our sins on Christ and made Him die for us. (2 Corinthians 5:21)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

761. God who will raise up a prophet like Moses, Christ and deliver us from Satan's hand (Ex 6:13)
Acts 3:22, Deut 18:15, 18, Acts 7:35-37, 52, 1Jn 3:8

God brought the Israelites out of Egypt through Moses. (Ex 6:13)

Ex 6:13 And the Lord spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, and gave them a charge unto the children of Israel, and unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt.

It is prophesied that God will raise up a prophet like Moses, Christ, to save us. (Deut 18:15,18, Acts 3:22)

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

18 I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him.

Acts 3:22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

Jesus is the Christ, the prophet like Moses prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 7:35-37,52)

Acts 7:35 This Moses whom they refused, saying, Who made thee a ruler and a judge? the same did God send to be a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush.

36 He brought them out, after that he had shewed wonders and signs in the land of Egypt, and in the Red sea, and in the wilderness forty years.

37 This is that Moses, which said unto the children of Israel, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

Jesus broke Satan like King Pharaoh and saved us. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

762. God who wants to proclaim Christ to the world through the Exodus (Ex 9:16)
Rom 9:17, Jos 2:8-11, 9:9, 1 Sam 4:8

Through the Exodus, God made His name spread throughout the world. (Ex 9:16, Rom 9:17)

Ex 9:16 And in very deed for this cause have I raised thee up, for to shew in thee my power; and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth.

Rom 9:17 For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might shew my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth.

Rahab also heard of the God who had brought Israel out of Egypt and hid Israel's two spy dreams. (Jos 2:8-11)

Jos 2:8 And before they were laid down, she came up unto them upon the roof;

9 And she said unto the men, I know that the Lord hath given you the land, and that your terror is fallen upon us, and that all the inhabitants of the land faint because of you.

10 For we have heard how the Lord dried up the water of the Red sea for you, when ye came out of Egypt; and what ye did unto the two kings of the Amorites, that were on the other side Jordan, Sihon and Og, whom ye utterly destroyed.

11 And as soon as we had heard these things, our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more courage in any man, because of you: for the Lord your God, he is God in heaven above, and in earth beneath.

One people also deceived Joshua in order to live by hearing the God who brought the Israelites out of Egypt. (Joshua 9:9)

Joshua 9:9 And they said unto him, From a very far country thy servants are come because of the name of the Lord thy God: for we have heard the fame of him, and all that he did in Egypt,

When the Gentiles heard the news of Israel's exodus from Egypt, they knew that the God of Israel was the true God. (1 Sam 4:8)

1 Sam 4:8 Woe unto us! who shall deliver us out of the hand of these mighty Gods? these are the Gods that smote the Egyptians with all the plagues in the wilderness.

763. God who made known that God can be known only through Christ through the last plague (Ex 7:5)
Ex 9:12,30 11:1,5, 12:12-13, Jn 14:6

The Egyptians did not recognize the God of Israel as the true God until the people of Israel left Egypt through the blood of the Lamb. (Ex 9:12,30)

Ex 9:12 And the Lord hardened the heart of Pharaoh, and he hearkened not unto them; as the Lord had spoken unto Moses.

30 But as for thee and thy servants, I know that ye will not yet fear the Lord God.

God promised to bring the Israelites out of Egypt through the blood of the Lamb. (Ex 11:1,5, Ex 12:12-13)

Ex 11:1 And the Lord said unto Moses, Yet will I bring one plague more upon Pharaoh, and upon Egypt; afterwards he will let you go hence: when he shall let you go, he shall surely thrust you out hence altogether.

5 And all the firstborn in the land of Egypt shall die, from the first born of Pharaoh that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the firstborn of the maidservant that is behind the mill; and all the firstborn of beasts.

Ex 12:12 For I will pass through the land of Egypt this night, and will smite all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgment: I am the Lord.

13 And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you, when I smite the land of Egypt.

The Egyptians knew that the God of Israel was the true God only after the Israelites had left Egypt through the blood of the Lamb. (Ex 7:5)

Ex 7:5 And the Egyptians shall know that I am the Lord, when I stretch forth mine hand upon Egypt, and bring out the children of Israel from among them.

Jesus is the only way to meet God. (John 14:6)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

764. The only way to Exodus: the blood of Christ, the Passover Lamb (Ex 12:3-7)
Ex 12:13, 1 Cor 5:7, Rom 8:1-2, 1 Pt 1:18-19, Heb 9:14

Pharaoh did not let the Israelites go until all the firstborn of Egypt died because the Egyptians did not apply the blood of the Passover lamb. By applying the blood of the Passover lamb on their doorposts, the Israelites escaped the last plague, the death of their firstborn, upon Egypt. (Ex 12:3-7, Ex 12:13)

Ex 12:3 Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them every man a lamb, according to the house of their fathers, a lamb for an house:

4 And if the household be too little for the lamb, let him and his neighbour next unto his house take it according to the number of the souls; every man according to his eating shall make your count for the lamb.

5 Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male of the first year: ye shall take it out from the sheep, or from the goats:

6 And ye shall keep it up until the fourteenth day of the same month: and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it in the evening.

7 And they shall take of the blood, and strike it on the two side posts and on the upper door post of the houses, wherein they shall eat it.

Ex 12:13 And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you, when I smite the land of Egypt.

The Passover Lamb at the time of the Exodus alludes to Christ. Christ was sacrificed to save us from all calamities. (1 Corinthians 5:7)

1 Corinthians 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us:

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are set free from the law of sin and death. (Romans 8:1-2, 1 Pet 1:18-19)

Romans 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

1 Pet 1:18 Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers;

19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

We are cleansed from dead works by the blood of Christ, and we are able to serve God. (Heb 9:14)

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

765. Christ, who is the bread of life (Ex 12:8-11)
Jn 6:31-35, 53-58

God had the Israelites eat the Passover lamb on the day before the Exodus. This is Jehovah's Passover. (Ex 12:8-11)

Ex 12:8 and they shall eat the flesh in that night, roast with fire, and unleavened bread; and with bitter herbs they shall eat it.

9 Eat not of it raw, nor sodden at all with water, but roast with fire; his head with his legs, and with the purtenance thereof.

10 And ye shall let nothing of it remain until the morning; and that which remaineth of it until the morning ye shall burn with fire.

11 And thus shall ye eat it; with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand; and ye shall eat it in haste: it is the Lord's passover.

Jesus is the true Passover Lamb. Jesus is the bread of life. Those who eat and drink Jesus have eternal life. So, we need to know that Jesus is the Christ every day. (John 6:31-35, 53-58)

John 6:31 Our fathers did eat manna in the desert; as it is written, He gave them bread from heaven to eat.

32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.

33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.

35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

53 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you.

54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

55 For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed.

56 He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.

57 As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.

58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.

766. The meaning of the Passover: God saves us by the blood of Christ (Ex 12:13)
Ex 12:25-27, Rom 8:1-2, 1 Cor 5:7, 1 Pt 1:18-19

The plague did not happen to the Israelites who put the blood of the Passover lamb on their doorposts. (Ex 12:13)

Ex 12:13 And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you, when I smite the land of Egypt.

The meaning of the Passover is that the people of Israel were saved from the hand of Pharaoh through the blood of the Lamb. And we must pass on the meaning of this Passover to our descendants. (Ex 12:25-27)

Ex 12:25 And it shall come to pass, when ye be come to the land which the Lord will give you, according as he hath promised, that ye shall keep this service.

26 And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean ye by this service?

27 That ye shall say, It is the sacrifice of the Lord's passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.

Jesus is the Passover Lamb of God who has set us free from the law of sin and death. (Romans 8:1-2)

Romans 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

As the Passover Lamb, Jesus shed His blood for us to redeem us. (1 Corinthians 5:7, 1 Pet 1:18-19)

1 Corinthians 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us:

1 Pet 1:18 Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers;

19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

767. Christ, who is the Passover Lamb (Ex 12:46)
Jn 1:29, 36, 19:33, 36

God commanded not to break the bones of the Passover lamb. (Ex 12:46)

Ex 12:46 In one house shall it be eaten; thou shalt not carry forth ought of the flesh abroad out of the house; neither shall ye break a bone thereof.

Jesus is the Christ, the Passover Lamb. (John 1:29,36)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

Jesus died for us as prophesied about the Passover lamb in the Old Testament, and his legs were not broken. (John 19:33,36)

John 19:33 But when they came to Jesus, and saw that he was dead already, they brake not his legs:

36 For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, A bone of him shall not be broken.

768. The feast of unleavened bread commemorating buried with Christ and rose with Christ (Ex 13:5-10)
Ex 12:17-18, Mk 14:12, Deut 16:3, 1 Cor 10:1-2, Col 2:12, Rom 6:3-4

God commanded the Israelites to keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread. (Ex 13:5-10, Ex 2:17-18)

Ex 13:5 And it shall be when the Lord shall bring thee into the land of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, which he sware unto thy fathers to give thee, a land flowing with milk and honey, that thou shalt keep this service in this month.

6 Seven days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, and in the seventh day shall be a feast to the Lord.

7 Unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days; and there shall no leavened bread be seen with thee, neither shall there be leaven seen with thee in all thy quarters.

8 And thou shalt shew thy son in that day, saying, This is done because of that which the Lord did unto me when I came forth out of Egypt.

9 And it shall be for a sign unto thee upon thine hand, and for a memorial between thine eyes, that the Lord's law may be in thy mouth: for with a strong hand hath the Lord brought thee out of Egypt.

10 Thou shalt therefore keep this ordinance in his season from year to year.

Ex 2:17 And the shepherds came and drove them away: but Moses stood up and helped them, and watered their flock.

18 And when they came to Reuel their father, he said, How is it that ye are come so soon to day?

God made the people of Israel to keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread so that they would remember their exodus from Egypt for the rest of their lives. (Deut 16:3)

Deut 16:3 Thou shalt eat no leavened bread with it; seven days shalt thou eat unleavened bread therewith, even the bread of affliction; for thou camest forth out of the land of Egypt in haste: that thou mayest remember the day when thou camest forth out of the land of Egypt all the days of thy life.

The Feast of Unleavened Bread means baptism, which means that we died with Jesus and rose again. (1 Corinthians 10:1, Colossians 2:12, Romans 6:3-4)

1 Corinthians 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;

Colossians 2:12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

Romans 6:3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

770. Gospel to be engraved in our heart (Ex 13:8-10)
Deut 6:4-9, 11:18, Jer 31:31-34, Jn 1:12, Acts 5:30-32

God made the people of Israel who had left Egypt always keep the word of God in their hearts. (Ex 13:8-10, Deut 6:4-9, Deut 11:18)

Ex 13:8 And thou shalt shew thy son in that day, saying, This is done because of that which the Lord did unto me when I came forth out of Egypt.

9 And it shall be for a sign unto thee upon thine hand, and for a memorial between thine eyes, that the Lord's law may be in thy mouth: for with a strong hand hath the Lord brought thee out of Egypt.

10 Thou shalt therefore keep this ordinance in his season from year to year.

Deut 6:4 Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord:

5 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

6 And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart:

7 And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.

8 And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes.

9 And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.

Deut 11:18 Therefore shall ye lay up these my words in your heart and in your soul, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes.

God promised the Israelis who kept the word of God a new covenant that he would write the word of God in their hearts. (Jeremiah 31:31-34)

Jeremiah 31:31 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah:

32 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was an husband unto them, saith the Lord:

33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

When we believe in Jesus as the Christ, the Holy Spirit comes upon us. So the word of God is engraved in our hearts. (John 1:12, Acts 5:30-32)

John 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Acts 5:30 e God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

772. When we believe in Christ, God fights for us. (Ex 14:13-15)
Ex 14:25, Gen 22:17, Ex 23:22, Deut 1:30, 3:22, 20:4, Jos 10:14, 42

Ex 14:13 And Moses said unto the people, Fear ye not, stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord, which he will shew to you to day: for the Egyptians whom ye have seen to day, ye shall see them again no more for ever.

14 The Lord shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace.

15 And the Lord said unto Moses, Wherefore criest thou unto me? speak unto the children of Israel, that they go forward:

Ex 14:25 And took off their chariot wheels, that they drave them heavily: so that the Egyptians said, Let us flee from the face of Israel; for the Lord fighteth for them against the Egyptians.

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

Ex 23:22 But if thou shalt indeed obey his voice, and do all that I speak; then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies, and an adversary unto thine adversaries.

Deut 1:30 The Lord your God which goeth before you, he shall fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes;

Deut 3:22 Ye shall not fear them: for the Lord your God he shall fight for you.

Deut 20:4 For the Lord your God is he that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.

Jos 10:14 And there was no day like that before it or after it, that the Lord hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the Lord fought for Israel.

42 And all these kings and their land did Joshua take at one time, because the Lord God of Israel fought for Israel.

773. The song of Moses, the song of the Lamb (Ex 15:1-8)
Rev 15:3, Ex 15:17

After the Exodus, Moses praised God with the song of the Lamb. (Ex 15:1-8, Ex 15:16-20)

Ex 15:1 Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto the Lord, and spake, saying, I will sing unto the Lord, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea.

2 The Lord is my strength and song, and he is become my salvation: he is my God, and I will prepare him an habitation; my father's God, and I will exalt him.

3 The Lord is a man of war: the Lord is his name.

4 Pharaoh's chariots and his host hath he cast into the sea: his chosen captains also are drowned in the Red sea.

5 The depths have covered them: they sank into the bottom as a stone.

6 Thy right hand, O Lord, is become glorious in power: thy right hand, O Lord, hath dashed in pieces the enemy.

7 And in the greatness of thine excellency thou hast overthrown them that rose up against thee: thou sentest forth thy wrath, which consumed them as stubble.

8 And with the blast of thy nostrils the waters were gathered together, the floods stood upright as an heap, and the depths were congealed in the heart of the sea.

Ex 15:16 Fear and dread shall fall upon them; by the greatness of thine arm they shall be as still as a stone; till thy people pass over, O Lord, till the people pass over, which thou hast purchased.

17 Thou shalt bring them in, and plant them in the mountain of thine inheritance, in the place, O Lord, which thou hast made for thee to dwell in, in the Sanctuary, O Lord, which thy hands have established.

18 The Lord shall reign for ever and ever.

19 For the horse of Pharaoh went in with his chariots and with his horsemen into the sea, and the Lord brought again the waters of the sea upon them; but the children of Israel went on dry land in the midst of the sea.

20 And Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a timbrel in her hand; and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances.

Moses knew that God would send Christ as the Lamb of God. (Revelation 15:3)

Revelation 15:3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints.

774. Our healer God, our healer Christ (Ex 15:22-26)
Rev 22:1-2, Isa 53:4-5, Mt 4:23-24

God healed the Israelites from all diseases after they had left Egypt. (Ex 15:22-26)

Ex 15:22 So Moses brought Israel from the Red sea, and they went out into the wilderness of Shur; and they went three days in the wilderness, and found no water.

23 And when they came to Marah, they could not drink of the waters of Marah, for they were bitter: therefore the name of it was called Marah.

24 And the people murmured against Moses, saying, What shall we drink?

25 And he cried unto the Lord; and the Lord shewed him a tree, which when he had cast into the waters, the waters were made sweet: there he made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there he proved them,

26 And said, If thou wilt diligently hearken to the voice of the Lord thy God, and wilt do that which is right in his sight, and wilt give ear to his commandments, and keep all his statutes, I will put none of these diseases upon thee, which I have brought upon the Egyptians: for I am the Lord that healeth thee.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and take away our sufferings and die to save us. (Isa 53:4-5)

Isa 53:4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Jesus is the Christ who died to heal our sickness and to forgive our sins. (Matthew 4:23-24, Mark 10:45)

Matthew 4:23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.

24 And his fame went throughout all Syria: and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with divers diseases and torments, and those which were possessed with devils, and those which were lunatick, and those that had the palsy; and he healed them.

Mark 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

God and the Lamb of God, Jesus Christ, is the Healer. (Rev 22:1-2)

Rev 22:1 And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

775. Christ, who is the bread of life (Ex 16:4)
Ex 16:8, 13-15, Deut 8:3, Jn 6:31-35, 48-51

The Israelites who left Egypt were able to live on the food that God sent them. (Ex 16:4,8, 12-15)

Ex 16:4 Then said the Lord unto Moses, Behold, I will rain bread from heaven for you; and the people shall go out and gather a certain rate every day, that I may prove them, whether they will walk in my law, or no.
8 And Moses said, This shall be, when the Lord shall give you in the evening flesh to eat, and in the morning bread to the full; for that the Lord heareth your murmurings which ye murmur against him: and what are we? your murmurings are not against us, but against the Lord.
12 I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel: speak unto them, saying, At even ye shall eat flesh, and in the morning ye shall be filled with bread; and ye shall know that I am the Lord your God.
13 And it came to pass, that at even the quails came up, and covered the camp: and in the morning the dew lay round about the host.
14 And when the dew that lay was gone up, behold, upon the face of the wilderness there lay a small round thing, as small as the hoar frost on the ground.
15 And when the children of Israel saw it, they said one to another, It is manna: for they wist not what it was. And Moses said unto them, This is the bread which the Lord hath given you to eat.

God gave manna to the people of Israel to let them know that people should live by all the words of God. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus is the bread of life sent by God. We need to know that Jesus is the Christ through the New and Old Testaments every day. (John 6:31-35, 48-51, 2 Peter 3:18)

John 6:31 Our fathers did eat manna in the desert; as it is written, He gave them bread from heaven to eat.
32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.
33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.
34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.
35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.
48 I am that bread of life.
49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.
50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.
51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

2 Peter 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

776. Christ, who is the Lord of the Sabbath (Ex 16:23) Mt 12:8, Mk 2:28, Lk 6:5, Mk 1:21, 6:2, Lk 4:31, 13:10, 24:44-45

God gave the people of Israel the Sabbath. (Ex 16:23)

Ex 16:23 And he said unto them, This is that which the Lord hath said, To morrow is the rest of the holy sabbath unto the Lord: bake that which ye will bake to day, and seethe that ye will seethe; and that which remaineth over lay up for you to be kept until the morning.

Jesus is our true Sabbath and Lord of the Sabbath. (Matthew 12:8, Mark 2:28, Luke 6:5, Matt 11:28)

Matthew 12:8 For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day.

Mark 2:28 Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

Luke 6:5 And he said unto them, That the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

Matt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Jesus taught on the Sabbath that He was the Christ prophesied to come in the Old Testament. (Mark 1:21, Mark 6:2, Luke 4:31, Luke 13:10)

Mark 1:21 And they went into Capernaum; and straightway on the sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and taught.

Mark 6:2 And when the sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing him were astonished, saying, From whence hath this man these things? and what wisdom is this which is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands?

Luke 4:31 And came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and taught them on the sabbath days.

Luke 13:10 And he was teaching in one of the synagogues on the sabbath.

Jesus revealed that the Old Testament describes Christ and that Christ is Himself. The Bible is correctly understood when it is believed that Jesus is the Christ. (Luke 24:44-45, John 2:22)

Luke 24:44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

John 2:22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.

777. Christ, who is the spiritual Rock (Ex 17:5-6)
Num 20:8, 1 Cor 10:1-4, Jn 4:14, 7:37-39

After the Exodus, the Israelites were able to live in the wilderness by drinking water supplied through the rock. (Ex 17:5-6, Num 20:8)

Ex 17:5 And the Lord said unto Moses, Go on before the people, and take with thee of the elders of Israel; and thy rod, wherewith thou smotest the river, take in thine hand, and go.

6 Behold, I will stand before thee there upon the rock in Horeb; and thou shalt smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it, that the people may drink. And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel.

Num 20:8 Take the rod, and gather thou the assembly together, thou, and Aaron thy brother, and speak ye unto the rock before their eyes; and it shall give forth his water, and thou shalt bring forth to them water out of the rock: so thou shalt give the congregation and their beasts drink.

The rock that provided water to the Israelites in the Old Testament was Christ. (1 Corinthians 10:1-4)

1 Corinthians 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;

2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;

3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat;

4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

As the Christ, Jesus gives us the water of eternal life. (John 4:14)

John 4:14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

When we believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Holy Spirit comes upon us like rivers of living water. (John 7:37-39)

John 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

778. God's glory, Christ (Ex 16:6-8)
Jn 1:14, Lk 2:11-14, Jn 12:27-28, 13:31

After the Exodus, Moses told the Israelites that they would see the glory of God because they were hungry and complained to God. (Ex 16:6-8)

Ex 16:6 And Moses and Aaron said unto all the children of Israel, At even, then ye shall know that the Lord hath brought you out from the land of Egypt:

7 And in the morning, then ye shall see the glory of the Lord; for that he heareth your murmurings against the Lord: and what are we, that ye murmur against us?

8 And Moses said, This shall be, when the Lord shall give you in the evening flesh to eat, and in the morning bread to the full; for that the Lord heareth your murmurings which ye murmur against him: and what are we? your murmurings are not against us, but against the Lord.

Jesus is the bread of life and the way of salvation. (John 6:48, John 14:6)

John 6:48 I am that bread of life.

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus is the one who came to us in the form of the flesh, the Christ, the glory of God. (John 1:14, Luke 2:11-14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Luke 2:11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

12 And this shall be a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger.

13 And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying,

14 Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.

Jesus showed the glory of God by dying on the cross to save us. (John 12:27-28, John 13:36)

John 12:27 Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour.

28 Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.

John 13:36 Simon Peter said unto him, Lord, whither goest thou? Jesus answered him, Whither I go, thou canst not follow me now; but thou shalt follow me afterwards.

779. The ministry of making disciples for world evangelization (Ex 18:13-24)
Mt 28:18-20, Mt 9:37-38, Lk 10:2

On the advice of his father-in-law Jethro, Moses appointed rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens to judge the small matters of the people of Israel. (Ex 18:13-24)

Ex 18:13 And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses sat to judge the people: and the people stood by Moses from the morning unto the evening.

14 And when Moses' father in law saw all that he did to the people, he said, What is this thing that thou doest to the people? why sittest thou thyself alone, and all the people stand by thee from morning unto even?

15 And Moses said unto his father in law, Because the people come unto me to enquire of God:

16 When they have a matter, they come unto me; and I judge between one and another, and I do make them know the statutes of God, and his laws.

17 And Moses' father in law said unto him, The thing that thou doest is not good.

18 Thou wilt surely wear away, both thou, and this people that is with thee: for this thing is too heavy for thee; thou art not able to perform it thyself alone.

19 Hearken now unto my voice, I will give thee counsel, and God shall be with thee: Be thou for the people to Godward, that thou mayest bring the causes unto God:

20 And thou shalt teach them ordinances and laws, and shalt shew them the way wherein they must walk, and the work that they must do.

21 Moreover thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, and rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens:

22 And let them judge the people at all seasons: and it shall be, that every great matter they shall bring unto thee, but every small matter they shall judge: so shall it be easier for thyself, and they shall bear the burden with thee.

23 If thou shalt do this thing, and God command thee so, then thou shalt be able to endure, and all this people shall also go to their place in peace.

24 So Moses hearkened to the voice of his father in law, and did all that he had said.

Jesus commanded us to make disciples of all nations and evangelize the world. (Mt 28:18-20)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

In order to evangelize the world, we must first find disciples. (Matthew 9:37-38, Luke 10:2)

Matthew 9:37 Then saith he unto his disciples, The harvest truly is plenteous, but the labourers are few;

38 Pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers into his harvest.

Luke 10:2 Therefore said he unto them, The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few: pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he would send forth labourers into his harvest.

780. God who makes us a kingdom of priests when we believe in Christ, the covenant of God (Ex 19:3-6)
1 Pt 2:5,9, Rev 5:10

God promised the Israelites that if they kept His covenant, He would make them a kingdom of priests who would save the nations. (Ex 19:3-6)

Ex 19:3 And Moses went up unto God, and the Lord called unto him out of the mountain, saying, Thus shalt thou say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel;

4 Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles' wings, and brought you unto myself.

5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine:

6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.

We have become a royal priesthood and a holy nation by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (1 Peter 2:5,9, Rev 5:10)

1 Peter 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

Rev 5:10 And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.

781. God who made us clean with the blood of Christ, the Lamb of God (Ex 19:10)
Rev 7:13-14, Isa 1:18

God had the Israelites sanctify their bodies and wash their clothes. (Ex 19:10)

Ex 19:10 And the Lord said unto Moses, Go unto the people, and sanctify them to day and to morrow, and let them wash their clothes,

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that God would cleanse us from our sins. (Isa 1:18)

Isa 1:18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.

The Lamb of God, Jesus shed His blood to cleanse us. (Rev 7:13-14)

Rev 7:13 And one of the elders answered, saying unto me, What are these which are arrayed in white robes? and whence came they?

14 And I said unto him, Sir, thou knowest. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

782. Only Trinity God (Ex 20:3)

Gen 1:26, 11:7, Isa 48:16, Phil 2:6, Mt 3:16-17, Lk 3:21-22, 2 Cor 13:14, 1 Pt 1:2, Jude 1:20-21

Ex 20:3 Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

God is Trinity God. Trinity God created the heavens and the earth. (Genesis 1:26, Gen 11:7)

Genesis 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

Gen 11:7 Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech.

In the Old Testament, God the Father promised to send the Son and the Holy Spirit. (Isa 48:16)

Isa 48:16 Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

To save us, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit worked together. (Matthew 3:16-17, Luke 3:21-22)

Matthew 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Luke 3:21 Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened,

22 And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

God the Holy Trinity has blessed us. (2 Corinthians 13:14, 1 Pet 1:2, Jude 1:20-21)

2 Corinthians 13:14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. Amen.

1 Pet 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

Jude 1:20 But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,
21 Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.

783. Blessings for those who love God and keep His commandments (Ex 20:4-6)
Jn 17:3, 16:27, 1 Cor 16:22, Rom 8:28-30

Those who love God and keep His commandments receive God's grace. (Ex 20:4-6)

Ex 20:4 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth.

5 Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

6 And shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ sent by God and love Him will be loved by God. (John 16:27)

John 16:27 For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ have eternal life, and God works together for their good. (John 17:3, Romans 8:28-30)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Romans 8:28 And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose.

29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

But those who do not love Christ will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

784. Ten Commandments: Love God, Love souls (Ex 20:6)
Deut 6:5, Lev 19:18, Mt 22:37-40, Acts 1:8, 5:42, 2 Tim 4:1-2

The Ten Commandments are, first, to love God. (Ex 20:6, Deut 6:5, Matt 22:37-38)

Ex 20:6 And shewing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments.

Deut 6:5 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

Matt 22:37 Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.

38 This is the first and great commandment.

The Ten Commandments are, second, to love your neighbor. (Ex. 19:18, Mt 22:39-40)

Ex. 19:18 And mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because the Lord descended upon it in fire: and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly.

Mt 22:39 And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

40 On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.

Love of the soul is to save people who are dying because they do not know God by telling them that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 1:8, Acts 5:42, 2 Timothy 4:1-2)

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

2 Timothy 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

785. God who killed Christ, who is the true image of God, to save us. (Ex 21:23-25)
Gen 1:26-27, 2 Cor 4:4, 5:21, 14, Gen 22:13, 1 Pt 3:18

In the Old Testament, God's ordained law was that people should be punished for what they did. (Ex 21:23-25)

Ex 21:23 And if any mischief follow, then thou shalt give life for life,
24 Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot,
25 Burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.

We are made in the image of God. (Genesis 1:26-27)

Genesis 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

Christ is the true image of God. (2 Corinthians 4:4)

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

According to the law of the Old Testament, since we, who are the image of God, have sinned to die, the image of God must be put to death. God killed Christ, the true image of God, in order to save us. (2 Corinthians 5:21, 14, 1 Peter 3:18)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

14 For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:

1 Peter 3:18 For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:

786. Three festivals : Shadows of things that were to come (Ex 23:14)
Col 2:17, Heb 8:5, 10:1

God commanded the Israelites to observe three feasts. (Ex 23:14)

Ex 23:14 Three times thou shalt keep a feast unto me in the year.

The three feasts that God commanded to be observed were to explain the coming Christ. (Col 2:17)

Col 2:17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.

The tabernacle is also to explain the true tabernacle, Christ. (Hebrews 8:5)

Hebrews 8:5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, See, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.

The sacrificial laws of the Old Testament also explain the coming Christ. (Heb 10:1)

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

788. Christ, who is the new covenant (Ex 24:4-8)

Heb 8:7-13, 9:18-26, 13:20, Mt 26:28, Mk 14:24, Lk 22:20, 1 Cor 11:25

In the Old Testament, God gave the Israelites a covenant to forgive their sins through a burnt offering. (Ex 24:4-8)

Ex 24:4 And Moses wrote all the words of the Lord, and rose up early in the morning, and builded an altar under the hill, and twelve pillars, according to the twelve tribes of Israel.

5 And he sent young men of the children of Israel, which offered burnt offerings, and sacrificed peace offerings of oxen unto the Lord.

6 And Moses took half of the blood, and put it in basons; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the altar.

7 And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the audience of the people: and they said, All that the Lord hath said will we do, and be obedient.

8 And Moses took the blood, and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant, which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words.

The covenant God gave to the Israelites was not perfect. Rather, God gave the first covenant to explain the new covenant. God's new covenant is to engrave God's word in our hearts. This was accomplished when we believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Hebrews 8:7-13, Acts 5:30-32)

Hebrews 8:7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

In order to save us, Jesus offered his body to God as a perfect and eternal sacrifice once and for all. (Heb 9:18-26)

Heb 9:18 Whereupon neither the first testament was dedicated without blood.

19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people,

20 Saying, This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you.

21 Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry.

22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

23 It was therefore necessary that the patterns of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these.

24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us:

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath

he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

Jesus is God's new covenant, the Christ, who made us alive with His blood. (Luke 22:20, 1 Corinthians 11:25, Hebrews 13:20, Matthew 26:28, Mark 14:24)

Luke 22:20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.

1 Corinthians 11:25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, this cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

Matthew 26:28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Mark 14:24 And he said unto them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.

789. Christ, who is the true temple (Ex 25:8-9)
Heb 8:5, Jn 2:20-21, Rev 21:22

God had Moses build the tabernacle. (Ex 25:8-9)

Ex 25:8 And let them make me a sanctuary; that I may dwell among them.

9 According to all that I shew thee, after the pattern of the tabernacle, and the pattern of all the instruments thereof, even so shall ye make it.

Moses saw the temple in heaven and built the tabernacle. (Hebrews 8:5)

Hebrews 8:5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, See, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.

Jesus is the true temple. (John 2:20-21, Rev 21:22)

John 2:20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?
21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

Rev 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

790. Christ, who is the true way to meet God (Ex 25:21-22)
Heb 9:1-5, 9:7-12, Jn 14:6, Lk 23:44-46,. Heb 10:20

In the Old Testament, God met the high priest in the Most Holy. (Ex 25:21-22, Heb 9:1-5)

Ex 25:21 And thou shalt put the mercy seat above upon the ark; and in the ark thou shalt put the testimony that I shall give thee.

22 And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims which are upon the ark of the testimony, of all things which I will give thee in commandment unto the children of Israel.

Heb 9:1 Then verily the first covenant had also ordinances of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary.

2 For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein was the candlestick, and the table, and the shewbread; which is called the sanctuary.

3 And after the second veil, the tabernacle which is called the Holiest of all;

4 Which had the golden censer, and the ark of the covenant overlaid round about with gold, wherein was the golden pot that had manna, and Aaron's rod that budded, and the tables of the covenant;

5 And over it the cherubims of glory shadowing the mercyseat; of which we cannot now speak particularly.

Jesus came as the true High Priest and offered His blood to God to offer eternal atonement once and for all. (Heb 9:7-12)

Heb 9:7 But into the second went the high priest alone once every year, not without blood, which he offered for himself, and for the errors of the people:

8 The Holy Ghost this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing:

9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

By dying on the cross, Jesus tore the veil, which is his body, and opened the way to meet God. (Luke 23:44-46, Hebrews 10:20, John 14:6)

Luke 23:44 And it was about the sixth hour, and there was a darkness over all the earth until the ninth hour.

45 And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst.

46 And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

Hebrews 10:20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

791. Christ, who is the bread of life (Ex 25:30)
Jn 6:35, 48, 1 Cor 11:25-26

In the Old Testament, God had the priests always have a showbread in the tabernacle. (Ex 25:30)

Ex 25:30 And thou shalt set upon the table shewbread before me alway.

Jesus is the bread of life. (John 6:35,48)

John 6:35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

48 I am that bread of life.

We need to know more deeply that Jesus is the Christ every day and proclaim that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Corinthians 11:25-26)

1 Corinthians 11:25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, this cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.

26 For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come.

792. Christ, who is the true light (Ex 25:31)
Jn 1:9-12, 8:12, Rev 21:23

In the Old Testament, God had the priests build a lighthouse in the tabernacle. (Ex 25:31)

Ex 25:31 And thou shalt make a candlestick of pure gold: of beaten work shall the candlestick be made: his shaft, and his branches, his bowls, his knops, and his flowers, shall be of the same.

Jesus is the true light, the Christ, who gives us life. (John 1:9-12, John 8:12, Revelation 21:23)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

Revelation 21:23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

793. Christ, who tore His body, the veil and opened the way to meet God (Ex 26:33)
Mt 27:51, Mk 15:37-38, Lk 23:45-46, Heb 9:2-3, 10:19-20, Jn 14:6

In the Old Testament, there were the Holy and Most Holy in the tabernacle that God had the priests build. There was a veil between the Holy and the Most Holy, and the high priest could enter the sanctuary through the veil and meet God. (Ex 26:33, Heb 9:2)

Ex 26:33 And thou shalt hang up the vail under the taches, that thou mayest bring in thither within the vail the ark of the testimony: and the vail shall divide unto you between the holy place and the most holy.

Heb 9:2 For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein was the candlestick, and the table, and the shewbread; which is called the sanctuary.

When Jesus died on the cross, the veil of the sanctuary was torn. (Matthew 27:51, Mark 15:37-38, Luke 23:45-46)

Matthew 27:51 And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent;

Mark 15:37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.
38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom.

Luke 23:45 And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst.
46 And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

Jesus tore his own body, the veil, to open the way for us to meet God. (Heb 10:19-20, John 14:6)

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,
20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

794. Christ, who has perfected us for all time by one offering (Ex 27:1)
Heb 9:9, 22, 10:14, 18

In the Old Testament, God had the Israelites build the tabernacle to offer sacrifices to God. (Ex 27:1)

Ex 27:1 And thou shalt make an altar of shittim wood, five cubits long, and five cubits broad; the altar shall be foursquare: and the height thereof shall be three cubits.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites were forgiven of their sins by shedding the blood of a burnt offering to God. (Heb 9:22)

Heb 9:22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

In the Old Testament, the sacrifice offered in the tabernacle is a parable to explain the true sacrifice of Christ who is to come. We cannot be made whole through the sacrifice of the Old Testament tabernacle. (Heb 9:9)

Heb 9:9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

Jesus completely and forever forgiven all our sins by offering Himself to God once for all. (Heb 10:14,18)

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.
18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

795. God clothed us with Christ. (Ex 28:2-3)
Gen 3:21, Rom 13:14, Gal 3:27

In the Old Testament, God clothed Aaron the priest with holy garments to make him glorified and beautiful. (Ex 28:2-3)

Ex 28:2 and thou shalt make holy garments for Aaron thy brother for glory and for beauty.
3 And thou shalt speak unto all that are wise hearted, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, that they may make Aaron's garments to consecrate him, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

In the Old Testament, God slaughtered animals and made skins for Adam and his wife, sinners. (Genesis 3:21)

Genesis 3:21 Unto Adam also and to his wife did the Lord God make coats of skins, and clothed them.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ put on the clothes of Christ. (Galatians 3:27, Romans 13:14)

Galatians 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

Romans 13:14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

796. The High Priest, Christ (Ex 28:29-30)

Heb 2:15-17, 3:1, 4:14-15, 5:5-10, 6:20, 7:11-28

God made Aaron the high priest to judge the children of Israel. (Ex 28:29-30)

Ex 28:29 And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart, when he goeth in unto the holy place, for a memorial before the Lord continually.

30 And thou shalt put in the breastplate of judgment the Urim and the Thummim; and they shall be upon Aaron's heart, when he goeth in before the Lord: and Aaron shall bear the judgment of the children of Israel upon his heart before the Lord continually.

Jesus is the true High Priest without sin. (Heb 4:14-15, Heb 3:1)

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.

Heb 3:1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;

Jesus is the Christ who faithfully did the work of the high priest to redeem us from our sins. (Heb 2:15-17)

Heb 2:15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

16 For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.

17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

God made Jesus, the Son of God, a priest in the order of Melchizedek. Although Jesus is the Son of God, He suffered to save us. (Heb 5:5-10, Heb 6:20)

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 6:20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

The law could not perfect those who came to God, but Jesus is not a Levitical priest, but the high priest who forever perfected those who came to God from the tribe of Judah. (Heb 7:11-28)

Heb 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar.

14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest,

16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life.

17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.

19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest:

21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)

22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

23 And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death:

24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood.

25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

26 For such an high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens;

27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

798. Christ, the innocent High Priest (Ex 28:36-37)
Heb 4:15, 1 Jn 3:5, 1 Pt 2:22-23, 2 Cor 5:21

In the Old Testament, God had the high priest put on the breastplate with the words “Holiness of the Lord” written on it. (Ex 28:36-37)

Ex 28:36 And thou shalt make a plate of pure gold, and grave upon it, like the engravings of a signet, Holiness To The Lord.

37 And thou shalt put it on a blue lace, that it may be upon the mitre; upon the forefront of the mitre it shall be.

Jesus is the sinless high priest. (Heb 4:15, 1 John 3:5, 1 Pet 2:22, 2 Cor 5:21)

Heb 4:15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.

1 John 3:5 and ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.

1 Pet 2:22 he did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth:

2 Cor 5:21 or he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

799. Christ, who took all of our sins. (Ex 29:10-11)

Lev 1:4, 4:4, Isa 53:11, Jn 1:29-31, 2 Cor 5:21, Gal 1:4, 1 Pt 2:24

In the Old Testament, the priest placed his hands on the head of the burnt offering so that the burnt offering would bear the sins of the people of Israel, and the burnt offering would die. (Ex 29:10-11, Lev 1:4, Lev 4:4)

Ex 29:10 And thou shalt cause a bullock to be brought before the tabernacle of the congregation: and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the bullock.

11 And thou shalt kill the bullock before the Lord, by the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

Lev 1:4 And he shall put his hand upon the head of the burnt offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him.

Lev 4:4 And he shall bring the bullock unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the Lord; and shall lay his hand upon the bullock's head, and kill the bullock before the Lord.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would die to bear our sins. (Isa 53:11)

Isa 53:11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world. (John 1:29-31)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

30 This is he of whom I said, After me cometh a man which is preferred before me: for he was before me.

31 And I knew him not: but that he should be made manifest to Israel, therefore am I come baptizing with water.

God made the sinless Jesus sin to die for us. (2 Corinthians 5:21, Gal 1:4, 1 Peter 2:24)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Gal 1:4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father:

1 Peter 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

800. Christ as a sin offering (Ex 29:10-14)

Lev 4:11-12, Heb 7:27, Heb 13:11-12, 9:11-12, 10:1,14

In the Old Testament, the high priests offered daily sacrifices to God for the forgiveness of the sins of the people. (Ex 29:10-14; Lev 4:11)

Ex 29:10 And thou shalt cause a bullock to be brought before the tabernacle of the congregation: and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the bullock.

11 And thou shalt kill the bullock before the Lord, by the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

12 And thou shalt take of the blood of the bullock, and put it upon the horns of the altar with thy finger, and pour all the blood beside the bottom of the altar.

13 And thou shalt take all the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul that is above the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, and burn them upon the altar.

14 But the flesh of the bullock, and his skin, and his dung, shalt thou burn with fire without the camp: it is a sin offering.

Lev 4:11 And the skin of the bullock, and all his flesh, with his head, and with his legs, and his inwards, and his dung,

Jesus offered Himself to God once for all, so that the sins of those who believed in Him as the Christ were completely and forever forgiven by God (Hebrews 7:27, Heb 13:11-12, Heb 9:11-12, Heb 10:1,14)

Hebrews 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

Heb 13:11 For the bodies of those beasts, whose blood is brought into the sanctuary by the high priest for sin, are burned without the camp.

12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

801. Christ, who is the sacrifice of the peace offering (Ex 29:15-18)

1 Pt 1:2, Rev 7:14, Col 1:20, Rom 3:25, Rom 5:10, 2 Cor 5:18-19, Eph 2:16, Col 1:22, 1 Jn 2:2, 1 Jn 4:10

In the Old Testament, God had the Israelites slaughter a ram to offer it as a peace offering to God. (Ex 29:15-18)

Ex 29:15 Thou shalt also take one ram; and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the ram.

16 And thou shalt slay the ram, and thou shalt take his blood, and sprinkle it round about upon the altar.

17 And thou shalt cut the ram in pieces, and wash the inwards of him, and his legs, and put them unto his pieces, and unto his head.

18 And thou shalt burn the whole ram upon the altar: it is a burnt offering unto the Lord: it is a sweet savour, an offering made by fire unto the Lord.

God made Jesus the propitiation sacrifice to forgive our sins and to be reconciled to us. (Romans 3:25, Romans 5:10, Ephesians 2:16, Col 1:22, 1 John 2:2, 1 John 4:10)

Romans 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

Romans 5:10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

Ephesians 2:16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

Col 1:22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unproveable in his sight:

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

1 John 4:10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Also, because Jesus died on the cross, all things were reconciled to God. (Col 1:20)

Col 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

And since we have been reconciled to God through Christ, we have the office of reconciling people to God. In other words, you can reconcile people to God by preaching Jesus as the Christ. (2 Corinthians 5:18-19)

2 Corinthians 5:18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

802. Christ as the burnt offering (Ex 29:42)
Phil 2:8, Jn 18:11, Heb 10:7-10

In the Old Testament, God had the Israelites offer burnt offerings in the tabernacle, and there he met them. (Ex 29:42)

Ex 29:42 This shall be a continual burnt offering throughout your generations at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the Lord: where I will meet you, to speak there unto thee.

In order to save us, Jesus obeyed God even to the point of death and became a burnt offering. (Phil 2:8, John 18:11, Hebrews 10:7-10)

Phil 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

John 18:11 Then said Jesus unto Peter, Put up thy sword into the sheath: the cup which my Father hath given me, shall I not drink it?

Hebrews 10:7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.

8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

803. Christ intercedes for us. (Ex 30:1)
Rom 8:34, Heb 7:25, 1 Jn 2:1

In the Old Testament, God accepted the wishes of the people of Israel through the altar of incense. (Ex 30:1)

Ex 30:1 And thou shalt make an altar to burn incense upon: of shittim wood shalt thou make it.

Now Jesus pleads with God for us. (Rom 8:34, Hebrews 7:25, 1 John 2:1)

Rom 8:34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

Hebrews 7:25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

804. Christ as our atonement place (Ex 30:6)
Jn 14:6, Rom 3:25, 1 Jn 4:10

In the Old Testament, God met the Israelites at the mercy seat of the tabernacle. (Ex 30:6)

Ex 30:6 And thou shalt put it before the vail that is by the ark of the testimony, before the mercy seat that is over the testimony, where I will meet with thee.

Now, Jesus is the way to meet God. (John 14:6)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus justified us by offering Himself as a propitiation to God for our sins. (Rom 3:25, 1 John 4:10)

Rom 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

1 John 4:10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

805. Christ, who is the true priest (Ex 30:30)
Ex 40:13,. Isa 61:1, Lk 4:16-21

In the Old Testament, God appointed priests by anointing them with oil, and through those priests, they were entrusted with the task of sacrificing the sins of the people of Israel. (Ex 30:30, Ex 40:13)

Ex 30:30 And thou shalt anoint Aaron and his sons, and consecrate them, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office.

Ex 40:13 And thou shalt put upon Aaron the holy garments, and anoint him, and sanctify him; that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send the anointed one, Christ, to save man. (Isa 61:1)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Jesus is the very Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Luke 4:16-21)

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

806. Christ, who is Lord of the Sabbath (Ex 31:13)

Mt 12:8, Mk 2:28, Mk 1:21, 6:2, Lk 4:16,31, Lk 6:5,6,9, Lk 13:10, 15-16, Lk 14:3-5

In the Old Testament, God gave the people of Israel the Sabbath. (Ex 31:13)

Ex 31:13 Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you.

Jesus is the Lord of the Sabbath. (Mt 12:8, Mark 2:28)

Mt 12:8 For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day.

Mark 2:28 Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

Jesus went to the synagogue on the Sabbath, and he opened the Old Testament and revealed that he was the Christ. (Mark 1:21, Mark 6:2, Luke 4:16,31)

Mark 1:21 And they went into Capernaum; and straightway on the sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and taught.

Mark 6:2 And when the sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing him were astonished, saying, From whence hath this man these things? and what wisdom is this which is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands?

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

31 And came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and taught them on the sabbath days.

On the Sabbath day Jesus proclaimed the gospel that He was the Christ and also saved people's lives. (Luke 6:5-6,9, Luke 13:10,15-16, Luke 14:3-5)

Luke 6:5 And he said unto them, That the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

6 And it came to pass also on another sabbath, that he entered into the synagogue and taught: and there was a man whose right hand was withered.

9 Then said Jesus unto them, I will ask you one thing; Is it lawful on the sabbath days to do good, or to do evil? to save life, or to destroy it?

Luke 13:10 And he was teaching in one of the synagogues on the sabbath.

15 The Lord then answered him, and said, Thou hypocrite, doth not each one of you on the sabbath loose his ox or his ass from the stall, and lead him away to watering?

16 And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound, lo, these eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day?

Luke 14:3 And Jesus answering spake unto the lawyers and Pharisees, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the sabbath day?

4 And they held their peace. And he took him, and healed him, and let him go;

5 And answered them, saying, Which of you shall have an ass or an ox fallen into a pit, and will not straightway pull him out on the sabbath day?

807. Christ, the True Mediator (Ex 32:31-32)

Heb 8:6, 9:15, 1 Jn 2:1, 1 Tim 2:5

In the Old Testament, Moses asked God to forgive the Israelites who had sinned. At this time, Moses became the mediator between God and the people of Israel. (Ex 32:31-32)

Ex 32:31 And Moses returned unto the Lord, and said, Oh, this people have sinned a great sin, and have made them gods of gold.

32 Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin--; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written.

Jesus is the mediator of the better covenant that God has made. (Hebrews 8:6, Heb 9:15)

Hebrews 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

Heb 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

When those who believe in Jesus as the Christ sin, Jesus becomes an advocate to God. (1 John 2:1)

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

The only mediator between God and man is Christ Jesus. (1 Tim 2:5, John 14:6)

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

809. Christ, the only way to meet God (Ex 33:18-23)
Rom 3:23, 1 Tim 6:16, Jn 1:18, 14:6

Even Moses could not meet God directly. (Ex 33:18-23)

Ex 33:18 And he said, I beseech thee, shew me thy glory.

19 And he said, I will make all my goodness pass before thee, and I will proclaim the name of the Lord before thee; and will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will shew mercy on whom I will shew mercy.

20 And he said, Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live.

21 And the Lord said, Behold, there is a place by me, and thou shalt stand upon a rock:

22 And it shall come to pass, while my glory passeth by, that I will put thee in a clift of the rock, and will cover thee with my hand while I pass by:

23 And I will take away mine hand, and thou shalt see my back parts: but my face shall not be seen.

Because of the sin of our ancestor Adam, all people are sinners and cannot meet God. (Romans 5:12,14, 1 Corinthians 15:22, Romans 3:23)

Romans 5:12 Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:

14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.

1 Corinthians 15:22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

No one has ever seen God. (1 Timothy 6:16)

1 Timothy 6:16 Who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto; whom no man hath seen, nor can see: to whom be honour and power everlasting. Amen.

Jesus is the only way to meet God. (John 14:6, John 1:18)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

John 1:18 No man hath seen God at any time, the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

810. God, who manifests Himself as God, Jesus, who manifests Himself as the Christ (Ex 34:5-6)
Ex 3:14, 20:2, Mt 16:20-21, Mt 26:63-64, Mk 14:61-62, Lk 22:67-70, Jn 4:25-26, Jn 20:31

In the Old Testament, God revealed Himself as God. (Ex 34:5-6, Ex 3:14, Ex 20:2)

Ex 34:5 And the Lord descended in the cloud, and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the Lord.
6 And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious,
longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth,

Ex 3:14 And God said unto Moses, I Am That I Am: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I
Am hath sent me unto you.

Ex 20:2 I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Jesus revealed Himself as the Christ to His disciples and people. (Matthew 16:20-21, Mark 26:63-64. Mark 14:61-
62. Luke 22:67-70, John 4:25-26)

Matthew 16:20 Then charged he his disciples that they should tell no man that he was Jesus the Christ.
21 From that time forth began Jesus to shew unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many
things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.

Mt 26:63 But Jesus held his peace, And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God,
that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God.
64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on
the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

Mark 14:61 But he held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him, Art
thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed?
62 And Jesus said, I am: and ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds
of heaven.

Luke 22:67 Art thou the Christ? tell us. And he said unto them, If I tell you, ye will not believe:
68 And if I also ask you, ye will not answer me, nor let me go.
69 Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of God.
70 Then said they all, Art thou then the Son of God? And he said unto them, Ye say that I am.

John 4:25 The woman saith unto him, I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will
tell us all things.
26 Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we have life. (John 20:31)

John 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye
might have life through his name.

811. A jealous God (Ex 34:14)
1 Cor 16:22, Gal 1:8-9,

God is a jealous God. So we must not bow down to other gods. (Ex 34:14)

Ex 34:14 For thou shalt worship no other god: for the Lord, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God:

Those who do not love Jesus will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

Cursed are those who preach any gospel other than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Gal 1:8-9)

Gal 1:8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

812. Moses' veil stripped in Christ (Ex 34:29-33)
2 Cor 3:13-18, Mt 17:4,8 , Mt 5:17, Rom 10:4

When Moses came down from Mount Sinai after receiving the word of God, Moses' face lit up. Moses covered his face with a towel so that the children of Israel could not see him. (Ex 34:29-32)

Ex 34:29 And it came to pass, when Moses came down from mount Sinai with the two tables of testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses wist not that the skin of his face shone while he talked with him.

30 And when Aaron and all the children of Israel saw Moses, behold, the skin of his face shone; and they were afraid to come nigh him.

31 And Moses called unto them; and Aaron and all the rulers of the congregation returned unto him: and Moses talked with them.

32 And afterward all the children of Israel came nigh: and he gave them in commandment all that the Lord had spoken with him in mount Sinai.

The Israelites still pay attention to Moses when they read the Old Testament. When we read the Old Testament, we should pay attention to Christ. (2 Corinthians 3:13-18)

2 Corinthians 3:13 And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not stedfastly look to the end of that which is abolished:

14 But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same vail untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.

15 But even unto this day, when Moses is read, the vail is upon their heart.

16 Nevertheless when it shall turn to the Lord, the vail shall be taken away.

17 Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.

18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

The disciples were going to build a tent for Jesus, Moses, and Elijah. But when they looked up, only Jesus was left. (Mt 17:4,8)

Mt 17:4 Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.

8 And when they had lifted up their eyes, they saw no man, save Jesus only.

All Old Testament laws were made perfect in Christ. (Matthew 5:17, Romans 10:4)

Matthew 5:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.

Romans 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

813. God's glory, Christ (Ex 40:34-35)

Mk 9:5-8, Mt 17:4-8, Lk 9:33-36, Mk 13:26, Jn 1:14, Jn 12:23, Jn 12:39-41, Jn 13:32

In the Old Testament, the tabernacle was filled with the glory of God. (Ex 40:34-35)

Ex 40:34 Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, and the glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle.

35 And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation, because the cloud abode thereon, and the glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah foretold and prophesied the glory of Christ. (John 12:39-41)

John 12:39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,

40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.

41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

Now the glory of God comes only to Christ Jesus. (Mark 9:5-8, Matthew 17:4-8, Luke 9:34-37)

Mark 9:5 And Peter answered and said to Jesus, Master, it is good for us to be here: and let us make three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.

6 For he wist not what to say; for they were sore afraid.

7 And there was a cloud that overshadowed them: and a voice came out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: hear him.

8 And suddenly, when they had looked round about, they saw no man any more, save Jesus only with themselves.

Matthew 17:4 Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.

5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

6 And when the disciples heard it, they fell on their face, and were sore afraid.

7 And Jesus came and touched them, and said, Arise, and be not afraid.

8 And when they had lifted up their eyes, they saw no man, save Jesus only.

Luke 9:34 While he thus spake, there came a cloud, and overshadowed them: and they feared as they entered into the cloud.

35 And there came a voice out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: hear him.

36 And when the voice was past, Jesus was found alone. And they kept it close, and told no man in those days any of those things which they had seen.

37 And it came to pass, that on the next day, when they were come down from the hill, much people met him.

Jesus is the glory of God. (John 1:14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jesus glorified God and received glory from God by dying on the cross for the forgiveness of our sins. (John 12:23, John 13:31-32)

John 12:23 And Jesus answered them, saying, The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified.

John 13:31 Therefore, when he was gone out, Jesus said, Now is the Son of man glorified, and God is glorified in him.

32 If God be glorified in him, God shall also glorify him in himself, and shall straightway glorify him.

Jesus, the Christ, will come again with great power and glory. (Mark 13:26)

Mark 13:26 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.

- 814. Christ, who takes away all our sins (Lev 1:3-4)
- 815. Christ, who is the true offering for sin (Lev 1:4)
- 816. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the bunt offering to save us (Lev 1:9)
- 817. Christ who gave everything for us (Lev 1:9)
- 818. God speaks through Christ. (Lev 1:1)
- 819. Christ who is an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet-smelling aroma (Lev 2:1-2)
- 820. Christ, who is the salt of the covenant of your God (Lev 2:13)
- 821. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the peace offering (Lev 3:1)
- 822. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the sin offering to save us (Lev 4:4-12)
- 823. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the guilt offering to save us (Lev 5:15)
- 824. We must get to know Christ every day. (Lev 6:9, 12)
- 825. Christ finished all sacrifices at once (Lev 9:2-6)
- 826. Christ, the sacrifice that pleases God (Lev 9:22-24)
- 827. All sacrifices not through Christ are cursed. (Lev 10:1-2)
- 828. Do everything for Christ and for evangelism.(Lev 11:2-4)
- 829. Christ who sanctified us (Lev 11:45)
- 830. Christ who gave us circumcision of the heart (Lev 12:3)
- 831. Christ healed leprosy. (Lev 14:2)
- 832. Christ who accomplished the eternal Atonement at once (Lev 16:27-30)
- 833. Christ who suffered outside the gate to sanctify us (Lev 16:10, 21-22)
- 834. Christ, who forgave our sins with His blood (Lev 17:11)
- 835. Christ who forgave an adulterous woman (Lev 20:10)
- 836. Christ who loved even enemies (Lev 19:18)
- 837. Jesus reveals that He is the Christ by opening the eyes of the blind (Lev 21:17-18)
- 838. Christ who is a lamb unblemished and spotless (Lev 22:18-20)
- 839. Christ who sanctified us (Lev 22:32)

- 840. Christ became the Passover Lamb (Lev 23:5)
- 841. Christ who is truly unleavened bread (Lev 23:6)
- 842. Christ, who is the first fruits of the resurrection (Lev 23:10)
- 843. The Holy Spirit came to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ (Pentecost, Lev 23:16)
- 844. Christ will descend from heaven with the trumpet of God (Lev 23:24)
- 845. Christ, who accomplished the perfect atonement (The Day of Atonement) (Lev 23:27)
- 846. When Christ comes again, the eternal feast of the tabernacle is observed. (Lev 23:34)
- 847. Christ, who is the bread of life (Lev 24:8-9)
- 848. Christ, who is the true lamp (Lev 24:3)
- 849. Christ came as the fulfiller of the jubilee (Lev 25:10)
- 850. The law that leads us to Christ (Lev 26:46)

814. Christ, who takes away all our sins (Lev 1:3-4)
Jn 1:29, Isa 53:11, 2 Cor 5:21, Gal 1:4, 1 Pt 2:24, 1 Jn 2:2

In the Old Testament, when the priests laid their hands on the head of the burnt offering and offered the burnt offering as a sacrifice to God, the sins of the people of Israel were forgiven. (Lev 1:3-4)

Lev 1:3 If his offering be a burnt sacrifice of the herd, let him offer a male without blemish: he shall offer it of his own voluntary will at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the Lord.
4 And he shall put his hand upon the head of the burnt offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the coming Christ would bear our sins in order to forgive our sins. (Isa 53:11)

Isa 53:11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who took away our sins. (John 1:29)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Jesus took our sins and died on the cross to save us. (2 Corinthians 5:21, Gal 1:4, 1 Peter 2:24, 1 John 2:2)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Gal 1:4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father:

1 Peter 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

815. Christ, who is the true offering for sin (Lev 1:4)
Heb 10:1-4, 9:12, 10:10-14

In the Old Testament, the priest placed his hands on the head of a ram and made the ram a sin offering to God. (Lev 1:4)

Lev 1:4 And he shall put his hand upon the head of the burnt offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him.

In the Old Testament, the annual burnt offerings offered to God cannot make people whole. (Heb 10:1-4)

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

2 For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins.

3 But in those sacrifices there is a remembrance again made of sins every year.

4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins.

Jesus made eternal atonement for us once for all with His own blood. (Hebrews 9:12, Heb 10:10-14)

Hebrews 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Heb 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:

12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

816. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the bunt offering to save us (Lev 1:9)
Lev 1:13, 17, Lev 1:4-9, Jn 1:29, 36, 2 Cor 5:21, Mt 26:28, Heb 9:12, Eph 5:2

In the Old Testament, priests burned the sacrifices of burnt offerings to offer fire to God. (Lev 1:9, 13, 17)

Lev 1:9 But his inwards and his legs shall he wash in water: and the priest shall burn all on the altar, to be a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the Lord.

13 But he shall wash the inwards and the legs with water: and the priest shall bring it all, and burn it upon the altar: it is a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the Lord.

17 And he shall cleave it with the wings thereof, but shall not divide it asunder: and the priest shall burn it upon the altar, upon the wood that is upon the fire: it is a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the Lord.

In the Old Testament, when the priest laid his hands on the head of the burnt offering, the sins of the people of Israel were imputed to the burnt offering. The priest burned the burnt offering and made a sacrifice to God. (Lev 1:4-9)

Lev 1:4 And he shall put his hand upon the head of the burnt offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him.

5 And he shall kill the bullock before the Lord: and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall bring the blood, and sprinkle the blood round about upon the altar that is by the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

6 And he shall flay the burnt offering, and cut it into his pieces.

7 And the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire upon the altar, and lay the wood in order upon the fire:

8 And the priests, Aaron's sons, shall lay the parts, the head, and the fat, in order upon the wood that is on the fire which is upon the altar:

9 But his inwards and his legs shall he wash in water: and the priest shall burn all on the altar, to be a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the Lord.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who took away the sins of the world. (John 1:29,36)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

Jesus took our sins and became a sacrifice to God on the cross to save us. (2 Corinthians 5:21, Matthew 26:28, Hebrews 9:12, Ephesians 5:2)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Matthew 26:28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Hebrews 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Ephesians 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.

817. Christ who gave everything for us (Lev 1:9)

Isa 53:4-10, Mt 27:31, Mk 15:20, Jn 19:17, Mt 27:45-46, Mk 15:33-34, Mt 27:50, Mk 15:37, Lk 23:46, Jn 19:30, Jn 19:34

In the Old Testament, every part of the burnt offering was offered to God. (Lev1:9)

Lev1:9 But his inwards and his legs shall he wash in water: and the priest shall burn all on the altar, to be a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the Lord.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the coming Christ would suffer and die for us. (Isa 53:4-10)

Isa 53:4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Jesus suffered for us. (Matthew 27:31, Mark 15:20, John 19:17)

Matthew 27:31 And after that they had mocked him, they took the robe off from him, and put his own raiment on him, and led him away to crucify him.

Mark 15:20 And when they had mocked him, they took off the purple from him, and put his own clothes on him, and led him out to crucify him.

John 19:17 And he bearing his cross went forth into a place called the place of a skull, which is called in the Hebrew Golgotha:

Jesus took our sins and died on the cross to save us. (Matthew 27:45-46, Mark 15:33-34, Mark 27:50, Mark 15:37, Luke 23:46, John 19:30)

Matthew 27:45 Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour.

46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

Mark 15:33 And when the sixth hour was come, there was darkness over the whole land until the ninth hour.

34 And at the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani? which is, being interpreted, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

Mt 27:50 Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

Mark 15:37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.

Luke 23:46 And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and

having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Jesus shed His water and blood for us. (John 19:34)

John 19:34 But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water.

818. God speaks through Christ. (Lev 1:1)

Heb 1:1-2, Jn 1:14, Jn 1:18, 14:9, Mt 11:27, Acts 3:20, 22, 1 Pt 1:20

In the Old Testament, God spoke to the people of Israel through Moses and the prophets. (Le v 1:1)

Le v 1:1 And the Lord called unto Moses, and spake unto him out of the tabernacle of the congregation, saying,

Now God speaks to us through the Son of God. (Heb 1:1-2)

Heb 1:1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,
2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Jesus is the Word of God who came in the form of the flesh. (John 1:14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jesus revealed God through Himself. (John 1:18, John 14:9, Matthew 11:27)

John 1:18 No man hath seen God at any time, the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

John 14:9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father?

Matthew 11:27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

Jesus is the Christ, the prophet like Moses that God promised to send. (Acts 3:20,22)

Acts 3:20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

Jesus was made known from before the foundation of the world, and has appeared for us in these last days. (1 Peter 1:20)

1 Peter 1:20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,

819. Christ who is an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet-smelling aroma (Lev 2:1-2) Eph 5:2

In the Old Testament, the Israelites offered grain offerings as fragrant offerings to God. (Lev 2:1-2)

Lev 2:1 And when any will offer a meat offering unto the Lord, his offering shall be of fine flour; and he shall pour oil upon it, and put frankincense thereon:

2 And he shall bring it to Aaron's sons the priests: and he shall take thereout his handful of the flour thereof, and of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof; and the priest shall burn the memorial of it upon the altar, to be an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the Lord:

Jesus offered Himself to God for us as a fragrant sacrifice. (Eph 5:2)

Eph 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.

820. Christ, who is the salt of the covenant of your God (Lev 2:13)
Num 18:19, 2 Chr 13:5, Gen 15:9-10, 17, Gen 22:17-18, Gal 3:16

In the Old Testament, God commanded that all grain offerings be salted. Salt signifies that God's covenant does not change. (Lev 2:13, Num 18:19)

Lev 2:13 And every oblation of thy meat offering shalt thou season with salt; neither shalt thou suffer the salt of the covenant of thy God to be lacking from thy meat offering: with all thine offerings thou shalt offer salt.

Num 18:19 All the heave offerings of the holy things, which the children of Israel offer unto the Lord, have I given thee, and thy sons and thy daughters with thee, by a statute for ever: it is a covenant of salt for ever before the Lord unto thee and to thy seed with thee.

God gave the kingdom of Israel to David and his descendants through a covenant of salt. (2 Chronicles 13:5)

2 Chronicles 13:5 Ought ye not to know that the Lord God of Israel gave the kingdom over Israel to David for ever, even to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt?

God has promised to bless us, and he has sworn to himself that he will keep that promise. (Gen 15:9, 17)

Gen 15:9 And he said unto him, Take me an heifer of three years old, and a she goat of three years old, and a ram of three years old, and a turtledove, and a young pigeon.

17 And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

In the Old Testament, God promised to send us Christ to bless us and to destroy our enemies through him. (Gen 22:17-18)

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

The descendant of Abraham that God promised to send to bless us is Jesus Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

821. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the peace offering (Lev 3:1)
Mt 26:26-28, Mk 14:22-24, Lk 22:19-20, Col 1:20, Rom 3:25, 5:10

In the Old Testament, an ox without blemish was offered as a peace offering to God. (Lev 3:1)

Lev 3:1 And if his oblation be a sacrifice of peace offering, if he offer it of the herd; whether it be a male or female, he shall offer it without blemish before the Lord.

Jesus shed His blood and died on the cross to reconcile us to God.

Matthew 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body.

27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it;

28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Mark 14:22 And as they did eat, Jesus took bread, and blessed, and brake it, and gave to them, and said, Take, eat: this is my body.

23 And he took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave it to them: and they all drank of it.

24 And he said unto them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.

Luke 22:19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.

20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.

Col 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

Romans 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

Romans 5:10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

822. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the sin offering to save us (Lev 4:4-12)
Heb 13:11-12, Heb 10:14

In the Old Testament, priests laid their hands on the head of a bull and killed the bull and offered it as a sin offering to God. (Le 4:4-12)

Lev 4:4 And he shall bring the bullock unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the Lord; and shall lay his hand upon the bullock's head, and kill the bullock before the Lord.

5 And the priest that is anointed shall take of the bullock's blood, and bring it to the tabernacle of the congregation:

6 And the priest shall dip his finger in the blood, and sprinkle of the blood seven times before the Lord, before the vail of the sanctuary.

7 And the priest shall put some of the blood upon the horns of the altar of sweet incense before the Lord, which is in the tabernacle of the congregation; and shall pour all the blood of the bullock at the bottom of the altar of the burnt offering, which is at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

8 And he shall take off from it all the fat of the bullock for the sin offering; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards,

9 And the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away,

10 As it was taken off from the bullock of the sacrifice of peace offerings: and the priest shall burn them upon the altar of the burnt offering.

11 And the skin of the bullock, and all his flesh, with his head, and with his legs, and his inwards, and his dung,

12 Even the whole bullock shall he carry forth without the camp unto a clean place, where the ashes are poured out, and burn him on the wood with fire: where the ashes are poured out shall he be burnt.

Jesus died as a sin offering to God to save us. (Hebrews 13:11-12, Heb 10:14)

Hebrews 13:11 For the bodies of those beasts, whose blood is brought into the sanctuary by the high priest for sin, are burned without the camp.

12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

823. Christ, who became the sacrifice of the guilt offering to save us (Lev 5:15)
Isa 53:5,10, Jn 1:29, Heb 9:26

In the Old Testament, the Israelites offered trespass offerings to God in order to have their sins forgiven. (Lev 5:15)

Lev 5:15 If a soul commit a trespass, and sin through ignorance, in the holy things of the Lord; then he shall bring for his trespass unto the Lord a ram without blemish out of the flocks, with thy estimation by shekels of silver, after the shekel of the sanctuary, for a trespass offering.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would become a trespass offering to God in order to forgive our transgressions. (Isa 53:5,10)

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who took away our sins. (John 1:29)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Jesus offered himself as a sacrifice to God once for the forgiveness of our sins. (Heb 9:26)

Heb 9:26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

824. We must get to know Christ every day. (Lev 6:9, 12)
Ex 29:42, Num 28:3,6, Deut 8:3, Jn 6:51, Heb 13:15

God commanded the priests to keep the fire on the altar of burnt offerings unquenched. (Lev 6:9,12)

Lev 6:9 Command Aaron and his sons, saying, This is the law of the burnt offering: It is the burnt offering, because of the burning upon the altar all night unto the morning, and the fire of the altar shall be burning in it.
12 And the fire upon the altar shall be burning in it; it shall not be put out: and the priest shall burn wood on it every morning, and lay the burnt offering in order upon it; and he shall burn thereon the fat of the peace offerings.

God commanded the Israelites to offer burnt offerings every day. (Ex 29:42, Num 28:3,6)

Ex 29:42 This shall be a continual burnt offering throughout your generations at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the Lord: where I will meet you, to speak there unto thee.

Num 28:3 And thou shalt say unto them, This is the offering made by fire which ye shall offer unto the Lord; two lambs of the first year without spot day by day, for a continual burnt offering.
6 It is a continual burnt offering, which was ordained in mount Sinai for a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto the Lord.

God made the Israelites know that they should live by the word of God every day, just as the people of Israel ate manna every day. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus is the bread of life. We need to know deeply that Jesus is the Christ every day. (John 6:51, 2 Peter 3:18)

John 6:51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

2 Peter 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

825. Christ finished all sacrifices at once (Lev 9:2-6)
Heb 9:11-12, 23-28, 10:1-14, 18

In the Old Testament, the Israelites offered sin offerings to God year after year and every day. (Lev 9:2-6)

Lev 9:2 And he said unto Aaron, Take thee a young calf for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering, without blemish, and offer them before the Lord.
3 And unto the children of Israel thou shalt speak, saying, Take ye a kid of the goats for a sin offering; and a calf and a lamb, both of the first year, without blemish, for a burnt offering;
4 Also a bullock and a ram for peace offerings, to sacrifice before the Lord; and a meat offering mingled with oil: for to day the Lord will appear unto you.
5 And they brought that which Moses commanded before the tabernacle of the congregation: and all the congregation drew near and stood before the Lord.
6 And Moses said, This is the thing which the Lord commanded that ye should do: and the glory of the Lord shall appear unto you.

Jesus, the Christ, accomplished eternal redemption once for all by His own blood. (Heb 9:11-12, 23-28, Heb 10:1-18)

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;
12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.
23 It was therefore necessary that the patterns of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these.
24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us:
25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;
26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.
27 And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:
28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.
2 For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins.
3 But in those sacrifices there is a remembrance again made of sins every year.
4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins.
5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:
6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure.
7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.
8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;
9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.
10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.
11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:
12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;
13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

15 Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,

16 This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;

17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.

18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

826. Christ, the sacrifice that pleases God (Lev 9:22-24)
Jn 1:29, Mt 3:16-17, Jn 12:23, 27-28

In the Old Testament, the people of Israel offered sin offerings, burnt offerings, and peace offerings to God to please God. (Lev 9:22-24)

Lev 9:22 And Aaron lifted up his hand toward the people, and blessed them, and came down from offering of the sin offering, and the burnt offering, and peace offerings.

23 And Moses and Aaron went into the tabernacle of the congregation, and came out, and blessed the people: and the glory of the Lord appeared unto all the people.

24 And there came a fire out from before the Lord, and consumed upon the altar the burnt offering and the fat: which when all the people saw, they shouted, and fell on their faces.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who took away the sin of the world. (John 1:29)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Jesus pleased God by dying on the cross for us as the Son of God. (Matthew 3:16-17, John 12:23, 27-28)

Matthew 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

John 12:23 And Jesus answered them, saying, The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified.

27 Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour.

28 Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.

827. All sacrifices not through Christ are cursed. (Lev 10:1-2)
Gal 1:6-9, 1 Cor 16:22, 2 Cor 11:4, Jn 14:6, Acts 4:12, 1 Cor 3:11, 1 Tim 1:3

In the Old Testament, Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu burned incense before God with other fires that God had not commanded and died. (Lev 10:1-2)

Lev 10:1 And Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took either of them his censer, and put fire therein, and put incense thereon, and offered strange fire before the Lord, which he commanded them not.
2 And there went out fire from the Lord, and devoured them, and they died before the Lord.

If you preach any other gospel than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, you will be cursed. (Gal 1:6-9)

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:
7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.
8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.
9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

If any man does not love Christ, he will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

We must be careful not to receive any other gospel than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Corinthians 11:4, 1 Timothy 1:3)

2 Corinthians 11:4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.

1 Timothy 1:3 As I besought thee to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that thou mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine,

Jesus is the only way to meet God. (John 14:6, Acts 4:12, 1 Corinthians 3:11)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

1 Corinthians 3:11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

828. Do everything for Christ and for evangelism.(Lev 11:2-4)
Heb 9:9-10, Acts 10:10-20, 1 Tim 4:3-5, Rom 14:6, 1 Cor 10:31-33

In the Old Testament, God made a distinction between what the Israelites could and should not eat. (Lev 11:2-4)

Lev 11:2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, These are the beasts which ye shall eat among all the beasts that are on the earth.

3 Whatsoever parteth the hoof, and is clovenfooted, and cheweth the cud, among the beasts, that shall ye eat.

4 Nevertheless these shall ye not eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that divide the hoof: as the camel, because he cheweth the cud, but divideth not the hoof; he is unclean unto you.

The Old Testament rules of eating are only valid until Christ comes. (Heb 9:9-10)

Heb 9:9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

In a vision, Peter is told to eat what the Old Testament says not to eat. After all, this sound means evangelization of the Gentiles. (Acts 10:10-20)

Acts 10:10 And he became very hungry, and would have eaten: but while they made ready, he fell into a trance,

11 And saw heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending upon him, as it had been a great sheet knit at the four corners, and let down to the earth:

12 Wherein were all manner of fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air.

13 And there came a voice to him, Rise, Peter; kill, and eat.

14 But Peter said, Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten any thing that is common or unclean.

15 And the voice spake unto him again the second time, What God hath cleansed, that call not thou common.

16 This was done thrice: and the vessel was received up again into heaven.

17 Now while Peter doubted in himself what this vision which he had seen should mean, behold, the men which were sent from Cornelius had made enquiry for Simon's house, and stood before the gate,

18 And called, and asked whether Simon, which was surnamed Peter, were lodged there.

19 While Peter thought on the vision, the Spirit said unto him, Behold, three men seek thee.

20 Arise therefore, and get thee down, and go with them, doubting nothing: for I have sent them.

We must eat and drink and do everything for Christ and evangelism. (1 Timothy 4:3-5, Romans 14:6, 1 Corinthians 10:31-33)

1 Timothy 4:3 Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth.

4 For every creature of God is good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving:

5 For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

Romans 14:6 He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord; and he that regardeth not the day, to the Lord he doth not regard it. He that eateth, eateth to the Lord, for he giveth God thanks; and he that eateth not, to the Lord he eateth not, and giveth God thanks.

1 Corinthians 10:31 Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

32 Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the church of God:

33 Even as I please all men in all things, not seeking mine own profit, but the profit of many, that they may be saved.

829. Christ who sanctified us (Lev 11:45)

Col 1:21-22, 2 Cor 5:17, Gal 5:24, Jn 17:17, Acts 26:18, Rom 15:16, 1 Cor 6:11, Heb 2:11, Heb 10:10

In the Old Testament, the holy God told the Israelites to become holy. (Lev 11:45)

Lev 11:45 For I am the Lord that bringeth you up out of the land of Egypt, to be your God: ye shall therefore be holy, for I am holy.

Christ Jesus sanctified us by dying on the cross for us. (Col 1:21-22, 2 Corinthians 5:17, Gal 5:24, John 17:17)

Col 1:21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled

22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unproveable in his sight:

2 Corinthians 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

Gal 5:24 And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.

John 17:17 Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we are made holy. (Acts 26:18, Romans 15:16, 1 Corinthians 6:11, Hebrews 2:11, Hebrews 10:10)

Acts 26:18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

Romans 15:16 That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.

1 Corinthians 6:11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.

Hebrews 2:11 For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren,

Hebrews 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

830. Christ who gave us circumcision of the heart (Lev 12:3)
Acts 15:1-2, 6-11, Gal 5:2-6, 11, Rom 2:28-29, Col 2:11-12, Rom 6:3-5

God had the Israelites circumcise their children on the eighth day after giving birth. (Lev 12:3)

Lev 12:3 And in the eighth day the flesh of his foreskin shall be circumcised.

The Israelites thought that they had to be circumcised to be saved. But salvation comes when we believe in Jesus as the Christ. When we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we are circumcised in our hearts. (Acts 15:1-11, Gal 5:2-5, 11, Romans 2:28-29, Col 2:11-12)

Acts 15:1 And certain men which came down from Judaea taught the brethren, and said, Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be saved.

2 When therefore Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and disputation with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain other of them, should go up to Jerusalem unto the apostles and elders about this question.

3 And being brought on their way by the church, they passed through Phenice and Samaria, declaring the conversion of the Gentiles: and they caused great joy unto all the brethren.

4 And when they were come to Jerusalem, they were received of the church, and of the apostles and elders, and they declared all things that God had done with them.

5 But there rose up certain of the sect of the Pharisees which believed, saying, That it was needful to circumcise them, and to command them to keep the law of Moses.

6 And the apostles and elders came together for to consider of this matter.

7 And when there had been much disputing, Peter rose up, and said unto them, Men and brethren, ye know how that a good while ago God made choice among us, that the Gentiles by my mouth should hear the word of the gospel, and believe.

8 And God, which knoweth the hearts, bare them witness, giving them the Holy Ghost, even as he did unto us;

9 And put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith.

10 Now therefore why tempt ye God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?

11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they.

Gal 5:2 Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing.

3 For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law.

4 Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.

5 For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith.

11 And I, brethren, if I yet preach circumcision, why do I yet suffer persecution? then is the offence of the cross ceased.

Romans 2:28 For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; neither is that circumcision, which is outward in the flesh:

29 But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.

Col 2:11 In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ:

12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

831. Christ healed leprosy. (Lev 14:2)
Isa 53:4-5, Mt 8:2-4, 17, 1 Pt 2:24

In the Old Testament, when a leper was healed, the leper was brought to the priest. (Lev 4:2)

Lev 4:2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If a soul shall sin through ignorance against any of the commandments of the Lord concerning things which ought not to be done, and shall do against any of them:

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would take our sufferings, suffer and die so that we would be healed. (Isa 53:4-5)

Isa 53:4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Jesus healed the lepers according to the prophecy of the Old Testament. (Mt 8:2-4, 17)

Mt 8:2 And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying, Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean.
3 And Jesus put forth his hand, and touched him, saying, I will; be thou clean. And immediately his leprosy was cleansed.

4 And Jesus saith unto him, See thou tell no man; but go thy way, shew thyself to the priest, and offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them.

17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.

We are healed by Jesus dying on the cross. (1 Peter 2:24)

1 Peter 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

832. Christ who accomplished the eternal Atonement at once (Lev 16:27-30)
 Heb 10:1-10, 15-18, Heb 7:27

In the Old Testament, the people of Israel received forgiveness from God every year on the Day of Atonement. (Lev 16:27-30)

Lev 16:27 And the bullock for the sin offering, and the goat for the sin offering, whose blood was brought in to make atonement in the holy place, shall one carry forth without the camp; and they shall burn in the fire their skins, and their flesh, and their dung.

28 And he that burneth them shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp.

29 And this shall be a statute for ever unto you: that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, ye shall afflict your souls, and do no work at all, whether it be one of your own country, or a stranger that sojourneth among you:

30 For on that day shall the priest make an atonement for you, to cleanse you, that ye may be clean from all your sins before the Lord.

We cannot be made perfect through the annual sacrifices offered in the Old Testament. The sacrifice offered in the Old Testament is a shadow of the coming Christ. When Jesus came to this earth as the Christ, he offered his body to God once for all to forgive our sins. (Heb 10:1-10,15-18, Heb 7:27)

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

2 For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins.

3 But in those sacrifices there is a remembrance again made of sins every year.

4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins.

5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:

6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.

8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

15 Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,

16 This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;

17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.

18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

Heb 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

833. Christ who suffered outside the gate to sanctify us (Lev 16:10, 21-22)
Isa 53:6, Jn 1:29, Heb 13:11-12

In the Old Testament, the priests placed their hands on the head of a live goat, making it bear the sins of the Israelites and causing the goat to die in the wilderness. (Lev 16:10,21-22)

Lev 16:10 But the goat, on which the lot fell to be the scapegoat, shall be presented alive before the Lord, to make an atonement with him, and to let him go for a scapegoat into the wilderness.

21 And Aaron shall lay both his hands upon the head of the live goat, and confess over him all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their transgressions in all their sins, putting them upon the head of the goat, and shall send him away by the hand of a fit man into the wilderness:

22 And the goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities unto a land not inhabited: and he shall let go the goat in the wilderness.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would have the coming Christ to bear our sins. (Isa 53:6)

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Jesus is the Christ, the Lamb of God who took away the sin of the world. (John 1:29)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Jesus, the Christ, suffered outside the gates to sanctify us. (Hebrews 13:11-12)

Hebrews 13:11 For the bodies of those beasts, whose blood is brought into the sanctuary by the high priest for sin, are burned without the camp.

12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

834. Christ, who forgave our sins with His blood (Lev 17:11)

Heb 9:13,22, Heb 13:12, Mt 26:28, Rom 3:25, Rom 5:9, Eph 1:7, Col 1:20, 1 Jn 1:7, Rev 1:5, Gen 9:6

The life of the body is in the blood. So, to save a sinner, an innocent person must shed his blood for him. (Lev 17:11, Gen 9:6, Heb 9:13,22)

Lev 17:11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.

Gen 9:6 Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.

Heb 9:13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh:

22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

Jesus shed His blood to save us sinners. (Hebrews 13:12, Matthew 26:28, Romans 3:25, Romans 5:9, Ephesians 1:7, Col 1:20, 1 John 1:7, Revelation 1:5)

Hebrews 13:12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

Matthew 26:28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Romans 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

Romans 5:9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

Ephesians 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Col 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

1 John 1:7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

Revelation 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

835. Christ who forgave an adulterous woman (Lev 20:10)
Jn 8:5-11, Isa 53:11-12, Rom 5:8, Jn 1:29, 2 Cor 5:21, 1 Cor 15:3

The Old Testament says that the adulterer is to be put to death. (Lev 10:10)

Lev 10:10 And that ye may put difference between holy and unholy, and between unclean and clean;

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that Christ would forsake his body and die to forgive our sins and justify us. (Isa 53:11-12)

Isa 53:11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Jesus forgave the woman who committed adultery. (John 8:5-11)

John 8:5 Now Moses in the law commanded us, that such should be stoned: but what sayest thou?

6 This they said, tempting him, that they might have to accuse him. But Jesus stooped down, and with his finger wrote on the ground, as though he heard them not.

7 So when they continued asking him, he lifted up himself, and said unto them, He that is without sin among you, let him first cast a stone at her.

8 And again he stooped down, and wrote on the ground.

9 And they which heard it, being convicted by their own conscience, went out one by one, beginning at the eldest, even unto the last: and Jesus was left alone, and the woman standing in the midst.

10 When Jesus had lifted up himself, and saw none but the woman, he said unto her, Woman, where are those thine accusers? hath no man condemned thee?

11 She said, No man, Lord. And Jesus said unto her, Neither do I condemn thee: go, and sin no more.

Jesus took our sins and died on the cross to save us. (John 1:29, 2 Corinthians 5:21, 1 Corinthians 15:3)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

1 Corinthians 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

God loves us so much that He gave Jesus Christ to die for us. (Romans 5:8)

Romans 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

836. Christ who loved even enemies (Lev 19:18)

Mt 5:43-44, Lk 6:27-28, Lk 23:34,, Ezk 18:23, 32, 1 Tim 2:4, 2 Pt 3:9

The Old Testament tells us not to take revenge. (Lev 19:18)

Lev 19:18 Thou shalt not avenge, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people, but thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself: I am the Lord.

Jesus said to love our enemies and pray for those who persecute us. (Matthew 5:43-44, Luke 6:27-28)

Matthew 5:43 Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy.

44 But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you;

Luke 6:27 But I say unto you which hear, Love your enemies, do good to them which hate you,

28 Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you.

Jesus forgave those who crucified Him. (Luke 23:34)

Luke 23:34 Then said Jesus, Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

God wants even the wicked to be saved. (Ezekiel 18:23,32, 1 Tim 2:4, 2 Pet 3:9)

Ezekiel 18:23 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

32 For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: wherefore turn yourselves, and live ye.

1 Tim 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

2 Pet 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

837. Jesus revealed that He is the Christ by opening the eyes of the blind (Lev 21:17-18)
Isa 35:4-6, Mt 11:4-5, Jn 9:2-7, 20-22, 35-39

The Old Testament says that the blind cannot come to God. (Lev 21:17-18)

Lev 21:17 Speak unto Aaron, saying, Whosoever he be of thy seed in their generations that hath any blemish, let him not approach to offer the bread of his God.

18 For whatsoever man he be that hath a blemish, he shall not approach: a blind man, or a lame, or he that hath a flat nose, or any thing superfluous,

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and open the eyes of the blind. (Isa 35:4-6)

Isa 35:4 Say to them that are of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance, even God with a recompence; he will come and save you.

5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Jesus opened the eyes of the blind and revealed that he was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Matthew 11:4-5, John 9:2-7, 20-21, 35-39)

Matthew 11:4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

John 9:2 And his disciples asked him, saying, Master, who did sin, this man, or his parents, that he was born blind?

3 Jesus answered, Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents: but that the works of God should be made manifest in him.

4 I must work the works of him that sent me, while it is day: the night cometh, when no man can work.

5 As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world.

6 When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay,

7 And said unto him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam, (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing.

20 His parents answered them and said, We know that this is our son, and that he was born blind:

21 But by what means he now seeth, we know not; or who hath opened his eyes, we know not: he is of age; ask him: he shall speak for himself.

35 Jesus heard that they had cast him out; and when he had found him, he said unto him, Dost thou believe on the Son of God?

36 He answered and said, Who is he, Lord, that I might believe on him?

37 And Jesus said unto him, Thou hast both seen him, and it is he that talketh with thee.

38 And he said, Lord, I believe. And he worshipped him.

39 And Jesus said, For judgment I am come into this world, that they which see not might see; and that they which see might be made blind.

838. Christ who is a lamb unblemished and spotless (Lev 22:18-20)

1 Pt 1:19, Jn 19:36, 2 Cor 5:21, Jn 1:29, Isa 53:5-6

In the Old Testament, when offering sacrifices to God, an ox, sheep, or goat without blemish had to be offered. (Lev 22:18-20)

Lev 22:18 speak unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the children of Israel, and say unto them, Whatsoever he be of the house of Israel, or of the strangers in Israel, that will offer his oblation for all his vows, and for all his freewill offerings, which they will offer unto the Lord for a burnt offering;

19 Ye shall offer at your own will a male without blemish, of the beeves, of the sheep, or of the goats.

20 But whatsoever hath a blemish, that shall ye not offer: for it shall not be acceptable for you.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would bear our sins, suffer and die in order to save us. (Isa 53:5-6)

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Jesus is the Lamb of God, without blemish and without spot. Jesus, who knew no sin, took our sins and died on the cross in order to save us. (John 1:29, 1 Peter 1:19, 2 Corinthians 5:21)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

1 Peter 1:19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

839. Christ who sanctified us (Lev 22:32)

1 Cor 1:2, Rom 11:16, Col 1:22, Heb 10:10, 14, Heb 13:12

God is holy. A holy God sanctifies us. (Lev 22:32)

Lev 22:32 Neither shall ye profane my holy name; but I will be hallowed among the children of Israel: I am the Lord which hallow you,

Jesus died on the cross to make us holy. (Col 1:22, Heb 10:10,14, Heb 13:12)

Col 1:22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreproveable in his sight:

Heb 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

Heb 13:12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

We who believe in Jesus Christ are made holy. That is why we are called 'saints'. (1 Corinthians 1:2)

1 Corinthians 1:2 Unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both their's and our's:

Our root is Christ. So, because Christ is holy, we are holy. (Romans 11:16)

Romans 11:16 For if the firstfruit be holy, the lump is also holy: and if the root be holy, so are the branches.

840. Christ became the Passover Lamb (Lev 23:5)

Ex 12:11, Jn 1:29, 1 Pt 1:19, Isa 53:6-7, 10, 1 Cor 5:7, Rev 5:6,9, Rev 7:14, Jn 6:53-54, Heb 10:10

In the Old Testament, God made the Israelites keep the Passover. (Lev 23:5, Ex 12:11)

Lev 23:5 In the fourteenth day of the first month at even is the Lord's passover.

Ex 12:11 And thus shall ye eat it; with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand; and ye shall eat it in haste: it is the Lord's passover.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the coming Christ would die like the Lamb as a trespass offering. (Isa 53:6-7,10)

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Jesus is the Passover Lamb of God. (John 1:29, 1 Pet 1:19)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

1 Pet 1:19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

Jesus, the Christ, was slain like the Passover Lamb in order to save us. (1 Corinthians 5:7, Hebrews 10:10, Revelation 5:6,9, Revelation 7:14)

1 Corinthians 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us:

Hebrews 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

Revelation 5:6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.

9 And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;

Revelation 7:14 And I said unto him, Sir, thou knowest. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

We must believe in Jesus as the Christ and get to know him every day. (John 6:53-54)

John 6:53 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you.

54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

841. Christ who is truly unleavened bread (Lev 23:6)
Jn 6:53-54, Col 2:12, Rom 6:3-4

In the Old Testament, God had the Israelites eat unleavened bread on the Feast of Unleavened Bread. (Lev 23:6)

Lev 23:6 And on the fifteenth day of the same month is the feast of unleavened bread unto the Lord: seven days ye must eat unleavened bread.

The unleavened bread eaten on the Feast of Unleavened Bread represents the flesh and blood of Jesus. We are to eat the flesh and blood of Christ daily. That is, we must come to know Christ every day. (John 6:53-54, 2 Peter 3:18)

John 6:53 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you.

54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

2 Peter 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

The Feast of Unleavened Bread means that we died with Christ and lived together. (Col 2:12, Romans 6:3-4)

Col 2:12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

Romans 6:3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

842. Christ, who is the first fruits of the resurrection (Lev 23:10)
Jn 12:24, 1 Cor 15:20-23, 1 Thess 4:14

In the Old Testament, God had the Israelites bring the first grain to the priests when they went to the land of Canaan to gather grain. This grain symbolizes Christ, the firstfruits of the resurrection. (Lev 23:10)

Lev 23:10 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye be come into the land which I give unto you, and shall reap the harvest thereof, then ye shall bring a sheaf of the firstfruits of your harvest unto the priest:

Just as a grain of wheat falls to the ground and dies, bearing much fruit, Jesus died to save many lives. (John 12:24)

John 12:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit.

Jesus died for us sinners and rose from the dead to become the first fruits of resurrection. If we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we will be resurrected like Jesus when He comes again. (1 Corinthians 15:20-23; 1 Thessalonians 4:14)

1 Corinthians 15:20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.

22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

1 Thessalonians 4:14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

843. The Holy Spirit came to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ (Pentecost, Lev 23:16)
Joel 2:28, 32, Acts 2:16-17, 21, Acts 5:29-32, Eph 3:4-6

On the 50th day after the Exodus, the Israelites harvested grain. They offered a grain offering to God with the grain.
(Lev 23:16)

Lev 23:16 Even unto the morrow after the seventh sabbath shall ye number fifty days; and ye shall offer a new meat offering unto the Lord.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would pour out the Holy Spirit on those who call on the name of the Lord. (Joel 2:28,32)

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:
32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

50 days after Jesus was resurrected, the Holy Spirit prophesied in the Old Testament came upon those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:16-17,21, Acts 5:29-32)

Acts 2:16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;
17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Acts 5:29 Then Peter and the other apostles answered and said, We ought to obey God rather than men.
30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.
31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.
32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

844. Christ will descend from heaven with the trumpet of God (Lev 23:24)
Mt 24:30-31, 1 Thess 4:16, Rev 11:15, Dan 7:13-14

God made the Israelites blow a trumpet on the day of the Feast of Trumpets. This is to inform the people of Israel that a new day of God has come. (Lev 23:24)

Lev 23:24 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, In the seventh month, in the first day of the month, shall ye have a sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, an holy convocation.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come again in the clouds of heaven. (Dan 7:13-14)

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

Jesus, the Christ, will descend from heaven with the sound of the trumpet of God. (Matthew 24:30-31, 1 Thessalonians 4:16, Revelation 11:15)

Matthew 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

1 Thessalonians 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

Revelation 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

845. Christ, who accomplished the perfect atonement (The Day of Atonement) (Lev 23:27) Lev 17:11, Heb 9:12, Heb 7:27, Heb 10:9-12, 14

God commanded the Israelites to commemorate and keep the Day of Atonement. At this time, the high priest entered the Holy of Holies and offered a sacrifice for atonement for all the sins of himself and the people of Israel. (Lev 23:27)

Lev 23:27 Also on the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a day of atonement: it shall be an holy convocation unto you; and ye shall afflict your souls, and offer an offering made by fire unto the Lord.

Since the life of the flesh is in the blood, an innocent person must shed blood for our sins to be forgiven. (Lev 17:11)

Lev 17:11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.

In order to make us perfect, Jesus entered the sanctuary once for all, having obtained eternal redemption once for all with His own blood. (Hebrews 9:12, Heb 7:27, Heb 10:9-14)

Hebrews 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Heb 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

Heb 10:9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:

12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

846. Christ the Eternal Feast of Tabernacles (Lev 23:34)
Zech 14:9, 16-21, Mt 17:4, 8, Rev 21:22-23

God made the Israelites who had left Egypt to keep the Feast of Tabernacles for 7 days, meaning that they would rest after all their hard work. (Lev 23:34)

Lev 23:34 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, The fifteenth day of this seventh month shall be the feast of tabernacles for seven days unto the Lord.

God had the remnant of Israel come to Jerusalem to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles. (Zech 14:16-21)

Zech 14:16 And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the Lord of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles.

17 And it shall be, that whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the Lord of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain.

18 And if the family of Egypt go not up, and come not, that have no rain; there shall be the plague, wherewith the Lord will smite the heathen that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles.

19 This shall be the punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles.

20 In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, Holiness Unto The Lord; and the pots in the Lord's house shall be like the bowls before the altar.

21 Yea, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah shall be holiness unto the Lord of hosts: and all they that sacrifice shall come and take of them, and seethe therein: and in that day there shall be no more the Canaanite in the house of the Lord of hosts.

At the Feast of Tabernacles, the people of Israel come to know that Jehovah God is one and only. (Zech 14:9)

Zech 14:9 And the Lord shall be king over all the earth: in that day shall there be one Lord, and his name one.

Peter liked being with Jesus so much that he was going to build the booth he was making at the Feast of Tabernacles for Jesus, Moses, and Elijah. At that time, Moses and Elijah, who appeared in the vision, disappear, leaving only Jesus. (Mt 17:4, 8)

Mt 17:4 Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.

8 And when they had lifted up their eyes, they saw no man, save Jesus only.

Only God and the Lamb Jesus Christ are the true temples where we can rest forever. (Rev 21:22-23)

Rev 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

847. Christ, who is the bread of life (Lev 24:8-9)

Deut 8:3, Jn 1:14, Jn 6:48, 51, 1 Cor 10:16, 1 Cor 11:24

In the Old Testament, God had the priests set up a showbread for the children of Israel on every Sabbath in the tabernacle. (Lev 24:8)

Lev 24:8 Every sabbath he shall set it in order before the Lord continually, being taken from the children of Israel by an everlasting covenant.

God made us eat all the words of God to live. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus is the Word of God. (John 1:14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jesus is the bread of life. If we eat this bread, we will live forever. (John 6:48,51)

John 6:48 I am that bread of life.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

We must come to know Jesus Christ, the Bread of Life, every day. (1 Corinthians 10:16, 1 Corinthians 11:24)

1 Corinthians 10:16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?

1 Corinthians 11:24 And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me.

848. Christ, who is the true light (Lev 24:3)
Lk 2:28, 32, Jn 1:9-12, Jn 8:12, Jn 9:5, Jn 12:36

In the Old Testament, God commanded the priests to light a lamp in the tabernacle and keep it from being extinguished. Without a lamp in the tabernacle, the priests could not perform their duties. (Lev 24:3)

Lev 24:3 Without the vail of the testimony, in the tabernacle of the congregation, shall Aaron order it from the evening unto the morning before the Lord continually: it shall be a statute for ever in your generations.

Jesus is the light to the Gentiles and the glory of Israel. (Luke 2:28,32)

Luke 2:28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,
32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

Jesus is the light of the world, the light of life. (John 1:9-12, John 8:12, John 9:5)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.
10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.
11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.
12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

John 9:5 As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we become sons of light. (John 12:36)

John 12:36 While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light. These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them.

849. Christ came as the fulfiller of the jubilee (Lev 25:10)
Lk 4:16-21, Isa 61:1-3

In the Old Testament, God commanded the Israelites to keep the Jubilee in the fifty years after seven Sabbath years. In the Jubilee year all slaves were set free. (Lev 25:10)

Lev 25:10 And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof: it shall be a jubile unto you; and ye shall return every man unto his possession, and ye shall return every man unto his family.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the coming Christ would come to heal and set us free. (Isa 61:1-3)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

Jesus is the Christ who came to set us free from our sins by coming to fulfill the jubilee year according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Luke 4:16-21)

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

850. The law that leads us to Christ (Lev 26:46)

Gal 3:19-24, Gal 4:4-5, Rom 11:32, Acts 13:39, Rom 10:4, Gal 2:16,21, Acts 10:43, Gal 3:11, Heb 9:10-12

In the Old Testament, God made rules and laws through Moses. (Lev 26:46)

Lev 26:46 These are the statutes and judgments and laws, which the Lord made between him and the children of Israel in mount Sinai by the hand of Moses.

The law convicts us of sin and leads us to Christ. (Gal 3:19-24)

Gal 3:19 Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.

20 Now a mediator is not a mediator of one, but God is one.

21 Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.

22 But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe.

23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

God made it impossible for human beings to keep all the law, so that they could be justified through Christ. (Rom 11:32, Acts 13:39)

Rom 11:32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.

Acts 13:39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

Jesus was born under the law and became the end of the law to achieve righteousness for all who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Galatians 4:4-5, Romans 10:4)

Galatians 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

Romans 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

No one can be justified by keeping the law. A person is justified by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:16, 21)

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

21 I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.

The prophets of the Old Testament also say that people receive the forgiveness of sins by believing in Christ. (Acts 10:43, Gal 3:11)

Acts 10:43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

Gal 3:11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.

God has entrusted the law to us only until Christ comes. Jesus, the Christ, fulfilled that law by working for us an

eternal atonement with His blood. (Hebrews 9:10-12)

Hebrews 9:10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Numbers

Bible

851. We who became spiritual Nazirites through the redemption of the cross of Jesus Christ (Num 6:21)
852. God blessed us through Christ. (Num 6:24-26)
- 853.
854. Christ died according to the Scriptures. (Num 9:12)
855. World Evangelization Method: Disciples (Num 11:14,16,25)
856. God wants to pour out the Holy Spirit on all people through Christ. (Num 11:29)
857. If you don't believe in Jesus as the Christ, (Num 14:26-30)
858. Christ works by the will of God. (Num 16:28)
859. Christ is the mediator of a new covenant (Num 17:5, 8, 10)
860. A spiritual rock was Christ. (Num 20:7-8, 11)
861. And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, (Num 21:8-9)
863. Balaam's prophecy of Christ (Num 24:17)
864. Christ fulfilled the office of eternal priest (Num 25:13)
865. Those who do not obey the voice of the Lord your God (Num 26:64-65)
866. Christ our Shepherd (Num 27:16-17)
867. Now we need Christ every day. (Num 28:3-4)
868. The Lord fights for us. (Num 31:49)
869. Christ who is the city of refuge, to which a manslayer may flee (Num 35:6,11,15,25,28)

851. We who became spiritual Nazirites through the redemption of the cross of Jesus Christ (Num 6:21)
1 Cor 6:19-20, Rom 12:1, 1 Pt 2:9

In the Old Testament, the Nazarite lived a life of self-sanctification. (Numbers 6:21)

Numbers 6:21 This is the law of the Nazarite who hath vowed, and of his offering unto the Lord for his separation, beside that that his hand shall get: according to the vow which he vowed, so he must do after the law of his separation.

We became temples of the Holy Spirit through the atonement of Jesus Christ on the cross. (1 Corinthians 6:19-20)

1 Corinthians 6:19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

So, we must live a life that proclaims that Jesus is the Christ. (Romans 12:1, 1 Peter 2:9)

Romans 12:1 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.

1 Peter 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

852. God blesses us through Christ. (Num 6:24-26)
2 Cor 13:14, Eph 1:3-7, Eph 6:23-24

God wants to keep us, bless us, and grant us grace and peace. (Numbers 6:24-26)

Numbers 6:24 The Lord bless thee, and keep thee:

25 The Lord make his face shine upon thee, and be gracious unto thee:

26 The Lord lift up his countenance upon thee, and give thee peace.

God grants us blessings, grace, and peace only through Christ. (2 Corinthians 13:14, Ephesians 1:3-7, Ephesians 6:23-24)

2 Corinthians 13:14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. Amen.

Ephesians 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:

4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.

7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Ephesians 6:23 Peace be to the brethren, and love with faith, from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

24 Grace be with all them that love our Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity. Amen.

854. Christ died according to the Scriptures. (Num 9:12)
Ex 12:46, Ps 34:20, Jn 19:36, 1 Cor 15:3

In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites not to break the bones of the Passover lamb. (Num 9:12, Ex 12:46)

Num 9:12 They shall leave none of it unto the morning, nor break any bone of it: according to all the ordinances of the passover they shall keep it.

Ex 12:46 In one house shall it be eaten; thou shalt not carry forth ought of the flesh abroad out of the house; neither shall ye break a bone thereof.

The Old Testament prophesied that the bones of Christ would not be broken. (Psalm 34:20)

Psalm 34:20 He keepeth all his bones: not one of them is broken.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus, the Christ, died on the cross and his bones were not broken. (John 19:36, 1 Corinthians 15:3)

John 19:36 For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, A bone of him shall not be broken.

1 Corinthians 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

855. World Evangelization Method: Disciples (Num 11:14,16,25)
Lk 10:1-2, Mt 9:37-38

Moses led the Israelites alone. But he was very troubled by the complaints of the people of Israel. At this time, God told Moses to gather 70 elders to rule the people of Israel together. (Numbers 11:14,16,25)

Numbers 11:14 I am not able to bear all this people alone, because it is too heavy for me.

16 And the Lord said unto Moses, Gather unto me seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people, and officers over them; and bring them unto the tabernacle of the congregation, that they may stand there with thee.

25 And the Lord came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that was upon him, and gave it unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, that, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.

Jesus also told us to ask God to send His disciples first to save people. (Luke 10:1-2, Matthew 9:37-38)

Luke 10:1 After these things the Lord appointed other seventy also, and sent them two and two before his face into every city and place, whither he himself would come.

2 Therefore said he unto them, The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few: pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he would send forth labourers into his harvest.

Matthew 9:37 Then saith he unto his disciples, The harvest truly is plenteous, but the labourers are few;

38 Pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers into his harvest.

856. God wants to pour out the Holy Spirit on all people through Christ. (Num 11:29)
Joel 2:28, Acts 2:1-4, Acts 5:31-32

When the Holy Spirit came upon the 70 elders in the Old Testament, Joshua was jealous of this. Then Moses told Joshua that God wanted to pour out the Holy Spirit on all the people of Israel. (Numbers 11:29)

Numbers 11:29 And Moses said unto him, Enviest thou for my sake? would God that all the Lord'S people were prophets, and that the Lord would put his spirit upon them!

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would pour out the Holy Spirit on those who know that He is the true God. (Joel 2:28)

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

The Holy Spirit prophesied in the Old Testament came upon those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:1-4)

Acts 2:1 And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.

2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.

3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.

4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

To believe in Jesus as the Christ is to obey God. The Holy Spirit came upon those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

857. If you don't believe in Jesus as the Christ, (Num 14:26-30)
Jude 1:4-5, Heb 3:17-18

In the Old Testament, the Israelites who left Egypt did not believe in God and complained to God. In the end, they could not enter the land promised by God, Canaan. (Numbers 14:26-30)

Numbers 14:26 And the Lord spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
27 How long shall I bear with this evil congregation, which murmur against me? I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel, which they murmur against me.
28 Say unto them, As truly as I live, saith the Lord, as ye have spoken in mine ears, so will I do to you:
29 Your carcases shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward which have murmured against me.
30 Doubtless ye shall not come into the land, concerning which I sware to make you dwell therein, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun.

Just as in the Old Testament the people of Israel who came out of Egypt were destroyed because they did not believe in God, so those who deny that Jesus is the Christ will also be destroyed. (Jude 1:4-5, Heb 3:17-18)

Jude 1:4 For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.
5 I will therefore put you in remembrance, though ye once knew this, how that the Lord, having saved the people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed them that believed not.

Heb 3:17 But with whom was he grieved forty years? was it not with them that had sinned, whose carcases fell in the wilderness?
18 And to whom sware he that they should not enter into his rest, but to them that believed not?

858. Christ works by the will of God. (Num 16:28)

Mt 26:39, Jn 4:34, Jn 5:19, 30, Jn 6:38, Jn 7:16-17, Jn 8:28, Jn 14:10

In the Old Testament, Moses did not work according to his own will, but did everything according to God's instructions. (Numbers 16:28)

Numbers 16:28 And Moses said, Hereby ye shall know that the Lord hath sent me to do all these works; for I have not done them of mine own mind.

Jesus also accomplished the work of Christ according to the will of God.

Mt 26:39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

Jn 4:34 Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work.

Jn 5:19 Then answered Jesus and said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise.

30 I can of mine own self do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me.

Jn 6:38 For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me.

Jn 7:16 Jesus answered them, and said, My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me.

17 If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself.

Jn 8:28 Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.

Jn 14:10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.

859. Christ is the resurrection and the power of God.(Num 17:5, 8, 10)
Heb 9:4, 9-12, 15, Jn 11:25

In the Old Testament, the Israelites complained to God, and many Israelites were killed by God. When the complaining Israelites saw God's power to make Aaron's rod sprout, they stopped complaining, and God stopped killing the Israelites. (Numbers 17:5,8,10)

Numbers 17:5 And it shall come to pass, that the man's rod, whom I shall choose, shall blossom: and I will make to cease from me the murmurings of the children of Israel, whereby they murmur against you.

8 And it came to pass, that on the morrow Moses went into the tabernacle of witness; and, behold, the rod of Aaron for the house of Levi was budded, and brought forth buds, and bloomed blossoms, and yielded almonds.

10 And the Lord said unto Moses, Bring Aaron's rod again before the testimony, to be kept for a token against the rebels; and thou shalt quite take away their murmurings from me, that they die not.

Aaron's rod that budded in the Old Testament shows the power of God's resurrection. Jesus is the power of God's resurrection. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will have eternal life and will be resurrected. (Heb 9:4,9-12,15, John 11:25)

Heb 9:4 Which had the golden censer, and the ark of the covenant overlaid round about with gold, wherein was the golden pot that had manna, and Aaron's rod that budded, and the tables of the covenant;

9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

John 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

860. A spiritual rock was Christ. (Num 20:7-8, 11)
1 Cor 10:4, Jn 4:14, Jn 7:38, Rev 22:1-2, Rev 21:6

After the Exodus from Egypt, the Israelites lived in the wilderness for 40 years and could live by drinking water from a rock. (Numbers 20:7-8,11)

Numbers 20:7 And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying,

8 Take the rod, and gather thou the assembly together, thou, and Aaron thy brother, and speak ye unto the rock before their eyes; and it shall give forth his water, and thou shalt bring forth to them water out of the rock: so thou shalt give the congregation and their beasts drink.

11 And Moses lifted up his hand, and with his rod he smote the rock twice: and the water came out abundantly, and the congregation drank, and their beasts also.

In the Old Testament, the rock that supplied the Israelites with water for 40 years is Christ. (1 Corinthians 10:4)

1 Corinthians 10:4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

Jesus gives eternal life to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (John 4:14, John 7:38, Revelation 22:1-2, Revelation 21:6)

John 4:14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

John 7:38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

Revelation 22:1 And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

Revelation 21:6 And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.

861. And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, (Num 21:8-9)
Gen 3:15, Jn 3:14-15, Gal 3:13, Col 2:15

In the Old Testament, the Israelites resented God and God caused them to be bitten by vipers to death. But those who saw the bronze serpent that Moses placed on the pole lived. (Num 21:8-9)

Num 21:8 And the Lord said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live.

9 And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die on the cross. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus paid for our sins by being lifted up like the brass serpent of Moses on the cross and dying. And He gave eternal life to those who believe in Him as the Christ. (John 3:14-15, Gal 3:13, Col 2:13-15)

John 3:14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:
15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

863. Balaam's prophecy of Christ (Num 24:17)
Mt 2:2, Rev 22:16, Gen 49:10

In the Old Testament, the prophet Balaam prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of Jacob. (Numbers 24:17)

Numbers 24:17 I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah. (Gen 49:10)

Gen 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Jesus is the Christ who came from the descendants of Judas among the sons of Jacob. (Mt 1:1-2, 16)

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.
2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;
16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

The three wise men saw the stars and, knowing that Christ was born, came to Israel to worship Christ. (Matthew 2:2)

Matthew 2:2 Saying, Where is he that is born King of the Jews? for we have seen his star in the east, and are come to worship him.

Jesus is the root and offspring of David, the Christ, the bright and morning star. (Rev 22:16)

Rev 22:16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.

864. Christ fulfilled the office of eternal priest (Num 25:13)
Heb 5:5, 8-10, Heb 7:14-17, 20-21, 27

In the Old Testament, Aaron's grandson Phinehas saved the Israelites from God's wrath. So God gave Phinehas and his descendants the office of priests forever. (Numbers 25:13)

Numbers 25:13 And he shall have it, and his seed after him, even the covenant of an everlasting priesthood; because he was zealous for his God, and made an atonement for the children of Israel.

As a tribe of Judah, Jesus became high priest in the order of Melchizedek. And even though Jesus was the Son of God, he offered himself up to God and accomplished the work of a high priest forever. (Heb 5:5-10, Heb 7:14-21,27)

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 7:14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest,

16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life.

17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.

19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest:

21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)

27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

865. Those who do not obey the voice of the Lord your God (Num 26:64-65)
Num 14:28-30, Jn 5:24, Jn 3:16

All of the Israelites who did not obey God's voice died in the wilderness. (Num 26:64-65, Num 14:28-30)

Num 26:64 But among these there was not a man of them whom Moses and Aaron the priest numbered, when they numbered the children of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai.

65 For the Lord had said of them, They shall surely die in the wilderness. And there was not left a man of them, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun.

Num 14:28 Say unto them, As truly as I live, saith the Lord, as ye have spoken in mine ears, so will I do to you:

29 Your carcases shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward which have murmured against me.

30 Doubtless ye shall not come into the land, concerning which I sware to make you dwell therein, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun.

Those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ will be judged and perish. Conversely, those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will not perish but have eternal life. (John 5:24, John 3:16)

John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

866. Christ, our Shepherd (Num 27:16-17)
Mt 9:36, Mk 6:34, Jn 10:11, 14-16

In the Old Testament, Moses asked God to send a shepherd to lead the people of Israel so that they would not become like sheep without a shepherd. (Numbers 27:16-17)

Numbers 27:16 Let the Lord, the God of the spirits of all flesh, set a man over the congregation,
17 Which may go out before them, and which may go in before them, and which may lead them out, and which may bring them in; that the congregation of the Lord be not as sheep which have no shepherd.

The Israelites suffered like sheep without a shepherd until they knew that Jesus was the Christ. (Matthew 9:36, Mark 6:34)

Matthew 9:36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd.

Mark 6:34 And Jesus, when he came out, saw much people, and was moved with compassion toward them, because they were as sheep not having a shepherd: and he began to teach them many things.

Jesus is the true Shepherd who laid down his life to save us. (John 10:11-16)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.
12 But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.
13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.
14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.
15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.
16 And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

867. Now we need Christ every day.(Num 28:3-4)
Heb 7:27, Deut 8:3, Jn 6:32-33, 35, 48-51

In the Old Testament, the Israelites who left Egypt offered sacrifices to God every day. (Numbers 28:3-4)

Numbers 28:3 And thou shalt say unto them, This is the offering made by fire which ye shall offer unto the Lord; two lambs of the first year without spot day by day, for a continual burnt offering.
4 The one lamb shalt thou offer in the morning, and the other lamb shalt thou offer at even;

Jesus offered himself to God on the cross once for all, so we no longer have to offer daily sacrifices. (Heb 7:27)

Heb 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

We must live by the word of God every day. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Just as the Israelites offered daily sacrifices to God in the Old Testament, now we need Christ every day. (John 6:32-33,35,48-51)

John 6:32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.

33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

48 I am that bread of life.

49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.

50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

868. The Lord fights for us. (Num 31:49)

Ex 14:14, Ex 23:22, Jos 23:10, Deut 1:30, Deut 3:22, Rom 8:31

In the Old Testament, when the people of Israel believed in God, not a single Israeli soldier died in the battle with the enemy. Because God fought for them. (Num 31:49)

Num 31:49 And they said unto Moses, Thy servants have taken the sum of the men of war which are under our charge, and there lacketh not one man of us.

In the Old Testament, when the people of Israel believed in God, God fought for the people of Israel. (Ex 14:14, Ex 23:22, Jos 23:10, De 1:30, De 3:22)

Ex 14:14 The Lord shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace.

Ex 23:22 But if thou shalt indeed obey his voice, and do all that I speak; then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies, and an adversary unto thine adversaries.

Jos 23:10 One man of you shall chase a thousand: for the Lord your God, he it is that fighteth for you, as he hath promised you.

Deut 1:30 The Lord your God which goeth before you, he shall fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes;

Deut 3:22 Ye shall not fear them: for the Lord your God he shall fight for you.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, God fights for us. (Romans 8:31)

Romans 8:31 What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?

869. Christ who is the city of refuge (Num 35:6,11,15,25,28)
Deut 19:3, Jos 20:2-3, Acts 3:14-15, 17-19, Heb 4:14, Eph 1:7, Rom 8:1-2

God made the Israelites who had entered the land of Canaan to build a city of refuge where the murderer could escape. (Numbers 35:6,11,15,25,28, Deuteronomy 19:3, Joshua 20:2)

Numbers 35:6 And among the cities which ye shall give unto the Levites there shall be six cities for refuge, which ye shall appoint for the manslayer, that he may flee thither: and to them ye shall add forty and two cities.

11 Then ye shall appoint you cities to be cities of refuge for you; that the slayer may flee thither, which killeth any person at unawares.

15 These six cities shall be a refuge, both for the children of Israel, and for the stranger, and for the sojourner among them: that every one that killeth any person unawares may flee thither.

25 And the congregation shall deliver the slayer out of the hand of the revenger of blood, and the congregation shall restore him to the city of his refuge, whither he was fled: and he shall abide in it unto the death of the high priest, which was anointed with the holy oil.

28 Because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession.

Deuteronomy 19:3 Thou shalt prepare thee a way, and divide the coasts of thy land, which the Lord thy God giveth thee to inherit, into three parts, that every slayer may flee thither.

Joshua 20:2 Speak to the children of Israel, saying, Appoint out for you cities of refuge, whereof I spake unto you by the hand of Moses:

A person who accidentally killed a person and ran away to the city of refuge could leave the city of refuge and return to the house if the high priest died. This is because the death of the high priest is the price for the murder. (Num 35:32)

Num 35:32 And ye shall take no satisfaction for him that is fled to the city of his refuge, that he should come again to dwell in the land, until the death of the priest.

Because we didn't even know that Jesus was the Christ at first, we too are like those who put Jesus to death on the cross. (Acts 3:14,17-19)

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

17 And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance ye did it, as did also your rulers.

18 But those things, which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.

As our high priest, Jesus died on the cross to forgive all our sins. (Hebrews 9:11-12)

Hebrews 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Jesus is our city of refuge. There is no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus. (Romans 8:1-2)

Romans 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

- 870. The law explains Christ. (Deut 1:5)
- 871. Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Deut 1:8)
- 872. The Lord fights for us. (Deut 1:30)
- 874. God made Christ known to the Israelites for 40 years in the wilderness.(Deut 2:7)
- 875. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ will live (Deut 4:1)
- 876. Christ is the wisdom and knowledge of God. (Deut 4:5-6)
- 877. We must diligently teach Christ to our children.(Deut 4:9-10)
- 878. Christ, who is the image of God.(Deut 4:12,15)
- 879. The Lord your God is a jealous God. (Deut 4:24)
- 880. The law was given by God until Christ came. (Deut 5:31)
- 881. The only Trinity God (Deut 6:4)
- 882. Love God and Christ (Deut 6:5)
- 883. Faithful God, faithful Christ (Deut 7:9)
- 884. God leads us to Christ. (Deut 8:3)
- 885. God and Christ led the Israelites in the wilderness for 40 years.(Deut 8:14-16)
- 886. Salvation through faith in Christ, not our justice (Deut 9:5)
- 887. The Israelites who rebelled against God eventually killed the Christ. (Deut 9:6-7)
- 888. What God requires of us: believing in Christ (Deut 10:12-13)
- 889. Christ who gave His life for us (Deut 12:23)
- 890. There is no gospel other than Christ. (Deut 13:10)
- 891. God made us His people through Christ. (Duet 14:2)
- 892. Christ as a prophet like Moses (Deut 18:15,18)
- 893. Christ was cursed by God to save us. (Deut 21:22-23)
- 894. Christ who delivered us from the curse of the law (Deut 27:26)
- 895. The gospel of Christ revealed to us. (Deut 29:4)
- 896. God even promised to evangelize the Gentiles. (Deut 29:13-15)

897. God circumcises hearts to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Deut 30:2,6)

898. God accomplished justice through Christ. (Deut 32:4)

899. God the Father who made us (Deut 32:6)

900. Teach Christ to your children. (Deut 32:7)

901. Curse on those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ (Deut 32:21)

902. Christ who destroyed our enemies (Deut 32:43)

903. Christ to come through Judah (Deut 33:7)

870. The law explains Christ. (Deut 1:5)
Jn 5:46-47, Heb 11:24-26, Acts 26:22-23, 1 Pt 1:10-11, Gal 3:24

In the Old Testament, Moses explained the law to the people of Israel just before entering the land of Canaan. (Deut 1:5)

Deut 1:5 On this side Jordan, in the land of Moab, began Moses to declare this law, saying,

Moses wrote the books of law, Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. Moses explained Christ through his book of law. (John 5:46-47)

John 5:46 For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me; for he wrote of me.
47 But if ye believe not his writings, how shall ye believe my words?

Although Moses was raised as the son of an Egyptian princess, he gave up the princely position for Christ's sake. (Heb 11:24-26)

Heb 11:24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter;
25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;
26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.

Moses prophesied that the coming Christ would suffer and be resurrected to preach the gospel. (Acts 26:22-23)

Acts 26:22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:
23 That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

The prophets also prophesied that the coming Christ would suffer and be resurrected. (1 Peter 1:10-11)

1 Peter 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:
11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

Ultimately, the law leads us to Christ. (Gal 3:24)

Gal 3:24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

871. Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Deut 1:8)
Gen 12:7, Mic 5:2, Mt 2:1, 4-6, Lk 2:4-7, Jn 7:42

In the Old Testament, Moses told the Israelites to enter Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Deut 1:8)

Deut 1:8 Behold, I have set the land before you: go in and possess the land which the Lord swore unto your fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to give unto them and to their seed after them.

In the Old Testament, God promised Abraham the land where Christ would come, Canaan. (Genesis 12:7)

Genesis 12:7 And the Lord appeared unto Abram, and said, Unto thy seed will I give this land: and there builded he an altar unto the Lord, who appeared unto him.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would be born in Bethlehem in the land of Canaan. (Mic 5:2)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Jesus, the Christ, was born in Bethlehem, the land of Canaan, according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Matthew 2:1, 4-6, Luke 2:4-7, John 7:42)

Matthew 2:1 Now when Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judaea in the days of Herod the king, behold, there came wise men from the east to Jerusalem,

4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

Luke 2:4 And Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judaea, unto the city of David, which is called Bethlehem; (because he was of the house and lineage of David:)

5 To be taxed with Mary his espoused wife, being great with child.

6 And so it was, that, while they were there, the days were accomplished that she should be delivered.

7 And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn.

John 7:42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?

872. The Lord fights for us. (Deut 1:30)

Ex 14:14, Ex 23:22, Num 31:49, Josh 23:10, Deut 3:22, Rom 8:31

If we believe in God, God fights for us. (Deut 1:30, Ex 14:14, Ex 23:22, Jos 23:10, Deut 3:22)

Deut 1:30 The Lord your God which goeth before you, he shall fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes;

Ex 14:14 The Lord shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace.

Ex 23:22 But if thou shalt indeed obey his voice, and do all that I speak; then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies, and an adversary unto thine adversaries.

Jos 23:10 One man of you shall chase a thousand: for the Lord your God, he it is that fighteth for you, as he hath promised you.

Deut 3:22 Ye shall not fear them: for the Lord your God he shall fight for you.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, God fights for us. (Romans 8:31)

Romans 8:31 What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?

874. God made Christ known to the Israelites for 40 years in the wilderness.(Deut 2:7)
Deut 8:2-4, Mt 4:4, Jn 6:49-51, 58

In the Old Testament, God protected the Israelites from Egypt and stayed with them for 40 years in the wilderness, making them aware of the coming Christ. (Deuteronomy 2:7, Deuteronomy 8:2-4)

Deuteronomy 2:7 For the Lord thy God hath blessed thee in all the works of thy hand: he knoweth thy walking through this great wilderness: these forty years the Lord thy God hath been with thee; thou hast lacked nothing.

Deuteronomy 8:2 And thou shalt remember all the way which the Lord thy God led thee these forty years in the wilderness, to humble thee, and to prove thee, to know what was in thine heart, whether thou wouldest keep his commandments, or no.

3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

4 Thy raiment waxed not old upon thee, neither did thy foot swell, these forty years.

Christ led the Israelites out of Egypt and led them in the wilderness for 40 years. (1 Corinthians 10:1-4)

1 Corinthians 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;

2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;

3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat;

4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

Just as we eat bread every day, we must come to know Christ every day. (John 6:49-51, 58)

John 6:49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.

50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.

875. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ will live (Deut 4:1)
Rom 10:5-13, Deut 30:11-12, 14, Isa 28:16, Joel 2:32

In the Old Testament, God said that those who obey the law will live. (Deuteronomy 4:1)

Deuteronomy 4:1 Now therefore hearken, O Israel, unto the statutes and unto the judgments, which I teach you, for to do them, that ye may live, and go in and possess the land which the Lord God of your fathers giveth you.

The Old Testament says that if the law given by Moses is in our hearts, we will be able to obey it. (Deut 30:11-12,14)

Deut 30:11 For this commandment which I command thee this day, it is not hidden from thee, neither is it far off.
12 It is not in heaven, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it?
14 But the word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth, and in thy heart, that thou mayest do it.

The Old Testament says that man will live when he believes in Christ, the tested stone. (Isa 28:16)

Isa 28:16 Therefore thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

The Old Testament says that those who call on the name of the Lord will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

We are saved by believing in our hearts that Jesus is the Christ. (Romans 10:5-13)

Romans 10:5 For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doeth those things shall live by them.

6 But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, Say not in thine heart, Who shall ascend into heaven? (that is, to bring Christ down from above:)

7 Or, Who shall descend into the deep? (that is, to bring up Christ again from the dead.)

8 But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach;

9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

876. Christ is the wisdom and knowledge of God. (Deut 4:5-6)
1 Cor 1:24, 30, 1 Cor 2:7-9, Col 2:3, 2 Tim 3:15,

The Old Testament tells us that keeping the law is our wisdom and knowledge. (Deut 4:5-6)

Deut 4:5 Behold, I have taught you statutes and judgments, even as the Lord my God commanded me, that ye should do so in the land whither ye go to possess it.

6 Keep therefore and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the nations, which shall hear all these statutes, and say, Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people.

Christ is the wisdom and knowledge of God. (1 Cor 1:24, 30; 1 Cor 2:7-9; Col 2:3; 2 Tim. 3:15)

1 Cor 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.
30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.

Col 2:3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

2 Tim. 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

877. We must diligently teach Christ to our children.(Deut 4:9-10)
Deut 6:7, 20-25, 2 Tim 3:14-15, Acts 5:42

In the Old Testament, God commanded the Israelites to teach their children what God had done. (Deuteronomy 4:9-10, Deuteronomy 6:7,20-25)

Deuteronomy 4:9 Only take heed to thyself, and keep thy soul diligently, lest thou forget the things which thine eyes have seen, and lest they depart from thy heart all the days of thy life: but teach them thy sons, and thy sons' sons;
10 Specially the day that thou stoodest before the Lord thy God in Horeb, when the Lord said unto me, Gather me the people together, and I will make them hear my words, that they may learn to fear me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and that they may teach their children.

Deuteronomy 6:7 And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
20 And when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, What mean the testimonies, and the statutes, and the judgments, which the Lord our God hath commanded you?
21 Then thou shalt say unto thy son, We were Pharaoh's bondmen in Egypt; and the Lord brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand:
22 And the Lord shewed signs and wonders, great and sore, upon Egypt, upon Pharaoh, and upon all his household, before our eyes:
23 And he brought us out from thence, that he might bring us in, to give us the land which he sware unto our fathers.
24 And the Lord commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear the Lord our God, for our good always, that he might preserve us alive, as it is at this day.
25 And it shall be our righteousness, if we observe to do all these commandments before the Lord our God, as he hath commanded us.

We must always teach and preach that Jesus is the Christ through the Old and New Testaments. (2 Timothy 3:14-15, Acts 5:42)

2 Timothy 3:14 But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned them;
15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

878. Christ, who is the image of God.(Deut 4:12,15)
Jn 5:37-39, Jn 14:8-9, 2 Cor 4:4, Col 1:15, Heb 1:3

In the Old Testament, the Israelites heard the voice of God but did not see the image of God. (Deuteronomy 4:12,15)

Deuteronomy 4:12 And the Lord spake unto you out of the midst of the fire: ye heard the voice of the words, but saw no similitude; only ye heard a voice.

15 Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of similitude on the day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire:

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ can hear the voice of God and see the image of God. (John 5:37-39)

John 5:37 And the Father himself, which hath sent me, hath borne witness of me. Ye have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape.

38 And ye have not his word abiding in you: for whom he hath sent, him ye believe not.

39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Jesus Christ is the image of God. (John 14:8-9, 2 Corinthians 4:4, Colossians 1:15, Hebrews 1:3)

John 14:8 Philip saith unto him, Lord, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us.

9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father?

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Colossians 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

Hebrews 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

879. The Lord your God is a jealous God. (Deut 4:24)
Deut 6:15, 1 Cor 16:22, Gal 1:8-9

God is a jealous God. (Deut 4:24, Deut 6:15)

Deut 4:24 For the Lord thy God is a consuming fire, even a jealous God.

Deut 6:15 (For the Lord thy God is a jealous God among you) lest the anger of the Lord thy God be kindled against thee, and destroy thee from off the face of the earth.

Those who do not love Jesus will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

Anyone who preaches any gospel other than that Jesus is the Christ will be cursed. (Gal 1:8-9)

Gal 1:8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

880. The law was given by God until Christ came. (Deut 5:31)
Gal 3:16-19, 21-22

God gave the people of Israel a law so that they lived by this law. (Deut 5:31)

Deut 5:31 But as for thee, stand thou here by me, and I will speak unto thee all the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which thou shalt teach them, that they may do them in the land which I give them to possess it.

Before God gave the Law to the people of Israel, He promised Adam and Abraham that He would send Christ, the eternal covenant. The law given through Moses, 430 years after God promised Abraham to send Christ, was only in effect until Christ came. And the law is leading everyone to believe in Christ by making them realize that they are sinners. (Genesis 3:15, Gal 3:16-19, 21-22)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

17 And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.

18 For if the inheritance be of the law, it is no more of promise: but God gave it to Abraham by promise.

19 Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.

21 Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.

22 But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe.

881. The only Trinity God (Deut 6:4)

Gen 1:26, Gen 3:22, Mt 28:19, Mt 3:16,17, Lk 1:35, 1 Pt 1:2,2 Cor 13:14

The Lord our God is one Lord (Deut 6:4)

Deut 6:4 Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord:

The Triunity God created man. (Genesis 1:26)

Genesis 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

God the Holy Trinity worked together to save us. (Mt 3:16-17)

Mt 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

We were baptized in the name of the Holy Trinity. (Mt 28:19)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

We are saved because of the Holy Trinity. (1 Peter 1:2)

1 Peter 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

Holy Trinity God bless us. (2 Corinthians 13:13)

2 Corinthians 13:14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. Amen.

882. Love God and Christ (Deut 6:5)

Mt 22:37-38, Mk 12:39-30, Mt 10:37-39, 1 Cor 16:22

We must love God. (Deut 6:5, Matt 22:37-38, Mark 12:29-30)

Deut 6:5 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

Matt 22:37 Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.

38 This is the first and great commandment.

Mark 12:29 And Jesus answered him, The first of all the commandments is, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord:

30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this is the first commandment.

We must love Christ. (Matthew 10:37-39, 1 Corinthians 16:22)

Matthew 10:37 He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me.

38 And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me.

39 He that findeth his life shall lose it: and he that loseth his life for my sake shall find it.

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

883. Faithful God, faithful Christ (Deut 7:9)
Rom 8:30, Phil 1:6, 1 Thess 5:24, 1 Cor 1:7-9

God is faithful. (Deut 7:9)

Deut 7:9 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

God has decided to save us and justifies and glorifies us. (Romans 8:30)

Romans 8:30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

God works good works for those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, until the day of Christ Jesus. (Phil 1:6, 1 Thessalonians 5:24)

Phil 1:6 Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:

1 Thessalonians 5:24 Faithful is he that calleth you, who also will do it.

Jesus, the Christ, also establishes us to the day of Christ. (1 Corinthians 1:7-9)

1 Corinthians 1:7 So that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ:

8 Who shall also confirm you unto the end, that ye may be blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.

9 God is faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.

884. God leads us to Christ. (Deut 8:3)

Mt 4:4, Lk 4:4, Jn 6:49-51, Jn 6:53-58, Jn 1:14, Rev 19:13

God leads us to Christ, the Word of God. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus is the Christ whose Word became flesh and appeared to us. (John 1:14, Rev 19:13)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

We must live each day knowing Christ, the bread of life. (Matthew 4:4, Luke 4:4, John 6:49-51, John 6:53-58)

Matthew 4:4 But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

Luke 4:4 And Jesus answered him, saying, It is written, That man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.

John 6:49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.

50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

John 6:53 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you.

54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

55 For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed.

56 He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.

57 As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.

58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.

885. God and Christ led the Israelites in the wilderness for 40 years.(Deut 8:14-16)
1 Cor 10:1-4, Jn 6:48-51, Col 2:12, Rom 6:4

God led the Israelites through Christ in the wilderness for 40 years. (Deuteronomy 8:14-16, 1 Corinthians 10:1-4)

Deuteronomy 8:14 Then thine heart be lifted up, and thou forget the Lord thy God, which brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage;
15 Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness, wherein were fiery serpents, and scorpions, and drought, where there was no water; who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint;
16 Who fed thee in the wilderness with manna, which thy fathers knew not, that he might humble thee, and that he might prove thee, to do thee good at thy latter end;

1 Corinthians 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;
2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;
3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat;
4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

Jesus, the Christ, is the true bread of life. (John 6:48-51)

John 6:48 I am that bread of life.
49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.
50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.
51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

Through baptism we died with Christ and were raised together in Christ. (Col 2:12, Romans 6:4)

Col 2:12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

Romans 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

886. Salvation through faith in Christ, not our justice (Deut 9:5)
Titus 3:5, Eph 2:7-9, Hab 2:4, Rom 1:17

In the Old Testament, the reason the Israelites were able to acquire the land of Canaan was not because of their righteousness, but because of the oath God made to their ancestors, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. (Deut 9:5)

Deut 9:5 Not for thy righteousness, or for the uprightness of thine heart, dost thou go to possess their land: but for the wickedness of these nations the Lord thy God doth drive them out from before thee, and that he may perform the word which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

In the Old Testament, it is prophesied that people will become righteous by believing in Christ. (Hab 2:4)

Hab 2:4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

By the grace of God, we have been saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Romans 1:17, Titus 3:5, Ephesians 2:7-9)

Romans 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Titus 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;

Ephesians 2:7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

9 Not of works, lest any man should boast.

887. The Israelites who rebelled against God eventually killed the Christ. (Deut 9:6-7)
Deut 9:11-13, 22-24, Acts 7:51-52, Acts 3:14-15

In the Old Testament, the Israelites who left Egypt always rebelled against God. (Deut. 9:6-7, Deut. 9:11-13,22-24)

Deut. 9:6 Understand therefore, that the Lord thy God giveth thee not this good land to possess it for thy righteousness; for thou art a stiffnecked people.

7 Remember, and forget not, how thou provokedst the Lord thy God to wrath in the wilderness: from the day that thou didst depart out of the land of Egypt, until ye came unto this place, ye have been rebellious against the Lord.

Deut. 9:11 And it came to pass at the end of forty days and forty nights, that the Lord gave me the two tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.

12 And the Lord said unto me, Arise, get thee down quickly from hence; for thy people which thou hast brought forth out of Egypt have corrupted themselves; they are quickly turned aside out of the way which I commanded them; they have made them a molten image.

13 Furthermore the Lord spake unto me, saying, I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people:

22 And at Taberah, and at Massah, and at Kibrothhattaavah, ye provoked the Lord to wrath.

23 Likewise when the Lord sent you from Kadeshbarnea, saying, Go up and possess the land which I have given you; then ye rebelled against the commandment of the Lord your God, and ye believed him not, nor hearkened to his voice.

24 Ye have been rebellious against the Lord from the day that I knew you.

The Israelites, who had always rebelled against God, eventually killed the Christ whom God had sent. (Acts 7:51-52, Acts 3:14-15)

Acts 7:51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

888. What God requires of us: believing in Christ (Deut 10:12-13)
Ecc 12:1-2, Mt 22:37-38, Jn 6:29, Jn 17:3, Jn 3:16

In the Old Testament, what God required of the people of Israel was to fear God and keep the law that God commanded. (Deut 10:12-13, Ecclesiastes 12:1-2)

Deut 10:12 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,
13 To keep the commandments of the Lord, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?

Ecclesiastes 12:1 Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth, while the evil days come not, nor the years draw nigh, when thou shalt say, I have no pleasure in them;
2 While the sun, or the light, or the moon, or the stars, be not darkened, nor the clouds return after the rain:

To love God is the first commandment. (Mt 22:37-38)

Mt 22:37 Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.
38 This is the first and great commandment.

God sent his only begotten son Jesus to this earth to do the work of Christ in order to save us. (John 3:16)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

It is God's work to believe in Jesus, the one sent by God, as the Christ. (John 6:29, John 17:3)

John 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

889. Christ who gave His life for us (Deut 12:23)
Lev 17:11, Heb 9:22, 25-26

In the Old Testament, God forbade the Israelites to eat blood because blood was life. Also, because life is in the blood, blood made atonement for sins. (Deut 12:23, Lev 17:11)

Deut 12:23 Only be sure that thou eat not the blood: for the blood is the life; and thou mayest not eat the life with the flesh.

Lev 17:11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.

Jesus, the Christ, gave His blood to God for the forgiveness of our sins. (Hebrews 9:22,25-26)

Hebrews 9:22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

890. There is no gospel other than Christ. (Deut 13:10)
Mt 24:24, Mk 13:22, Gal 1:6-9, Acts 4:11-12

In the Old Testament, those who discouraged the Israelites from believing in God were stoned to death. (Deut 13:10)

Deut 13:10 And thou shalt stone him with stones, that he die; because he hath sought to thrust thee away from the Lord thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.

Even now, false Christs and false prophets are deceiving God's chosen ones from believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 24:24, Mark 13:22)

Mt 24:24 For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

Mark 13:22 For false Christs and false prophets shall rise, and shall shew signs and wonders, to seduce, if it were possible, even the elect.

There is no other gospel than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. Those who preach another gospel will be cursed. (Gal 1:6-9)

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:
7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

There is no other way to salvation than to believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 4:11-12)

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

891. God made us His people through Christ. (Duet 14:2)
Titus 2:13-14, 1 Pt 2:9

In the Old Testament, God chose the Israelites and made them His people. (Deut 14:2)

Deut 14:2 For thou art an holy people unto the Lord thy God, and the Lord hath chosen thee to be a peculiar people unto himself, above all the nations that are upon the earth.

Because Jesus gave Himself for us, we became God's people. (Titus 2:13-14, 1 Pet 2:9)

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;
14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.

1 Pet 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

892. Christ as a prophet like Moses (Deut 18:15,18)

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would send a prophet like Moses to speak to us. (Deuteronomy 18:15,18)

Deuteronomy 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

18 I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him.

Moses served as the king, prophet, and priest of Israel. (Deut 34:10, Lev 8:15, Ex 32:31)

Moses acted as a prophet. (Deut 34:10)

Deut 34:10 And there arose not a prophet since in Israel like unto Moses, whom the Lord knew face to face,

Moses served as a priest. (Lev 8:15)

Lev 8:15 And he slew it; and Moses took the blood, and put it upon the horns of the altar round about with his finger, and purified the altar, and poured the blood at the bottom of the altar, and sanctified it, to make reconciliation upon it.

Moses was the shepherd and king of Israel. (Ex 32:31-32)

Ex 32:31 And Moses returned unto the Lord, and said, Oh, this people have sinned a great sin, and have made them gods of gold.

32 Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin--; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written.

Jesus is the Christ. (King, Prophet, Priest)

(King) Matthew 27:11 And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews? And Jesus said unto him, Thou sayest.

(Prophet) John 4:19 The woman saith unto him, Sir, I perceive that thou art a prophet.

(Priest) Hebrews 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

God sent a prophet like Moses for us, the Christ Jesus. (Acts 3:20-24)

Acts 3:20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.

24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

893. Christ was cursed by God to save us. (Deut 21:22-23)
Jn 19:30-31, Gal 3:13, 2 Cor 5:21

In the Old Testament, a person who died on a tree was cursed by God. (Deut 21:22-23)

Deut 21:22 And if a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be to be put to death, and thou hang him on a tree:

23 His body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt in any wise bury him that day; (for he that is hanged is accursed of God;) that thy land be not defiled, which the Lord thy God giveth thee for an inheritance.

Jesus died on the cross under the curse of God in our place to save us. (John 19:30-31, Galatians 3:13, 2 Corinthians 5:21)

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

31 The Jews therefore, because it was the preparation, that the bodies should not remain upon the cross on the sabbath day, (for that sabbath day was an high day,) besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.

Galatians 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

894. Christ who delivered us from the curse of the law (Deut 27:26)
Gal 3:10-11, 13-14

Those who did not keep all the laws in the Old Testament were cursed. (Deut 27:26)

Deut 27:26 Cursed be he that confirmeth not all the words of this law to do them. And all the people shall say, Amen.

But no one can keep the whole law. So Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by taking the curse for us. (Gal 3:10-11,13-14)

Gal 3:10 For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.

11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.

13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

895. The gospel of Christ revealed to us. (Deut 29:4)

Isa 6:9-10, Mt 13:14-15, Mk 4:11-12, Lk 8:10, Jn 12:39-41, Acts 28:26-27, Rom 11:7-10

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the people of Israel would not recognize Christ when He came. (Deut 29:4, Isa 6:9-10)

Deut 29:4 Yet the Lord hath not given you an heart to perceive, and eyes to see, and ears to hear, unto this day.

Isa 6:9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, the Israelites did not recognize Christ when Christ came. (Matthew 13:14-15, Mark 4:11-12, Luke 8:10, John 12:39-41, Acts 28:26-27, Romans 11:7-10)

Matthew 13:14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:

15 For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

Mark 4:11 And he said unto them, Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God: but unto them that are without, all these things are done in parables:

12 That seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and their sins should be forgiven them.

Luke 8:10 And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand.

John 12:39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,

40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.

41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

Acts 28:26 Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive:

27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

Romans 11:7 What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.

8 (According as it is written, God hath given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;) unto this day.

9 And David saith, Let their table be made a snare, and a trap, and a stumblingblock, and a recompence unto them:

10 Let their eyes be darkened, that they may not see, and bow down their back alway.

But we came to know and believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 16:16)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

896. God even promised to evangelize the Gentiles. (Deut 29:13-15)
Rom 4:16, Gal 3:16, Acts 2:38-39, Mt 28:19, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, God said that He would be the God of the Gentiles as well as the Israelites. (Deut 29:13-15)

Deut 29:13 That he may establish thee to day for a people unto himself, and that he may be unto thee a God, as he hath said unto thee, and as he hath sworn unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

14 Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath;

15 But with him that standeth here with us this day before the Lord our God, and also with him that is not here with us this day:

Just as Abraham believed in the coming Christ, so the Gentiles who believe in Jesus are the heirs of God. (Galatians 3:16, Romans 4:16)

Galatians 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

Romans 4:16 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,

All who believe in Jesus as the Christ receive forgiveness of sins and receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. (Acts 2:38-39)

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

So we must go to all the Gentiles and tell them that Jesus is the Christ so that they can be saved. (Matthew 28:19, Acts 1:8)

Matthew 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

897. God circumcises hearts to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Deut 30:2,6)
Ezk 36:26-27, Rom 2:28-29, Heb 8:6-10, Acts 5:31-32

In the Old Testament, God promised people that if they obeyed His Word, He would circumcise their hearts and give them life. (Deut 30:2,6, Eze 36:26-27)

Deut 30:2 And shalt return unto the Lord thy God, and shalt obey his voice according to all that I command thee this day, thou and thy children, with all thine heart, and with all thy soul;
6 And the Lord thy God will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.

Eze 36:26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.

27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.

According to the prophecy of the Old Testament, those who believed in Jesus as the Christ were circumcised in their hearts. This circumcision is the true circumcision. (Hebrews 8:6-10, Romans 2:28-29, Acts 5:30-32)

Hebrews 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

Romans 2:28 For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; neither is that circumcision, which is outward in the flesh:
29 But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

898. God accomplished justice through Christ. (Deut 32:4)
Rev 15:3-4, Isa 53:6, 2 Cor 5:21, Gal 3:13, 1 Pt 2:22-24, Rom 4:24-25, Rom 8:3-4

God is a God of justice. (Deut 32:4)

Deut 32:4 He is the Rock, his work is perfect: for all his ways are judgment: a God of truth and without iniquity, just and right is he.

Moses praised God who would accomplish justice through Christ. (Rev 15:3-4)

Rev 15:3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints.

4 Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest.

In the Old Testament, God promised to fulfill God's justice toward us by having Christ die for us. (Isa 53:6)

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Jesus took our sins and died on the cross to fulfill God's justice for us. (2 Corinthians 5:21, Gal 3:13, 1 Pet 2:22-24, Romans 4:24-25, Romans 8:3-4)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

1 Pet 2:22 Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth:

23 Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed himself to him that judgeth righteously:

24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

Romans 4:24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

Romans 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

4 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

899. God the Father who made us (Deut 32:6)

Gen 1:26-27, 2 Cor 4:4, Gen 2:7, Isa 63:16, Isa 64:8, 2 Sam 7:14, 1 Chr 17:13, Mal 2:10

God made us. (Deut 32:6)

Deut 32:6 Do ye thus requite the Lord, O foolish people and unwise? is not he thy father that hath bought thee? hath he not made thee, and established thee?

God made us in His image. (Genesis 1:26-27)

Genesis 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

We, who were originally dust, became living spirits through the breath of God, Christ. (Genesis 2:7)

Genesis 2:7 And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

The true image of God is Christ. (2 Corinthians 4:4)

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

God is our Father who made us. (Isa 63:16, Isa 64:8, 2 Samuel 7:14, 1 Chronicles 17:13, Mal 2:10)

Isa 63:16 Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O Lord, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.

Isa 64:8 But now, O Lord, thou art our father; we are the clay, and thou our potter; and we all are the work of thy hand.

2 Samuel 7:14 I will be his father, and he shall be my son. If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men:

1 Chronicles 17:13 I will be his father, and he shall be my son: and I will not take my mercy away from him, as I took it from him that was before thee:

Mal 2:10 Have we not all one father? hath not one God created us? why do we deal treacherously every man against his brother, by profaning the covenant of our fathers?

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, God is our Father. (1 John 5:1, John 1:12)

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

John 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

900. Teach Christ to your children. (Deut 32:7)

Ex 12:26-27, Ex 13:14-16, 2 Tim 3:15, Ex 10:2, Ps 44:1, Ps 78:5-8

In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites to teach their children what God had done.

Deut 32:7 Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations: ask thy father, and he will shew thee; thy elders, and they will tell thee.

Ex 12:26 And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean ye by this service?

27 That ye shall say, It is the sacrifice of the Lord's passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.

Ex 13:14 And it shall be when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, What is this? that thou shalt say unto him, By strength of hand the Lord brought us out from Egypt, from the house of bondage:

15 And it came to pass, when Pharaoh would hardly let us go, that the Lord slew all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of man, and the firstborn of beast: therefore I sacrifice to the Lord all that openeth the matrix, being males; but all the firstborn of my children I redeem.

16 And it shall be for a token upon thine hand, and for frontlets between thine eyes: for by strength of hand the Lord brought us forth out of Egypt.

Ex 10:2 And that thou mayest tell in the ears of thy son, and of thy son's son, what things I have wrought in Egypt, and my signs which I have done among them; that ye may know how that I am the Lord.

Ps 44:1 We have heard with our ears, O God, our fathers have told us, what work thou didst in their days, in the times of old.

Ps 78:5 For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children:

6 That the generation to come might know them, even the children which should be born; who should arise and declare them to their children:

7 That they might set their hope in God, and not forget the works of God, but keep his commandments:

8 And might not be as their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation; a generation that set not their heart aright, and whose spirit was not stedfast with God.

We must teach our children that Jesus is the Christ through the Old and New Testaments. (2 Timothy 3:15)

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

901. God who will spread the gospel to the Gentiles and make the people of Israel jealous (Deut 32:21)
Rom 10:16-21

In the Old Testament, the Israelites worshiped idols and God was jealous. So God said that He would preach the gospel to the Gentiles and make the Israelites jealous. (Deut 32:21)

Deut 32:21 They have moved me to jealousy with that which is not God; they have provoked me to anger with their vanities: and I will move them to jealousy with those which are not a people; I will provoke them to anger with a foolish nation.

As the Old Testament prophesied, God allowed the gospel to be preached to the Gentiles, making the Israelites jealous of those who did not believe that Jesus was the Christ. (Romans 10:16-21)

Romans 10:16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

18 But I say, Have they not heard? Yes verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world.

19 But I say, Did not Israel know? First Moses saith, I will provoke you to jealousy by them that are no people, and by a foolish nation I will anger you.

20 But Esaias is very bold, and saith, I was found of them that sought me not; I was made manifest unto them that asked not after me.

21 But to Israel he saith, All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.

902. Christ who destroyed our enemies (Deut 32:43)
1 Jn 3:8, Rom 16:20, Rev 12:12, Rev 19:2, Col 2:13-15

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would destroy our enemies and forgive our sins. (Deut 32:43)

Deut 32:43 Rejoice, O ye nations, with his people: for he will avenge the blood of his servants, and will render vengeance to his adversaries, and will be merciful unto his land, and to his people.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Christ destroyed the work of our enemy, the devil, by dying on the cross. (1 John 3:8, Col 2:13-15)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

God will destroy Satan forever. (Rom 16:20, Rev 12:12, Rev 19:2)

Rom 16:20 And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

Rev 12:12 Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time.

Rev 19:2 For true and righteous are his judgments: for he hath judged the great whore, which did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and hath avenged the blood of his servants at her hand.

903. Christ to come through Judah (Deut 33:7)
Gen 49:8-10, Ruth 4:16-22, Mt 1:1-6

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah. In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ, who would come as a descendant of Judah, would play the role of a true king. (Deut 33:7, Gen 49:8-10)

Deut 33:7 And this is the blessing of Judah: and he said, Hear, Lord, the voice of Judah, and bring him unto his people: let his hands be sufficient for him; and be thou an help to him from his enemies.

Gen 49:8 Judah, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before thee.

9 Judah is a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up?

10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus, the Christ, came as a descendant of Judah. (Ruth 4:16-22, Matthew 1:1-6,16)

Ruth 4:16 And Naomi took the child, and laid it in her bosom, and became nurse unto it.

17 And the women her neighbours gave it a name, saying, There is a son born to Naomi; and they called his name Obed: he is the father of Jesse, the father of David.

18 Now these are the generations of Pharez: Pharez begat Hezron,

19 And Hezron begat Ram, and Ram begat Amminadab,

20 And Amminadab begat Nahshon, and Nahshon begat Salmon,

21 And Salmon begat Boaz, and Boaz begat Obed,

22 And Obed begat Jesse, and Jesse begat David.

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;

3 And Judas begat Phares and Zara of Thamar; and Phares begat Esrom; and Esrom begat Aram;

4 And Aram begat Aminadab; and Aminadab begat Naasson; and Naasson begat Salmon;

5 And Salmon begat Booz of Rachab; and Booz begat Obed of Ruth; and Obed begat Jesse;

6 And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her that had been the wife of Urias;

16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

- 904. God promised world evangelization (Jos 1:2-5)
- 905. Christ who will give us eternal rest (Jos 1:13)
- 906. Rahab in the genealogy of Jesus (Jos 2:11,21)
- 907. Teach your children the God and Christ who guided us (Jos 4:6-7)
- 910. God and the Christ have mercy on the Gentiles. (Jos 9:9-11)
- 911. God and Christ work for the salvation of the Gentiles. (Jos 10:12-14)
- 912. Christ Stepping on Satan's Head (Jos 10:23-24)
- 913. When Christ is with us, we will evangelize the world. (Jos 14:10-12)
- 914. Do not delay world evangelization. (Jos 18:2-4)
- 915. Christ, the city of refuge (Jos 20:2-3, 6)
- 916. World evangelization to be fulfilled according to God's promise (Jos 21:44-45)
- 917. Love God and Christ. (Jos 23:6,8,11)
- 918. God fighting for us (Jos 23:3,10)
- 919. Serve only the Lord. (Jos 24:14,23)
- 920. Joseph was buried in Canaan, the land where Christ would come, according to his wishes. (Jos 24:32)

904. God promised world evangelization (Jos 1:2-5)
Mt 20:18-20, Mk 16:15-16, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, God told Joshua that he would completely occupy the land of Canaan. (Joshua 1:2-5)

Joshua 1:2 Moses my servant is dead; now therefore arise, go over this Jordan, thou, and all this people, unto the land which I do give to them, even to the children of Israel.

3 Every place that the sole of your foot shall tread upon, that have I given unto you, as I said unto Moses.

4 From the wilderness and this Lebanon even unto the great river, the river Euphrates, all the land of the Hittites, and unto the great sea toward the going down of the sun, shall be your coast.

5 There shall not any man be able to stand before thee all the days of thy life: as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee: I will not fail thee, nor forsake thee.

Jesus commanded us to do world evangelization and promised world evangelization. (Mt 28:18-20, Mark 16:15-16, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

905. Christ who will give us eternal rest (Jos 1:13)
Deut 3:20, Deut 25:19, Heb 4:8-9, Heb 6:17-20

In the Old Testament, God promised to give rest to the Israelites entering the land of Canaan. (Jos 1:13, Deut 3:20, Deut 25:19)

Jos 1:13 Remember the word which Moses the servant of the Lord commanded you, saying, The Lord your God hath given you rest, and hath given you this land.

Deut 3:20 Until the Lord have given rest unto your brethren, as well as unto you, and until they also possess the land which the Lord your God hath given them beyond Jordan: and then shall ye return every man unto his possession, which I have given you.

Deut 25:19 Therefore it shall be, when the Lord thy God hath given thee rest from all thine enemies round about, in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it, that thou shalt blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven; thou shalt not forget it.

The rest God gave to the Israelites in the Old Testament is not a perfect and eternal rest. (Heb 4:8-9)

Heb 4:8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day.
9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God.

God has given us complete and eternal rest through Jesus, the Christ. (Heb 6:17-20)

Heb 6:17 Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath:

18 That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:

19 Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;

20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

906. Rahab in the genealogy of Jesus (Jos 2:11,21)
Jos 6:17,25, Jame 2:25, Mt 1:5-6

In the Old Testament, Rahab heard what God had done for the people of Israel and believed in the God of Israel as the true God. So Rahab hid the Israeli spies who had come to spy out Jericho. (Jos 2:11,21, James 2:25)

Jos 2:11 And as soon as we had heard these things, our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more courage in any man, because of you: for the Lord your God, he is God in heaven above, and in earth beneath.

21 And she said, According unto your words, so be it. And she sent them away, and they departed: and she bound the scarlet line in the window.

James 2:25 Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way?

The Israelites who conquered Jericho saved Rahab and her family. (Jos 6:19,25)

Jos 6:19 But all the silver, and gold, and vessels of brass and iron, are consecrated unto the Lord: they shall come into the treasury of the Lord.

25 And Joshua saved Rahab the harlot alive, and her father's household, and all that she had; and she dwelleth in Israel even unto this day; because she hid the messengers, which Joshua sent to spy out Jericho.

As a descendant of Rahab, Jesus, the Christ, came. (Mt 1:5-6)

Mt 1:5 And Salmon begat Booz of Rachab; and Booz begat Obed of Ruth; and Obed begat Jesse;

6 And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her that had been the wife of Urias;

907. Teach your children the God and Christ who guided us
(Jos 4:6-7)

Jos 4:21-22, 2 Tim 3:15, Ex 12:26-27, Deut 32:7, Ps 44:1

In the Old Testament, God commanded the people of Israel to teach them about the salvation that God had given them. (Jos 4:6-7, Jos 4:21-22, Ex 12:26, De 32:7, Ps 44:1)

Jos 4:6 That this may be a sign among you, that when your children ask their fathers in time to come, saying, What mean ye by these stones?

7 Then ye shall answer them, That the waters of Jordan were cut off before the ark of the covenant of the Lord; when it passed over Jordan, the waters of Jordan were cut off: and these stones shall be for a memorial unto the children of Israel for ever.

Jos 4:21 And he spake unto the children of Israel, saying, When your children shall ask their fathers in time to come, saying, What mean these stones?

22 Then ye shall let your children know, saying, Israel came over this Jordan on dry land.

Ex 12:26 And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean ye by this service?

Deut 32:7 Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations: ask thy father, and he will shew thee; thy elders, and they will tell thee.

Ps 44:1 We have heard with our ears, O God, our fathers have told us, what work thou didst in their days, in the times of old.

We must teach our children through the Old and New Testaments that Jesus is the Christ who saved us. (2 Timothy 3:15)

2 Timothy 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

910. God and the Christ have mercy on the Gentiles. (Jos 9:9-11)
Jos 10:6-8, Mt 15:24-28

In the Old Testament, the Gibeonites asked Joshua to keep their people as slaves. (Joshua 9:9-11)

Joshua 9:9 And they said unto him, From a very far country thy servants are come because of the name of the Lord thy God: for we have heard the fame of him, and all that he did in Egypt,
10 And all that he did to the two kings of the Amorites, that were beyond Jordan, to Sihon king of Heshbon, and to Og king of Bashan, which was at Ashtaroath.
11 Wherefore our elders and all the inhabitants of our country spake to us, saying, Take victuals with you for the journey, and go to meet them, and say unto them, We are your servants: therefore now make ye a league with us.

In the Old Testament, when the Gibeonites were attacked by other tribes, Joshua rescued them. (Joshua 10:6-8)

Joshua 10:6 And the men of Gibeon sent unto Joshua to the camp to Gilgal, saying, Slack not thy hand from thy servants; come up to us quickly, and save us, and help us: for all the kings of the Amorites that dwell in the mountains are gathered together against us.
7 So Joshua ascended from Gilgal, he, and all the people of war with him, and all the mighty men of valour.
8 And the Lord said unto Joshua, Fear them not: for I have delivered them into thine hand; there shall not a man of them stand before thee.

When a Gentile woman asked her Jesus to heal her own daughter, Jesus healed her daughter. (Matthew 15:24-28)

Matthew 15:24 But he answered and said, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel.
25 Then came she and worshipped him, saying, Lord, help me.
26 But he answered and said, It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs.
27 And she said, Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table.
28 Then Jesus answered and said unto her, O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt. And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.

As God and the Christ, Jesus was also gracious to the Gentiles.

911. God and Christ work for the salvation of the Gentiles. (Jos 10:12-14)
Isa 9:1, Mt 15:27-28, Lk 17:11-18, Mt 4:12-17, Mk 1:14

In the Old Testament, Joshua saved the Gibeonites who made a pact with the Israelites. (Joshua 10:12-14)

Joshua 10:12 Then spake Joshua to the Lord in the day when the Lord delivered up the Amorites before the children of Israel, and he said in the sight of Israel, Sun, stand thou still upon Gibeon; and thou, Moon, in the valley of Ajalon.

13 And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies. Is not this written in the book of Jasher? So the sun stood still in the midst of heaven, and hasted not to go down about a whole day.

14 And there was no day like that before it or after it, that the Lord hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the Lord fought for Israel.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would glorify the Gentiles. (Isa 9:1)

Isa 9:1 Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.

As the Christ, Jesus preached the gospel to the Gentiles and provided salvation according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Matthew 15:27-28, Luke 17:11-18, Matthew 4:12-17, Mark 1:14)

Matthew 15:27 And she said, Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table.

28 Then Jesus answered and said unto her, O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt. And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.

Luke 17:11 And it came to pass, as he went to Jerusalem, that he passed through the midst of Samaria and Galilee.

12 And as he entered into a certain village, there met him ten men that were lepers, which stood afar off:

13 And they lifted up their voices, and said, Jesus, Master, have mercy on us.

14 And when he saw them, he said unto them, Go shew yourselves unto the priests. And it came to pass, that, as they went, they were cleansed.

15 And one of them, when he saw that he was healed, turned back, and with a loud voice glorified God,

16 And fell down on his face at his feet, giving him thanks: and he was a Samaritan.

17 And Jesus answering said, Were there not ten cleansed? but where are the nine?

18 There are not found that returned to give glory to God, save this stranger.

Matthew 4:12 Now when Jesus had heard that John was cast into prison, he departed into Galilee;

13 And leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the sea coast, in the borders of Zabulon and Nephthalim:

14 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,

15 The land of Zabulon, and the land of Nephthalim, by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles;

16 The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up.

17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Mark 1:14 Now after that John was put in prison, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God,

912. Christ Stepping on Satan's Head (Jos 10:23-24)

Ps 110:1, Rom 16:20, 1 Cor 15:25, 1 Jn 3:8, Mt 22:43-44, Mk 12:35-36, Lk 20:41-43, Acts 2:33-36, Heb 1:13, Heb 10:12-13

In the Old Testament, Joshua commanded his commanders to trample the heads of the Gentile kings who attacked the Gibeonites. (Joshua 10:23-24)

Joshua 10:23 And they did so, and brought forth those five kings unto him out of the cave, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, and the king of Eglon.

24 And it came to pass, when they brought out those kings unto Joshua, that Joshua called for all the men of Israel, and said unto the captains of the men of war which went with him, Come near, put your feet upon the necks of these kings. And they came near, and put their feet upon the necks of them.

It was foretold in the Old Testament that God would cause Christ to trample upon Christ's enemies. (Psalm 110:1)

Psalm 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Jesus revealed to the Israelites that He was the Christ who would crush Satan's head. (Matthew 22:43-44, Mark 12:35-36, Luke 20:41-43)

Matthew 22:43 He saith unto them, How then doth David in spirit call him Lord, saying,
44 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool?

Mark 12:35 And Jesus answered and said, while he taught in the temple, How say the scribes that Christ is the son of David?

36 For David himself said by the Holy Ghost, The Lord said to my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Luke 20:41 And he said unto them, How say they that Christ is David's son?

42 And David himself saith in the book of Psalms, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,
43 Till I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Jesus is the Christ who destroyed the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8, Acts 2:23,34-36)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Acts 2:23 Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:

34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would crush Satan at the feet of Christ. (Heb 1:13)

Heb 1:13 But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?

God will completely destroy Satan through Jesus, the Christ. (Romans 16:20, Hebrews 10:12, 1 Corinthians 15:25)

Romans 16:20 And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ

be with you. Amen.

Hebrews 10:12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

1 Corinthians 15:25 For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet.

913. When Christ is with us, we will evangelize the world. (Jos 14:10-12)
Gen 26:3-4, Mt 28:18-20

God told Abraham that Abraham's descendants would multiply and that all peoples under the world would be blessed through Abraham's descendant, Christ. (Gen. 26:3-4)

Gen. 26:3 Sojourn in this land, and I will be with thee, and will bless thee; for unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I sware unto Abraham thy father;
4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

In the Old Testament, the 80-year-old Caleb asked Joshua to ask for the mountain of Anak because if God were with him he could drive out the mountain of Anak. (Joshua 14:10-12)

Joshua 14:10 And now, behold, the Lord hath kept me alive, as he said, these forty and five years, even since the Lord spake this word unto Moses, while the children of Israel wandered in the wilderness: and now, lo, I am this day fourscore and five years old.

11 As yet I am as strong this day as I was in the day that Moses sent me: as my strength was then, even so is my strength now, for war, both to go out, and to come in.

12 Now therefore give me this mountain, whereof the Lord spake in that day; for thou heardest in that day how the Anakims were there, and that the cities were great and fenced: if so be the Lord will be with me, then I shall be able to drive them out, as the Lord said.

Jesus, the Christ, has commanded us to evangelize the world. Because Jesus is always with us, we can do world evangelization. (Mt 28:18-20)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

914. Do not delay world evangelization. (Jos 18:2-4)

Heb 12:1, 1 Cor 9:24, Phil 3:8, Acts 19:21, Rom 1:15, Rom 15:28

In the Old Testament, Joshua said to the tribes that did not receive the land of Canaan, do not delay and go to conquer the land of Canaan, which was given to them. (Joshua 18:2-4)

Joshua 18:2 And there remained among the children of Israel seven tribes, which had not yet received their inheritance.

3 And Joshua said unto the children of Israel, How long are ye slack to go to possess the land, which the Lord God of your fathers hath given you?

4 Give out from among you three men for each tribe: and I will send them, and they shall rise, and go through the land, and describe it according to the inheritance of them; and they shall come again to me.

Paul risked his whole life to do world evangelization quickly. (Acts 9:21, Romans 1:15, Romans 15:28)

Acts 9:21 But all that heard him were amazed, and said; Is not this he that destroyed them which called on this name in Jerusalem, and came hither for that intent, that he might bring them bound unto the chief priests?

Romans 1:15 So, as much as in me is, I am ready to preach the gospel to you that are at Rome also.

Romans 15:28 When therefore I have performed this, and have sealed to them this fruit, I will come by you into Spain.

There are many witnesses in the Bible, so we must quickly accomplish the world evangelization given to us. (Hebrews 12:1, 1 Corinthians 9:24)

Hebrews 12:1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,

1 Corinthians 9:24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.

915. Christ, the city of refuge (Jos 20:2-3, 6)
Lk 23:34, Acts 3:14-15,17, Heb 6:20, Heb 9:11-12

In the Old Testament, God commanded the Israelites to build a city of refuge where those who accidentally killed a man could escape. (Joshua 20:2-3,6)

Joshua 20:2 Speak to the children of Israel, saying, Appoint out for you cities of refuge, whereof I spake unto you by the hand of Moses:

3 That the slayer that killeth any person unawares and unwittingly may flee thither: and they shall be your refuge from the avenger of blood.

6 And he shall dwell in that city, until he stand before the congregation for judgment, and until the death of the high priest that shall be in those days: then shall the slayer return, and come unto his own city, and unto his own house, unto the city from whence he fled.

The people of Israel did not know that Jesus was the Christ, so they accidentally killed the Christ, Jesus. (Luke 23:34, Acts 3:14-15,17)

Luke 23:34 Then said Jesus, Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;
15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.
17 And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance ye did it, as did also your rulers.

As the true high priest, Jesus died on the cross for our sins. (Heb 6:20, Heb 9:11-12)

Heb 6:20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Jesus is our city of refuge. (Mt 11:28)

Mt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

916. World evangelization to be fulfilled according to God's promise (Jos 21:44-45)
Gen 22:18, Gen 26:4, Gal 3:16, Acts 1:8, Mt 24:14

The land of Canaan, which God promised to the Israelites in the Old Testament, was conquered by the Israelites. (Joshua 21:44-45)

Joshua 21:44 And the Lord gave them rest round about, according to all that he sware unto their fathers: and there stood not a man of all their enemies before them; the Lord delivered all their enemies into their hand.
45 There failed not ought of any good thing which the Lord had spoken unto the house of Israel; all came to pass.

In the Old Testament, God promised that all peoples under the heavens would be blessed through Christ. (Gen 22:18, Gen 26:4, Gal 3:16)

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gen 26:4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

God will spread the gospel throughout the world through us who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 1:8)

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

After the gospel is preached all over the world, the end of this world will come and Jesus Christ will return. (Mt 24:14)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

917. Love God and Christ. (Jos 23:6,8,11)
1 Cor 16:22, Gal 1:7-9

In the Old Testament, Joshua commanded the Israelites to keep all the Law of Moses and to love God. (Joshua 23:6,8,11)

Joshua 23:6 Be ye therefore very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the law of Moses, that ye turn not aside therefrom to the right hand or to the left;
8 But cleave unto the Lord your God, as ye have done unto this day.
11 Take good heed therefore unto yourselves, that ye love the Lord your God.

Anyone who does not love Jesus, the Christ, will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

Also, those who preach any gospel other than that Jesus is the Christ will be cursed. (Gal 1:7-9)

Gal 1:7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.
8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.
9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

918. God fighting for us (Jos 23:3,10)

Ex 14:14,25, Deut 1:30, Deut 20:4, Jos 10:14,42

In the Old Testament, when the people of Israel believed in God, God fought for them.

Jos 23:3 And ye have seen all that the Lord your God hath done unto all these nations because of you; for the Lord your God is he that hath fought for you.

10 One man of you shall chase a thousand: for the Lord your God, he it is that fighteth for you, as he hath promised you.

Ex 14:14 The Lord shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace.

25 And took off their chariot wheels, that they drave them heavily: so that the Egyptians said, Let us flee from the face of Israel; for the Lord fighteth for them against the Egyptians.

Deut 1:30 The Lord your God which goeth before you, he shall fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes;

Deut 20:4 For the Lord your God is he that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.

Jos 10:14 And there was no day like that before it or after it, that the Lord hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the Lord fought for Israel.

42 And all these kings and their land did Joshua take at one time, because the Lord God of Israel fought for Israel.

919. Serve only the Lord. (Jos 24:14,23)
Deut 10:12, 1 Cor 10:20-21, Mt 6:24, Acts 4:12, Jn 14:6

In the Old Testament, Joshua commanded the Israelites to abandon foreign gods and serve only God. (Joshua 24:14,23)

Joshua 24:14 Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve ye the Lord.
23 Now therefore put away, said he, the strange gods which are among you, and incline your heart unto the Lord God of Israel.

In the Old Testament, Moses also commanded the Israelites to fear God and serve only God. (Deut 10:12)

Deut 10:12 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,

The Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils. (1 Cor 10:20-21)

1 Cor 10:20 But I say, that the things which the Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God: and I would not that ye should have fellowship with devils.
21 Ye cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils: ye cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils.

We cannot serve God and money at the same time. (Mt 6:24)

Mt 6:24 No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.

Only those who believe in Jesus as the Christ can be saved. (Acts 4:12, John 14:6)

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

920. Joseph was buried in Canaan, the land where Christ would come, according to his wishes. (Jos 24:32)
Gen 50:25-26, Heb 11:22, 39-40

In the Old Testament, Joseph wished to be buried in the land where Christ would come. And Joseph was buried in Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Joshua 24:32, Genesis 50:25-26)

Joshua 24:32 And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem, in a parcel of ground which Jacob bought of the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem for an hundred pieces of silver: and it became the inheritance of the children of Joseph.

Genesis 50:25 And Joseph took an oath of the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones from hence.

26 So Joseph died, being an hundred and ten years old: and they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt.

Joseph believed in the coming Christ. So Joseph wished to be buried in the land where Christ would come. (Heb 11:22,39-40)

Heb 11:22 By faith Joseph, when he died, made mention of the departing of the children of Israel; and gave commandment concerning his bones.

39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise:

40 God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect.

Judges**Bible**

- 922. Teach your children to know God. (Judg 2:10)
- 923. Christ saves us. (Judg 2:16,18)
- 924. Christ made alive us, who were dead in trespasses and sins. (Judg 3:5-11)
- 925. Christ who smashed Satan's head (Judg 3:20-21)
- 926. God fighting for the Israelites (Judg 5:20-21)
- 928. The Gentiles who were appointed for eternal life believed. (Judg 4:9)
- 930. When God is with us, world evangelization will take place. (Judg 6:16)
- 931. Gideon believed in God and in Christ. (Judg 6:34)
- 932. Jephthah believed in God and in Christ. (Judg 11:29)
- 934. Samson believed in God and in Christ. (Judg 13:24-25)
- 935. Christ, the true King who will guide us (Judg 21:25)

922. Teach your children to know God. (Judg 2:10)
Deut 6:6-7, Ps 78:5-8, 2 Tim 2:2

In the Old Testament, after Joshua died, the next generation did not know God, nor did they know what God had done. (Judges 2:10)

Judges 2:10 And also all that generation were gathered unto their fathers: and there arose another generation after them, which knew not the Lord, nor yet the works which he had done for Israel.

In the Old Testament, God commanded the people of Israel to teach their children about God and what God has done. (Deut 6:6-7, Psalm 78:5-8)

Deut 6:6 And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart:

7 And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.

Psalm 78:5 For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children:

6 That the generation to come might know them, even the children which should be born; who should arise and declare them to their children:

7 That they might set their hope in God, and not forget the works of God, but keep his commandments:

8 And might not be as their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation; a generation that set not their heart aright, and whose spirit was not stedfast with God.

We must teach our children and the faithful that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Tim 3:15, 2 Tim 2:2)

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

2 Tim 2:2 And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also.

923. Christ saves us. (Judg 2:16,18)

Acts 13:20, Mt 1:21, Lk 1:68-71, Lk 2:25-26, 30, Jn 3:17, Jn 12:47, Acts 2:21, Acts 16:31, Rom 1:16, Rom 10:9

In the Age of Judges in the Old Testament, God saved the people of Israel through the judges. (Judges 2:16,18, Acts 13:20)

Judges 2:16 Nevertheless the Lord raised up judges, which delivered them out of the hand of those that spoiled them.
18 And when the Lord raised them up judges, then the Lord was with the judge, and delivered them out of the hand of their enemies all the days of the judge: for it repented the Lord because of their groanings by reason of them that oppressed them and vexed them.

Acts 13:20 And after that he gave unto them judges about the space of four hundred and fifty years, until Samuel the prophet.

God saved us through Jesus, the Christ promised in the Old Testament. (Matthew 1:21, Luke 1:68-71, Luke 2:25-26,30, John 3:17, John 12:47)

Matthew 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

Luke 1:68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:
71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;

Luke 2:25 And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him.
26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death, before he had seen the Lord's Christ.
30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,

John 3:17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

John 12:47 And if any man hear my words, and believe not, I judge him not: for I came not to judge the world, but to save the world.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are saved. (Acts 2:21, Acts 16:31, Romans 1:16, Romans 10:9)

Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Acts 16:31 d thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

Romans 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

Romans 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

924. Christ made alive us, who were dead in trespasses and sins. (Judg 3:5-11)
Eph 2:1-7

In the Old Testament, the Israelites who lived in the land of Canaan committed the sin of worshiping foreign gods. God was angry with this and made the people of Israel slaves to the Gentiles. When the people of Israel were suffering, they cried out to God, and God raised up judges to save them. (Judges 3:5-11)

Judges 3:5 And the children of Israel dwelt among the Canaanites, Hittites, and Amorites, and Perizzites, and Hivites, and Jebusites:

6 And they took their daughters to be their wives, and gave their daughters to their sons, and served their gods.

7 And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the Lord, and forgot the Lord their God, and served Baalim and the groves.

8 Therefore the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel, and he sold them into the hand of Chushanrishathaim king of Mesopotamia: and the children of Israel served Chushanrishathaim eight years.

9 And when the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, the Lord raised up a deliverer to the children of Israel, who delivered them, even Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother.

10 And the Spirit of the Lord came upon him, and he judged Israel, and went out to war: and the Lord delivered Chushanrishathaim king of Mesopotamia into his hand; and his hand prevailed against Chushanrishathaim.

11 And the land had rest forty years. And Othniel the son of Kenaz died.

We had died in our sins and trespasses. But God loves us and sent Christ to this earth to save us. (Eph 2:1-7)

Eph 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;

2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:

3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:

7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

925. Christ who smashed Satan's head (Judg 3:20-21)
Judg 3:28, Gen 3:15, 1 Jn 3:8, Col 2:13-15

In the Old Testament, the judge Ehud killed the king of the enemy who was tormenting the people of Israel. (Judges 3:20-21, Judges 3:28)

Judges 3:20 And Ehud came unto him; and he was sitting in a summer parlour, which he had for himself alone. And Ehud said, I have a message from God unto thee. And he arose out of his seat.
21 And Ehud put forth his left hand, and took the dagger from his right thigh, and thrust it into his belly:

Judges 3:28 And he said unto them, Follow after me: for the Lord hath delivered your enemies the Moabites into your hand. And they went down after him, and took the fords of Jordan toward Moab, and suffered not a man to pass over.

The Old Testament prophesied that the coming Christ would break the head of Satan. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus is the Christ who broke the head of Satan according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

By dying on the cross, Jesus forgave all our sins and overcame Satan. (Col 2:13-15)

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

926. God fighting for the Israelites (Judg 5:20-21)

Ex 14:27, Ex 15:10, Jos 10:11-14, 1 Sam 7:10

In the Old Testament, God used natural phenomena for the people of Israel to defeat the enemies of Israel.

Judg 5:20 They fought from heaven; the stars in their courses fought against Sisera.

21 The river of Kishon swept them away, that ancient river, the river Kishon. O my soul, thou hast trodden down strength.

Ex 14:27 And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and the Lord overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea.

Ex 15:10 Thou didst blow with thy wind, the sea covered them: they sank as lead in the mighty waters.

Jos 10:11 And it came to pass, as they fled from before Israel, and were in the going down to Bethhoron, that the Lord cast down great stones from heaven upon them unto Azekah, and they died: they were more which died with hailstones than they whom the children of Israel slew with the sword.

12 Then spake Joshua to the Lord in the day when the Lord delivered up the Amorites before the children of Israel, and he said in the sight of Israel, Sun, stand thou still upon Gibeon; and thou, Moon, in the valley of Ajalon.

13 And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies. Is not this written in the book of Jasher? So the sun stood still in the midst of heaven, and hasted not to go down about a whole day.

14 And there was no day like that before it or after it, that the Lord hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the Lord fought for Israel.

1 Sam 7:10 And as Samuel was offering up the burnt offering, the Philistines drew near to battle against Israel: but the Lord thundered with a great thunder on that day upon the Philistines, and discomfited them; and they were smitten before Israel.

928. The Gentiles who were appointed for eternal life believed. (Judg 4:9)
Judg 4:21, Judg 5:24, Acts 13:47-48, Acts 16:14

In the Old Testament, a Gentile woman killed a Gentile king. Because the woman did not believe in Gentile gods, but believed in God. (Judges 4:9,21, Judges 5:24)

Judges 4:9 And she said, I will surely go with thee: notwithstanding the journey that thou takest shall not be for thine honour; for the Lord shall sell Sisera into the hand of a woman. And Deborah arose, and went with Barak to Kedesh.

21 Then Jael Heber's wife took a nail of the tent, and took an hammer in her hand, and went softly unto him, and smote the nail into his temples, and fastened it into the ground: for he was fast asleep and weary. So he died.

Judges 5:24 Blessed above women shall Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite be, blessed shall she be above women in the tent.

All the Gentiles to whom God was ordained to give eternal life believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 13:47-48, Acts 16:14)

Acts 13:47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Acts 16:14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, which worshipped God, heard us: whose heart the Lord opened, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul.

930. When God is with us, world evangelization will take place. (Judg 6:16)
Mt 28:18-20, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, God was with the Israeli army, so the Israeli army killed the Midianites as easily as they killed a single man. (Judges 6:16)

Judges 6:16 And the Lord said unto him, Surely I will be with thee, and thou shalt smite the Midianites as one man.

God has given all authority to Jesus, the Christ, and Jesus is with us, so we will surely do world evangelization.
(Matthew 28:18-20, Acts 1:8)

Matthew 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

931. Gideon believed in God and in Christ. (Judg 6:34)
Heb 11:32-33

In the Old Testament, Gideon was able to defeat his enemies by believing in God and the Christ to come.

Judg 6:34 But the Spirit of the Lord came upon Gideon, and he blew a trumpet; and Abiezer was gathered after him.

Heb 11:32 And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets:

33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions.

932. Jephthah believed in God and in Christ. (Judg 11:29)
Heb 11:32-33

In the Old Testament, Jephthah was able to defeat the enemy because he believed in God and the Christ to come.

Judg 11:29 Then the Spirit of the Lord came upon Jephthah, and he passed over Gilead, and Manasseh, and passed over Mizpeh of Gilead, and from Mizpeh of Gilead he passed over unto the children of Ammon.

Heb 11:32 And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets:

33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions.

934. Samson believed in God and in Christ. (Judg 13:24-25)
Heb 11:32-33

In the Old Testament, Samson was able to defeat his enemies by believing in God and the Christ to come.

Judg 13:24 And the woman bare a son, and called his name Samson: and the child grew, and the Lord blessed him.
25 And the Spirit of the Lord began to move him at times in the camp of Dan between Zorah and Eshtaol.

Heb 11:32 And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets:

33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions.

935. Christ, the true King who will guide us (Judg 21:25)

Judg 17:6, Mt 2:1-2, Mt 21:5, Mt 27:11, Mk 15:2, Lk 23:3, Jn 12:13-15, Jn 18:37, Acts 13:20-23, Rev 17:14, Rev 19:16

In the Old Testament, in the period of Judges, the people of Israel did what was right in their eyes because there was no true king. (Judges 21:25, Judges 17:6)

Judges 21:25 In those days there was no king in Israel: every man did that which was right in his own eyes.

Judges 17:6 In those days there was no king in Israel, but every man did that which was right in his own eyes.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come as the true King. (Mt 21:5)

Mt 21:5 Tell ye the daughter of Sion, Behold, thy King cometh unto thee, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt the foal of an ass.

Jesus is the Christ who came as the true King as a descendant of David. (Acts 13:20-23)

Acts 13:20 And after that he gave unto them judges about the space of four hundred and fifty years, until Samuel the prophet.

21 And afterward they desired a king: and God gave unto them Saul the son of Cis, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years.

22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

Jesus is the Christ, the true King, riding on a donkey as prophesied in the Old Testament. (John 12:13-15)

John 12:13 Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.

14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,

15 Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.

Jesus came to this earth as the King of the Jews and the King of kings. (Matthew 2:1-2)

Matthew 2:1 Now when Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judaea in the days of Herod the king, behold, there came wise men from the east to Jerusalem,

2 Saying, Where is he that is born King of the Jews? for we have seen his star in the east, and are come to worship him.

Jesus revealed to the Roman governor that he was the King of the Jews. (Matthew 27:11, Mark 15:2, Luke 23:3, John 18:37)

Matthew 27:11 And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews? And Jesus said unto him, Thou sayest.

Mark 15:2 And Pilate asked him, Art thou the King of the Jews? And he answering said unto them, Thou sayest it.

Luke 23:3 And Pilate asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews? And he answered him and said, Thou sayest it.

John 18:37 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that

is of the truth heareth my voice.

Jesus is Lord of lords and King of kings. (Rev 17:14, Rev 19:16)

Rev 17:14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

Rev 19:16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, King Of Kings, And Lord Of Lords.

Ruth

Bible

937. Christ came through Ruth (Ruth 4:13, 21-22)
Mt 1:5-6, 16

As the descendant of Ruth, Jesus, the Christ, came.

Ruth 4:13 So Boaz took Ruth, and she was his wife: and when he went in unto her, the Lord gave her conception, and she bare a son.

21 And Salmon begat Boaz, and Boaz begat Obed,

22 And Obed begat Jesse, and Jesse begat David.

Mt 1:5 And Salmon begat Booz of Rachab; and Booz begat Obed of Ruth; and Obed begat Jesse;

6 And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her that had been the wife of Urias;

16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1 Samuel

Bible

- 938. Christ as the eternal priest (1 Sam 2:35)
- 939. Christ, the True Prophet (1 Sam 3:19-20)
- 940. Christ, the true King (1 Sam 9:16-17)
- 941. The knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings (1 Sam 15:22)
- 942. Christ is the true King who will fulfill God's will (1 Sam 16:12-13)
- 943. The battle is the Lord's and the Christ's (1 Sam 17:45-47)
- 944. Christ as Lord of the Sabbath (1 Sam 21:5-7)

938. Christ as the eternal priest (1 Sam 2:35)
Heb 2:17, Heb 3:1, Heb 4:14, Heb 5:5, Heb 7:27-28, Heb 10:8-14

In the Old Testament, God appointed Samuel a faithful priest for the people of Israel. (1 Samuel 2:35)

1 Samuel 2:35 And I will raise me up a faithful priest, that shall do according to that which is in mine heart and in my mind: and I will build him a sure house; and he shall walk before mine anointed for ever.

God has sent to us the faithful and eternal High Priest, Jesus, to forgive our sins. (Heb 2:17, Heb 3:1, Heb 4:14, Heb 5:5)

Heb 2:17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

Heb 3:1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

Jesus offered Himself to God once for all, so that we may be perfected forever. (Hebrews 7:27-28, Heb 10:8-14)

Hebrews 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

Heb 10:8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:

12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

939. Christ, the True Prophet (1 Sam 3:19-20)

Deut 18:15, Jn 5:19, Jn 6:14, Jn 12:49-50, Jn 8:26, Acts 3:20-24, Jn 1:14, Lk 13:33, Jn 14:6

In the Old Testament, God appointed Samuel as a prophet so that all of Samuel's words were fulfilled. (1 Samuel 3:19-20)

1 Samuel 3:19 And Samuel grew, and the Lord was with him, and did let none of his words fall to the ground.
20 And all Israel from Dan even to Beersheba knew that Samuel was established to be a prophet of the Lord.

In the Old Testament, God promised to send a prophet like Moses. (Deut 18:15)

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

Jesus is the Christ, the prophet like Moses, whom God has promised to send to us. (Acts 3:20-24)

Acts 3:20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.

24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

Jesus is the true prophet who delivers the word of God to us. (John 5:19, John 6:14, John 12:49-50, John 8:26)

John 5:19 Then answered Jesus and said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise.

John 6:14 Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world.

John 12:49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.

50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

John 8:26 I have many things to say and to judge of you: but he that sent me is true; and I speak to the world those things which I have heard of him.

Jesus is the Word of God made flesh. (John 1:14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jesus is the true prophet who is the only way to meet God. (John 14:6)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

940. Christ, the true King (1 Sam 9:16-17)

1 Sam 10:1,6-7, 1 Sam 12:19,22, 1 Jn 3:8, Heb 2:14, Col 2:15, Jn 16:33, Jn 12:31, Jn 16:11, Col 1:13, Zech 9:9, Mt 16:28, Phil 2:10, Rev 1:5, Rev 17:14

In the Old Testament, God set up kings to save the people of Israel from their enemies. (1 Samuel 9:16-17, 1 Samuel 10; 1,6-7)

1 Samuel 9:16 To morrow about this time I will send thee a man out of the land of Benjamin, and thou shalt anoint him to be captain over my people Israel, that he may save my people out of the hand of the Philistines: for I have looked upon my people, because their cry is come unto me.

17 And when Samuel saw Saul, the Lord said unto him, Behold the man whom I spake to thee of! this same shall reign over my people.

1 Samuel 10:1 Then Samuel took a vial of oil, and poured it upon his head, and kissed him, and said, Is it not because the Lord hath anointed thee to be captain over his inheritance?

6 And the Spirit of the Lord will come upon thee, and thou shalt prophesy with them, and shalt be turned into another man.

7 And let it be, when these signs are come unto thee, that thou do as occasion serve thee; for God is with thee.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the true king of Israel would come riding on a donkey. (Zec 9:9)

Zec 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

The kings established in the Old Testament were not perfect and eternal kings. God has raised Christ, the perfect and eternal King, to destroy our enemy, the devil. (1 John 3:8, Hebrews 2:14)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Hebrews 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

By dying on the cross, Jesus overcame the ruler of the world, Satan, and delivered us from the hand of Satan. (Col 2:14-15, John 16:33, John 12:31, John 16:11, Col 1:13, Philippians 2:10)

Col 2:14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

John 12:31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.

John 16:11 Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.

Col 1:13 Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:

Philippians 2:10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

At the end of the world, Christ Jesus, the King of kings, will come again to completely destroy Satan. (Mt 16:28,

Rev 1:5, Rev 17:14)

Mt 16:28 Verily I say unto you, There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom.

Rev 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

Rev 17:14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

941. The knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings (1 Sam 15:22) ,
Ps 51:16-17, Isa 1:11-18, Hos 6:6-7, Acts 5:30-32, Jn 17:3

In the Old Testament, God, through Samuel, commanded King Saul to kill all the Amalekites. But King Saul spared Amalek's good sheep and cattle to give to God. Then Samuel told King Saul that God wanted to obey God's word rather than sacrifice. (1 Samuel 15:22)

1 Samuel 15:22 And Samuel said, Hath the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams.

What God wants through the sacrifice is that the people of Israel truly know God. (Psalm 51:16-17; Hos 6:6)

Psalm 51:16 For thou desirest not sacrifice; else would I give it: thou delightest not in burnt offering.
17 The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise.

Hos 6:6 For I desired mercy, and not sacrifice; and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites offered sacrifices to God, but they refused to truly know God. (Isa 1:11-18)

Isa 1:11 To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the Lord: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats.

12 When ye come to appear before me, who hath required this at your hand, to tread my courts?

13 Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me; the new moons and sabbaths, the calling of assemblies, I cannot away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting.

14 Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth: they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear them.

15 And when ye spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you: yea, when ye make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood.

16 Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil;

17 Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.

18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.

To believe in Jesus as the Christ is to know God and obey God's will. So God pours out the Holy Spirit on those who believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 5:31-32, John 17:3)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

942. Christ is the true King who fulfilled God's will (1 Sam 16:12-13)
1 Sam 13:14, Acts 13:22-23, Jn 19:30

In the Old Testament, God appointed David as the king of Israel. (1 Samuel 16:12-13)

1 Samuel 16:12 And he sent, and brought him in. Now he was ruddy, and withal of a beautiful countenance, and goodly to look to. And the Lord said, Arise, anoint him: for this is he.
13 Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the Spirit of the Lord came upon David from that day forward. So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah.

In the Old Testament, King Saul did not obey God's will, so King Saul's reign came to an end. (1 Samuel 13:14)

1 Samuel 13:14 But now thy kingdom shall not continue: the Lord hath sought him a man after his own heart, and the Lord hath commanded him to be captain over his people, because thou hast not kept that which the Lord commanded thee.

Jesus is the true King who completely fulfilled God's will. (Acts 13:22-23)

Acts 13:22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.
23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

Jesus fulfilled God's will by dying on the cross for the forgiveness of our sins. (John 19:30)

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

943. The battle is the Lord's and the Christ's (1 Sam 17:45-47)
2 Chr 20:14-15, Ps 44:6-7, Hos 1:7, 2 Cor 10:3-5

War belonged to God. (1 Samuel 17:45-47, 2 Chronicles 20:14-15)

1 Samuel 17:45 Then said David to the Philistine, Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but I come to thee in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied.

46 This day will the Lord deliver thee into mine hand; and I will smite thee, and take thine head from thee; and I will give the carcasses of the host of the Philistines this day unto the fowls of the air, and to the wild beasts of the earth; that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel.

47 And all this assembly shall know that the Lord saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle is the Lord's, and he will give you into our hands.

2 Chronicles 20:14 Then upon Jahaziel the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, a Levite of the sons of Asaph, came the Spirit of the Lord in the midst of the congregation;

15 And he said, Hearken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou king Jehoshaphat, Thus saith the Lord unto you, Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude; for the battle is not yours, but God's.

We cannot save us by our own power. Only God saves us from our enemies. (Psalm 44:6-7, Hos 1:7)

Psalm 44:6 For I will not trust in my bow, neither shall my sword save me.

7 But thou hast saved us from our enemies, and hast put them to shame that hated us.

Hos 1:7 But I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the Lord their God, and will not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by battle, by horses, nor by horsemen.

We are to take every theory and thought captive and submit it to Christ. (2 Corinthians 10:3-5)

2 Corinthians 10:3 For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh:

4 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;)

5 Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;

944. Christ as Lord of the Sabbath (1 Sam 21:5-7)
Mk 2:23-28, Mt 12:1-4, Lk 6:1-5

In the Old Testament, David once ate the showbread, which was not to be eaten except by the priests. (1 Samuel 21:5-7)

1 Samuel 21:5 And David answered the priest, and said unto him, Of a truth women have been kept from us about these three days, since I came out, and the vessels of the young men are holy, and the bread is in a manner common, yea, though it were sanctified this day in the vessel.
6 So the priest gave him hallowed bread: for there was no bread there but the shewbread, that was taken from before the Lord, to put hot bread in the day when it was taken away.
7 Now a certain man of the servants of Saul was there that day, detained before the Lord; and his name was Doeg, an Edomite, the chiefest of the herdmen that belonged to Saul.

When the Pharisees saw Jesus' disciples cut and ate the ears of wheat on the Sabbath, they criticized Jesus. Then Jesus said that David also ate the showbread, which was not to be eaten except by the priests. And Jesus revealed that Jesus Himself was the Lord of the Sabbath. (Mark 2:23-28, Mark 12:1-4, Luke 6:1-5)

Mark 2:23 And it came to pass, that he went through the corn fields on the sabbath day; and his disciples began, as they went, to pluck the ears of corn.
24 And the Pharisees said unto him, Behold, why do they on the sabbath day that which is not lawful?
25 And he said unto them, Have ye never read what David did, when he had need, and was an hungred, he, and they that were with him?
26 How he went into the house of God in the days of Abiathar the high priest, and did eat the shewbread, which is not lawful to eat but for the priests, and gave also to them which were with him?
27 And he said unto them, The sabbath was made for man, and not man for the sabbath:
28 Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

Mark 12:1 And he began to speak unto them by parables. A certain man planted a vineyard, and set an hedge about it, and digged a place for the winefat, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country.
2 And at the season he sent to the husbandmen a servant, that he might receive from the husbandmen of the fruit of the vineyard.
3 And they caught him, and beat him, and sent him away empty.
4 And again he sent unto them another servant; and at him they cast stones, and wounded him in the head, and sent him away shamefully handled.

Luke 6:1 And it came to pass on the second sabbath after the first, that he went through the corn fields; and his disciples plucked the ears of corn, and did eat, rubbing them in their hands.
2 And certain of the Pharisees said unto them, Why do ye that which is not lawful to do on the sabbath days?
3 And Jesus answering them said, Have ye not read so much as this, what David did, when himself was an hungred, and they which were with him;
4 How he went into the house of God, and did take and eat the shewbread, and gave also to them that were with him; which it is not lawful to eat but for the priests alone?
5 And he said unto them, That the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

2 Samuel

Bible

- 945. Christ, the true shepherd of Israel (2 Sam 5:2)
- 946. Christ, the ruler over Israel (2 Sam 5:2)
- 948. Christ is our true joy (2 Sam 6:12-15)
- 949. Christ, the everlasting King, to come as David's descendant (2 Sam 7:12-13)
- 950. Christ and God are the horns of salvation (2 Sam 22:3)
- 951. Christ who was in the pains of death (2 Sam 22:6-7)
- 952. God to be praised by all nations through Christ (2 Sam 22:50-51)
- 953. God's eternal covenant to David: Christ (2 Sam 23:5)

945. Christ, the true shepherd of Israel (2 Sam 5:2)
Ps 23:1, Isa 53:6, Mt 2:4-6, Jn 10:11, 14-15, 1 Pt 2:25

In the Old Testament, David became the second king of Israel and the shepherd of Israel after King Saul. (2 Samuel 5:2)

2 Samuel 5:2 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

God is our true Shepherd. (Psalm 23:1)

Psalm 23:1 The Lord is my shepherd; I shall not want.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the sins of the Israelites who had left the shepherd would be borne on the coming Christ. (Isa 53:6)

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

The true king of Israel and the true shepherd of Israel, as prophesied in the Old Testament, have come. That is Jesus. (Matthew 2:4-6)

Matthew 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

Jesus is the true Shepherd who laid down his life to save us. (John 10:11,14-15, 1 Peter 2:25)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

1 Peter 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

946. Christ, the ruler over Israel (2 Sam 5:2)
Gen 49:10, Acts 2:36, Col 1:15-16

In the Old Testament, God appointed David as the ruler of Israel after King Saul. (2 Samuel 5:2)

2 Samuel 5:2 Also in time past, when Saul was king over us, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the Lord said to thee, Thou shalt feed my people Israel, and thou shalt be a captain over Israel.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah and would become the true King. (Genesis 4:10)

Genesis 4:10 And he said, What hast thou done? the voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto me from the ground.

God has made Jesus Lord and Christ. (Acts 2:36)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Jesus is King of kings and Lord of lords. All things were created for Jesus, the Christ. (Col 1:15-16)

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

948. Christ is our true joy (2 Sam 6:12-15)
Mk 11:7-11, Jn 12:13, 1 Jn 1:3-4, Lk 2:10-11

In the Old Testament, when King David moved the ark of God from the house of Obed-edom to the City of David, the people of Israel were filled with joy. (2 Samuel 6:12-15)

2 Samuel 6:12 And it was told king David, saying, The Lord hath blessed the house of Obededom, and all that pertaineth unto him, because of the ark of God. So David went and brought up the ark of God from the house of Obededom into the city of David with gladness.
13 And it was so, that when they that bare the ark of the Lord had gone six paces, he sacrificed oxen and fatlings.
14 And David danced before the Lord with all his might; and David was girded with a linen ephod.
15 So David and all the house of Israel brought up the ark of the Lord with shouting, and with the sound of the trumpet.

When Jesus rode into Jerusalem on the colt, many Israelites were filled with joy. (Mark 11:7-11, John 12:13)

Mark 11:7 And they brought the colt to Jesus, and cast their garments on him; and he sat upon him.
8 And many spread their garments in the way: and others cut down branches off the trees, and strawed them in the way.
9 And they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna; Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord:
10 Blessed be the kingdom of our father David, that cometh in the name of the Lord: Hosanna in the highest.
11 And Jesus entered into Jerusalem, and into the temple: and when he had looked round about upon all things, and now the eventide was come, he went out unto Bethany with the twelve.

John 12:13 Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.

Christ, foretold in the Old Testament, has come. That Christ is Jesus. When we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we are filled with joy. (Luke 2:10-11, 1 John 1:3-4)

Luke 2:10 And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.
11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

1 John 1:3 That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.
4 And these things write we unto you, that your joy may be full.

949. Christ, the everlasting King, to come as David's descendant (2 Sam 7:12-13)
Lk 1:31-33, Acts 2:29-32, Acts 13:22-23

In the Old Testament, God spoke of the coming of Christ, the eternal King, as a descendant of David. (2 Samuel 7:12-13)

2 Samuel 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.
13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Christ, the eternal King, came as a descendant of David. That Christ is Jesus. (Luke 1:31-33, Acts 2:29-32, Acts 13:22-23)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Acts 2:29 Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.
30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;
31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.
32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

Acts 13:22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.
23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

950. Christ and God are the horns of salvation (2 Sam 22:3)
Lk 1:69-71

God is the savior of the power to save us. (2 Samuel 22:3)

2 Samuel 22:3 The God of my rock; in him will I trust: he is my shield, and the horn of my salvation, my high tower, and my refuge, my saviour; thou savest me from violence.

Jesus is the Christ, the power of God to save us, for whom God has prophesied through the mouths of the prophets.
(Luke 1:69-71)

Luke 1:69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;

70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:

71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;

951. Christ who was in the pains of death (2 Sam 22:6-7)
Jonah 2:1-2, Mt 12:40, Acts 2:23-24

In the Old Testament, David, who was in danger of death due to threats from King Saul and his enemies, prayed earnestly to God. (2 Samuel 22:6-7)

2 Samuel 22:6 The sorrows of hell compassed me about; the snares of death prevented me;
7 In my distress I called upon the Lord, and cried to my God: and he did hear my voice out of his temple, and my cry did enter into his ears.

In the Old Testament, the prophet Jonah was swallowed by a large fish and prayed earnestly to God in the belly of the fish. (Jonah 2:1)

Jonah 2:1 Then Jonah prayed unto the Lord his God out of the fish's belly,

In the Old Testament, the prophet Jonah being in the belly of a great fish for three days suggests that Christ died for us and would be in the tomb for three days. (Mt 12:40)

Mt 12:40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

Jesus, the Christ, died for us and rose from the dead on the third day. (Acts 2:23-24)

Acts 2:23 Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:

24 Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it.

952. God to be praised by all nations through Christ (2 Sam 22:50-51)
Rom 15:11-12

In the Old Testament, David praised God who had saved him and gave thanks to God among the nations. (2 Samuel 22:50-51)

2 Samuel 22:50 Therefore I will give thanks unto thee, O Lord, among the heathen, and I will sing praises unto thy name.

51 He is the tower of salvation for his king: and sheweth mercy to his anointed, unto David, and to his seed for evermore.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that all nations would wait for Christ, who would come as the descendant of David, and rejoice in Him. That Christ is Jesus. (Romans 15:11-12)

Romans 15:11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

953. God's eternal covenant to David : Christ (2 Sam 23:5)
2 Sam 7:12-13, Isa 55:3-4, Acts 13:34,38

In the Old Testament, God promised to send Christ, the eternal covenant, to King David. (2 Samuel 23:5, 2 Samuel 7:12-13, Isa 55:3-4)

2 Samuel 23:5 Although my house be not so with God; yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant, ordered in all things, and sure: for this is all my salvation, and all my desire, although he make it not to grow.

2 Samuel 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

Isa 55:3 Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

4 Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people.

Jesus is the Christ God promised to King David in the Old Testament. (Acts 13:34-38)

Acts 13:34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

1 Kings**Bible**

- 954. Christ came through Solomon (1 Kings 1:39)
- 955. God's true wisdom, Christ (1 Kings 4:29-30)
- 956. When the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth: When Christ comes (1 Kings 8:27-28)
- 957. God prepared to evangelize Gentiles through Christ. (1 Kings 8:41-43)
- 958. Through Christ, God forgave Israel who sinned. (1 Kings 8:46-50)
- 959. Through Christ, God fulfilled the covenant promised to Moses. (1 Kings 8:56-60)
- 960. Christ who was completely obedient to God (1 Kings 9:4-5)
- 961. Christ received the eternal throne of Israel (1 Kings 9:4-5)
- 962. God protected the coming of Christ (1 Kings 11:11-13)
- 964. Christ saved the Gentiles (1 Kings 17:8-9)
- 965. Christ, the true prophet who raises the dead (1 Kings 17:22-24)
- 966. Christ who will raise the remnant of Israel (1Kings 19:10,18)
- 967. The activity of evil spirits is also in God's sovereignty. (1 Kings 22:20-23)
- 968. Satan, an evil spirit that prevents you from believing in Jesus as the Christ (1 Kings 22:22)

954. Christ came through Solomon (1 Kings 1:39)
2 Sam 7:12-13, 1 Chr 22:9-10, Mt 1:1,6-7

In the Old Testament, God appointed Solomon as the king of Israel after King David. (1 Kings 1:39)

1 Kings 1:39 And Zadok the priest took an horn of oil out of the tabernacle, and anointed Solomon. And they blew the trumpet; and all the people said, God save king Solomon.

In the Old Testament, God promised to send Christ as the descendant of David. (2 Samuel 7:12-13)

2 Samuel 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

God's promise to King Solomon was forever fulfilled by Christ, who came as a descendant of Solomon. (1 Chronicles 22:9-10)

1 Chronicles 22:9 Behold, a son shall be born to thee, who shall be a man of rest; and I will give him rest from all his enemies round about: for his name shall be Solomon, and I will give peace and quietness unto Israel in his days.

10 He shall build an house for my name; and he shall be my son, and I will be his father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever.

Jesus, the Christ, came as a descendant of Solomon. (Mt 1:1,6-7,16)

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

6 And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her that had been the wife of Urias;

7 And Solomon begat Roboam; and Roboam begat Abia; and Abia begat Asa;

16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

955. God's true wisdom, Christ (1 Kings 4:29-30)

Prov 1:20-23, Mt 11:19, Mt 12:42, Mt 13:54, Mk 6:2, Mk 12:34, Lk 11:31, Acts 2:38-39, 1 Cor 1:24, 1 Cor 2:7-8, Col 2:3

In the Old Testament, God gave King Solomon the greatest wisdom in the world. (1 Kings 4:29-30)

1 Kings 4:29 And God gave Solomon wisdom and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that is on the sea shore.

30 And Solomon's wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east country, and all the wisdom of Egypt.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that true wisdom would come and make a voice in the streets. (Proverbs 1:20-23)

Proverbs 1:20 Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets:

21 She crieth in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she uttereth her words, saying,

22 How long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? and the scorers delight in their scorning, and fools hate knowledge?

23 Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

Jesus preached the kingdom of heaven on the streets. (Matthew 4:17)

Matthew 4:17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Jesus said that he would be right for what he had done. (Mt 11:19)

Mt 11:19 The Son of man came eating and drinking, and they say, Behold a man gluttonous, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners. But wisdom is justified of her children.

Jesus revealed that he was wiser than Solomon. (Matthew 12:42, Luke 11:31)

Matthew 12:42 The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: for she came from the uttermost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon is here.

Luke 11:31 The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with the men of this generation, and condemn them: for she came from the utmost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon is here.

People were amazed at the wisdom and power of Jesus. (Mt 13:54, Mark 6:2, Mark 12:34)

Mt 13:54 And when he was come into his own country, he taught them in their synagogue, insomuch that they were astonished, and said, Whence hath this man this wisdom, and these mighty works?

Mark 6:2 And when the sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing him were astonished, saying, From whence hath this man these things? and what wisdom is this which is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands?

Mark 12:34 And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God. And no man after that durst ask him any question.

Jesus, the Christ, is the wisdom and power of God. (1 Cor 1:24, 1 Cor 27, Colossians 2:3)

1 Cor 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

Colossians 2:3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

956. When the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth: When Christ comes (1 Kings 8:27-28)
Jn 4:21-26, Rev 21:22

In the Old Testament, Solomon knew that God was not in Solomon's temple. (1 Kings 8:27-28)

1 Kings 8:27 But will God indeed dwell on the earth? behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded?

28 Yet have thou respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O Lord my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer, which thy servant prayeth before thee to day:

True worship of God begins when we know Jesus is the Christ. (John 4:21-26)

John 4:21 Jesus saith unto her, Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when ye shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father.

22 Ye worship ye know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews.

23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.

24 God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

25 The woman saith unto him, I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things.

26 Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he.

The true temple is God and Christ Jesus, the Lamb of God. (Rev 21:22)

Rev 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

957. God prepared to evangelize Gentiles through Christ. (1 Kings 8:41-43)
Isa 11:9-10, Rom 3:26-29, Rom 10:9-12

In the Old Testament, Solomon wanted Gentiles to come to Solomon's temple to pray to God. (1 Kings 8:41-43)

1 Kings 8:41 Moreover concerning a stranger, that is not of thy people Israel, but cometh out of a far country for thy name's sake;

42 (For they shall hear of thy great name, and of thy strong hand, and of thy stretched out arm;) when he shall come and pray toward this house;

43 Hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to thee for: that all people of the earth may know thy name, to fear thee, as do thy people Israel; and that they may know that this house, which I have builded, is called by thy name.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the nations would return to God. (Isa 11:9-10)

Isa 11:9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

All who believe in Jesus Christ are justified and become children of God. (Romans 3:26-29, Romans 10:9-12)

Romans 3:26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

27 Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay: but by the law of faith.

28 Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law.

29 Is he the God of the Jews only? is he not also of the Gentiles? Yes, of the Gentiles also:

Romans 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

958. Through Christ, God forgave Israel who sinned. (1 Kings 8:46-50)
Acts 2:36-41

In the Old Testament, King Solomon prayed to God to forgive the sinful Israelites when they returned to God and prayed to Him. (1 Kings 8:46-50)

1 Kings 8:46 If they sin against thee, (for there is no man that sinneth not,) and thou be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so that they carry them away captives unto the land of the enemy, far or near;
47 Yet if they shall bethink themselves in the land whither they were carried captives, and repent, and make supplication unto thee in the land of them that carried them captives, saying, We have sinned, and have done perversely, we have committed wickedness;
48 And so return unto thee with all their heart, and with all their soul, in the land of their enemies, which led them away captive, and pray unto thee toward their land, which thou gavest unto their fathers, the city which thou hast chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name:
49 Then hear thou their prayer and their supplication in heaven thy dwelling place, and maintain their cause,
50 And forgive thy people that have sinned against thee, and all their transgressions wherein they have transgressed against thee, and give them compassion before them who carried them captive, that they may have compassion on them:

Anyone who believes in Jesus Christ is forgiven of their sins and is saved. (Acts 2:36-42)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.
37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?
38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.
40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.
41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.
42 And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.

959. Through Christ, God fulfilled the covenant promised to Moses. (1 Kings 8:56-60)
Mt 1:23, Mt 28:20, Rom 10:4, Mt 6:33, Jn 14:6, Acts 4:12

In the Old Testament, King Solomon said that all the good promises God had made to Moses were fulfilled. King Solomon also prayed that God would be with the people of Israel. (1 Kings 8:56-60)

1 Kings 8:56 Blessed be the Lord, that hath given rest unto his people Israel, according to all that he promised: there hath not failed one word of all his good promise, which he promised by the hand of Moses his servant.

57 The Lord our God be with us, as he was with our fathers: let him not leave us, nor forsake us:

58 That he may incline our hearts unto him, to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments, and his statutes, and his judgments, which he commanded our fathers.

59 And let these my words, wherewith I have made supplication before the Lord, be nigh unto the Lord our God day and night, that he maintain the cause of his servant, and the cause of his people Israel at all times, as the matter shall require:

60 That all the people of the earth may know that the Lord is God, and that there is none else.

All the promises God made to Moses in the Old Testament were fulfilled completely and forever through Jesus. Also, Solomon's prayer for God to be with us was completely fulfilled through Jesus. (Matthew 1:23, Matthew 28:20, Romans 10:4)

Matthew 1:23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

Matthew 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Romans 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Jesus is the only way to receive salvation and meet God. (John 14:6, Acts 4:12)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

960. Christ who was completely obedient to God (1 Kings 9:4-5)

Rom 10:4, Mt 5:17-18, 2 Cor 5:21, Jn 6:38, Mt 26:39, Jn 19:30, Heb 5:8-9, Rom 5:19

In the Old Testament, God told King Solomon that if King Solomon obeyed God completely, he would establish his throne forever. (1 Kings 9:4-5)

1 Kings 9:4 And if thou wilt walk before me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart, and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep my statutes and my judgments:

5 Then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom upon Israel for ever, as I promised to David thy father, saying, There shall not fail thee a man upon the throne of Israel.

Jesus died on the cross for us in complete obedience to the will of God. (John 3:16, 2 Corinthians 5:21, John 6:38,-39, Matthew 26:39, John 19:30, Hebrews 15:8, Romans 5:19)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

John 6:38 For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me.

39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

Matthew 26:39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Hebrews 5:8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

Romans 5:19 For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.

961. Christ received the eternal throne of Israel (1 Kings 9:4-5)
Isa 9:6-7, Dan 7:13-14, Lk 1:31-33, Acts 2:36, Eph 1:20-22, Phil 2:8-11

In the Old Testament, God promised King Solomon that if King Solomon kept the word of God, God would give the throne of Israel to the descendants of King Solomon forever. (1 Kings 9:4-5)

1 Kings 9:4 And if thou wilt walk before me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart, and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep my statutes and my judgments:
5 Then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom upon Israel for ever, as I promised to David thy father, saying, There shall not fail thee a man upon the throne of Israel.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and become the eternal King. (Isa 9:6-7)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.
7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

In the Old Testament, Daniel saw a vision of God giving Christ an eternal throne. (Dan 7:13-14)

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.
14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

Jesus is the Christ, the eternal King foretold in the Old Testament. (Luke 1:31-33)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

God made Jesus the Lord and King of all things. (Acts 2:36, Ephesians 1:20-22, Phil 2:8-11)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Ephesians 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

Phil 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

962. God protected the coming of Christ (1 Kings 11:11-13)
1 Kings 12:20, 1 Kings 11:36, Ps 89:29-37, Mt 1:1,6-7

In the Old Testament, King Solomon disobeyed God's word by serving foreign gods. God told King Solomon that he would take the kingdom of Israel and give it to King Solomon's men. However, God promised that one tribe, the tribe of Judah, would keep the promises made to David. (1 Kings 11:11-13, 1 Kings 12:20, 1 Kings 11:36)

1 Kings 11:11 Wherefore the Lord said unto Solomon, Forasmuch as this is done of thee, and thou hast not kept my covenant and my statutes, which I have commanded thee, I will surely rend the kingdom from thee, and will give it to thy servant.

12 Notwithstanding in thy days I will not do it for David thy father's sake: but I will rend it out of the hand of thy son.

13 Howbeit I will not rend away all the kingdom; but will give one tribe to thy son for David my servant's sake, and for Jerusalem's sake which I have chosen.

1 Kings 12:20 And it came to pass, when all Israel heard that Jeroboam was come again, that they sent and called him unto the congregation, and made him king over all Israel: there was none that followed the house of David, but the tribe of Judah only.

1 Kings 11:36 And unto his son will I give one tribe, that David my servant may have a light alway before me in Jerusalem, the city which I have chosen me to put my name there.

Although the Israelites disobeyed God, God promised that He would send the Christ He had chosen to be a descendant of David. (Psalm 89:29-37)

Psalm 89:29 His seed also will I make to endure for ever, and his throne as the days of heaven.

30 If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments;

31 If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments;

32 Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes.

33 Nevertheless my lovingkindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail.

34 My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips.

35 Once have I sworn by my holiness that I will not lie unto David.

36 His seed shall endure for ever, and his throne as the sun before me.

37 It shall be established for ever as the moon, and as a faithful witness in heaven. Selah.

Christ came to this earth as a descendant of David. That is Jesus. (Matthew 1:1, 6-7,16)

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

6 And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her that had been the wife of Urias;

7 And Solomon begat Roboam; and Roboam begat Abia; and Abia begat Asa;

16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

964. Christ saved the Gentiles (1 Kings 17:8-9)

Lk 4:24-27, 2 Kings 5:14, Isa 43:6-7, Mal 1:11, Mic 4:2, Zech 8:20-23, Mt 8:10-11, Rom 10:9-12

In the Old Testament, Elijah was not welcomed in Israel and went to a widow in the land of Sidon. (1 Kings 17:8-9)

1 Kings 17:8 And the word of the Lord came unto him, saying,

9 Arise, get thee to Zarephath, which belongeth to Zidon, and dwell there: behold, I have commanded a widow woman there to sustain thee.

The prophets were not welcome in Israel and went to the lands of the Gentiles. (Luke 4:24-27)

Luke 4:24 And he said, Verily I say unto you, No prophet is accepted in his own country.

25 But I tell you of a truth, many widows were in Israel in the days of Elias, when the heaven was shut up three years and six months, when great famine was throughout all the land;

26 But unto none of them was Elias sent, save unto Sarepta, a city of Sidon, unto a woman that was a widow.

27 And many lepers were in Israel in the time of Eliseus the prophet; and none of them was cleansed, saving Naaman the Syrian.

In the Old Testament, Elisha was not welcome in Israel and healed Naaman the Syrian who was a leper in the Gentile land. (2 Kings 5:14)

2 Kings 5:14 Then went he down, and dipped himself seven times in Jordan, according to the saying of the man of God: and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean.

The Old Testament prophesied that the gospel would be preached to the Gentiles and that the Gentiles would be saved. (Isa 43:6-7, Mal 1:11, Mic 4:2, Zec 8:20-23)

Isa 43:6 I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth;

7 Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him.

Mal 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the Lord of hosts.

Mic 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

Zec 8:20 Thus saith the Lord of hosts; It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities:

21 And the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to pray before the Lord, and to seek the Lord of hosts: I will go also.

22 Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the Lord.

23 Thus saith the Lord of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.

Gentiles who believed in Jesus as the Christ were saved. (Matthew 8:10-11, Acts 13:48)

Matthew 8:10 When Jesus heard it, he marvelled, and said to them that followed, Verily I say unto you, I have not

found so great faith, no, not in Israel.

11 And I say unto you, That many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven.

Acts 13:48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

965. Christ, the true prophet who raises the dead (1 Kings 17:22-24)
Lk 7:13-16

In the Old Testament, the prophet Elijah raised a dead child to life. (1 Kings 17:22-24)

1 Kings 17:22 And the Lord heard the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived.
23 And Elijah took the child, and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother: and Elijah said, See, thy son liveth.
24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now by this I know that thou art a man of God, and that the word of the Lord in thy mouth is truth.

Jesus is the Christ, the true prophet who raised the young man from the dead. (Luke 7:13-16)

Luke 7:13 And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not.
14 And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.
15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.
16 And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us; and, That God hath visited his people.

966. Christ who will raise the remnant of Israel (1Kings 19:10,18)
Rom 11:2-5, Isa 6:13, Joel 2:32, Mic 2:12-13, Jer 23:3-6

In the Old Testament, God told Elijah, who felt his life was threatened, that there were seven thousand remaining in Israel who did not bow their knees to Baal. (1 Kings 19:10,18)

1 Kings 19:10 And he said, I have been very jealous for the Lord God of hosts: for the children of Israel have forsaken thy covenant, thrown down thine altars, and slain thy prophets with the sword; and I, even I only, am left; and they seek my life, to take it away.

18 et I have left me seven thousand in Israel, all the knees which have not bowed unto Baal, and every mouth which hath not kissed him.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that some of the remnant would be called by God. (Joel 2:32, Mic 2:12-13)

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

Mic 2:12 I will surely assemble, O Jacob, all of thee; I will surely gather the remnant of Israel; I will put them together as the sheep of Bozrah, as the flock in the midst of their fold: they shall make great noise by reason of the multitude of men.

13 The breaker is come up before them: they have broken up, and have passed through the gate, and are gone out by it: and their king shall pass before them, and the Lord on the head of them.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would lead and save those whom God had left behind. (Jeremiah 23:3-6)

Jeremiah 23:3 And I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries whither I have driven them, and will bring them again to their folds; and they shall be fruitful and increase.

4 And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the Lord.

5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

6 In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, The Lord Our Righteousness.

In the Old Testament, God promised to leave holy seeds. (Isa 6:13)

Isa 6:13 But yet in it shall be a tenth, and it shall return, and shall be eaten: as a teil tree, and as an oak, whose substance is in them, when they cast their leaves: so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

Just as God left Elijah a remnant of 7,000 who did not bow the knee to Baal, so God left behind such people in this age as well. (Romans 11:2-5)

Romans 11:2 God hath not cast away his people which he foreknew. Wot ye not what the scripture saith of Elias? how he maketh intercession to God against Israel saying,

3 Lord, they have killed thy prophets, and digged down thine altars; and I am left alone, and they seek my life.

4 But what saith the answer of God unto him? I have reserved to myself seven thousand men, who have not bowed the knee to the image of Baal.

5 Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace.

967. The activity of evil spirits is also in God's sovereignty. (1 Kings 22:20-23)
Job 1:9-12, Rev 3:9

In the Old Testament, God allowed an evil spirit to pour a lying spirit upon false prophets. (1 Kings 22:20-23)

1 Kings 22:20 And the Lord said, Who shall persuade Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramothgilead? And one said on this manner, and another said on that manner.
21 And there came forth a spirit, and stood before the Lord, and said, I will persuade him.
22 And the Lord said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt persuade him, and prevail also: go forth, and do so.
23 Now therefore, behold, the Lord hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets, and the Lord hath spoken evil concerning thee.

In the Old Testament, God allowed Satan to strike all of Job's possessions. (Job 1:9-12)

Job 1:9 Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, Doth Job fear God for nought?
10 Hast not thou made an hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side? thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land.
11 But put forth thine hand now, and touch all that he hath, and he will curse thee to thy face.
12 And the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, all that he hath is in thy power; only upon himself put not forth thine hand. So Satan went forth from the presence of the Lord.

Christ will bring Satan to his knees at our feet. (Rev 3:9)

Rev 3:9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee.

968. Satan, an evil spirit that prevents you from believing in Jesus as the Christ (1 Kings 22:22)
Jn 8:44, 2 Cor 4:4

In the Old Testament, evil spirits deceived the Israelites and deceived them so that they could not believe in God. (1 Kings 22:22)

1 Kings 22:22 And the Lord said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt persuade him, and prevail also: go forth, and do so.

Satan is the spirit of lies, deceiving people's hearts so that they cannot believe that Jesus is the Christ. (John 8:44, 2 Corinthians 4:4)

John 8:44 Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

2 Kings

Bible

- 969. Christ, the true prophet who raises the dead (2 Kings 4:32-37)
- 970. Jesus fed the five thousand with five loaves and two fishes. (2 Kings 4:42-44)
- 971. Christ, the true prophet who cured leprosy (2 Kings 5:3,14)
- 972. Christ who loved even enemies (2 Kings 6:20-23)
- 973. Woe to us if we don't preach the Gospel. (2 Kings 7:8-9)
- 974. Christ, the true prophet who raised the dead (2 Kings 13:21)
- 975. God's sovereignty (2 Kings 19:25)
- 976. Teach all the words of the Book of the Covenant (2 Kings 23:2-3)
- 977. Restoration of the Passover that explains Christ (2 Kings 23:21-23)

969. Christ, the true prophet who raises the dead (2 Kings 4:32-37)
1 Kings 17:22-24, Lk 7:13-16

In the Old Testament, the prophet Elijah raised a dead child to life. (2 Kings 4:32-37, 1 Kings 17:22-24)

2 Kings 4:32 And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead, and laid upon his bed.
33 He went in therefore, and shut the door upon them twain, and prayed unto the Lord.
34 And he went up, and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands: and stretched himself upon the child; and the flesh of the child waxed warm.
35 Then he returned, and walked in the house to and fro; and went up, and stretched himself upon him: and the child sneezed seven times, and the child opened his eyes.
36 And he called Gehazi, and said, Call this Shunammite. So he called her. And when she was come in unto him, he said, Take up thy son.
37 Then she went in, and fell at his feet, and bowed herself to the ground, and took up her son, and went out.

1 Kings 17:22 And the Lord heard the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived.
23 And Elijah took the child, and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother: and Elijah said, See, thy son liveth.
24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now by this I know that thou art a man of God, and that the word of the Lord in thy mouth is truth.

Jesus, the true prophet, raised a young man from the dead. (Luke 7:13-16)

Luke 7:13 And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not.
14 And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.
15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.
16 And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us; and, That God hath visited his people.

970. Jesus fed the five thousand with five loaves and two fishes. (2 Kings 4:42-44)
Mt 14:16-21, Jn 6:9, Lk 9:13

In the Old Testament, the prophet Elisha fed 100 people with 20 barley loaves and a sack of vegetables, and there was leftovers. (2 Kings 4:42-44)

2 Kings 4:42 And there came a man from Baalshalisha, and brought the man of God bread of the firstfruits, twenty loaves of barley, and full ears of corn in the husk thereof. And he said, Give unto the people, that they may eat.
43 And his servitor said, What, should I set this before an hundred men? He said again, Give the people, that they may eat: for thus saith the Lord, They shall eat, and shall leave thereof.
44 So he set it before them, and they did eat, and left thereof, according to the word of the Lord.

Jesus, the true prophet, fed the five thousand with five barley loaves and two fish. (John 6:9, Luke 9:13, Matthew 14:16-21)

John 6:9 There is a lad here, which hath five barley loaves, and two small fishes: but what are they among so many?

Luke 9:13 But he said unto them, Give ye them to eat. And they said, We have no more but five loaves and two fishes; except we should go and buy meat for all this people.

Matthew 14:16 But Jesus said unto them, They need not depart; give ye them to eat.

17 And they say unto him, We have here but five loaves, and two fishes.

18 He said, Bring them hither to me.

19 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the grass, and took the five loaves, and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed, and brake, and gave the loaves to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.

20 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the fragments that remained twelve baskets full.

21 And they that had eaten were about five thousand men, beside women and children.

971. Christ, the true prophet who cured leprosy (2 Kings 5:3,14)
Mt 8:2-3, Lk 17:12-14

In the Old Testament, the prophet Elisha cured General Naaman's leprosy. (2 Kings 5:3,14)

2 Kings 5:3 And she said unto her mistress, Would God my lord were with the prophet that is in Samaria! for he would recover him of his leprosy.

14 Then went he down, and dipped himself seven times in Jordan, according to the saying of the man of God: and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean.

The true prophet Jesus healed lepers. (Matthew 8:2-3, Luke 17:12-14)

Matthew 8:2 And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying, Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean.

3 And Jesus put forth his hand, and touched him, saying, I will; be thou clean. And immediately his leprosy was cleansed.

Luke 17:12 And as he entered into a certain village, there met him ten men that were lepers, which stood afar off:

13 And they lifted up their voices, and said, Jesus, Master, have mercy on us.

14 And when he saw them, he said unto them, Go shew yourselves unto the priests. And it came to pass, that, as they went, they were cleansed.

972. Christ who loved even enemies (2 Kings 6:20-23)
Rom 12:20-21, Mt 5:44, Lk 6:27-28, Lk 23:34

In the Old Testament, the prophet Elisha did not kill the Syrian army, but fed them and let them go. (2 Kings 6:20-23)

2 Kings 6:20 And it came to pass, when they were come into Samaria, that Elisha said, Lord, open the eyes of these men, that they may see. And the Lord opened their eyes, and they saw; and, behold, they were in the midst of Samaria.

21 And the king of Israel said unto Elisha, when he saw them, My father, shall I smite them? shall I smite them?

22 And he answered, Thou shalt not smite them: wouldest thou smite those whom thou hast taken captive with thy sword and with thy bow? set bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink, and go to their master.

23 And he prepared great provision for them: and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away, and they went to their master. So the bands of Syria came no more into the land of Israel.

Jesus told us to love our enemies and pray for them. (Matthew 5:44, Luke 6:27-28)

Matthew 5:44 But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you;

Luke 6:27 But I say unto you which hear, Love your enemies, do good to them which hate you,
28 Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you.

Jesus forgave his enemies who killed him. (Luke 23:3-4)

Luke 23:3 And Pilate asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews? And he answered him and said, Thou sayest it.

4 Then said Pilate to the chief priests and to the people, I find no fault in this man.

973. Woe to us if we don't preach the Gospel. (2 Kings 7:8-9)
1 Cor 9:16, Mt 25:24-30

In the Old Testament, after the Arameans fled, lepers went into the tents of the Arameans to eat and drink and hide their gold and silver treasures. The lepers said to each other that if they did not tell the Israelites that the Arameans had fled, punishment would be on them. (2 Kings 7:8-9)

2 Kings 7:8 And when these lepers came to the uttermost part of the camp, they went into one tent, and did eat and drink, and carried thence silver, and gold, and raiment, and went and hid it; and came again, and entered into another tent, and carried thence also, and went and hid it.

9 Then they said one to another, We do not well: this day is a day of good tidings, and we hold our peace: if we tarry till the morning light, some mischief will come upon us: now therefore come, that we may go and tell the king's household.

Woe to us if we do not preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Corinthians 9:16)

1 Corinthians 9:16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

Woe to us if we receive the gospel and keep it without preaching it. (Mt 25:24-30)

Mt 25:24 Then he which had received the one talent came and said, Lord, I knew thee that thou art an hard man, reaping where thou hast not sown, and gathering where thou hast not strawed:

25 And I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth: lo, there thou hast that is thine.

26 His lord answered and said unto him, Thou wicked and slothful servant, thou knewest that I reap where I sowed not, and gather where I have not strawed:

27 Thou oughtest therefore to have put my money to the exchangers, and then at my coming I should have received mine own with usury.

28 Take therefore the talent from him, and give it unto him which hath ten talents.

29 For unto every one that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance: but from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath.

30 And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

974. Christ, the true prophet who raised the dead (2 Kings 13:21)
Mt 27:50-53

In the Old Testament, when people threw a dead man at the place where Elisha died and was buried, the dead man came back to life. (2 Kings 13:21)

2 Kings 13:21 And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band of men; and they cast the man into the sepulchre of Elisha: and when the man was let down, and touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood up on his feet.

When Jesus died on the cross for our sins, many of the dead were raised from the tombs. (Mt 27:50-53)

Mt 27:50 Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

51 And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent;

52 And the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints which slept arose,

53 And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many.

975. God's sovereignty (2 Kings 19:25)

Isa 10:5-6, Isa 40:21, Isa 41:1-4, Isa 45:7, Amos 9:7

God does everything according to His will. The world is moving under the sovereignty of God.

2 Kings 19:25 Hast thou not heard long ago how I have done it, and of ancient times that I have formed it? now have I brought it to pass, that thou shouldest be to lay waste fenced cities into ruinous heaps.

Isa 10:5 O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation.

6 I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Isa 40:21 Have ye not known? have ye not heard? hath it not been told you from the beginning? have ye not understood from the foundations of the earth?

Isa 41:1 Keep silence before me, O islands; and let the people renew their strength: let them come near; then let them speak: let us come near together to judgment.

2 Who raised up the righteous man from the east, called him to his foot, gave the nations before him, and made him rule over kings? he gave them as the dust to his sword, and as driven stubble to his bow.

3 He pursued them, and passed safely; even by the way that he had not gone with his feet.

4 Who hath wrought and done it, calling the generations from the beginning? I the Lord, the first, and with the last; I am he.

Isa 45:7 I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the Lord do all these things.

Amos 9:7 Are ye not as children of the Ethiopians unto me, O children of Israel? saith the Lord. Have not I brought up Israel out of the land of Egypt? and the Philistines from Caphtor, and the Syrians from Kir?

976. Teach all the words of the Book of the Covenant (2 Kings 23:2-3)
2 Kings 22:13, Deut 6:4-9, Deut 8:3, Jn 6:49-51

In the Old Testament, King Josiah taught and instructed all the people of Israel to keep the book of the covenant that King Josiah found in the temple. (2 Kings 23:2-3)

2 Kings 23:2 And the king went up into the house of the Lord, and all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people, both small and great: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant which was found in the house of the Lord.

3 And the king stood by a pillar, and made a covenant before the Lord, to walk after the Lord, and to keep his commandments and his testimonies and his statutes with all their heart and all their soul, to perform the words of this covenant that were written in this book. And all the people stood to the covenant.

The people of Israel received great wrath from God because they did not keep the words of God's Book of Covenant. (2 Kings 22:13)

2 Kings 22:13 Go ye, enquire of the Lord for me, and for the people, and for all Judah, concerning the words of this book that is found: for great is the wrath of the Lord that is kindled against us, because our fathers have not hearkened unto the words of this book, to do according unto all that which is written concerning us.

In the Old Testament, Moses taught and instructed the Israelites to keep the word of God. (Deut 6:4-9)

Deut 6:4 Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord:

5 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

6 And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart:

7 And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.

8 And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes.

9 And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.

The Old Testament tells us that man must not live by bread alone, but by all the words of God. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus is the word of God and the bread of life. (John 6:49-51)

John 6:49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.

50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

977. Restoration of the Passover that explains Christ (2 Kings 23:21-23)
Jn 1:29,36, Isa 53:6-8, Acts 8:31-35, 1 Pt 1:19, Rev 5:6

In the Old Testament, King Josiah of Judah had the Israelites keep the Passover recorded in the covenant book. (2 Kings 23:21-23)

2 Kings 23:21 And the king commanded all the people, saying, Keep the passover unto the Lord your God, as it is written in the book of this covenant.

22 Surely there was not holden such a passover from the days of the judges that judged Israel, nor in all the days of the kings of Israel, nor of the kings of Judah;

23 But in the eighteenth year of king Josiah, wherein this passover was holden to the Lord in Jerusalem.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come as the Lamb of God to suffer and die in our place. (Isa 53:6-8)

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

The Ethiopian eunuch had read about the Passover Lamb in the book of Isaiah, but did not know who this Passover Lamb was referring to. Philip explained the book of Isaiah to this eunuch and explained that this Passover Lamb was Jesus. (Acts 8:31-35)

Acts 8:31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

Jesus is the Lamb of God who took away our sins. (John 1:29,36, 1 Peter 1:19, Revelation 5:6)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

1 Peter 1:19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

Revelation 5:6 and I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.

1 Chronicles

Bible

- 978. We are brought to the glory of God through Christ. (1 Chr 13:10-11)
- 979. Christ glorified God through us (1 Chr 16:8-9)
- 980. Always seek God and Christ. (1 Chr 16:10-11)
- 981. God's eternal covenant, Christ (1 Chr 16:15-18)
- 983. Christ rules all nations (1 Chr 16:31)
- 984. Christ who will come to judge the earth (1 Chr 16:33)
- 985. Christ received an eternal throne. (1Chr 17:11-14)
- 986. God and Christ are the heads of all things (1 Chr 29:11)
- 987. All things come out of Christ (1 Chr 29:12)
- 988. God and Christ to receive glory and praise (1 Chr 29:13)
- 989. God to be glorified through Christ (1 Chr 29:13)

978. We are brought to the glory of God through Christ. (1 Chr 13:10-11)
Num 4:15,20, 1 Sam 6:19, 2 Sam 6:6-7, Ex 33:20, Rom 3:23-24

In the Old Testament, when the cart carrying the ark of God shook, Uzzah touched the ark of God. Then Uzzah died on the spot. (1 Chronicles 13:10-11, 2 Samuel 6:6-7)

1 Chronicles 13:10 And the anger of the Lord was kindled against Uzza, and he smote him, because he put his hand to the ark: and there he died before God.

11 And David was displeased, because the Lord had made a breach upon Uzza: wherefore that place is called Perezuzza to this day.

2 Samuel 6:6 And when they came to Nachon's threshingfloor, Uzzah put forth his hand to the ark of God, and took hold of it; for the oxen shook it.

7 And the anger of the Lord was kindled against Uzzah; and God smote him there for his error; and there he died by the ark of God.

In the Old Testament, it is said that anyone who touches the holy things of God will die, except for those who have been entrusted with the things of God. (Numbers 4:15,20)

Numbers 4:15 And when Aaron and his sons have made an end of covering the sanctuary, and all the vessels of the sanctuary, as the camp is to set forward; after that, the sons of Kohath shall come to bear it: but they shall not touch any holy thing, lest they die. These things are the burden of the sons of Kohath in the tabernacle of the congregation.
20 But they shall not go in to see when the holy things are covered, lest they die.

In the Old Testament, many Beth-shemes died when they looked into the ark of God. (1 Samuel 6:19)

1 Samuel 6:19 And he smote the men of Bethshemesh, because they had looked into the ark of the Lord, even he smote of the people fifty thousand and threescore and ten men: and the people lamented, because the Lord had smitten many of the people with a great slaughter.

In the Old Testament, it is said that no one who sees the face of God will live. (Ex 33:20)

Ex 33:20 And he said, Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live.

When we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we are justified to the glory of God. (Romans 3:23-24)

Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;
24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

979. Christ glorified God through us (1 Chr 16:8-9)

Ps 105:1-2, Mk 2:9-12, Lk 2:8-14,20, Lk 7:13-17, Lk 13:11-13, Acts 2:46-47

In the Old Testament, David told the Israelites to thank God, let all people know of God's works, and praise God. (1 Chronicles 16:8-9, Psalm 105:1-2)

1 Chronicles 16:8 Give thanks unto the Lord, call upon his name, make known his deeds among the people.

9 Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him, talk ye of all his wondrous works.

Psalm 105:1 O give thanks unto the Lord; call upon his name: make known his deeds among the people.

2 Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him: talk ye of all his wondrous works.

Jesus healed the paralytic in front of people so that people glorify God. (Mark 2:9-12)

Mark 2:9 Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, Thy sins be forgiven thee; or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed, and walk?

10 But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (he saith to the sick of the palsy,)

11 I say unto thee, Arise, and take up thy bed, and go thy way into thine house.

12 And immediately he arose, took up the bed, and went forth before them all; insomuch that they were all amazed, and glorified God, saying, We never saw it on this fashion.

Jesus, the Christ, was born on this earth. The shepherds who saw this glorified God. (Luke 2:8-14,20)

Luke 2:8 And there were in the same country shepherds abiding in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night.

9 And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid.

10 And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.

11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

12 And this shall be a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger.

13 And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying,

14 Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.

20 And the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for all the things that they had heard and seen, as it was told unto them.

By raising a young man from the dead, Jesus made people glorify God. (Luke 7:13-17)

Luke 7:13 And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not.

14 And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.

15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.

16 And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us; and, That God hath visited his people.

17 And this rumour of him went forth throughout all Judaea, and throughout all the region round about.

By healing a woman possessed by a demon, Jesus made her glorify God. (Luke 13:11-13)

Luke 13:11 And, behold, there was a woman which had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bowed together, and could in no wise lift up herself.

12 And when Jesus saw her, he called her to him, and said unto her, Woman, thou art loosed from thine infirmity.

13 And he laid his hands on her: and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God.

Those who believed that Jesus was the Christ praised and glorified God every day. (Acts 2:46-47)

Acts 2:46 And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart,
47 Praising God, and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.

980. Always seek God and Christ. (1 Chr 16:10-11)
Rom 1:16, 1 Cor 1:24, Mt 6:33, Heb 12:2

In the Old Testament, David told the Israelites to boast in God and seek God (1 Chronicles 16:10-11).

1 Chronicles 16:10 Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the Lord.
11 Seek the Lord and his strength, seek his face continually.

Christ is the power of God to bring salvation to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Romans 1:16, 1 Corinthians 1:24)

Romans 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

We must first seek God's righteousness, Christ, and strive for evangelism, the kingdom of God. (Mt 6:33, Heb 12:2)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

Heb 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

981. God's eternal covenant, Christ (1 Chr 16:15-18)
Gen 22:17-18, Gen 26:4, Gal 3:16, Mt 2:4-6

In the Old Testament, David told the Israelites to remember Christ, the eternal covenant God gave to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. (1 Chronicles 16:15-18)

1 Chronicles 16:15 Be ye mindful always of his covenant; the word which he commanded to a thousand generations;

16 Even of the covenant which he made with Abraham, and of his oath unto Isaac;

17 And hath confirmed the same to Jacob for a law, and to Israel for an everlasting covenant,

18 Saying, Unto thee will I give the land of Canaan, the lot of your inheritance;

God told Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would send Christ as their descendant, and that through him all peoples of the world would be blessed. (Ge 22:17-18, Gen 26:4)

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gen 26:4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

The descendant God promised to Abraham and his descendants in the Old Testament is Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Christ was born in Bethlehem, Judea. That Christ is Jesus. (Mt 2:4-6, Mt 1:16)

Mt 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

Mt 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

983. Christ rules all nations (1 Chr 16:31)
Isa 9:6-7, Acts 10:36, Phil 2:10-11

In the Old Testament, David told the Israelites that God would rule over all nations. (1 Chronicles 16:31)

1 Chronicles 16:31 Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice: and let men say among the nations, The Lord reigneth.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would send Christ as the Prince of Peace. (Isa 9:6-7)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

God made Jesus the Christ the Lord of all and King of kings. (Acts 10:36, Phil 2:10-11)

Acts 10:36 36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

Phil 2:10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

984. Christ who will come to judge the earth (1 Chr 16:33)
Mt 16:27,Mt 25:31-33, 2 Tim 4:1,8, 2 Thess 1:6-9

In the Old Testament, David speaks of God coming to judge the earth. (1 Chronicles 16:23)

1 Chronicles 16:23 Sing unto the Lord, all the earth; shew forth from day to day his salvation.

Jesus will come back to this earth in the glory of God the Father to judge the earth. (Mt 16:27, Mt 25:31-33, 2 Timothy 4:1,8, 2 Thessalonians 1:6-9)

Mt 16:27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.

Mt 25:31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:

32 And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats:

33 And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left.

2 Timothy 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

2 Thessalonians 1:6 Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you;

7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels,

8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:

9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;

985. Christ received an eternal throne from God. (1Chr 17:11-14)
Ps 110:1-2, Lk 1:31-33, Mt 3:16-17, Mt 21:9, Eph 1:20-21, Phil 2:8-11

In the Old Testament, God told David that he would set up an eternal king as a descendant of David. (1 Chronicles 17:11-14)

1 Chronicles 17:11 And it shall come to pass, when thy days be expired that thou must go to be with thy fathers, that I will raise up thy seed after thee, which shall be of thy sons; and I will establish his kingdom.

12 He shall build me an house, and I will stablish his throne for ever.

13 I will be his father, and he shall be my son: and I will not take my mercy away from him, as I took it from him that was before thee:

14 But I will settle him in mine house and in my kingdom for ever: and his throne shall be established for evermore.

In the Old Testament David saw God granting Christ kingship and giving Christ dominion over his enemies. (Psalm 110:1-2)

Psalm 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

2 The Lord shall send the rod of thy strength out of Zion: rule thou in the midst of thine enemies.

986. God and Christ are the heads of all things (1 Chr 29:11)
Eph 1:20-22, Col 1:18, Rev 1:5

In the Old Testament, David confessed that God is the head of all things. (1 Chronicles 29:11)

1 Chronicles 29:11 Thine, O Lord is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is thine; thine is the kingdom, O Lord, and thou art exalted as head above all.

God made Jesus, the Christ, superior to all things and made him the head of all things. (Ephesians 1:20-22, Colossians 1:18, Revelation 1:5)

Ephesians 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

Colossians 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.

Revelation 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

987. All things come out of God and Christ (1 Chr 29:12)

Jn 1:1-3, 1 Cor 8:6, Col 1:15-16, Heb 1:2

1 Chr 29:12 Both riches and honour come of thee, and thou reignest over all; and in thine hand is power and might; and in thine hand it is to make great, and to give strength unto all.

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

1 Cor 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

988. God and Christ to receive glory and praise (1 Chr 29:13)
Rev 5:12-13, Rev 7:10

In the Old Testament, David thanked God and praised God. (1 Chronicles 29:13)

1 Chronicles 29:13 Now therefore, our God, we thank thee, and praise thy glorious name.

God and Christ are eternally worthy of glory and praise. (Rev 5:12-13, Rev 7:10)

Rev 5:12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.

Rev 7:10 And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb.

989. God to be glorified through Christ (1 Chr 29:13)

Phil 2:11, Jn 5:23, Jn 13:31, Jn 14:13, Jn 17:1, Rom 15:8-9

In the Old Testament, David gave thanks to God and glorified God. (1 Chronicles 29:13)

1 Chronicles 29:13 Now therefore, our God, we thank thee, and praise thy glorious name.

God made everyone believe that Jesus is the Christ, so that everyone can glorify God. (Phil 2:11)

Phil 2:11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

To believe that Jesus is the Christ is to honor God and glorify God. (John 5:23)

John 5:23 That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.

Jesus glorified God by dying on the cross to save us. (John 13:31, John 17:1)

John 13:31 Therefore, when he was gone out, Jesus said, Now is the Son of man glorified, and God is glorified in him.

John 17:1 These words spake Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee:

When we ask God in the name of Jesus, we glorify God. (John 14:13)

John 14:13 And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.

Jesus made the Gentiles believe that Jesus is the Christ, so that they can glorify God. (Romans 15:8-9)

Romans 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

2 Chronicles

Bible

- 990. Christ received eternal throne (2 Chr 6:16)
- 991. Gentiles believe in Jesus as the Christ, and they fear God. (2 Chr 6:32-33)
- 992. We are blessed. Because we hear the wisdom of God, Christ. (2 Chr 9:7)
- 993. Seek only God and Christ (2 Chr 12:14)
- 994. Those who trust in God and Christ will triumph. (2 Chr 13:18)
- 995. But you, be strong and do not let your hands be weak (2 Chr 15:7-8)
- 996. Seek God and Christ with all your life. (2 Chr 15:12-15)
- 997. God empowers those who turn to Him (2 Chr 16:9)
- 998. Now we ask of God in Jesus' name. (2 Chr 17:4-5)
- 1000. God and Christ fight for us. (2 Chr 20:17)
- 1001. Praise God through Christ (2 Chr 29:30)
- 1002. Come to Christ, Passover Lamb (2 Chr 30:1,6)
- 1003. News of great joy: Jesus is the Christ! (2 Chr 30:26)
- 1004. They knew that Jesus was the Christ. (2 Chr 33:10-13)
- 1005. When we know that Jesus is the Christ, true repentance comes. (2 Chr 34:19-21)
- 1006. Let everyone hear that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Chr 34:29-32)

990. Christ received eternal throne (2 Chr 6:16)

Ps 110:1-2, Lk 1:31-33, Mt 3:16-17, Mt 21:9, Eph 1:20-21, Phil 2:8-11

In the Old Testament, Solomon prayed to God to fulfill what God had promised to King David in his future generations. (2 Chron 6:16)

2 Chron 6:16 Now therefore, O Lord God of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that which thou hast promised him, saying, There shall not fail thee a man in my sight to sit upon the throne of Israel; yet so that thy children take heed to their way to walk in my law, as thou hast walked before me.

In the Old Testament, David saw God granting Christ eternal kingship. (Psalm 110:1-2)

Psalm 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

2 The Lord shall send the rod of thy strength out of Zion: rule thou in the midst of thine enemies.

An angel prophesied that Jesus would be born and that he would receive the kingship of David forever. (Luke 1:31-33)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

When Jesus entered Jerusalem, many Israelis welcomed Jesus as the eternal king of David. (Mt 21:9)

Mt 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

God raised Jesus from the dead and gave him eternal throne. (Ephesians 1:20-21, Phil 2:8-11)

Ephesians 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

Phil 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

991. Gentiles believe in Jesus as the Christ, and they fear God. (2 Chr 6:32-33)

Isa 49:6, Isa 56:6-7, Isa 60:2-3, Acts 13:46-48, Eph 2:12-13

In the Old Testament, King Solomon prayed that the Gentiles would also believe in God. (2 Chron 6:32-33)

2 Chron 6:32 Moreover concerning the stranger, which is not of thy people Israel, but is come from a far country for thy great name's sake, and thy mighty hand, and thy stretched out arm; if they come and pray in this house;
33 Then hear thou from the heavens, even from thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to thee for; that all people of the earth may know thy name, and fear thee, as doth thy people Israel, and may know that this house which I have built is called by thy name.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would save not only those who were preserved in Israel, but also the Gentiles. (Isa 49:6, Isa 56:6-7, Isa 60:2-3)

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

Isa 56:6 Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the Lord, to serve him, and to love the name of the Lord, to be his servants, every one that keepeth the sabbath from polluting it, and taketh hold of my covenant;
7 Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people.

Isa 60:2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.

3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

All Gentiles who believed in Jesus as the Christ were saved. (Acts 13:46-48, Ephesians 2:12-13)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Ephesians 2:12 That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world:

13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.

992. We are blessed. Because we hear the wisdom of God, Christ. (2 Chr 9:7)
Lk 10:41-42, 1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:2-3

In the Old Testament, a queen visited Solomon to hear the wisdom of Solomon. The queen said, Blessed are those who hear the wisdom of her Solomon. (2 Chron 9:7)

2 Chron 9:7 Happy are thy men, and happy are these thy servants, which stand continually before thee, and hear thy wisdom.

Mary spent her time listening to Jesus, and Martha spent preparing a bowl for Jesus. It is more blessed to hear the words of Jesus. (Luke 10:41-42)

Luke 10:41 And Jesus answered and said unto her, Martha, Martha, thou art careful and troubled about many things:
42 But one thing is needful: and Mary hath chosen that good part, which shall not be taken away from her.

Christ is the power of God, the wisdom of God, and the mystery of God. (1 Corinthians 1:24, Colossians 2:2-3)

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Colossians 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;
3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

993. Seek only God and Christ (2 Chr 12:14)
Ps 27:14, Mt 6:33, 1 Cor 16:22

In the Old Testament, King Rehoboam did evil without asking God's will. (2 Chronicles 12:14)

2 Chronicles 12:14 And he did evil, because he prepared not his heart to seek the Lord.

In the Old Testament David told us to wait and seek God. (Psalm 27:14)

Psalm 27:14 Wait on the Lord: be of good courage, and he shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the Lord.

Jesus told us to seek first the kingdom of God and His righteousness. (Mt 6:33)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

We must look only to Jesus. (Hebrews 12:2)

Hebrews 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

Anyone who does not love Jesus will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

994. Those who trust in God and Christ will triumph. (2 Chr 13:18)
2 Chr 20:20, Jn 16:33, Rom 8:35-37, 1 Jn 4:4, 1 Jn 5:4

In the Old Testament, Judah in the South defeated Israel in the North. Because Judah the South depended on God. (2 Chronicles 13:18)

2 Chronicles 13:18 Thus the children of Israel were brought under at that time, and the children of Judah prevailed, because they relied upon the Lord God of their fathers.

In the Old Testament, Jehoshaphat told the Israelites that if they trust in God, they will be victorious. (2 Chronicles 20:20)

2 Chronicles 20:20 And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the Lord your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.

Jesus conquered the world. So, we just need to believe in Jesus, be bold and enjoy peace. (John 16:33, Romans 8:35-37, 1 John 4:4, 1 John 5:4)

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

Romans 8:35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

1 John 4:4 Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world.

1 John 5:4 For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.

995. But you, be strong and do not let your hands be weak (2 Chr 15:7-8)
Isa 35:3-4, Jn 16:33, 1 Cor 9:18, 1 Cor 15:58, Eph 6:10, Heb 10:35

In the Old Testament, the prophet Oded told the Israelites to keep the word of God and not become discouraged. (2 Chronicles 15:7-8)

2 Chronicles 15:7 Be ye strong therefore, and let not your hands be weak: for your work shall be rewarded.
8 And when Asa heard these words, and the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage, and put away the abominable idols out of all the land of Judah and Benjamin, and out of the cities which he had taken from mount Ephraim, and renewed the altar of the Lord, that was before the porch of the Lord.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah told the Israelites to be strong and not be afraid, because God will save them. (Isa 35:3-4)

Isa 35:3 Strengthen ye the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees.
4 Say to them that are of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance, even God with a recompence; he will come and save you.

Jesus said we will have tribulation, but be courageous because He has overcome the world. (John 16:33)

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

We must boldly preach the gospel. And we must not be shaken. Our efforts to spread the gospel will not be in vain. (1 Corinthians 15:58, Ephesians 6:10, Hebrews 10:35)

1 Corinthians 15:58 Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.

Ephesians 6:10 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might.

Hebrews 10:35 Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward.

996. Seek God and Christ with all your life. (2 Chr 15:12-15)
Mt 6:33, Deut 6:5, 1 Cor 16:22, Heb 12:2, Phil 3:8-9

In the Old Testament, when the people of Israel sought God with all their will, God met them and gave them peace.
(2 Chronicles 15:12-15)

2 Chronicles 15:12 And they entered into a covenant to seek the Lord God of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul;

13 That whosoever would not seek the Lord God of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman.

14 And they swore unto the Lord with a loud voice, and with shouting, and with trumpets, and with cornets.

15 And all Judah rejoiced at the oath: for they had sworn with all their heart, and sought him with their whole desire; and he was found of them: and the Lord gave them rest round about.

The Old Testament tells us to love God with all our heart. (Deut 6:5)

Deut 6:5 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

We must seek the kingdom of God and Christ, the righteous of God. Then God will add all these things to us. (Mt 6:33)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

We need to know more deeply that Jesus is the Christ. (Phil 3:8-9, Hebrews 12:2)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

Hebrews 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

997. God empowers those who turn to Him (2 Chr 16:9)
2 Chr 20:20, Ps 125:1, Jn 14:6, 1 Cor 1:24

God gives power to those who turn to Him with all their heart. (2 Chron 16:9, 2 Chron 20:20, Ps 125:1)

2 Chron 16:9 For the eyes of the Lord run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to shew himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward him. Herein thou hast done foolishly: therefore from henceforth thou shalt have wars.

2 Chron 20:20 And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the Lord your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.

Ps 125:1 They that trust in the Lord shall be as mount Zion, which cannot be removed, but abideth for ever.

Jesus, the Christ, is the way to meet God and the power of God. (John 14:6, 1 Corinthians 1:24)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

998. Now we ask of God in Jesus' name. (2 Chr 17:4-5)
1 Tim 2:5, Jn 14:6, Jn 14:13-14, Heb 7:25

In the Old Testament, King Jehoshaphat did not ask the Baals, but did God's commandments and asked God. (2 Chronicles 17:4-5)

2 Chronicles 17:4 But sought to the Lord God of his father, and walked in his commandments, and not after the doings of Israel.

5 Therefore the Lord stablished the kingdom in his hand; and all Judah brought to Jehoshaphat presents; and he had riches and honour in abundance.

The only mediator between God and us is Jesus the Christ. (1 Tim 2:5, John 14:6)

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

If we ask God in the name of Jesus, Jesus will grant us. (John 14:13-14)

John 14:13 And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.

14 If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it.

1000. God and Christ fight for us. (2 Chr 20:17)
Ex 14:13, Jn 16:33, 1 Jn 3:8, Rom 8:36-37, Eph 2:16

2 Chronicles 20:17 Ye shall not need to fight in this battle: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of the Lord with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them: for the Lord will be with you.

Exodus 14:13 And Moses said unto the people, Fear ye not, stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord, which he will shew to you to day: for the Egyptians whom ye have seen to day, ye shall see them again no more for ever.

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

Jesus, the Christ, destroyed our enemy, the devil. (1 John 3:8, Ephesians 2:16)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Ephesians 2:16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

God grants us who believe in Jesus the Christ to be overcome in all things. (Romans 8:36-37)

Romans 8:36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.
37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

1001. Praise God through Christ (2 Chr 29:30)

Heb 13:15, Eph 5:19-20, Col 3:16-17, 1 Pt 2:5, Rev 5:13, Rev 7:9-10

In the Old Testament, King Hezekiah praised God with psalms. (2 Chronicles 29:30)

2 Chronicles 29:30 Moreover Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praise unto the Lord with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.

Now we only need to offer a sacrifice of praise to God through Jesus, the Christ. (Hebrews 13:15, Ephesians 5:19-20, Colossians 3:16-17, 1 Peter 2:5)

Hebrews 13:15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

Ephesians 5:19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;

20 Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;

Colossians 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

1 Peter 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

We give praise, honor and glory to God and to Jesus the Christ. (Rev 5:13, Rev 7:9-10)

Rev 5:13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.

Rev 7:9 After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands;

10 And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb.

1002. Come to Christ, Passover Lamb (2 Chr 30:1,6)
Isa 2:3, Lam 5:21, Joel 2:13, 1 Cor 5:7

In the Old Testament, King Hezekiah told the Israelites to keep the Passover and return to God. (2 Chron 30:1,6)

2 Chron 30:1 And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and wrote letters also to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of the Lord at Jerusalem, to keep the passover unto the Lord God of Israel.

6 So the posts went with the letters from the king and his princes throughout all Israel and Judah, and according to the commandment of the king, saying, Ye children of Israel, turn again unto the Lord God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, and he will return to the remnant of you, that are escaped out of the hand of the kings of Assyria.

In the Old Testament, the prophet Isaiah prophesied that in the last days many people would come to God's house and God would communicate God's will to them. (Isa 2:3)

Isa 2:3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites asked God to turn them back to God and renew them as they were in the old days. (Lamentations 5:21)

Lamentations 5:21 Turn thou us unto thee, O Lord, and we shall be turned; renew our days as of old.

In the Old Testament, the prophet Joel appealed to the people of Israel to return to God. (Joel 2:13)

Joel 2:13 And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the Lord your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.

Christ Jesus, the Passover Lamb, was sacrificed for us. So now we must come to Christ. (1 Corinthians 5:7)

1 Corinthians 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us:

1003. News of great joy: Jesus is the Christ! (2 Chr 30:26)
Mt 28:7-8, Lk 2:10-11, Lk 24:50-53, Acts 8:5-8

In the Old Testament, while King Hezekiah and the people of Israel kept the Passover, the people of Israel, foreigners living in Judah, and foreigners visiting Israel all rejoiced. (2 Chronicles 30:26)

2 Chronicles 30:26 So there was great joy in Jerusalem: for since the time of Solomon the son of David king of Israel there was not the like in Jerusalem.

The good news for the whole world is that Christ has been born. That Christ is Jesus. (Luke 2:10-11)

Luke 2:10 And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.

11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

When the women heard the news of Jesus' resurrection, they were overjoyed and rushed to tell the news of Jesus' resurrection to His disciples. (Mt 28:7-8)

Mt 28:7 And go quickly, and tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead; and, behold, he goeth before you into Galilee; there shall ye see him: lo, I have told you.

8 And they departed quickly from the sepulchre with fear and great joy; and did run to bring his disciples word.

The resurrected Jesus blessed his disciples and ascended into heaven. When the disciples saw Jesus ascended into heaven, they were filled with great joy. (Luke 24:50-53)

Luke 24:50 And he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them.

51 And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up into heaven.

52 And they worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem with great joy:

53 And were continually in the temple, praising and blessing God. Amen.

When it was preached in Samaria that Jesus was the Christ, there was great joy in Samaria. (Acts 8:5-8)

Acts 8:5 Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto them.

6 And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did.

7 For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed with them: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed.

8 And there was great joy in that city.

1004. They knew that Jesus was the Christ. (2 Chr 33:10-13)
Mt 16:16-17, Jn 4:29,42, Jn 20:27-28

In the Old Testament, King Manasseh was defeated by the Assyrian army and became a captive. King Manasseh prayed to God and was released from captivity and became king again. Only then did King Manasseh know that the Lord was the true God. (2 Chronicles 33:10-13)

2 Chronicles 33:10 And the Lord spake to Manasseh, and to his people: but they would not hearken.

11 Wherefore the Lord brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon.

12 And when he was in affliction, he besought the Lord his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers,

13 And prayed unto him: and he was intreated of him, and heard his supplication, and brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that the Lord he was God.

By the grace of God, Peter came to know that Jesus was the Christ. (Mt 16:16-17)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

People living in Suga City heard the words of Jesus and came to know that Jesus was the Christ. (John 4:29, 42)

John 4:29 Come, see a man, which told me all things that ever I did: is not this the Christ?

42 And said unto the woman, Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard him ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world.

Thomas put his hand on the side of the resurrected Jesus and knew that Jesus was the Christ. (John 20:27-28)

John 20:27 Then saith he to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing.

28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.

1005. When we know that Jesus is the Christ, true repentance comes. (2 Chr 34:19-21)
Zech 12:10, Acts 2:36-37, Acts 16:29-31

In the Old Testament, King Josiah found the book of the law in the temple, read it, and repented. King Josiah knew that the people of Israel had not done what was written in the book of the law and that they had received the wrath of God. (2 Chronicles 34:19-21)

2 Chronicles 34:19 And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the law, that he rent his clothes.
20 And the king commanded Hilkiah, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Abdon the son of Micah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah a servant of the king's, saying,
21 Go, enquire of the Lord for me, and for them that are left in Israel and in Judah, concerning the words of the book that is found: for great is the wrath of the Lord that is poured out upon us, because our fathers have not kept the word of the Lord, to do after all that is written in this book.

It was foretold in the Old Testament that the Israelites would mourn over the Christ whom they had pierced. (Zec 12:10)

Zec 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

When the Israelites learned that Jesus, whom they had crucified, was the Christ, the Israelites repented. (Acts 2:36-37)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

1006. Let everyone hear that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Chr 34:29-32)
Act 2:38-41, Acts 5:42, Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, King Josiah read the book of the covenant found in the temple and made all the people of Israel hear it. (2 Chronicles 34:29-32)

2 Chronicles 34:29 Then the king sent and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem.

30 And the king went up into the house of the Lord, and all the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, and the Levites, and all the people, great and small: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant that was found in the house of the Lord.

31 And the king stood in his place, and made a covenant before the Lord, to walk after the Lord, and to keep his commandments, and his testimonies, and his statutes, with all his heart, and with all his soul, to perform the words of the covenant which are written in this book.

32 And he caused all that were present in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand to it. And the inhabitants of Jerusalem did according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers.

The resurrected Jesus commanded his disciples to let everyone hear that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 28:18-20, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Peter told the Israelites and Gentiles to believe in Jesus as the Christ and be baptized. On that day, 3,000 people believed in Jesus as the Christ and were baptized. (Acts 2:38-41)

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.

41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.

The early church members did not stop teaching and preaching that Jesus is the Christ, whether in the temple or at home every day. (Acts 5:42)

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

Ezra

Bible

1007. God fulfills the covenant of sending Christ. (Ezr 1:1)

1008. Christ is the true temple. (Ezr 3:10-13)

1009. Teach that Jesus is the Christ. (Ezr 7:6,10)

1010. If you preach a gospel other than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, then you will be cursed. (Ezr 9:1-3, 10:3)

1007. God fulfilled the covenant of sending Christ. (Ezr 1:1)
Jer 29:10, 2 Chr 36:22, Mt 1:11-12, Isa 41:25, Isa 43:14, Isa 44:28

In the Old Testament, God moved the heart of Cyrus king of Persia to fulfill the word spoken through Jeremiah.
(Ezra 1:1, 2 Chron 36:22)

Ezra 1:1 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying,

2 Chron 36:22 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the Lord spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying,

In the Old Testament, God said through Jeremiah that He would bring the people of Israel back from Babylon.
(Jeremiah 29:10)

Jeremiah 29:10 For thus saith the Lord, That after seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place.

In the Old Testament, God said that he would raise Cyrus the king, release Israel from captivity, and trample the nations that attacked Israel. (Isa 41:25, Isa 43:14, Isa 44:28)

Isa 41:25 I have raised up one from the north, and he shall come: from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name: and he shall come upon princes as upon mortar, and as the potter treadeth clay.

Isa 43:14 Thus saith the Lord, your redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; For your sake I have sent to Babylon, and have brought down all their nobles, and the Chaldeans, whose cry is in the ships.

Isa 44:28 That saith of Cyrus, He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid.

God has fulfilled His promise to send Christ. (Mt 1:11-12,16)

Mt 1:11 And Josias begat Jechonias and his brethren, about the time they were carried away to Babylon:
12 And after they were brought to Babylon, Jechonias begat Salathiel; and Salathiel begat Zorobabel;
16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1008. Christ is the true temple. (Ezr 3:10-13)
Ezr 6:14-15, Jn 2:19-21, Rev 21:22

In the Old Testament, when the builders of Israel returning from captivity laid the foundations of the temple, all the people of Israel rejoiced. (Ezra 3:10-13)

Ezra 3:10 And when the builders laid the foundation of the temple of the Lord, they set the priests in their apparel with trumpets, and the Levites the sons of Asaph with cymbals, to praise the Lord, after the ordinance of David king of Israel.

11 And they sang together by course in praising and giving thanks unto the Lord; because he is good, for his mercy endureth for ever toward Israel. And all the people shouted with a great shout, when they praised the Lord, because the foundation of the house of the Lord was laid.

12 But many of the priests and Levites and chief of the fathers, who were ancient men, that had seen the first house, when the foundation of this house was laid before their eyes, wept with a loud voice; and many shouted aloud for joy:

13 So that the people could not discern the noise of the shout of joy from the noise of the weeping of the people: for the people shouted with a loud shout, and the noise was heard afar off.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites finished building the temple according to God's word. (Ezra 6:14-15)

Ezra 6:14 And the elders of the Jews builded, and they prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah the son of Iddo. And they builded, and finished it, according to the commandment of the God of Israel, and according to the commandment of Cyrus, and Darius, and Artaxerxes king of Persia.

15 And this house was finished on the third day of the month Adar, which was in the sixth year of the reign of Darius the king.

Jesus, the Christ, is the true temple. (John 2:19-21, Rev 21:22)

John 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.

20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?

21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

Rev 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

1009. Teach that Jesus is the Christ. (Ezr 7:6,10)
Acts 5:42, Acts 8:34-35, Acts 17:2-3

In the Old Testament, the scribe Ezra taught the Israelites God's law. (Ezra 7:6,10)

Ezra 7:6 This Ezra went up from Babylon; and he was a ready scribe in the law of Moses, which the Lord God of Israel had given: and the king granted him all his request, according to the hand of the Lord his God upon him.
10 For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the law of the Lord, and to do it, and to teach in Israel statutes and judgments.

In the early church, those who believed that Jesus was the Christ taught and preached that Jesus was the Christ, whether in the temple or at home. (Acts 5:42)

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

Philip explained the Old Testament to the Ethiopian eunuch and taught that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 8:34-35)

Acts 8:34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

Paul opened the Old Testament and proclaimed that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 17:2-3)

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

1010. If you preach a gospel other than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, then you will be cursed. (Ezr 9:1-3, 10:3)
2 Cor 11:4, Gal 1:6-9

Ezra wept when he heard that the people of Israel and the priests were still marrying Gentile daughters. (Ezra 9:1-3)

Ezra 9:1 Now when these things were done, the princes came to me, saying, The people of Israel, and the priests, and the Levites, have not separated themselves from the people of the lands, doing according to their abominations, even of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, the Ammonites, the Moabites, the Egyptians, and the Amorites.

2 For they have taken of their daughters for themselves, and for their sons: so that the holy seed have mingled themselves with the people of those lands: yea, the hand of the princes and rulers hath been chief in this trespass.

3 And when I heard this thing, I rent my garment and my mantle, and plucked off the hair of my head and of my beard, and sat down astonished.

In the Old Testament, the people of Israel drove out all foreign women and children and decided to follow God's law. (Ezra 10:3)

Ezra 10:3 Now therefore let us make a covenant with our God to put away all the wives, and such as are born of them, according to the counsel of my lord, and of those that tremble at the commandment of our God; and let it be done according to the law.

If you preach any other gospel than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, you will be cursed. (2 Corinthians 11:4, Gal 1:6-8)

2 Corinthians 11:4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:

7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

- 1011. Worry for world evangelization (Neh 1:2-5, 2:1-3)
- 1012. Economic commitment to evangelism (Neh 5:11-13)
- 1013. Let people realize that Jesus is the Christ through all the Scriptures. (Neh 8:1-9)
- 1014. It is your power to rejoice in God and in Christ. (Neh 8:10)
- 1015. When we know that Jesus is the Christ, true repentance comes. (Neh 9:3)
- 1016. The righteous God who sent Christ as promised (Neh 9:8)
- 1017. Christ is the food of life Christ as the spiritual rock Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Neh 9:15)
- 1018. God and Christ who made and preserved all things (Neh 9:15)
- 1019. Let the servants of the Lord be devoid of word and evangelism. (Neh 13:10-12)

1011. Worry for world evangelization (Neh 1:2-5, 2:1-3)
Rom 9:1-3, 2 Cor 7:10, Col 4:3, 2 Tim 4:17, Phil 2:16-17

In the Old Testament, Nehemiah, who came to Persia, wept for many days when he heard the news from a man from Israel about those who remained in Israel without being taken captive. (Ne 1:2-5)

Ne 1:2 That Hanani, one of my brethren, came, he and certain men of Judah; and I asked them concerning the Jews that had escaped, which were left of the captivity, and concerning Jerusalem.
3 And they said unto me, The remnant that are left of the captivity there in the province are in great affliction and reproach: the wall of Jerusalem also is broken down, and the gates thereof are burned with fire.
4 And it came to pass, when I heard these words, that I sat down and wept, and mourned certain days, and fasted, and prayed before the God of heaven,
5 And said, I beseech thee, O Lord God of heaven, the great and terrible God, that keepeth covenant and mercy for them that love him and observe his commandments:

In the Old Testament, Nehemiah told Artaxerxes King Artaxerxes that he was troubled by the desolation of his nation, Israel. (Ne 2:1-3)

Ne 2:1 And it came to pass in the month Nisan, in the twentieth year of Artaxerxes the king, that wine was before him: and I took up the wine, and gave it unto the king. Now I had not been beforetime sad in his presence.
2 Wherefore the king said unto me, Why is thy countenance sad, seeing thou art not sick? this is nothing else but sorrow of heart. Then I was very sore afraid,
3 And said unto the king, Let the king live for ever: why should not my countenance be sad, when the city, the place of my fathers' sepulchres, lieth waste, and the gates thereof are consumed with fire?

Paul wanted his people to be saved, even if he were cut off from Christ. (Romans 9:1-3)

Romans 9:1 I say the truth in Christ, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Ghost,
2 That I have great heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart.
3 For I could wish that myself were accursed from Christ for my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh:

Paul prayed that God would open the door of evangelism and let them know that Jesus is the Christ to the Israelites and Gentiles. (Col 4:3, 2 Tim 4:17, Phil 2:16-17)

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

2 Tim 4:17 Notwithstanding the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and that all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion.

Phil 2:16 Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.

17 Yea, and if I be offered upon the sacrifice and service of your faith, I joy, and rejoice with you all.

The sorrow that follows God's will is the sorrow for world evangelization. (2 Corinthians 7:10)

2 Corinthians 7:10 For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.

1012. Economic commitment to evangelism (Neh 5:11-13)
Acts 2:44-47, Acts 4:32-35

In the Old Testament, Nehemiah told Israel's nobles and officials to return the interest they had received from the poor and not to accept interest. (Ne 5:11-13)

Ne 5:11 Restore, I pray you, to them, even this day, their lands, their vineyards, their oliveyards, and their houses, also the hundredth part of the money, and of the corn, the wine, and the oil, that ye exact of them.

12 Then said they, We will restore them, and will require nothing of them; so will we do as thou sayest. Then I called the priests, and took an oath of them, that they should do according to this promise.

13 Also I shook my lap, and said, So God shake out every man from his house, and from his labour, that performeth not this promise, even thus be he shaken out, and emptied. And all the congregation said, Amen, and praised the Lord. And the people did according to this promise.

In the early church, those who believed in Jesus as the Christ shared their belongings among the members for evangelism and distributed them according to the needs of people. And God added more people to be saved every day. (Acts 2:44-47, Acts 4:32-35)

Acts 2:44 And all that believed were together, and had all things common;

45 And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men, as every man had need.

46 And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart,

47 Praising God, and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.

Acts 4:32 And the multitude of them that believed were of one heart and of one soul: neither said any of them that ought of the things which he possessed was his own; but they had all things common.

33 And with great power gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus: and great grace was upon them all.

34 Neither was there any among them that lacked: for as many as were possessors of lands or houses sold them, and brought the prices of the things that were sold,

35 And laid them down at the apostles' feet: and distribution was made unto every man according as he had need.

1013. Let people realize that Jesus is the Christ through all the Scriptures. (Neh 8:1-9)
Lk 24:25-27,32,44-47, Acts 8:34-35, Acts 17:2-3

In the Old Testament, when Ezra the priest gathered all the people of Israel and taught them to understand the book of the Law of Moses, the people wept when they heard the word of the Law. (Ne 9:1-9)

Ne 9:1 Now in the twenty and fourth day of this month the children of Israel were assembled with fasting, and with sackclothes, and earth upon them.

2 And the seed of Israel separated themselves from all strangers, and stood and confessed their sins, and the iniquities of their fathers.

3 And they stood up in their place, and read in the book of the law of the Lord their God one fourth part of the day; and another fourth part they confessed, and worshipped the Lord their God.

4 Then stood up upon the stairs, of the Levites, Jeshua, and Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Chenani, and cried with a loud voice unto the Lord their God.

5 Then the Levites, Jeshua, and Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabniah, Sherebiah, Hodijah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah, said, Stand up and bless the Lord your God for ever and ever: and blessed be thy glorious name, which is exalted above all blessing and praise.

6 Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee.

7 Thou art the Lord the God, who didst choose Abram, and broughtest him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees, and gavest him the name of Abraham;

8 And foundest his heart faithful before thee, and madest a covenant with him to give the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Jebusites, and the Girgashites, to give it, I say, to his seed, and hast performed thy words; for thou art righteous:

9 And didst see the affliction of our fathers in Egypt, and heardest their cry by the Red sea;

The resurrected Jesus appeared to his disciples and explained the Old Testament so that they could realize that he was the Christ. (Luke 24:25-27, 32,45-47)

Luke 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

32 And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

Philip explained the Old Testament to the Ethiopian eunuch so that he realized that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 8:34-35)

Acts 8:34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

At the three Sabbaths, Paul explained the Old Testament and testified that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 17:2-3)

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

1014. The joy of the Lord is your strength. (Neh 8:10)
Ps 28:7, Isa 12:2, Isa 61:10, Joel 2:23, Phil 1:18, 1 Jn 1:1-4

The joy of the Lord is our strength. (Nehemiah 8:10, Ps 28:7, Isa 12:2, Isa 61:10)

Nehemiah 8:10 Then he said unto them, Go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared: for this day is holy unto our Lord: neither be ye sorry; for the joy of the Lord is your strength.

Ps 28:7 The Lord is my strength and my shield; my heart trusted in him, and I am helped: therefore my heart greatly rejoiceth; and with my song will I praise him.

Isa 12:2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord Jehovah is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.

Isa 61:10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.

It is our joy to believe and preach Jesus as the Christ. (Phil 1:18, 1 John 1:1-4)

Phil 1:18 What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached; and I therein do rejoice, yea, and will rejoice.

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

3 That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.

4 And these things write we unto you, that your joy may be full.

1015. When we know that Jesus is the Christ, true repentance comes. (Neh 9:3)
Zech 12:10, Acts 2:36-37

In the Old Testament, the Israelites who returned from captivity read the Book of the Law and confessed their sins. (Ne 9:3)

Ne 9:3 And they stood up in their place, and read in the book of the law of the Lord their God one fourth part of the day; and another fourth part they confessed, and worshipped the Lord their God.

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that the Israelites would weep when they saw Christ dying for them. (Zec 12:10)

Zec 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

The Israelites repented when they realized that Jesus, whom they had crucified, was the Christ. (Acts 2:36-37)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

1016. The righteous God who sent Christ as promised (Neh 9:8)
Gen 22:17-18, Gal 3:16

In the Old Testament, God promised Abraham to give Canaan, the land where Christ would come, to the nation of Israel. (Ne 9:8)

Ne 9:8 And foundest his heart faithful before thee, and madest a covenant with him to give the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Jebusites, and the Girgashites, to give it, I say, to his seed, and hast performed thy words; for thou art righteous:

In the Old Testament, God promised Abraham that Christ, who would come as a descendant of Abraham, would gain the gates of the enemy and bless all peoples under the world. (Ge 22:17-18)

Ge 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

God sent the Christ promised to Abraham to the people of Israel. That Christ is Jesus. (Ga 3:16, Matthew 1:16)

Ga 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1017. Christ as the food of life, Christ as the spiritual rock, Canaan, the land where Christ will come (Neh 9:15)
Jn 6:31-35, 1 Cor 10:4, Mt 2:4-6

In the Old Testament, when the Israelites were hungry, God gave them food from heaven and made water from a rock to drink. And God commanded the Israelites to take possession of Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Ne 9:15)

Ne 9:15 And gavest them bread from heaven for their hunger, and broughtest forth water for them out of the rock for their thirst, and promisedst them that they should go in to possess the land which thou hadst sworn to give them.

The food God gave the Israelites was to give them life. Jesus is the true bread of life sent by God. (John 6:31-35)

John 6:31 Our fathers did eat manna in the desert; as it is written, He gave them bread from heaven to eat.

32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.

33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.

35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

In the Old Testament, the people of Israel were able to drink water in the wilderness because Christ, the spiritual rock, gave them water. (1 Corinthians 10:4)

1 Corinthians 10:4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Christ was born in Bethlehem, the land of Canaan. That is Jesus. (Mt 2:4-6, Mt 1:16)

Mt 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

Mt 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1018. God and Christ who made and preserved all things (Neh 9:15)
Jn 1:3, Col 1:16, Heb 1:2,6

God created all things and preserves all things. (Ne 9:6)

Ne 9:6 Thou, even thou, art Lord alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee.

Christ made all things with God. And all things exist for Christ. (John 1:3, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2)

John 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

Colossians 1:16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Hebrews 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

1019. Let the servants of the Lord be devoid of word and evangelism. (Neh 13:10-12)
Acts 6:3-4

In the Old Testament, the Israelites did not give the Levites what they had to give, so the Levites returned to their homeland. So Nehemiah rebuked the Israelites, called the Levites back, and had the Israelites give a tenth of their grain to the Levites. (Ne 13:10-12)

Ne 13:10 And I perceived that the portions of the Levites had not been given them: for the Levites and the singers, that did the work, were fled every one to his field.

11 Then contended I with the rulers, and said, Why is the house of God forsaken? And I gathered them together, and set them in their place.

12 Then brought all Judah the tithe of the corn and the new wine and the oil unto the treasuries.

In the early church, the apostles concentrated on praying and preaching the Word. And the saints devoted themselves financially so that the apostles could focus on prayer and preaching the Word. (Acts 6:3-4)

Acts 6:3 Wherefore, brethren, look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business.

4 But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word.

Esther

Bible

40. Christ in Esther

1020. Christ crucified gave us joy. (Est 9:21-28)

40. Christ in Esther

The book of Esther typifies the work of Christ in the clearest way.

Satan tried to kill God's people (Est 3:6)

Est 3:6 And he thought scorn to lay hands on Mordecai alone; for they had shewed him the people of Mordecai: wherefore Haman sought to destroy all the Jews that were throughout the whole kingdom of Ahasuerus, even the people of Mordecai.

Esther decided to risk her life and save the people of Israel. (Est 4:16)

Est 4:16 Go, gather together all the Jews that are present in Shushan, and fast ye for me, and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day: I also and my maidens will fast likewise; and so will I go in unto the king, which is not according to the law: and if I perish, I perish.

Implications of Christ's death, resurrection, and world evangelization (Est 7:3)

Est 7:3 Then Esther the queen answered and said, If I have found favour in thy sight, O king, and if it please the king, let my life be given me at my petition, and my people at my request:

Satan dies in the tree where we are going to die (Est 7:9-10)

Est 7:9 And Harbonah, one of the chamberlains, said before the king, Behold also, the gallows fifty cubits high, which Haman had made for Mordecai, who spoken good for the king, standeth in the house of Haman. Then the king said, Hang him thereon.

10 So they hanged Haman on the gallows that he had prepared for Mordecai. Then was the king's wrath pacified.

Through Christ we are free from all the curses that come upon us.(Est 8:5)

Est 8:5 And said, If it please the king, and if I have favour in his sight, and the thing seem right before the king, and I be pleasing in his eyes, let it be written to reverse the letters devised by Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, which he wrote to destroy the Jews which are in all the king's provinces:

We need to bring this good news to the world quickly. (Est 8:9,14)

Est 8:9 Then were the king's scribes called at that time in the third month, that is, the month Sivan, on the three and twentieth day thereof; and it was written according to all that Mordecai commanded unto the Jews, and to the lieutenants, and the deputies and rulers of the provinces which are from India unto Ethiopia, an hundred twenty and seven provinces, unto every province according to the writing thereof, and unto every people after their language, and to the Jews according to their writing, and according to their language.

14 So the posts that rode upon mules and camels went out, being hastened and pressed on by the king's commandment. And the decree was given at Shushan the palace.

1020. Christ crucified gave us joy. (Est 9:21-28)

In the Old Testament, the enemies died on the same day they decided to kill the people of Israel. The Israelites celebrated this day as the Feast of Purim and rejoiced. (Est 9:21-28)

Est 9:21 To stablish this among them, that they should keep the fourteenth day of the month Adar, and the fifteenth day of the same, yearly,
22 As the days wherein the Jews rested from their enemies, and the month which was turned unto them from sorrow to joy, and from mourning into a good day: that they should make them days of feasting and joy, and of sending portions one to another, and gifts to the poor.
23 And the Jews undertook to do as they had begun, and as Mordecai had written unto them;
24 Because Haman the son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, the enemy of all the Jews, had devised against the Jews to destroy them, and had cast Pur, that is, the lot, to consume them, and to destroy them;
25 But when Esther came before the king, he commanded by letters that his wicked device, which he devised against the Jews, should return upon his own head, and that he and his sons should be hanged on the gallows.
26 Wherefore they called these days Purim after the name of Pur. Therefore for all the words of this letter, and of that which they had seen concerning this matter, and which had come unto them,
27 The Jews ordained, and took upon them, and upon their seed, and upon all such as joined themselves unto them, so as it should not fail, that they would keep these two days according to their writing, and according to their appointed time every year;
28 And that these days should be remembered and kept throughout every generation, every family, every province, and every city; and that these days of Purim should not fail from among the Jews, nor the memorial of them perish from their seed.

God has turned our sorrow into joy. (Psalm 30:11-12, Isa 61:3)

Psalm 30:11 Thou hast turned for me my mourning into dancing: thou hast put off my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness;
12 To the end that my glory may sing praise to thee, and not be silent. O Lord my God, I will give thanks unto thee for ever.

Isa 61:3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

The cross of Christ is the power of God and the wisdom of God. (1 Cor 1:18, 1 Cor 1:23-24)

1 Cor 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

1 Cor 1:23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;
24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Job**Bible**

- 1021. Satan is also under the control of God. (Job 1:12)
- 1022. God's sovereignty directs everything to Christ. (Job 1:21-22)
- 1023. Satan goes around to devour us.(Job 1:7)
- 1024. Christ who broke Satan, the accuser of us (Job 1:9-11)
- 1025. God's Plan to Make Us Realize Christ: Pain (Job 2:10)
- 1026. Christ who walks on the waves of the sea (Job 9:8)
- 1027. Christ as our Mediator (Job 9:32-33)
- 1028. Everyone is born in sin. (Job 14:4)
- 1029. My advocate is on high (Job 16:19)
- 1030. My Redeemer lives, And He shall stand at last on the earth;(Job 19:25)
- 1031. Christ is the true wisdom (Job 28:12-13)
- 1032. True knowledge is knowing the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom He has sent. (Job 28:28)
- 1033. Christ became the ransom for us. (Job 33:24)
- 1034. The whole world belongs to God and Christ. (Job 41:11)
- 1035. Jesus Christ, the revealed God (Job 42:5-6)

1021. Satan is also under the control of God. (Job 1:12)

Job 2:4-7, 1 Sam 16:14, 1 Kings 22:23, 2 Sam 24:1, 1 Chr 21:1, 2 Cor 12:7

In the Old Testament, God allowed Satan to touch Job's possessions, but he did not allow him to touch Job's life. (Job 1:12, Job 2:4-7)

Job 1:12 And the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, all that he hath is in thy power; only upon himself put not forth thine hand. So Satan went forth from the presence of the Lord.

Job 2:4 And Satan answered the Lord, and said, Skin for skin, yea, all that a man hath will he give for his life.

5 But put forth thine hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse thee to thy face.

6 And the Lord said unto Satan, Behold, he is in thine hand; but save his life.

7 So went Satan forth from the presence of the Lord, and smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his foot unto his crown.

In the Old Testament, the evil spirit that troubled Saul was also under God's control. (1 Samuel 16:14)

1 Samuel 16:14 But the Spirit of the Lord departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from the Lord troubled him.

In the Old Testament, God put false spirits in the mouths of false prophets. (1 Kings 22:23)

1 Kings 22:23 Now therefore, behold, the Lord hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets, and the Lord hath spoken evil concerning thee.

In the Old Testament, God used Satan to stir up David. (2 Samuel 24:1, 1 Chronicles 21:1)

2 Samuel 24:1 And again the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel, and he moved David against them to say, Go, number Israel and Judah.

1 Chronicles 21:1 And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel.

God also allows Satan to attack us to awaken us. (2 Corinthians 12:7)

2 Corinthians 12:7 And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure.

1022. God's sovereignty directs everything to Christ. (Job 1:21-22)
Isa 45:9, Rom 11:32-36, Job 41:11, Isa 40:13, Isa 45:9, Jer 18:6

Job, who suffered in the Old Testament, knew that everything came from God and praised God. (Job 1:21-22)

Job 1:21 And said, Naked came I out of my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither: the Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away; blessed be the name of the Lord.
22 In all this Job sinned not, nor charged God foolishly.

God made us. So we cannot complain to God. (Job 41:11, Isaiah 45:9, Isaiah 40:13, Jeremiah 18:6)

Job 41:11 Who hath prevented me, that I should repay him? whatsoever is under the whole heaven is mine.

Isaiah 45:9 Woe unto him that striveth with his Maker! Let the potsherd strive with the potsherds of the earth. Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest thou? or thy work, He hath no hands?

Isaiah 40:13 Who hath directed the Spirit of the Lord, or being his counsellor hath taught him?

Jeremiah 18:6 O house of Israel, cannot I do with you as this potter? saith the Lord. Behold, as the clay is in the potter's hand, so are ye in mine hand, O house of Israel.

God made it impossible for all human beings to obey Him, so He led all people to Christ, the grace of God. (Romans 11:32-36)

Romans 11:32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.
33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! how unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out!
34 For who hath known the mind of the Lord? or who hath been his counsellor?
35 Or who hath first given to him, and it shall be recompensed unto him again?
36 For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things: to whom be glory for ever. Amen.

1023. Satan goes around to devour us.(Job 1:7)

Job 2:2, Ezk 22:25, 1 Pt 5:8, Lk 22:31, 2 Cor 2:11, 2 Cor 4:4, Eph 4:27, Eph 6:11, Rev 12:9, Rev 20:10

Satan is roaming the earth to devour the souls of men. (Job 1:7, Job 2:2, Ezekiel 22:25)

Job 1:7 And the Lord said unto Satan, Whence comest thou? Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

Job 2:2 And the Lord said unto Satan, From whence comest thou? And Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

Ezekiel 22:25 There is a conspiracy of her prophets in the midst thereof, like a roaring lion ravening the prey; they have devoured souls; they have taken the treasure and precious things; they have made her many widows in the midst thereof.

Satan is still going around to deceive believers. So we must be sober and watchful. (1 Pet 5:8, Luke 22:31, 2 Cor 2:11, 2 Cor 4:4, Ephesians 4:27, Ephesians 6:11)

1 Pet 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

Luke 22:31 And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat:

2 Cor 2:11 Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices.

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Ephesians 4:27 Neither give place to the devil.

Ephesians 6:11 Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

Christ destroyed the work of the devil. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Satan will be tormented in hell forever in his last days. (Rev 12:9, Rev 20:10)

Rev 12:9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

1024. Christ who broke Satan, the accuser of us (Job 1:9-11)
Job 2:5, Rev 12:10, 1 Jn 3:8

In the Old Testament, Satan accused Job of God. (Job 1:9-11, Job 2:5)

Job 1:9 Then Satan answered the Lord, and said, Doth Job fear God for nought?

10 Hast not thou made an hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side? thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land.

11 But put forth thine hand now, and touch all that he hath, and he will curse thee to thy face.

Job 2:5 But put forth thine hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse thee to thy face.

Christ has broken our accusers. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Satan, who was accusing us, will be cast out by the power of Christ and tormented in hell forever. (Rev 12:10, Rev 20:10)

Rev 12:10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

1025. God's Plan to Make Us Realize Christ: Pain (Job 2:10)
Deut 8:3, James 5:11, Heb 12:9-11

In the Old Testament, Job came to know God more deeply through suffering. (Job 2:10, James 5:11)

Job 2:10 But he said unto her, Thou speakest as one of the foolish women speaketh. What? shall we receive good at the hand of God, and shall we not receive evil? In all this did not Job sin with his lips.

James 5:11 Behold, we count them happy which endure. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.

In the Old Testament, God humbled the people of Israel and made them hungry so that they could understand that people live by all the words of God. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

God also allows suffering to deepen our understanding of Christ. (Hebrews 12:9-11)

Hebrews 12:9 Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live?

10 For they verily for a few days chastened us after their own pleasure; but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness.

11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.

1026. Christ who walked on the waves of the sea (Job 9:8)
Job 26:11, Mt 14:25, Mk 6:47-48, Jn 6:19, Mt 8:24-27

In the Old Testament, God treaded on the waves of the sea and rebuked the sea to calm it. (Job 9:8, Job 26:11)

Job 9:8 Which alone spreadeth out the heavens, and treadeth upon the waves of the sea.

Job 26:11 The pillars of heaven tremble and are astonished at his reproof.

Jesus also walked on the sea and rebuked the sea and calmed it. (Matthew 14:25, Mark 6:47-48, John 6:19, Matt 8:24-27)

Matthew 14:25 And in the fourth watch of the night Jesus went unto them, walking on the sea.

Mark 6:47 And when even was come, the ship was in the midst of the sea, and he alone on the land.
48 And he saw them toiling in rowing; for the wind was contrary unto them: and about the fourth watch of the night he cometh unto them, walking upon the sea, and would have passed by them.

John 6:19 So when they had rowed about five and twenty or thirty furlongs, they see Jesus walking on the sea, and drawing nigh unto the ship: and they were afraid.

Matt 8:24 And, behold, there arose a great tempest in the sea, insomuch that the ship was covered with the waves: but he was asleep.

25 And his disciples came to him, and awoke him, saying, Lord, save us: we perish.

26 And he saith unto them, Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith? Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm.

27 But the men marvelled, saying, What manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him!

1027. Christ as our Mediator (Job 9:32-33)

1 Tim 2:5, 1 Jn 2:1-2, Heb 8:6, Heb 9:15, Heb 12:24

In the Old Testament, Job lamented knowing that there was no mediator between God and himself. (Job 9:32-33)

Job 9:32 For he is not a man, as I am, that I should answer him, and we should come together in judgment.

33 Neither is there any daysman betwixt us, that might lay his hand upon us both.

Jesus, the Christ, is the mediator between God and us. (1 Timothy 2:5, Hebrews 8:6)

1 Timothy 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

Hebrews 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

Jesus became the propitiation for our sins and became the mediator between us and God. (1 John 2:1-2, Hebrews 9:15, Hebrews 12:24)

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

Hebrews 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

Hebrews 12:24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.

1028. Everyone is born in sin. (Job 14:1-4)
Ps 51:5, Rom 3:23, Rom 5:12, Eph 2:1-3

All people are born in sin. (Job 14:1-4, Psalm 51:5)\

Job 14:1 Man that is born of a woman is of few days and full of trouble.
2 He cometh forth like a flower, and is cut down: he fleeth also as a shadow, and continueth not.
3 And doth thou open thine eyes upon such an one, and bringest me into judgment with thee?
4 Who can bring a clean thing out of an unclean? not one.

Psalm 51:5 Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me.

Everyone is a sinner and commits sins. (Romans 3:23, Romans 5:12, Ephesians 2:1-3)

Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

Romans 5:12 Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:

Ephesians 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;
2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:
3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

1029. My Advocate is on high (Job 16:19)

1 Tim 2:5, 1 Jn 2:1-2, Heb 8:6, Heb 9:15, Heb 12:24, Mt 21:9, Mk 11:9-10

In the Old Testament, Job saw his Advocate in heaven. (Job 16:19)

Job 16:19 Also now, behold, my witness is in heaven, and my record is on high.

Jesus became the propitiation for our sins and he became our Advocate before God. (1 Tim 2:5, 1 John 2:1-2, Heb 8:6, Heb 9:15, Heb 12:24)

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

Heb 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

Heb 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

Heb 12:24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.

1030. For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth (Job 19:25)
1 Tim 2:5, 1 Jn 2:1-2, Heb 8:6, Heb 9:15, Heb 12:24, Mt 21:9, Mk 11:9-10

In the Old Testament, Job knew that our Redeemer would come to this earth. (Job 19:25)

Job 19:25 For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth:

Jesus became the propitiation for our sins and redeemed us. (1 John 2:1-2, Hebrews 12:24)

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

Hebrews 12:24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.

Jesus is the Christ who redeemed us. (Hebrews 9:15, 1 Timothy 2:5, Hebrews 8:6)

Hebrews 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

1 Timothy 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

Hebrews 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

1031. Christ is the true wisdom (Job 28:12-13)
1 Cor 1:30, 1 Cor 1:23-24, Col 2:2-3

In the Old Testament, Job confessed that wisdom could not be found on this earth. (Job 28:12-13)

Job 28:12 But where shall wisdom be found? and where is the place of understanding?
13 Man knoweth not the price thereof; neither is it found in the land of the living.

Jesus is the wisdom of God who came to this earth. (1 Cor 1:23, 1 Cor 1:30, Colossians 2:2-3)

1 Cor 1:23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;

1 Cor 1:30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

Colossians 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;
3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

1032. True knowledge is knowing the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom He has sent. (Job 28:28)
Jn 17:3, Col 2:2-3, 1 Jn 5:20

In the Old Testament, Job confessed that the fear of God was wisdom. (Job 28:28)

Job 28:28 And unto man he said, Behold, the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom; and to depart from evil is understanding.

To believe in Jesus as the Christ is true wisdom and eternal life. (John 17:3, Col 2:2-3, 1 John 5:20)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;
3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

1033. Christ became the ransom for us. (Job 33:24)
Mt 20:28, Mk 10:45, Rom 3:24-26, 1 Tim 2:6

In the Old Testament, Job prophesied that God would save man through the ransom. (Job 33:24)

Job 33:24 Then he is gracious unto him, and saith, Deliver him from going down to the pit: I have found a ransom.

Jesus gave his life to God as a ransom in order to save us. (Matthew 20:28, Mark 10:45, Romans 3:24-26, 1 Timothy 2:6)

Matthew 20:28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Mark 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Romans 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

1 Timothy 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

1034. The whole world belongs to God and Christ. (Job 41:11)
Rom 11:32-36, 1 Cor 10:26, Col 1:15-16, Rev 17:14, Rev 19:16, Phil 2:11

The whole world belongs to God. (Job 41:11, Romans 11:32-36)

Job 41:11 Who hath prevented me, that I should repay him? whatsoever is under the whole heaven is mine.

Romans 11:32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.
33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! how unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out!
34 For who hath known the mind of the Lord? or who hath been his counsellor?
35 Or who hath first given to him, and it shall be recompensed unto him again?
36 For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things: to whom be glory for ever. Amen.

Paul confessed that everything on this earth belonged to Jesus the Christ. (1 Corinthians 10:26)

1 Corinthians 10:26 For the earth is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof.

Jesus created all things. (Col 1:15-16)

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:
16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Jesus is Lord of lords and King of kings. (Rev 17:14, Rev 19:16)

Rev 17:14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

Rev 19:16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, King Of Kings, And Lord Of Lords.

God has made us glorify God by confessing Jesus Christ as Lord. (Phil 2:11)

Phil 2:11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

1035. Jesus Christ, the revealed God (Job 42:5-6)

1 Jn 1:1-2, Acts 2:36-37, Jn 14:8-9

In the Old Testament, Job confessed that he had seen God with his eyes, which he had only heard with ears. (Job 42:5-6)

Job 42:5 I have heard of thee by the hearing of the ear: but now mine eye seeth thee.

6 Wherefore I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes.

Jesus is the Word of God revealed to us. (1 John 1:1-2)

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Jesus is the Christ, the way to meet God. (John 14:6, Acts 2:36-37)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

We can see God through Jesus. (John 14:8-9)

John 14:8 Philip saith unto him, Lord, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us.

9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father?

Bible**Psalms**

- 1036. Those who are blessed are those who daily seek Christ in the Bible.(Ps 1:1-2)
- 1037. Be in Christ. (Ps 1:3)
- 1038. Satan against God and Christ (Ps 2:1-2)
- 1039. Christ the Son of God (Ps 2:7-9)
- 1040. Christ who inherited the eternal kingdom (Ps 2:7-8)
- 1041. Christ who destroyed Satan's work (Ps 2:9)
- 1042. If anyone does not love the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be accursed. (Ps 2:12)
- 1043. We overcome abundantly in the love of God, who gave Christ. (Ps 3:6-8)
- 1044. Christ silences enemies through the mouths of children (Ps 8:2)
- 1045. Christ was made lower than the angels for a little while because He suffered death (Ps 8:4-6)
- 1046. Christ crowned with glory and honor because He suffered death. (Ps 8:5)
- 1047. Christ put all things under His feet. (Ps 8:6)
- 1048. God and Christ reign forever. (Ps 10:16)
- 1049. Everyone has sinned. (Ps 14:2-3)
- 1050. We want Christ, the salvation of Israel, to come out of Zion. (Ps 14:7)
- 1051. True happiness comes from God and Christ. (Ps 16:2)
- 1052. David previewed the resurrection of Christ. (Ps 16:10)
- 1053. When we awake, we will see the face of Christ. (Ps 17:15)
- 1054. God and Christ are our strength. (Ps 18:1)
- 1055. Christ who is the horn of our salvation (Ps 18:2)
- 1056. Gentiles will praise God through Christ. (Ps 18:49)
- 1058. God explained Christ with all things. (Ps 19:1-4)
- 1059. In conclusion, God's law leads us to Christ. (Ps 19:7-9)
- 1060. The knowledge of Christ Jesus is the highest. (Ps 19:10)
- 1061. Christ was abandoned by God to save us. (Ps 22:1)
- 1062. Christ was shamed on the cross and died to save us. (Ps 22:6-18)
- 1063. God made Christ known to all nations. (Ps 22:27-31)

1064. Christ is our true shepherd. (Ps 23:1-6)
1065. The entry of Christ, our King (Ps 24:7-10)
1066. Christ is my light and my salvation; Whom shall I fear? (Ps 27:1)
1067. What we need is to know Christ. (Ps 27:4)
1068. Our sins were forgiven by the death of Christ. (Ps 32:1)
1069. God and Christ made heaven and earth through the Word. (Ps 33:6)
1070. By Jesus let us continually offer the sacrifice of praise to God. (Ps 34:1-2)
1071. God protected the bones of Christ. (Ps 34:19-20)
1072. Christ was hated for no reason. (Ps 35:19)
1073. Christ is the fountain of life. (Ps 36:9)
1074. Rejoice in God and Christ. (Ps 37:4)
1075. Christ abolished the law and died on the cross to save us according to God's will. (Ps 40:6-8)
1076. Christ will be preached to Jerusalem and to all nations. (Ps 40:9-10)
1077. World evangelization promised in the Old Testaments (Ps 40:9-10)
1078. Those who seek Christ will rejoice in Christ. (Ps 40:16)
1079. Christ was betrayed by a close friend. (Ps 41:9)
1080. The gospel of salvation delivered to us (Ps 44:1)
1081. Nobody shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ps 44:22)
1082. Christ came as the eternal king. (Ps 45:6-7)
1083. By Jesus let us continually offer the sacrifice of praise to God. (Ps 50:23)
1084. We were brought forth in iniquity. (Ps 51:4-5)
1085. Christ washed us clean with His blood. (Ps 51:7)
1086. "There is none righteous, no, not one; (Ps 53:2-3)
1087. Nobody shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ps 56:11,13)
1088. The comfort of Christ overflows with us. (Ps 57:4-11)
1089. Christ alone is our hope of salvation (Ps 62:5-8)
1090. All nations praise God through Christ. (Ps 67:5-7)
1091. Christ conquered the adversary and gave us gifts. (Ps 68:18)

- 1092. Christ was hated without cause. (Ps 69:4)
- 1093. Christ was persecuted for longing for the temple of God. (Ps 69:9)
- 1094. Christ Drinking Gallbladder Wine on the Cross (Ps 69:21)
- 1095. The people of Israel did not recognize Christ, their bread of life. (Psalm 69:22-23)
- 1096. The Gospel Preached to Us, Christ (Ps 78:2-8)
- 1097. Christ led the people of Israel. (Ps 78:12-15)
- 1098. Jesus revealed that He is the Son of God. (Ps 82:6)
- 1099. Christ who received the throne of David forever (Ps 89:3-4)
- 1101. Christ shall cover Israelites with His feathers. (Ps 91:4)
- 1102. The God of peace will crush Satan under your feet shortly. (Ps 91:13)
- 1103. If you will hear Christ's voice, do not harden your hearts. (Ps 95:7-11)
- 1104. Christ, the Righteous Judge (Ps 96:13)
- 1105. All angels, worship Christ. (Ps 97:7)
- 1106. Christ who made us (Ps 100:3)
- 1107. Christ is our true shepherd. (Ps 100:3)
- 1108. Christ is eternal. (Ps 102:25-27)
- 1109. Christ has the power to forgive sins.(Ps 103:3)
- 1110. All angels, bless Christ. (Ps 103:20-22)
- 1111. Bless God and Christ. (Ps 103:1-2)
- 1112. Angels Helping God's Children (Ps 104:4)
- 1113. Always seek God and Christ. (Ps 105:3-4)
- 1114. God's Eternal Promise-Christ (Ps 105:8-11)
- 1115. The Last of the Seller of Christ (Ps 109:5-8)
- 1116. David named Christ as Lord (Ps 110:1)
- 1117. Christ sits at the right hand of God and reigns with God. (Ps 110:1)
- 1118. Christ Trampling His Enemies (Ps 110:1)
- 1119. Jesus is the Lord and the Christ. (Ps 110:1)
- 1120. Christ's reign (Ps 110:2)

- 1121. Christ as the eternal priest in the order of Melchizedek (Ps 110:4)
- 1122. Knowing God and Christ is the basis of wisdom (Ps 111:10)
- 1123. Idols cannot speak. (Ps 115:4-8)
- 1124. Even when we suffer great suffering, we believe that God will bring us back to life with Jesus. (Ps 116:10)
- 1125. All nations praise God through Christ. (Ps 117:1)
- 1126. The loving God who gave Christ for us (Ps 118:1-4)
- 1127. Nobody shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ps 118:6)
- 1128. Christ who became the head of the corner of the stone abandoned by the builder (Ps 118:22-23)
- 1129. Christ, who comes in the name of Jehovah (Ps 118:26)
- 1130. The word of Christ is forever. (Ps 119:89)
- 1131. The knowledge of Christ Jesus is the highest. (Ps 119:103)
- 1132. Christ the Truth (Ps 119:160)
- 1133. God redeemed us through Christ. (Ps 130:7-8)
- 1134. Christ who received the throne of David forever (Ps 132:11-12)
- 1135. Our hope is God and Christ. (Ps 146:5)
- 1136. Christ who gave freedom to the captives (Ps 146:7)
- 1137. Christ opened the eyes of the blind (Ps 146:8)
- 1138. God and Christ to be praised (Ps 148:1-14)

1036. Those who are blessed are those who daily seek Christ in the Bible.(Ps 1:1-2)
Deut 8:3, Mt 4:4, Jn 6:49-51, Jn 17:3, 2 Pt 1:2,8, 2 Pt 3:18, Phil 3:8

Blessed are those who enjoy the word of God and meditate on it day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2)

Psalm 1:1 Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.

2 But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.

In the Old Testament, God made the Israelites know that man can live by all the words of God. (Deut 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus also quoted the Old Testament to say that man can live by all the words of God. (Matthew 4:4)

Matthew 4:4 But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

Jesus is God's word of life and the bread of our life. (1 John 1:1-2, John 6:49-51)

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

John 6:49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.

50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

Eternal life is knowing God and the one whom God sent, Jesus is the Christ. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

We need to know deeply that Jesus is the Christ throughout the Old and New Testaments. (2 Pet 1:2,8, 2 Pet 3:18, Philippians 3:8)

2 Pet 1:2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,

8 For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.

2 Pet 3:18 rist. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

Philippians 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

1037. Be in Christ. (Ps 1:3)
Jn 15:4-8

Those who meditate on the Word of God day and night will prosper just like a tree planted by a stream grows and produces fruit. (Psalm 1:3)

Psalm 1:3 And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.

Stay in Christ. Then we will save many souls and give glory to God. (John 15:4-8)

John 15:4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me.

5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.

6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.

7 If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you.

8 Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.

1038. Satan against God and Christ (Ps 2:1-2)

Acts 4:25-26, Mt 2:16, Mt 12:14, Mt 26:3-4, Mt 26:59-66, Mt 27:1-2, Lk 13:31

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the kings and rulers of the world would oppose God and Christ. (Psalm 2:1-2)

Psalm 2:1 Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing?

2 The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the Lord, and against his anointed, saying,

By quoting the Old Testament, Peter spoke of the fulfillment of the gathering of kings and rulers against the Christ, Jesus. (Acts 4:25-28)

Acts 4:25 Who by the mouth of thy servant David hast said, Why did the heathen rage, and the people imagine vain things?

26 The kings of the earth stood up, and the rulers were gathered together against the Lord, and against his Christ.

27 For of a truth against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod, and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together,

28 For to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done.

King Herod killed all Israelite males under the age of two in order to kill Christ who was born on this earth. (Mt 2:16)

Mt 2:16 Then Herod, when he saw that he was mocked of the wise men, was exceeding wroth, and sent forth, and slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all the coasts thereof, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently inquired of the wise men.

The Pharisees conspired to kill Jesus. (Matthew 12:14, Matthew 26:3-4, Matthew 26:59-66, Luke 13:31)

Matthew 12:14 Then the Pharisees went out, and held a council against him, how they might destroy him.

Matthew 26:3 Then assembled together the chief priests, and the scribes, and the elders of the people, unto the palace of the high priest, who was called Caiaphas,

4 And consulted that they might take Jesus by subtilty, and kill him.

Matthew 26:59 Now the chief priests, and elders, and all the council, sought false witness against Jesus, to put him to death;

60 But found none: yea, though many false witnesses came, yet found they none. At the last came two false witnesses,

61 And said, This fellow said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days.

62 And the high priest arose, and said unto him, Answerest thou nothing? what is it which these witness against thee?

63 But Jesus held his peace, And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God.

64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

65 Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, He hath spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? behold, now ye have heard his blasphemy.

66 What think ye? They answered and said, He is guilty of death.

Luke 13:31 The same day there came certain of the Pharisees, saying unto him, Get thee out, and depart hence: for Herod will kill thee.

Eventually, the chief priests of Israel and the elders of the people bound Jesus the Christ and delivered him to the governor Pilate. (Mt 27:1)

Mt 27:1 When the morning was come, all the chief priests and elders of the people took counsel against Jesus to put him to death:

1039. Christ the Son of God (Ps 2:7-9)

Mt 3:17, Mk 1:11, Lk 3:22, Mt 17:5, Acts 13:33, Heb 1:5, Heb 5:5

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would give his Son the nations heirs and destroy all the nations. (Psalm 2:7-9)

Psalm 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

9 Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel.

Jesus is the Son of God. (Matthew 3:17, Mark 1:11, Luke 3:22, Matt 17:5)

Matthew 3:17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Mark 1:11 And there came a voice from heaven, saying, Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Luke 3:22 And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

Matt 17:5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

Paul proved that Jesus is the Son of God prophesied in Psalm 2. (Acts 13:33)

Acts 13:33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

The writer of Hebrews proved that Jesus is the Son of God. (Heb 1:5, Heb 5:5)

Heb 1:5 For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son?

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

1040. Christ who inherited the eternal kingdom (Ps 2:7-8)

Dan 7:13-14, Heb 1:1-2, Mt 11:27, Mt 28:18, Lk 1:31-33, Jn 16:15, Jn 17:2, Acts 10:36-38

In the Old Testament, God promised His Son to inherit all nations. (Psalm 2:7-8)

Psalm 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.
8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

In the Old Testament, Daniel saw in a vision that God had given Christ authority over all nations and peoples. (Dan 7:13-14)

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

The Son of God was born on this earth. That is Jesus, the Christ. (Luke 1:31-33, Matthew 1:16)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

God gave all things to Jesus, the Son of God. (Heb 1:1-2, Matthew 11:27, Matthew 28:18, John 16:15, John 17:2)

Heb 1:1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,
2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Matthew 11:27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

Matthew 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

John 16:15 All things that the Father hath are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall shew it unto you.

John 17:2 As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

Jesus, Lord of all, proclaimed that He was the Christ. (Acts 10:36-38)

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)
37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;

38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

1041. Christ who destroyed Satan's work (Ps 2:9)

1 Jn 3:8, 1 Cor 15:24-26, Col 2:15, Rev 2:27, Rev 12:5, Rev 19:15

In the Old Testament God said that His Son would destroy the works of Satan. (Psalm 2:9)

Psalm 2:9 Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel.

Jesus, the Son of God, came to this earth to destroy the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Jesus, the Christ, will crush all enemies. (1 Corinthians 15:24-26)

1 Corinthians 15:24 Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.

25 For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet.

26 The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.

Jesus, the Christ, defeated Satan on the cross and was victorious. (Col 2:15, Gen 3:15)

Col 2:15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus, the Christ, will completely destroy Satan. (Rev 2:27, Rev 12:5, Rev 19:15)

Rev 2:27 And he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers: even as I received of my Father.

Rev 12:5 And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.

Rev 19:15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.

1042. If anyone does not love the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be accursed. (Ps 2:12)
Mk 12:6, 1 Cor 16:22

The Old Testament says that whoever does not kiss the Son of God will perish. (Psalm 2:12)

Psalm 2:12 Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in him.

Jesus said in parables that all the servants who did not honor the son of the owner of the vineyard perished. (Mark 12:6)

Mark 12:6 Having yet therefore one son, his wellbeloved, he sent him also last unto them, saying, They will reverence my son.

Cursed is he who does not love the Lord Jesus Christ. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

1043. We overcome abundantly in the love of God, who gave Christ. (Ps 3:6-8)
Ps 44:22, Rom 8:31-39

In the Old Testament, David said that even if ten million people tried to surround him, he was not afraid because God was there. (Psalm 3:6-8)

Psalm 3:6 I will not be afraid of ten thousands of people, that have set themselves against me round about.
7 Arise, O Lord; save me, O my God: for thou hast smitten all mine enemies upon the cheek bone; thou hast broken the teeth of the ungodly.
8 Salvation belongeth unto the Lord: thy blessing is upon thy people. Selah.

We may be put to death for the Lord's sake. (Psalm 44:22)

Psalm 44:22 Yea, for thy sake are we killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter.

But we overcome more than enough in the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Romans 8:31-39)

Romans 8:31 What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?
32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?
33 Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth.
34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.
35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?
36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.
37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.
38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,
39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1044. Christ silences enemies through the mouths of children (Ps 8:2)
Mt 21:15-16

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would give power to the mouths of children and infants to silence the enemies of Christ. (Psalm 8:2)

Psalm 8:2 Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast thou ordained strength because of thine enemies, that thou mightest still the enemy and the avenger.

Jesus quoted the Old Testament and told the chief priests and scribes that it had been fulfilled for the children to welcome himself as the Son of David, the Christ. (Mt 21:15-16)

Mt 21:15 And when the chief priests and scribes saw the wonderful things that he did, and the children crying in the temple, and saying, Hosanna to the son of David; they were sore displeased,
16 And said unto him, Hearest thou what these say? And Jesus saith unto them, Yea; have ye never read, Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings thou hast perfected praise?

1045. Christ was made lower than the angels for a little while because He suffered death (Ps 8:4-6)
Heb 2:6-8

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would make Christ a little lower than the angels and later crown Him with glory and honor. (Psalm 8:4-6)

Psalm 8:4 What is man, that thou art mindful of him? and the son of man, that thou visitest him?
5 For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour.
6 Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet:

Jesus was made lower than the angels by dying to save us, but after his resurrection he was crowned with glory and honor. (Heb 2:6-9)

Heb 2:6 But one in a certain place testified, saying, What is man, that thou art mindful of him? or the son of man that thou visitest him?

7 Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands:

8 Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him.

9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

1046. Christ crowned with glory and honor because He suffered death. (Ps 8:5)
Heb 2:9, Jn 12:16,23,27-28

God made Christ a little lower than the angels and crowned Him with glory and honor. (Psalm 8:5)

Psalm 8:5 For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour.

By dying to save us, Jesus was crowned with glory and honor. (Heb 2:9)

Heb 2:9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

Jesus died on the cross for us to glorify God's name. (John 12:16,23,27-28)

John 12:16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

23 And Jesus answered them, saying, The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified.

27 Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour.

28 Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.

1047. Christ put all things under His feet. (Ps 8:6)
Heb 2:7-8, Mt 22:44, 1 Cor 15:25-28, Eph 1:22, 1 Pt 3:22

God made Christ rule all things and put all things at the feet of Christ. (Psalm 8:6)

Psalm 8:6 Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet:

God submitted all things to Jesus, the Christ. (Heb 2:7-8, Ephesians 1:22)

Heb 2:7 Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands:

8 Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him.

Ephesians 1:22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

God told Christ, the Son of God, to sit at the right hand of God until he puts his enemies at the feet of Christ. (Mt 22:44)

Mt 22:44 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool?

Jesus, who rose from the dead and ascended into heaven, sits at the right hand of God, and angels, authorities, and powers submit to him. (1 Peter 3:22)

1 Peter 3:22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

Jesus, the Christ, will reign until all enemies are brought under his feet. (1 Corinthians 15:25-28)

1 Corinthians 15:25 For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet.

26 The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.

27 For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him.

28 And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.

1048. God and Christ reign forever. (Ps 10:16)
Lk 1:31-33, Jn 12:31-32, Rev 11:15

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God is the eternal King. (Psalm 10:16)

Psalm 10:16 The Lord is King for ever and ever: the heathen are perished out of his land.

The eternal king who will succeed the throne of David prophesied in the Old Testament has come to this earth. That is Jesus. (Luke 1:31-32)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

Jesus judged the world by dying on the cross. (John 12:31-32)\

John 12:31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.
32 And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me.

God and Christ rule the world forever. (Revelation 11:15)

Revelation 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

1049. Everyone has sinned. (Ps 14:2-3)
Isa 64:6, Jer 2:13, Rom 3:10-12,23, Eph 2:3

In the Old Testament, David confessed that everyone in the world was a sinner. (Psalm 14:2-3)

Psalms 14:2 The Lord looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were any that did understand, and seek God.

3 They are all gone aside, they are all together become filthy: there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

In the Old Testament, even Isaiah confessed that all people were sinners. (Isa 64:6)

Isa 64:6 But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away.

All people try to live on their own, forsaking God who is the source of life. (Jeremiah 2:13)

Jeremiah 2:13 For my people have committed two evils; they have forsaken me the fountain of living waters, and hewed them out cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.

All have sinned and fall short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:10-12,23, Ephesians 2:3)

Romans 3:10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

Ephesians 2:3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

1050. We want Christ, the salvation of Israel, to come out of Zion. (Ps 14:7)
Rom 11:26, Isa 59:20

In the Old Testament, David hoped that Christ would come out of Zion to save Israel. (Psalms 14:7)

Psalms 14:7 Oh that the salvation of Israel were come out of Zion! when the Lord bringeth back the captivity of his people, Jacob shall rejoice, and Israel shall be glad.

In the Old Testament, God said that Christ, the Redeemer of Israel, would come to Zion. (Isa 59:20)

Isa 59:20 And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression in Jacob, saith the Lord.

Paul said that the nation of Israel would also be saved through Christ Jesus, who came from Zion. (Romans 11:26)

Romans 11:26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

1051. True happiness comes from God and Christ. (Ps 16:2)
Ps 16:11, Acts 2:25-26

In the Old Testament, David confessed that there is no blessing apart from God. (Psalm 16:2,11)

Psalm 16:2 O my soul, thou hast said unto the Lord, Thou art my Lord: my goodness extendeth not to thee;
11 Thou wilt shew me the path of life: in thy presence is fulness of joy; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.

Peter said that David confessed that he was glad that Christ was always with him. (Acts 2:25-26)

Acts 2:25 For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved:

26 Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope:

1052. David previewed the resurrection of Christ. (Ps 16:10)
Acts 2:25-32, Acts 13:34-38

In the Old Testament, David knew that God would resurrect Christ. (Psalms 16:10)

Psalms 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Peter testified that David spoke of the resurrection of Christ in the Old Testament, and that the Christ was the resurrected Jesus. (Acts 2:25-32)

Acts 2:25 For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved:

26 Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope:

27 Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

28 Thou hast made known to me the ways of life; thou shalt make me full of joy with thy countenance.

29 Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.

30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;

31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.

32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

Paul also testified that David spoke of the resurrection of Christ in the Old Testament, and that the Christ was the resurrected Jesus. (Acts 13:34-38)

Acts 13:34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

1053. When we awake, we will see the face of Christ. (Ps 17:15)
2 Cor 3:18, 1 Jn 3:2, Rev 7:16-17

In the Old Testament, David said that when he awoke after a night of torment, he would see the face of God and be satisfied. (Psalms 17:15)

Psalms 17:15 As for me, I will behold thy face in righteousness: I shall be satisfied, when I awake, with thy likeness.

We, too, will see the face of Jesus, the Christ, and be glorified as Christ in the last days. (2 Corinthians 3:18, 1 John 3:2)

2 Corinthians 3:18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

When we meet Christ again, Christ will lead us to the fountain of living water and God will wipe away all our tears. (Rev 7:16-17)

Rev 17:16 And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.

17 For God hath put in their hearts to fulfil his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.

1054. God and Christ are our strength. (Ps 18:1)
Ex 15:2, 1 Cor 1:24, Rom 1:16

In the Old Testament, David praised God for his deliverance from all his enemies and confessed that God is his strength. (Psalms 18:1)

Psalms 18:1 I will love thee, O Lord, my strength.

In the Old Testament, Moses, exodus from Egypt, confessed that God is his strength. (Ex 15:2)

Ex 15:2 The Lord is my strength and song, and he is become my salvation: he is my God, and I will prepare him an habitation; my father's God, and I will exalt him.

Jesus, the Christ, is the power of God. (1 Corinthians 1:24, Romans 1:16)

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Romans 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

1055. Christ who is the horn of our salvation (Ps 18:2)
Lk 1:68-71

God is the power of salvation. (Psalms 18:2)

Psalms 18:2 The Lord is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.

God raised up Christ, the power of salvation, from the house of David. That is Jesus. (Luke 1:68-71, Matthew 1:16)

Luke 1:68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:
71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1056. Gentiles will praise God through Christ. (Ps 18:49)
Rom 15:8-12, Ps 117:1, Isa 11:10

In the Old Testament, David praised God among the nations. (Psalms 18:49, Psalms 117:1)

Psalms 18:49 Therefore will I give thanks unto thee, O Lord, among the heathen, and sing praises unto thy name.

Psalms 117:1 O praise the Lord, all ye nations: praise him, all ye people.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that the nations would return to Christ. (Isa 11:10)

Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

Now the Gentiles can become children of God and praise God through Christ. (Romans 15:8-12)

Romans 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

1058. God explained Christ with all things. (Ps 19:1-4)
Rom 10:16-18, Rom 1:18-20, Ps 50:6, Ps 97:6

The Old Testament says that all things reveal the glory of God. (Psalm 19:1-4, Psalm 50:6, Psalm 97:6)

Psalm 19:1 The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork.

2 Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge.

3 There is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard.

4 Their line is gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world. In them hath he set a tabernacle for the sun,

Psalm 50:6 And the heavens shall declare his righteousness: for God is judge himself. Selah.

Psalm 97:6 The heavens declare his righteousness, and all the people see his glory.

Since God has revealed Christ through all things, there will be no excuse for people not to hear of Christ. (Romans 10:16-18, Romans 1:18-20)

Romans 10:16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

18 But I say, Have they not heard? Yes verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world.

Romans 1:18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness;

19 Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shewed it unto them.

20 For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse:

1059. In conclusion, God's law leads us to Christ. (Ps 19:7-9)
Gal 3:19,23-24, Rom 10:4, 2 Tim 3:15-16

The Old Testament says that God's law enlightens people's eyes and gives them strength. (Psalm 19:7-9)

Psalms 19:7 The law of the Lord is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the Lord is sure, making wise the simple.

8 The statutes of the Lord are right, rejoicing the heart: the commandment of the Lord is pure, enlightening the eyes.

9 The fear of the Lord is clean, enduring for ever: the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether.

The law is the tutor that leads us to Christ. (Gal 3:19,23-24)

Gal 3:19 Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.

23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

Christ is the fulfillment of the law. (Romans 10:4)

Romans 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

In the Old Testament, there is wisdom in believing that Jesus is the Christ and receiving salvation. (2 Timothy 3:15-16)

2 Timothy 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:

1060. The knowledge of Christ Jesus is the highest. (Ps 19:10)
Ps 119:103, Jn 17:3, Phil 3:8-9

In the Old Testament, David confessed that the word of God is sweeter than honey. (Psalm 19:9-10, Psalm 119:103)

Psalm 19:9 The fear of the Lord is clean, enduring for ever: the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether.

10 More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb.

Psalm 119:103 How sweet are thy words unto my taste! yea, sweeter than honey to my mouth!

Eternal life is to know God and to know that Jesus is the Christ. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Paul confessed that the knowledge of Christ Jesus is the noblest. (Phil 3:8-9)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

1061. Christ was abandoned by God to save us. (Ps 22:1)
Mt 27:46, Mk 15:34, 2 Cor 5:21

In the Old Testament, David confessed that God had forsaken him. This implies that in the future Christ will be forsaken by God. (Psalms 22:1)

Psalms 22:1 My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? why art thou so far from helping me, and from the words of my roaring?

God made Christ Jesus our sin to save us. (2 Corinthians 5:21)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Jesus, the Christ, was forsaken by God for us. (Mt 27:46, Mark 15:34)

Mt 27:46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

Mark 15:34 And at the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani? which is, being interpreted, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

1062. Christ was shamed on the cross and died to save us. (Ps 22:6-18)

Ps 22:6, Isa 53:3, Ps 22:7-8, Mt 27:39-44, Ps 22:15, Jn 19:28, Ps 22:16-18, Mt 27:35, Mk 15:24, Jn 19:23

In the Old Testament, David confessed that he was being ridiculed. This implies that in the future Christ will suffer and be put to shame in order to save us. (Psalm 22:6-18)

Psalm 22:6 But I am a worm, and no man; a reproach of men, and despised of the people.

7 All they that see me laugh me to scorn: they shoot out the lip, they shake the head, saying,

8 He trusted on the Lord that he would deliver him: let him deliver him, seeing he delighted in him.

9 But thou art he that took me out of the womb: thou didst make me hope when I was upon my mother's breasts.

10 I was cast upon thee from the womb: thou art my God from my mother's belly.

11 Be not far from me; for trouble is near; for there is none to help.

12 Many bulls have compassed me: strong bulls of Bashan have beset me round.

13 They gaped upon me with their mouths, as a ravening and a roaring lion.

14 I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint: my heart is like wax; it is melted in the midst of my bowels.

15 My strength is dried up like a potsherd; and my tongue cleaveth to my jaws; and thou hast brought me into the dust of death.

16 For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have inclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet.

17 I may tell all my bones: they look and stare upon me.

18 They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ suffered and was despised in order to save us. (Isa 53:3)

Isa 53:3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die of thirst. (Psalm 22:15)

Psalm 22:15 My strength is dried up like a potsherd; and my tongue cleaveth to my jaws; and thou hast brought me into the dust of death.

Jesus died according to the prophecies of the Old Testament to save us. (Matthew 27:39-44, John 19:28)

Matthew 27:39 And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads,

40 And saying, Thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest it in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross.

41 Likewise also the chief priests mocking him, with the scribes and elders, said,

42 He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the King of Israel, let him now come down from the cross, and we will believe him.

43 He trusted in God; let him deliver him now, if he will have him: for he said, I am the Son of God.

44 The thieves also, which were crucified with him, cast the same in his teeth.

John 19:28 After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith, I thirst.

1063. God made Christ known to all nations. (Ps 22:27-31)
Rom 16:26-27, Acts 13:47-48, Mt 28:18-19, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that all peoples of the nations would return to God. (Psalm 22:27-31)

Psalm 22:27 All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the Lord: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before thee.

28 For the kingdom is the Lord's: and he is the governor among the nations.

29 All they that be fat upon earth shall eat and worship: all they that go down to the dust shall bow before him: and none can keep alive his own soul.

30 A seed shall serve him; it shall be accounted to the Lord for a generation.

31 They shall come, and shall declare his righteousness unto a people that shall be born, that he hath done this.

As prophesied through the prophets in the Old Testament, Gentiles believed in Jesus as the Christ and obeyed God. (Romans 16:26-27)

Romans 16:26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

The Old Testament prophecy of the salvation of the Gentiles through Christ was fulfilled. In other words, the Gentiles believed in Jesus as the Christ and were saved. (Acts 13:47-48)

Acts 13:47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Jesus commands us to go to all nations and tell them that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 28:18-19, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

1064. Christ is our true shepherd. (Ps 23:1-6)
Jn 10:11-15, Heb 13:20-21, 1 Pt 2:25, 1 Pt 5:4, Rev 7:17

God is our shepherd. (Psalm 23:1-6)

Psalm 23:1 The Lord is my shepherd; I shall not want.

2 He maketh me to lie down in green pastures: he leadeth me beside the still waters.

3 He restoreth my soul: he leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for his name's sake.

4 Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.

5 Thou preparest a table before me in the presence of mine enemies: thou anointest my head with oil; my cup runneth over.

6 Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life: and I will dwell in the house of the Lord for ever.

Jesus is the Good Shepherd, sent by God and died for us. (John 10:11-15, Hebrews 13:20-21)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

12 But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.

13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

We believe in Jesus as the Christ and turn to Christ Jesus, the Shepherd of our souls. (1 Peter 2:25)

1 Peter 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

When Jesus, our Shepherd, returns, we will receive a crown of glory and God will wipe away all our tears. (1 Peter 5:5, Rev 7:17)

1 Peter 5:5 Likewise, ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all of you be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility: for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble.

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1065. The entry of Christ, our King (Ps 24:7-10)

Mt 21:9, Mk 11:9-10, Lk 19:38, Jn 12:3, Ps 8:2, Rev 19:16

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God, the King of glory, would enter. (Psalms 24:7-10)

Psalms 24:7 Lift up your heads, O ye gates; and be ye lift up, ye everlasting doors; and the King of glory shall come in.

8 Who is this King of glory? The Lord strong and mighty, the Lord mighty in battle.

9 Lift up your heads, O ye gates; even lift them up, ye everlasting doors; and the King of glory shall come in.

10 Who is this King of glory? The Lord of hosts, he is the King of glory. Selah.

When Jesus entered Jerusalem, the Israelites welcomed Jesus as the Christ who came in the name of God. (Matthew 21:9, Mark 11:9-10, Luke 19:38)

Matthew 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

Mark 11:9 And they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna; Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord:

10 Blessed be the kingdom of our father David, that cometh in the name of the Lord: Hosanna in the highest.

Luke 19:38 Saying, Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the Lord: peace in heaven, and glory in the highest.

1066. Christ is my light and my salvation; Whom shall I fear? (Ps 27:1)
Lk 3:6, Jn 1:9-12, Jn 8:12, Rom 8:31, Heb 13:6

In the Old Testament, David confessed that God is his light, his salvation, and the power of life, and he fears no one. (Psalm 27:1)

Psalm 27:1 The Lord is my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear? the Lord is the strength of my life; of whom shall I be afraid?

Isaiah prophesied that all people would see the salvation of God. (Luke 3:6)

Luke 3:6 And all flesh shall see the salvation of God.

Jesus is the light and salvation of the world. (John 1:9-12, John 8:12)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

God is for those who believe that Jesus is the Christ. So we fear no one. (Rom 8:31, Heb 13:6)

Rom 8:31 What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?

Heb 13:6 So that we may boldly say, The Lord is my helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me.

1067. What we need is to know Christ. (Ps 27:4)
Jn 17:3, Phil 3:8-9, Col 2:2-3, 1 Cor 1:24, 2 Pt 3:18

In the Old Testament, David's request from God was to dwell in God's house and long for God. (Psalms 27:4)

Psalms 27:4 One thing have I desired of the Lord, that will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the Lord all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the Lord, and to enquire in his temple.

Eternal life is to know God and to know that Jesus is the Christ. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

To know deeply that Jesus is the Christ is the noblest knowledge. (Phil 3:8-9)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,
9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

Christ is the wisdom of God and the power of God. (Col 2:2-3, 1 Corinthians 1:24)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;
3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

We must learn deeply that Jesus is the Christ through the Old and New Testaments. (2 Peter 3:18)

2 Peter 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

1068. Our sins were forgiven by the death of Christ. (Ps 32:1)
Rom 4:6-8,25, Acts 13:38-39

In the Old Testament, David confessed that blessed are those whose sins are forgiven. (Psalms 32:1)

Psalms 32:1 Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered.

Jesus died for our sins and we are justified by faith in that fact. (Rom 4:6-8,25, Acts 13:38-39)

Rom 4:6 Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works,

7 Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered.

8 Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin.

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

Acts 13:38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

1069. God and Christ made heaven and earth through the Word. (Ps 33:6)
Jn 1:1-3,9-10, Col 1:15-16, Heb 1:2, 1 Cor 8:6

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God created the heavens and the earth through His Word. (Psalms 33:6)

Psalms 33:6 By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth.

The Word of God was with God, and the Word made the heavens and the earth. The Word came into the world, and that Word is the Christ, Jesus. (John 1:1-3,9-10)

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

Jesus, the Christ, created all things. (Col 1:15-16, Hebrews 1:2)

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Hebrews 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

God and Christ Jesus made all things. (1 Corinthians 8:6)

1 Corinthians 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

1070. By Jesus let us continually offer the sacrifice of praise to God. (Ps 34:1-2)
Heb 13:15, Eph 5:20, 1 Thess 5:18, Col 3:17

In the Old Testament, David always praised God even in difficult circumstances. (Psalms 34:1-2)

Psalms 34:1 I will bless the Lord at all times: his praise shall continually be in my mouth.
2 My soul shall make her boast in the Lord: the humble shall hear thereof, and be glad.

Now we must always praise God through Jesus the Christ. (Hebrews 13:15, Ephesians 5:20, 1 Thessalonians 5:18, Col 3:17)

Hebrews 13:15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

Ephesians 5:20 Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;

1 Thessalonians 5:18 In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.

Col 3:17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

1071. God protected the bones of Christ. (Ps 34:19-20)
Ex 12:46, Num 9:12, Jn 19:36

In the Old Testament, David prophesied that God would protect the bones of the righteous, Christ. (Psalms 34:19-20)

Psalms 34:19 Many are the afflictions of the righteous: but the Lord delivereth him out of them all.
20 He keepeth all his bones: not one of them is broken.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites did not break the bones of the Passover lamb. (Ex 12:46, Num 9:12)

Ex 12:46 In one house shall it be eaten; thou shalt not carry forth ought of the flesh abroad out of the house; neither shall ye break a bone thereof.

Num 9:12 They shall leave none of it unto the morning, nor break any bone of it: according to all the ordinances of the passover they shall keep it.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, not a single bone of Jesus, the Christ, was broken. (John 19:36)

John 19:36 For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, A bone of him shall not be broken.

1072. Christ was hated for no reason. (Ps 35:19)
Ps 69:4, Jn 15:24-25

In the Old Testament, David prayed to God that he would not be hated without reason. (Psalms 35:19)

Psalms 35:19 Let not them that are mine enemies wrongfully rejoice over me: neither let them wink with the eye that hate me without a cause.

In the Old Testament, David confessed to God that there were too many people who hated him for no reason. (Psalms 69:4)

Psalms 69:4 They that hate me without a cause are more than the hairs of mine head: they that would destroy me, being mine enemies wrongfully, are mighty: then I restored that which I took not away.

Jesus was hated by people for no reason. It is written in the Old Testament that this is to be fulfilled in Christ. So this is proof that Jesus is the Christ. (John 15:24-25)

John 15:24 If I had not done among them the works which none other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father.

25 But this cometh to pass, that the word might be fulfilled that is written in their law, They hated me without a cause.

1073. Christ is the fountain of life. (Ps 36:9)
Gen 1:26,27, 2 Cor 4:4, Gen 2:7, Col 3:4, 1 Jn 5:11-12

In the Old Testament, David confessed that the source of life was in God. (Psalms 36:9)

Psalms 36:9 For with thee is the fountain of life: in thy light shall we see light.

God made us in His image. (Genesis 1:26-27)

Genesis 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

God made man out of dust and breathed life into his nostrils, and man became a living soul. (Genesis 2:7)

Genesis 2:7 And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

The image of the true God is Christ. (2 Corinthians 4:4)

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Christ is our life. (Col 3:4, 1 John 5:11-12)

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

1 John 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.

12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

1074. Rejoice in God and Christ. (Ps 37:4)

Ps 104:34, Mt 6:33, 1 Pt 1:8

The Old Testament tells us to rejoice in God. (Psalms 37:4, Psalms 104:34)

Psalms 37:4 Delight thyself also in the Lord: and he shall give thee the desires of thine heart.

Psalms 104:34 My meditation of him shall be sweet: I will be glad in the Lord.

We must first seek the kingdom of God and His righteousness. (Mt 6:33)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

We are to love and rejoice in Jesus, the Christ. (1 Peter 1:8)

1 Peter 1:8 Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory:

1075. Christ abolished the law and died on the cross to save us according to God's will. (Ps 40:6-8)
Heb 10:5-10, Lk 24:25-27,45-47, Jn 5:39, Acts 10:43, 1 Cor 15:3-4, 1 Pt 1:10-11

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would do what was written in the Old Testament to accomplish God's will. (Psalms 40:6-8)

Psalms 40:6 Sacrifice and offering thou didst not desire; mine ears hast thou opened: burnt offering and sin offering hast thou not required.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come: in the volume of the book it is written of me,

8 I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law is within my heart.

Jesus offered his body to God to save us, not as a sacrifice according to the Old Testament law. (Hebrews 10:5-10)

Hebrews 10:5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:

6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.

8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

The Old Testament is the account of Christ and the record of His coming. (Luke 24:25-27,45-47, John 5:39)

Luke 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

John 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Old Testament prophets recorded that the coming Christ would die for us and be resurrected three days later, and that all who believed in Him would have their sins forgiven. (Acts 10:43, 1 Corinthians 15:3-4, 1 Peter 1:10-11)

Acts 10:43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

1 Corinthians 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

1 Peter 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

1076. Christ will be preached to Jerusalem and to all nations. (Ps 40:9-10)
Lk 24:45-47, Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, David proclaimed God's salvation to many people. (Psalms 40:9-10)

Psalms 40:9 I have preached righteousness in the great congregation: lo, I have not refrained my lips, O Lord, thou knowest.

10 I have not hid thy righteousness within my heart; I have declared thy faithfulness and thy salvation: I have not concealed thy lovingkindness and thy truth from the great congregation.

Jesus made known to his disciples that it was recorded in the Old Testament that repentance for the forgiveness of sins in his name was preached to all nations, starting from Jerusalem. (Luke 24:45-47)

Luke 24:45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

Jesus commanded us to preach to all nations that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 28:19-20, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

1077. World evangelization promised in the Old Testament

(Ps 40:9-10)

Lk 24:46-47, Gen 12:3, Ps 22:27, Ps 67:2-3,7, Ps 98:1-3, Ps 117:1-2, Isa 2:2-3, Isa 11:10, Isa 49:22, Isa 52:10, Isa 60:1-3, Isa 66:18, Mic 4:2, Mal 1:11

In the Old Testament, David proclaimed God's salvation to many people. (Psalms 40:9-10)

Psalms 40:9 I have preached righteousness in the great congregation: lo, I have not refrained my lips, O Lord, thou knowest.

10 I have not hid thy righteousness within my heart; I have declared thy faithfulness and thy salvation: I have not concealed thy lovingkindness and thy truth from the great congregation.

The Old Testament records that Christ suffered for us, rose on the third day, and that salvation through the forgiveness of sins would be preached to all nations in the name of Christ. (Luke 24:46-47)

Luke 24:46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

The Old Testament prophesied that all nations would be evangelized.

Gen 12:3 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

Ps 22:27 All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the Lord: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before thee.

Ps 67:2 That thy way may be known upon earth, thy saving health among all nations.

3 Let the people praise thee, O God; let all the people praise thee.

7 God shall bless us; and all the ends of the earth shall fear him.

Ps 98:1 O sing unto the Lord a new song; for he hath done marvellous things: his right hand, and his holy arm, hath gotten him the victory.

2 The Lord hath made known his salvation: his righteousness hath he openly shewed in the sight of the heathen.

3 He hath remembered his mercy and his truth toward the house of Israel: all the ends of the earth have seen the salvation of our God.

Ps 117:1 O praise the Lord, all ye nations: praise him, all ye people.

2 For his merciful kindness is great toward us: and the truth of the Lord endureth for ever. Praise ye the Lord.

Isa 2:2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

Isa 49:22 Thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

Isa 52:10 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Isa 60:1 Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon thee.

2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.

3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

Isa 66:18 For I know their works and their thoughts: it shall come, that I will gather all nations and tongues; and they shall come, and see my glory.

Mic 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

Mal 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the Lord of hosts.

1078. Those who seek Christ will rejoice in Christ. (Ps 40:16)

Ps 9:2, Ps 22:26, Ps 70:4, Ps 105:3, Ps 119:2, Phil 3:8, 1 Pt 1:8, Jn 16:22

In the Old Testament, David confessed that those who seek God will rejoice in God. (Psalms 40:16, Psalms 9:2, Psalms 22:26, Psalms 105:3, Psalms 119:2)

Psalms 40:16 Let all those that seek thee rejoice and be glad in thee: let such as love thy salvation say continually, The Lord be magnified.

Psalms 9:2 I will be glad and rejoice in thee: I will sing praise to thy name, O thou most High.

Psalms 22:26 The meek shall eat and be satisfied: they shall praise the Lord that seek him: your heart shall live for ever.

Psalms 105:3 Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the Lord.

Psalms 119:2 Blessed are they that keep his testimonies, and that seek him with the whole heart.

To know Christ Jesus is the noblest and most joyous thing. (Phil 3:8, 1 Pet 1:8)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

1 Pet 1:8 Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory:

When we know that Jesus is the Christ who died and rose again according to the Bible, our hearts are filled with joy. (John 16:22)

John 16:22 And ye now therefore have sorrow: but I will see you again, and your heart shall rejoice, and your joy no man taketh from you.

1079. Christ was betrayed by a close friend. (Ps 41:9)
Mt 26:21-24, Jn 13:18, Acts 1:16

In the Old Testament, David said that his close friend had betrayed him. This suggests that the coming Christ will be betrayed by his friend. (Psalms 41:9)

Psalms 41:9 Yea, mine own familiar friend, in whom I trusted, which did eat of my bread, hath lifted up his heel against me.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus was betrayed by his disciple. (Matthew 26:21-24, John 13:18, Acts 1:16)

Matthew 26:21 And as they did eat, he said, Verily I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me.

22 And they were exceeding sorrowful, and began every one of them to say unto him, Lord, is it I?

23 And he answered and said, He that dippeth his hand with me in the dish, the same shall betray me.

24 The Son of man goeth as it is written of him: but woe unto that man by whom the Son of man is betrayed! it had been good for that man if he had not been born.

John 13:18 I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the scripture may be fulfilled, He that eateth bread with me hath lifted up his heel against me.

Acts 1:16 Men and brethren, this scripture must needs have been fulfilled, which the Holy Ghost by the mouth of David spake before concerning Judas, which was guide to them that took Jesus.

1080. The gospel of salvation delivered to us (Ps 44:1)

Ex 10:2, Ex 12:25-27, Ex 13:14-15, Deut 32:7, Ps 78:3-6, Joel 1:3, 1 Cor 15:1-4, 2 Tim 3:15

In the Old Testament, the ancestors told the Israelites what God had done, so they could hear the gospel of God. (Psalms 44:1)

Psalms 44:1 We have heard with our ears, O God, our fathers have told us, what work thou didst in their days, in the times of old.

In the Old Testament, God brought the Israelites out of Egypt through the Passover lamb. (Ex 12:25-27, Ex 13:14-15)

Ex 12:25 And it shall come to pass, when ye be come to the land which the Lord will give you, according as he hath promised, that ye shall keep this service.

26 And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean ye by this service?

27 That ye shall say, It is the sacrifice of the Lord's passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.

Ex 13:14 And it shall be when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, What is this? that thou shalt say unto him, By strength of hand the Lord brought us out from Egypt, from the house of bondage:

15 And it came to pass, when Pharaoh would hardly let us go, that the Lord slew all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of man, and the firstborn of beast: therefore I sacrifice to the Lord all that openeth the matrix, being males; but all the firstborn of my children I redeem.

In the Old Testament, God commanded us to pass on the works of God to his descendants. (Deuteronomy 32:7, Psalms 78:3-6, Joel 1:3)

Deuteronomy 32:7 Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations: ask thy father, and he will shew thee; thy elders, and they will tell thee.

Psalms 78:3 Which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told us.

4 We will not hide them from their children, shewing to the generation to come the praises of the Lord, and his strength, and his wonderful works that he hath done.

5 For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children:

6 That the generation to come might know them, even the children which should be born; who should arise and declare them to their children:

Joel 1:3 Tell ye your children of it, and let your children tell their children, and their children another generation.

As recorded in the Old Testament, Christ Jesus died and rose again on the third day, and the gospel that Jesus is the Christ has been delivered to us. (1 Corinthians 15:1-4)

1 Corinthians 15:1 Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;

2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.

3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

We must also communicate to our children that Jesus is the Christ throughout the Old and New Testaments. (2 Timothy 3:15)

2 Timothy 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

1081. Nobody shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ps 44:22)
Rom 8:35-39

In the Old Testament, the Israelites were in a difficult situation to the point of being killed, and they prayed earnestly to God to rescue them. (Psalms 44:22-23)

Psalms 44:22 Yea, for thy sake are we killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter.
23 Awake, why sleepest thou, O Lord? arise, cast us not off for ever.

Nothing can separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Rom. 8:35-39)

Rom. 8:35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1082. Christ came as the eternal king. (Ps 45:6-7)
Heb 1:8-9, Gen 49:10, Isa 9:6-7, Lk 1:31-33

In the Old Testament it was foretold that the coming Christ would be over all kings. (Psalms 45:6-7)

Psalms 45:6 Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre.
7 Thou lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness: therefore God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah and would become the eternal king. (Gen 49:10)

Gen 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

The Old Testament spoke of the coming of the Son of God as the eternal King, King of kings. (Heb 1:8-9, Isa 9:6-7)

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.
9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.
7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

Jesus is the Christ, the eternal King who came as a descendant of Judah and David. (Luke 1:31-33, Matthew 1:16)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1083. By Jesus let us continually offer the sacrifice of praise to God. (Ps 50:23)
Heb 13:15, Eph 5:20, 1 Thess 5:18, Col 3:17

In the Old Testament, it is said that those who offer sacrifices to God in thanksgiving will glorify God. (Psalms 50:23)

Psalms 50:23 Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me: and to him that ordereth his conversation aright will I shew the salvation of God.

Now we can always offer sacrifices of praise to God through Christ Jesus. (Hebrews 13:15, Ephesians 5:20, 1 Thessalonians 5:18, Col 3:17)

Hebrews 13:15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

Ephesians 5:20 Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;

1 Thessalonians 5:18 In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.

Col 3:17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

1084. We were brought forth in iniquity. (Ps 51:4-5)
Rom 3:4,9-12,23, Eph 2:3,4-6

In the Old Testament, David confessed that he was born in sin. (Psalms 51:4-5)

Psalms 51:4 Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight: that thou mightest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judgest.
5 Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me.

We were all sinners. (Romans 3:4,9-12, Ephesians 2:3)

Romans 3:4 God forbid: yea, let God be true, but every man a liar; as it is written, That thou mightest be justified in thy sayings, and mightest overcome when thou art judged.

9 What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin;

10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

Ephesians 2:3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

But God loved us and raised us from the death in our sins through Christ Jesus. (Eph 2:4-6)

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:

1085. Christ washed us clean with His blood. (Ps 51:7)

Isa 1:18, Heb 9:13-14,19-22, 1 Jn 1:7

In the Old Testament, David admitted that he was a sinner and asked God to wash away his sins. (Psalms 51:7)

Psalms 51:7 Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean: wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow.

The Old Testament prophesied that God would wash away our sins. (Isa 1:18)

Isa 1:18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.

Jesus, the Christ, shed His blood to wash away our sins. (Hebrews 9:13-14, 19-22, 1 John 1:7)

Hebrews 9:13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh:

14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people,

20 Saying, This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you.

21 Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry.

22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

1 John 1:7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

1086. "There is none righteous, no, not one; (Ps 53:2-3)
Rom 3:10-12, Mk 10:18, Rom 3:4

In the Old Testament, David confessed that everyone was a sinner. (Psalms 53:2-3)

Psalms 53:2 God looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were any that did understand, that did seek God.

3 Every one of them is gone back: they are altogether become filthy; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

Paul quoted the Old Testament and confessed that there is no one righteous in the world. (Romans 3:10-12)

Romans 3:10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

There is only one righteous person in the world, Christ Jesus, who came to this earth. (Mark 10:18)

Mark 10:18 And Jesus said unto him, Why callest thou me good? there is none good but one, that is, God.

Also, only God is true. (Romans 3:4)

Romans 3:4 God forbid: yea, let God be true, but every man a liar; as it is written, That thou mightest be justified in thy sayings, and mightest overcome when thou art judged.

1087. Nobody shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ps 56:11,13)
Rom 8:35-39, 2 Cor 1:8-10

In the Old Testament, David said that only God had rescued him from death, so he trusted only God. (Psalms 56:11,13)

Psalms 56:11 In God have I put my trust: I will not be afraid what man can do unto me.

13 For thou hast delivered my soul from death: wilt not thou deliver my feet from falling, that I may walk before God in the light of the living?

No one can separate us from the love of God who believe in Jesus Christ. (Romans 8:35-39, 2 Corinthians 1:8-10)

Romans 8:35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

2 Corinthians 1:8 For we would not, brethren, have you ignorant of our trouble which came to us in Asia, that we were pressed out of measure, above strength, insomuch that we despaired even of life:

9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead:

10 Who delivered us from so great a death, and doth deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver us;

1088. The comfort of Christ overflows with us. (Ps 57:4-11)
2 Cor 1:3-6, Rom 5:3-6

In the Old Testament, David praised the greatness of God's mercy even though he was in danger of death. (Psalms 57:4-11)

Psalms 57:4 My soul is among lions: and I lie even among them that are set on fire, even the sons of men, whose teeth are spears and arrows, and their tongue a sharp sword.

5 Be thou exalted, O God, above the heavens; let thy glory be above all the earth.

6 They have prepared a net for my steps; my soul is bowed down: they have digged a pit before me, into the midst whereof they are fallen themselves. Selah.

7 My heart is fixed, O God, my heart is fixed: I will sing and give praise.

8 Awake up, my glory; awake, psaltery and harp: I myself will awake early.

9 I will praise thee, O Lord, among the people: I will sing unto thee among the nations.

10 For thy mercy is great unto the heavens, and thy truth unto the clouds.

11 Be thou exalted, O God, above the heavens: let thy glory be above all the earth.

Paul praised God for the comfort of God in Christ amidst all tribulation. (2 Corinthians 1:3-6, Romans 5:3-6)

2 Corinthians 1:3 Blessed be God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort;

4 Who comforteth us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort them which are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of God.

5 For as the sufferings of Christ abound in us, so our consolation also aboundeth by Christ.

6 And whether we be afflicted, it is for your consolation and salvation, which is effectual in the enduring of the same sufferings which we also suffer: or whether we be comforted, it is for your consolation and salvation.

Romans 5:3 And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience;

4 And patience, experience; and experience, hope:

5 And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.

6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.

1089. Christ alone is our hope of salvation (Ps 62:5-8)
Acts 28:20, 1 Tim 1:1, Rom 15:12, Col 1:27

In the Old Testament, David confessed that God was the only hope of salvation. (Psalms 62:5-8)

Psalms 62:5 My soul, wait thou only upon God; for my expectation is from him.
6 He only is my rock and my salvation: he is my defence; I shall not be moved.
7 In God is my salvation and my glory: the rock of my strength, and my refuge, is in God.
8 Trust in him at all times; ye people, pour out your heart before him: God is a refuge for us. Selah.

Jesus is the Christ, the hope of salvation for all. (Acts 28:20, Rom 15:12, 1 Tim 1:1, Col 1:27)

Acts 28:20 For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see you, and to speak with you: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain.

Rom 15:12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

1 Tim 1:1 Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the commandment of God our Saviour, and Lord Jesus Christ, which is our hope;

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1090. All nations praise God through Christ. (Ps 67:5-7)
Acts 13:46-48, Gal 3:14, Rom 15:8-12

In the Old Testament, the psalmist prayed that God would allow all nations to praise Him. (Psalms 67:5-7)

Psalms 67:5 Let the people praise thee, O God; let all the people praise thee.
6 Then shall the earth yield her increase; and God, even our own God, shall bless us.
7 God shall bless us; and all the ends of the earth shall fear him.

According to the prophecies of the Old Testament, Gentiles believed in Jesus as the Christ and were saved and began to praise God. (Acts 13:46-48, Ro 15:8-12, Gal 3:14)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.
47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.
48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Rom 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:
9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.
10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.
11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.
12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

Gal 3:14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

1091. Christ conquered the adversary and gave us gifts. (Ps 68:18)
Eph 4:7-8, Col 2:13-15

In the Old Testament, David confessed that God had taken his adversary captive and received gifts from men.
(Psalms 68:18)

Psalms 68:18 Thou hast ascended on high, thou hast led captivity captive: thou hast received gifts for men; yea, for the rebellious also, that the Lord God might dwell among them.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus cast away our adversaries and ascended to the throne of God to give us gifts. (Col 2:13-15, Ephesians 4:7-8)

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Ephesians 4:7 But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ.

8 Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.

1092. Christ was hated without cause. (Ps 69:4)
Ps 35:19, Jn 15:23-25

In the Old Testament, David confessed to God that many people hated him for no reason. This implies that the coming Christ will be hated without cause by men. (Psalms 69:4, Psalms 35:19)

Psalms 69:4 They that hate me without a cause are more than the hairs of mine head: they that would destroy me, being mine enemies wrongfully, are mighty: then I restored that which I took not away.

Psalms 35:19 Let not them that are mine enemies wrongfully rejoice over me: neither let them wink with the eye that hate me without a cause.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus was hated by people for no reason. (John 15:23-25)

John 15:23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.

24 If I had not done among them the works which none other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father.

25 But this cometh to pass, that the word might be fulfilled that is written in their law, They hated me without a cause.

1093. Christ was persecuted for longing for the temple of God. (Ps 69:9)
Jn 2:14-17, Rom 15:3

In the Old Testament, David was zealous for the house of God. Because of this, the enemies persecuted David.
(Psalms 69:9)

Psalms 69:9 For the zeal of thine house hath eaten me up; and the reproaches of them that reproached thee are fallen upon me.

Jesus longed for the temple and drove out the people who traded in the temple. So Jesus suffered persecution from the Jews as prophesied in the Old Testament. (John 2:14-17, Romans 15:3)

John 2:14 And found in the temple those that sold oxen and sheep and doves, and the changers of money sitting:

15 And when he had made a scourge of small cords, he drove them all out of the temple, and the sheep, and the oxen; and poured out the changers' money, and overthrew the tables;

16 And said unto them that sold doves, Take these things hence; make not my Father's house an house of merchandise.

17 And his disciples remembered that it was written, The zeal of thine house hath eaten me up.

Romans 15:3 For even Christ pleased not himself; but, as it is written, The reproaches of them that reproached thee fell on me.

1094. Christ Drinking Gallbladder Wine on the Cross (Ps 69:21)
Mt 27:34, Mk 15:23, Jn 19:29-30

In the Old Testament, David confessed that his enemies had made him drink wine mixed with gall. This implies that the Christ who is to come will drink wine mixed with gall. (Psalm 69:21)

Psalms 69:21 They gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink.

Jesus drank gallstone wine as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Matthew 27:34, Mark 15:23, John 19:29-30)

Matthew 27:34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall: and when he had tasted thereof, he would not drink.

Mark 15:23 And they gave him to drink wine mingled with myrrh: but he received it not.

John 19:29 Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar: and they filled a sponge with vinegar, and put it upon hyssop, and put it to his mouth.

30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

1095. The people of Israel did not recognize Christ, their bread of life. (Psalms 69:22-23)
Romans 11:7-10,32

In the Old Testament, David prayed to God that the food of those who did not believe in God would become their snare and that their eyes would be blinded so that they could not see. (Psalms 69:22-23)

Psalms 69:22 Let their table become a snare before them: and that which should have been for their welfare, let it become a trap.

23 Let their eyes be darkened, that they see not; and make their loins continually to shake.

Their food became a snare to the people of Israel, and the people of Israel were blinded and unable to see. In other words, they did not recognize Christ, the bread of life for the people of Israel. (Romans 11:7-10)

Romans 11:7 What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.

8 (According as it is written, God hath given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;) unto this day.

9 And David saith, Let their table be made a snare, and a trap, and a stumblingblock, and a recompence unto them:

10 Let their eyes be darkened, that they may not see, and bow down their back alway.

1096. The Gospel Preached to Us, Christ (Ps 78:2-8)
Rom 1:2-4, 1 Cor 15:1-4, 2 Tim 3:15

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that what God had done was communicated to the descendants of the Israelites so that they could believe in God. (Psalms 78:2-8)

Psalms 78:2 I will open my mouth in a parable: I will utter dark sayings of old:

3 Which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told us.

4 We will not hide them from their children, shewing to the generation to come the praises of the Lord, and his strength, and his wonderful works that he hath done.

5 For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children:

6 That the generation to come might know them, even the children which should be born; who should arise and declare them to their children:

7 That they might set their hope in God, and not forget the works of God, but keep his commandments:

8 And might not be as their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation; a generation that set not their heart aright, and whose spirit was not stedfast with God.

The coming of the Son of God, promised through the prophets in the Old Testament, was fulfilled. Jesus is the Son of God, the Christ, who came as a descendant of David and was resurrected three days after he died. (Romans 1:2-4)

Romans 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;

4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ has been preached to us. (1 Corinthians 15:1-4; 2 Timothy 3:15)

1 Corinthians 15:1 Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;

2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.

3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

2 Timothy 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

1097. Christ led the people of Israel. (Ps 78:12-15)
1 Cor 10:1-4

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God had led the Israelites in the wilderness for 40 years. (Psalms 78:12-15)

Psalms 78:12 Marvellous things did he in the sight of their fathers, in the land of Egypt, in the field of Zoan.
13 He divided the sea, and caused them to pass through; and he made the waters to stand as an heap.
14 In the daytime also he led them with a cloud, and all the night with a light of fire.
15 He clave the rocks in the wilderness, and gave them drink as out of the great depths.

Christ also led the Israelites in the wilderness for 40 years in the Old Testament times. (1 Corinthians 10:1-4)

1 Corinthians 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;
2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;
3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat;
4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

1098. Jesus revealed that He is the Son of God. (Ps 82:6)
Jn 10:33-38

In the Old Testament, people who judged by God's orders were sometimes called gods. (Psalms 82:6)

Psalms 82:6 I have said, Ye are gods; and all of you are children of the most High.

Jesus quoted the Old Testament and said that those who judged by God were gods, but he revealed that he was the eternal Son of God whom God had sanctified and sent into the world. (John 10:33-38)

John 10:33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself God.

34 Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?

35 If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken;

36 Say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, Thou blasphemest; because I said, I am the Son of God?

37 If I do not the works of my Father, believe me not.

38 But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works: that ye may know, and believe, that the Father is in me, and I in him.

1099. Christ who received the throne of David forever (Ps 89:3-4)
Ps 89:27-29,36-37,49, Mt 1:1, Lk 1:31-33

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that God would give the throne of David forever to Christ, whom he would send as a descendant of David. (Psalms 89:3-4, 27-29, 36-37,49)

Psalms 89:3 I have made a covenant with my chosen, I have sworn unto David my servant,
4 Thy seed will I establish for ever, and build up thy throne to all generations. Selah.
27 Also I will make him my firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth.
28 My mercy will I keep for him for evermore, and my covenant shall stand fast with him.
29 His seed also will I make to endure for ever, and his throne as the days of heaven.
36 His seed shall endure for ever, and his throne as the sun before me.
37 It shall be established for ever as the moon, and as a faithful witness in heaven. Selah.
49 Lord, where are thy former lovingkindnesses, which thou swarest unto David in thy truth?

Jesus is the Christ who came as the descendant of David and received the throne of David from God forever.
(Matthew 1:1, Luke 1:31-33, Matthew 1:16)

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1101. Christ shall cover Israelites with His feathers. (Ps 91:4)
Lk 13:34, Jn 1:9-11, Mt 9:35-36, Mt 23:37

In the Old Testament, the psalmist was convinced that God would protect us with His feathers. (Psalms 91:4)

Psalms 91:4 He shall cover thee with his feathers, and under his wings shalt thou trust: his truth shall be thy shield and buckler.

Jesus, the Christ, tried to protect the nation of Israel as a hen protects its young. But the people of Israel did not want Jesus, the Christ. (Luke 13:34, Matthew 23:37, John 1:9-10)

Luke 13:34 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, which killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee; how often would I have gathered thy children together, as a hen doth gather her brood under her wings, and ye would not!

Matthew 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.
10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

Jesus, the Christ, preached the gospel of the kingdom to the Israelites to save them. (Matthew 9:35-36)

Matthew 9:35 And Jesus went about all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every disease among the people.

36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd.

1102. The God of peace will crush Satan under your feet shortly. (Ps 91:13)
Mk 16:18, Lk 10:19, Rom 16:20

In the Old Testament the psalmist said that God would cause us to tread on lions and vipers. (Psalms 91:13)

Psalms 91:13 Thou shalt tread upon the lion and adder: the young lion and the dragon shalt thou trample under feet.

We, who believe in Jesus as the Christ, have control over all the power of the enemy. (Mark 16:18, Luke 10:19, Romans 16:20)

Mark 16:18 They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

Luke 10:19 Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Romans 16:20 And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

1103. If you will hear Christ's voice, do not harden your hearts. (Ps 95:7-11)
Jn 10:14-16, Heb 3:6-11,15, Heb 4:3-9

In the Old Testament, the psalmist told the Israelites not to harden their hearts but to listen to the word of God. (Psalms 95:7-11)

Psalms 95:7 For he is our God; and we are the people of his pasture, and the sheep of his hand. To day if ye will hear his voice,
8 Harden not your heart, as in the provocation, and as in the day of temptation in the wilderness:
9 When your fathers tempted me, proved me, and saw my work.
10 Forty years long was I grieved with this generation, and said, It is a people that do err in their heart, and they have not known my ways:
11 Unto whom I swear in my wrath that they should not enter into my rest.

Those who harden their hearts and do not hear the voice of God cannot enter the rest of God. (Heb 3:6-11,15, Heb 4:3-9)

Heb 3:6 But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.
7 Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, To day if ye will hear his voice,
8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:
9 When your fathers tempted me, proved me, and saw my works forty years.
10 Wherefore I was grieved with that generation, and said, They do alway err in their heart; and they have not known my ways.
11 So I swear in my wrath, They shall not enter into my rest.)
15 While it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts, as in the provocation.

Heb 4:3 For we which have believed do enter into rest, as he said, As I have sworn in my wrath, if they shall enter into my rest: although the works were finished from the foundation of the world.
4 For he spake in a certain place of the seventh day on this wise, And God did rest the seventh day from all his works.
5 And in this place again, If they shall enter into my rest.
6 Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief:
7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.
8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day.
9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God.

God's children hear the voice of Christ. (John 10:14-16)

John 10:14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.
15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.
16 And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

1104. Christ, the Righteous Judge (Ps 96:13)

Ps 98:9, Jn 5:22-23, Acts 10:39-42, Acts 17:30-31, 2 Tim 4:1,8, Rev 19:11

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that God would come to judge the earth. (Psalms 96:13, Psalms 98:9)

Psalms 96:13 Before the Lord: for he cometh, for he cometh to judge the earth: he shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth.

Psalms 98:9 Before the Lord; for he cometh to judge the earth: with righteousness shall he judge the world, and the people with equity.

God has entrusted the judgment of the world to his Son. (John 5:22-23)

John 5:22 For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:

23 That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.

Jesus is the Christ sent by God to judge the living and the dead. (Acts 10:39-42, Acts 17:30-31, 2 Timothy 4:1, Rev 19:11)

Acts 10:39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:

40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.

42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

Acts 17:30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:

31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

2 Timothy 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

Rev 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.

1105. All angels, worship Christ. (Ps 97:7)
Heb 1:6, 1 Pt 3:22, Rev 5:11-12

In the Old Testament the psalmist told all the gods to worship God. (Psalms 97:7)

Psalms 97:7 Confounded be all they that serve graven images, that boast themselves of idols: worship him, all ye gods.

Jesus, the Christ, ascended into heaven and sits at the right hand of God, and angels submit to him. (1 Peter 3:22)

1 Peter 3:22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

Every angel in the world will worship Jesus, the Christ. (Heb 1:6, Rev 5:11-12)

Heb 1:6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.

Rev 5:11 And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands;

12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

1106. Christ who made us (Ps 100:3)
Jn 1:1-3,10-12, 1 Cor 8:6, Col 1:15-16, Heb 1:2

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God made us. (Psalm 100:3)

Psalms 100:3 Know ye that the Lord he is God: it is he that hath made us, and not we ourselves; we are his people, and the sheep of his pasture.

Christ, the Word, made us. (John 1:1-3, 10-12, Col 1:15-16, Hebrews 1:2)

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

10 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Hebrews 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

God and Christ made us together. (1 Corinthians 8:6)

1 Corinthians 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

1107. Christ is our true shepherd. (Ps 100:3)
Jn 10:11-15, Heb 13:20-21, 1 Pt 2:25, 1 Pt 5:4, Rev 7:17

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God is our Shepherd. (Psalms 100:3)

Psalms 100:3 Know ye that the Lord he is God: it is he that hath made us, and not we ourselves; we are his people, and the sheep of his pasture.

Jesus is the good shepherd who laid down his life to save us. (John 10:11-15)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

12 But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.

13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

God made our shepherd, Jesus, die to make us alive. (Hebrews 13:20-21)

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

Jesus, the Christ, is our true Shepherd. (1 Pet 2:25, 1 Pet 5:4, Rev 7:17)

1 Pet 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

1 Pet 5:4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1108. Christ is eternal. (Ps 102:25-27)
Heb 1:8-12, Heb 13:8

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God is eternal. (Psalms 102:25-27)

Psalms 102:25 Of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the work of thy hands.
26 They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed:
27 But thou art the same, and thy years shall have no end.

The writer of Hebrews confessed that Christ, the Son of God, is eternal. (Heb 1:8-12)

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.
9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.
10 And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands:
11 They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment;
12 And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.

Christ Jesus is the same forever. (Hebrews 13:8)

Hebrews 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.

1109. Christ has the power to forgive sins.(Ps 103:3)
Mk 2:5-7,10-12, Lk 7:46-50

In the Old Testament, David confessed that God heals all our diseases and forgives all our sins. (Psalms 103:3)

Psalms 103:3 Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases;

Jesus healed the paralytic and revealed that he was the Christ who forgives sins. (Mark 2:5-12)

Mark 2:5 When Jesus saw their faith, he said unto the sick of the palsy, Son, thy sins be forgiven thee.

6 But there was certain of the scribes sitting there, and reasoning in their hearts,

7 Why doth this man thus speak blasphemies? who can forgive sins but God only?

8 And immediately when Jesus perceived in his spirit that they so reasoned within themselves, he said unto them, Why reason ye these things in your hearts?

9 Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, Thy sins be forgiven thee; or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed, and walk?

10 But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (he saith to the sick of the palsy,)

11 I say unto thee, Arise, and take up thy bed, and go thy way into thine house.

12 And immediately he arose, took up the bed, and went forth before them all; insomuch that they were all amazed, and glorified God, saying, We never saw it on this fashion.

Jesus forgave the sins of the woman who poured perfume on his feet, and he revealed that he was the Christ who forgives sins. (Luke 7:46-50)

Luke 7:46 My head with oil thou didst not anoint: but this woman hath anointed my feet with ointment.

47 Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little.

48 And he said unto her, Thy sins are forgiven.

49 And they that sat at meat with him began to say within themselves, Who is this that forgiveth sins also?

50 And he said to the woman, Thy faith hath saved thee; go in peace.

1110. All angels, bless Christ. (Ps 103:20-22)
Heb 1:6, 1 Pt 3:22, Rev 5:11-12

In the Old Testament David told all the angels to praise God. (Psalms 103:20-22)

Psalms 103:20 Bless the Lord, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.

21 Bless ye the Lord, all ye his hosts; ye ministers of his, that do his pleasure.

22 Bless the Lord, all his works in all places of his dominion: bless the Lord, O my soul.

All angels submit to Jesus, the Christ. (1 Peter 3:22)

1 Peter 3:22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

When Jesus, the Christ, comes back to earth, all the angels will praise him. (Heb 1:6, Rev 5:11-12)

Heb 1:6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.

Rev 5:11 And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands;

12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

1111. Bless God and Christ. (Ps 103:1-2)

Mt 21:9, Lk 19:38, Jn 12:13, Col 3:16, Eph 5:19-20, Rev 5:9,13

In the Old Testament, David always praised God. (Psalms 103:1-2)

Psalms 103:1 Bless the Lord, O my soul: and all that is within me, bless his holy name.

2 Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all his benefits:

The Israelites praised Jesus as the Christ who came as the Son of David. (Matthew 21:9, Luke 19:38, John 12:13)

Matthew 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

Luke 19:38 Saying, Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the Lord: peace in heaven, and glory in the highest.

John 12:13 Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.

We are to praise God in the name of Christ Jesus. (Col 3:16, Ephesians 5:19-20)

Col 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

Ephesians 5:19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;

20 Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;

We are to give to God and Jesus the Christ the praise and honor and glory and power forever and ever. (Rev 5:9,13)

Rev 5:9 And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;
13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.

1112. Angels Helping God's Children (Ps 104:4)
Heb 1:7,14, Rev 8:3-4

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that God made angels His ministers. (Psalms 104:4)

Psalms 104:4 Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire:

The writer of Hebrews said that angels were sent as ministers of God to help His children. (Heb 1:7,14)

Heb 1:7 And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.
14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

Also, angels go up to God with our prayers. (Rev 8:3-4)

Rev 8:3 And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne.
4 And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angel's hand.

1113. Always seek God and Christ. (Ps 105:3-4)
Mt 6:33, 1 Cor 16:22, Gal 6:14, Phil 3:8-11

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that those who seek God will rejoice in their hearts. (Psalms 105:3-4)

Psalms 105:3 Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the Lord.
4 Seek the Lord, and his strength: seek his face evermore.

We must first seek the kingdom of God and His righteousness. (Mt 6:33)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

Anyone who does not love Jesus, the Christ, will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

We have nothing to boast about except Jesus, who is the Christ, and the knowledge of Christ Jesus is the noblest.
(Gal 6:14, Phil 3:8-11)

Gal 6:14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord:
for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,
9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of
Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:
10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made
conformable unto his death;
11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

1114. God's Eternal Promise-Christ (Ps 105:8-11)
Gen 22:17-18, Gen 26:4, Gal 3:16, Lk 1:72-80

In the Old Testament, God promised to send Christ, an eternal promise to Abraham and his descendants. (Psalms 105:8-11, Gen 22:17-18, Gen 26:4, Gal 3:16)

Psalms 105:8 He hath remembered his covenant for ever, the word which he commanded to a thousand generations.
9 Which covenant he made with Abraham, and his oath unto Isaac;
10 And confirmed the same unto Jacob for a law, and to Israel for an everlasting covenant:
11 Saying, Unto thee will I give the land of Canaan, the lot of your inheritance:

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven,
and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gen 26:4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries;
and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

The Christ promised by God to Abraham and his descendants has come to this earth. That is Jesus. And John the Baptist prepared the way for Christ. (Luke 1:72-80, Matthew 1:16)

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Luke 1:72 To perform the mercy promised to our fathers, and to remember his holy covenant;
73 The oath which he swore to our father Abraham,
74 That he would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear,
75 In holiness and righteousness before him, all the days of our life.
76 And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways;
77 To give knowledge of salvation unto his people by the remission of their sins,
78 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us,
79 To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.
80 And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, and was in the deserts till the day of his shewing unto Israel.

1115.The Last of the Seller of Christ (Ps 109:5-8)
Acts 1:16-20,26

In the Old Testament, David prayed to God that those who repaid him for good for evil would be short-lived, and that his office would be taken over by others. (Psalms 109:5-8)

Psalms 109:5 And they have rewarded me evil for good, and hatred for my love.
6 Set thou a wicked man over him: and let Satan stand at his right hand.
7 When he shall be judged, let him be condemned: and let his prayer become sin.
8 Let his days be few; and let another take his office.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, the person who sold Christ was short-lived, and another person took his office. (Acts 1:16-20,26)

Acts 1:16 Men and brethren, this scripture must needs have been fulfilled, which the Holy Ghost by the mouth of David spake before concerning Judas, which was guide to them that took Jesus.
17 For he was numbered with us, and had obtained part of this ministry.
18 Now this man purchased a field with the reward of iniquity; and falling headlong, he burst asunder in the midst, and all his bowels gushed out.
19 And it was known unto all the dwellers at Jerusalem; insomuch as that field is called in their proper tongue, Aceldama, that is to say, The field of blood.
20 For it is written in the book of Psalms, Let his habitation be desolate, and let no man dwell therein: and his bishoprick let another take.
26 And they gave forth their lots; and the lot fell upon Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

1116. David named Christ as Lord (Ps 110:1)
Mt 22:43-45, Mk 12:35-37, Lk 20:41-44, Acts 2:34-36

In the Old Testament David saw God telling Christ to sit at the right hand of God. (Psalms 110:1)

Psalms 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Jesus said that David called the Christ, the son of David, Lord. (Matthew 22:43-45, Mark 12:35-37, Luke 20:41-44)

Matthew 22:43 He saith unto them, How then doth David in spirit call him Lord, saying,
44 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool?
45 If David then call him Lord, how is he his son?

Mark 12:35 And Jesus answered and said, while he taught in the temple, How say the scribes that Christ is the son of David?

36 For David himself said by the Holy Ghost, The Lord said to my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool.

37 David therefore himself calleth him Lord; and whence is he then his son? And the common people heard him gladly.

Luke 20:41 And he said unto them, How say they that Christ is David's son?

42 And David himself saith in the book of Psalms, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

43 Till I make thine enemies thy footstool.

44 David therefore calleth him Lord, how is he then his son?

Jesus is the Christ whom David called Lord. (Acts 2:34-36)

Acts 2:34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

1117. Christ sits at the right hand of God and reigns with God. (Ps 110:1)

Mk 16:19, Rom 8:34, 1 Cor 15:25, Eph 1:20, Col 3:1, Heb 1:3,13, Heb 8:1, Heb 10:12-13

In the Old Testament David saw God placing Christ at his right hand to rule the world. (Psalms 110:1)

Psalms 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Jesus ascends into heaven and sits at the right hand of God and reigns until he puts all enemies under his feet. (Mark 16:19, Romans 8:34, Ephesians 1:20, Col 3:1, Heb 1:3,13, Heb 8:1, Heb 10:12, 1 Corinthians 15:25)

Mark 16:19 So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

Romans 8:34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

Ephesians 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

Col 3:1 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:
13 But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?

Heb 8:1 Now of the things which we have spoken this is the sum: We have such a high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens;

Heb 10:12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

1 Corinthians 15:25 For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet.

1118. Christ Trampling His Enemies (Ps 110:1)
Gen 3:15, 1 Jn 3:8, Rom 16:20, Col 2:13-15, Heb 2:14-17

In the Old Testament David saw Christ trampling upon Christ's enemies. (Psalms 110:1)

Psalms 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ, the descendant of the woman, would crush Satan's head. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus is the Christ who destroyed the works of the devil on the cross. (1 John 3:8, Col 2:13-15)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

By dying on the cross, Jesus freed us from the grip of Satan. (Heb 2:14-17)

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

16 For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.

17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

God will soon crush Satan under our feet. (Romans 16:20)

Romans 16:20 And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

1119. Jesus is the Lord and the Christ. (Ps 110:1)
Mt 26:63-68, Mk 14:62-64, Lk 22:69-71, Acts 2:34-36

In the Old Testament David called Christ Lord. (Psalms 110:1)

Psalms 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

When Jesus was captured by the Jews, he revealed that he was the Christ, the Son of God. (Matthew 26:63-68, Mark 14:62-64, Luke 22:69-71)

Matthew 26:63 But Jesus held his peace, And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God.

64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

65 Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, He hath spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? behold, now ye have heard his blasphemy.

66 What think ye? They answered and said, He is guilty of death.

67 Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him; and others smote him with the palms of their hands,

68 Saying, Prophesy unto us, thou Christ, Who is he that smote thee?

Mark 14:62 And Jesus said, I am: and ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

63 Then the high priest rent his clothes, and saith, What need we any further witnesses?

64 Ye have heard the blasphemy: what think ye? And they all condemned him to be guilty of death.

Luke 22:69 Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of God.

70 Then said they all, Art thou then the Son of God? And he said unto them, Ye say that I am.

71 And they said, What need we any further witness? for we ourselves have heard of his own mouth.

The Christ whom David called Lord in the Old Testament is Jesus. (Acts 2:34-36)

Acts 2:34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

1120. Christ's reign (Ps 110:2)
Gen 49:10, Ps 2:6-9, Heb 1:8

In the Old Testament, David knew that God would send a staff of power to rule over God's enemies. (Psalms 110:2)

Psalms 110:2 The Lord shall send the rod of thy strength out of Zion: rule thou in the midst of thine enemies.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that a ruler, descended from Judah, would come out and all the people would obey him. (Gen 49:10)

Gen 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send the Son of God to this earth to destroy the enemies and reign. (Psalms 2:6-9)

Psalms 2:6 Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Zion.

7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

9 Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel.

The writer of Hebrews said that Christ Jesus, the Son of God, would reign over the world forever. (Heb 1:8)

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.

1121. Christ as the eternal priest in the order of Melchizedek (Ps 110:4)
Heb 5:6-10, Heb 6:20, Heb 7:11-22

In the Old Testament, God said that Christ was the eternal priest according to the order of Melchizedek. (Psalms 110:4)

Psalms 110:4 The Lord hath sworn, and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek.

Jesus is the eternal high priest according to the order of Belchizedek, who obeyed the word of God by dying on the cross. (Hebrews 5:6-10, Heb 6:20)

Hebrews 5:6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 6:20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

Jesus is not a Levitical priest, but an eternal high priest according to the order of Melchizedek. Therefore, we can draw near to God through Christ, who is a better hope than the old commandments. (Heb 7:11-22)

Heb 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar.

14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest,

16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life.

17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.

19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest:

21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)

22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

1122. Knowing God and Christ is the basis of wisdom (Ps 111:10)
Prov 1:7, Prov 9:10, Jn 17:3, 1 Jn 5:20

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that the fear of God was the beginning of wisdom. (Psalms 111:10)

Psalms 111:10 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do his commandments: his praise endureth for ever.

In the Old Testament, Solomon said that the fear of God was the beginning of knowledge. (Proverbs 1:7, Proverbs 9:10)

Proverbs 1:7 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.

Proverbs 9:10 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the holy is understanding.

To know God and the Christ whom God has sent is eternal life. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Jesus made us know that Jesus is the Christ and that He is the true God. (1 John 5:20)

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

1123. Idols cannot speak. (Ps 115:4-8)

Hab 2:18-19, Jer 10:2-5, Ia 46:6, 1 Cor 12:2, Rev 9:20

The Old Testament said that idols cannot speak, and that those who depend on them cannot do anything with them. (Psalms 115:4-8, Hab 2:18-19, Jer 10:2-5, Isaiah 46:6)

Psalms 115:4 Their idols are silver and gold, the work of men's hands.

5 They have mouths, but they speak not: eyes have they, but they see not:

6 They have ears, but they hear not: noses have they, but they smell not:

7 They have hands, but they handle not: feet have they, but they walk not: neither speak they through their throat.

8 They that make them are like unto them; so is every one that trusteth in them.

Hab 2:18 What profiteth the graven image that the maker thereof hath graven it; the molten image, and a teacher of lies, that the maker of his work trusteth therein, to make dumb idols?

19 Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake; to the dumb stone, Arise, it shall teach! Behold, it is laid over with gold and silver, and there is no breath at all in the midst of it.

Jer 10:2 Thus saith the Lord, Learn not the way of the heathen, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; for the heathen are dismayed at them.

3 For the customs of the people are vain: for one cutteth a tree out of the forest, the work of the hands of the workman, with the axe.

4 They deck it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers, that it move not.

5 They are upright as the palm tree, but speak not: they must needs be borne, because they cannot go. Be not afraid of them; for they cannot do evil, neither also is it in them to do good.

Isaiah 46:6 They lavish gold out of the bag, and weigh silver in the balance, and hire a goldsmith; and he maketh it a god: they fall down, yea, they worship.

To bow to an idol is to bow to a demon. Before we believed in Christ, we were led by idols. (1 Corinthians 10:20, 1 Corinthians 12:2, Revelation 9:20)

1 Corinthians 10:20 But I say, that the things which the Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to devils, and not to God: and I would not that ye should have fellowship with devils.

1 Corinthians 12:2 Ye know that ye were Gentiles, carried away unto these dumb idols, even as ye were led.

Revelation 9:20 And the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk:

1124. Even when we suffer great suffering, we believe that God will bring us back to life with Jesus. (Ps 116:10)
2 Cor 4:8-14

In the Old Testament, the psalmist thanked God for saving him from death. (Psalms 116:8-10)

Psalms 116:8 For thou hast delivered my soul from death, mine eyes from tears, and my feet from falling.
9 I will walk before the Lord in the land of the living.
10 I believed, therefore have I spoken: I was greatly afflicted:

Paul said that even though we suffer in every way, we do not lose heart because the God who raised the Lord Jesus will raise us up together with Jesus. (2 Corinthians 4:8-14)

2 Corinthians 4:8 We are troubled on every side, yet not distressed; we are perplexed, but not in despair;
9 Persecuted, but not forsaken; cast down, but not destroyed;
10 Always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body.
11 For we which live are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our mortal flesh.
12 So then death worketh in us, but life in you.
13 We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written, I believed, and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak;
14 Knowing that he which raised up the Lord Jesus shall raise up us also by Jesus, and shall present us with you.

1125. All nations praise God through Christ. (Ps 117:1)
Acts 13:46-48, Gal 3:14, Rom 15:8-12

In the Old Testament, the psalmist told all nations to praise God. (Psalms 117:1)

Psalms 117:1 O praise the Lord, all ye nations: praise him, all ye people.

The Gentiles believed in Jesus as the Christ and were saved and came to praise God. (Acts 13:46-48, Gal 3:14, Romans 15:8-12)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Gal 3:14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Romans 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

1126. The loving God who gave Christ for us (Ps 118:1-4)
Jn 3:16, Rom 5:8,10, Rom 8:32, 2 Cor 5:21, Eph 2:4-7, 1 Jn 4:9-10

In the Old Testament, the psalmist praised God's eternal love for us. (Psalms 118:1-4)

Psalms 118:1 O give thanks unto the Lord; for he is good: because his mercy endureth for ever.
2 Let Israel now say, that his mercy endureth for ever.
3 Let the house of Aaron now say, that his mercy endureth for ever.
4 Let them now that fear the Lord say, that his mercy endureth for ever.

God loves us so much that He sent His only begotten Son to die in our place to save us. (John 3:16, Romans 5:8,10, Romans 8:32, 2 Corinthians 5:21, Ephesians 2:4-7, 1 John 4:9-10)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Romans 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.
10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

Romans 8:32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Ephesians 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,
5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)
6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:
7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

1 John 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.
10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

1127. Nobody shall be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Ps 118:6)
Heb 12:6, Rom 8:31-39

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that man had nothing to do with him because God was on his side. (Psalms 118:6)

Psalms 118:6 The Lord is on my side; I will not fear: what can man do unto me?

No one can separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus. (Romans 8:31-39)

Romans 8:31 What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?

32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?

33 Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth.

34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1128. Christ who became the head of the corner of the stone abandoned by the builder (Ps 118:22-23)
Mt 21:42, Mk 12:10-12, Lk 20:17-18, Acts 4:11, 1 Pt 2:4-8

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God made the stone rejected by the builders to be the headstone of the corners of the house. (Psalms 118:22-23)

Psalms 118:22 The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner.
23 This is the Lord's doing; it is marvellous in our eyes.

Jesus revealed to the Jews that He was the stone rejected by the builders prophesied in the Old Testament. (Matthew 21:42, Mark 12:10-12, Luke 20:17-18)

Matthew 21:42 Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

Mark 12:10 And have ye not read this scripture; The stone which the builders rejected is become the head of the corner:

11 This was the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

12 And they sought to lay hold on him, but feared the people: for they knew that he had spoken the parable against them: and they left him, and went their way.

Luke 20:17 And he beheld them, and said, What is this then that is written, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?

18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Jesus is the cornerstone of the house prophesied in the Old Testament. Those who believe in this Cornerstone, Jesus, will not be put to shame, and those who do not believe will stumble upon that stone. (Acts 4:11, 1 Pet 2:4-8)

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

1 Pet 2:4 To whom coming, as unto a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious,
5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.

7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,

8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.

1129. Christ, who comes in the name of Jehovah (Ps 118:26)
8 Mt 21:9-11, Mk 11:7-10, Jn 12:12-16, Lk 19:35-38

In the Old Testament the psalmist said that blessed is he who comes in the name of God and we bless him. (Psalms 118:26)

Psalms 118:26 Blessed be he that cometh in the name of the Lord: we have blessed you out of the house of the Lord.

Jesus is the Christ, the son of David who came in the name of God prophesied in the Old Testament. The Israelites blessed Jesus as the Son of David, who came in the name of God. (Matthew 21:9-11, Mark 11:7-10, John 12:12-16, Luke 19:35-38)

Matthew 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

10 And when he was come into Jerusalem, all the city was moved, saying, Who is this?

11 And the multitude said, This is Jesus the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee.

Mark 11:7 And they brought the colt to Jesus, and cast their garments on him; and he sat upon him.

8 And many spread their garments in the way: and others cut down branches off the trees, and strawed them in the way.

9 And they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna; Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord:

10 Blessed be the kingdom of our father David, that cometh in the name of the Lord: Hosanna in the highest.

John 12:12 On the next day much people that were come to the feast, when they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem,

13 Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.

14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,

15 Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.

16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

Luke 19:35 And they brought him to Jesus: and they cast their garments upon the colt, and they set Jesus thereon.

36 And as he went, they spread their clothes in the way.

37 And when he was come nigh, even now at the descent of the mount of Olives, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise God with a loud voice for all the mighty works that they had seen;

38 Saying, Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the Lord: peace in heaven, and glory in the highest.

1130. The word of Christ is forever. (Ps 119:89)
Isa 40:8, Mt 24:34-35, 1 Pt 1:25

The Old Testament says that the Word of God is eternal. (Psalms 119:89, Isaiah 40:8)

Psalms 119:89 For ever, O Lord, thy word is settled in heaven.

Isaiah 40:8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

Jesus said that his words are eternal. (Matthew 24:34-35, Mark 13:31, Luke 21:33)

Matthew 24:34 Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled.
35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Mark 13:31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

Luke 21:33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

Peter confessed that the words of Jesus were the eternal words of God prophesied in the Old Testament. (1 Peter 1:24-25)

1 Peter 1:24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:

25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

1131. The knowledge of Christ Jesus is the highest. (Ps 119:103)
Ps 19:10, Jn 17:3, Phil 3:8-9

The Old Testament says that the word of God is sweeter than honey. (Psalms 119:103, Psalms 19:10)

Psalms 119:103 How sweet are thy words unto my taste! yea, sweeter than honey to my mouth!

Psalms 19:10 More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb.

To know God and Christ Jesus whom God has sent is eternal life. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Deep knowledge that Jesus is the Christ is the best knowledge. (Phil 3:8-9)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,
9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

1132. Christ the Truth (Ps 119:160)

Jn 14:6, Jn 1:14

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that the Word of God is the truth. (Psalms 119:160)

Psalms 119:160 Thy word is true from the beginning: and every one of thy righteous judgments endureth for ever.

Jesus is the Word of God who became flesh and came to this earth. (John 1:14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jesus is the truth. (John 14:6)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

1133. God redeemed us through Christ. (Ps 130:7-8)

Ps 132:17, Lk 1:68-73,76-79, Rom 3:23-24, Eph 1:7, Mt 1:21, Titus 2:14, 1 Tim 2:5-6, Rev 1:5

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God would redeem the people of Israel from all their sins. (Psalm 130:7-8)

Psalms 130:7 Let Israel hope in the Lord: for with the Lord there is mercy, and with him is plenteous redemption.
8 And he shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.

In the Old Testament, the psalmist prophesied that God would send Christ, the horn of salvation, as a descendant of David. (Psalm 132:17)

Psalm 132:17 There will I make the horn of David to bud: I have ordained a lamp for mine anointed.

Jesus is the Christ, the horn of salvation who came to redeem us, the descendant of David. (Luke 1:68-79, Matthew 1:21)

Luke 1:68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:
71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;
72 To perform the mercy promised to our fathers, and to remember his holy covenant;
73 The oath which he sware to our father Abraham,
74 That he would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear,
75 In holiness and righteousness before him, all the days of our life.
76 And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways;
77 To give knowledge of salvation unto his people by the remission of their sins,
78 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us,
79 To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.

Matthew 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

By the grace of God, we have been redeemed from our sins by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Romans 3:23-24)

Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;
24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.

Jesus, the Christ, shed His blood to redeem us from our sins. (Eph 1:7, Titus 2:14, 1 Tim 2:5-6, Rev 1:5)

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Titus 2:14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;
6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

Rev 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

1134. Christ who received the throne of David forever (Ps 132:11-12)
Mt 1:1, Lk 1:31-33, Rom 8:29, Heb 1:5-6

In the Old Testament, the psalmist confessed that God would give an eternal throne to the descendants of David.
(Psalm 132:11-12)

Psalm 132:11 The Lord hath sworn in truth unto David; he will not turn from it; Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne.
12 If thy children will keep my covenant and my testimony that I shall teach them, their children shall also sit upon thy throne for evermore.

Jesus is the Christ who has received the kingship of David forever, who came as a descendant of David. (Matthew 1:1, Luke 1:31-33, Matthew 1:16)

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Matthew 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1135. Our hope is God and Christ. (Ps 146:5)

Col 1:27, 1 Tim 1:1, Rom 15:12, Titus 2:13, Rom 15:13, 1 Tim 4:10, 1 Tim 5:5, 1 Tim 6:17, 1 Pt 1:21

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that blessed are those who put their hope in God. (Psalm 146:5)

Psalm 146:5 Happy is he that hath the God of Jacob for his help, whose hope is in the Lord his God:

Christ Jesus is our hope. (Col 1:27, Titus 1:1, Titus 2:13)

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

Titus 1:1 Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of God's elect, and the acknowledging of the truth which is after godliness;

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

Christ Jesus is the hope for all Gentiles as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Romans 15:12)

Romans 15:12 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

God is our hope. (Rom 15:13, 1 Tim 4:10, 1 Tim 5:5, 1 Tim 6:17, 1 Pet 1:21)

Rom 15:13 Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost.

1 Tim 4:10 For therefore we both labour and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who is the Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe.

1 Tim 5:5 Now she that is a widow indeed, and desolate, trusteth in God, and continueth in supplications and prayers night and day.

1 Tim 6:17 Charge them that are rich in this world, that they be not highminded, nor trust in uncertain riches, but in the living God, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy;

1 Pet 1:21 Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God.

1136. Christ who gave freedom to the captives (Ps 146:7)
Isa 61:1, Lk 4:16-21

In the Old Testament, the psalmist spoke of God freeing the prisoners. (Psalm 146:7)

Psalm 146:7 Which executeth judgment for the oppressed: which giveth food to the hungry. The Lord looseth the prisoners:

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the Holy Spirit would come upon Christ and that Christ would set the captives free. (Isa 61:1)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Jesus is the Christ who gives freedom to the captives. (Luke 4:16-21)

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

1137. Christ opened the eyes of the blind (Ps 146:8)

Isa 29:18, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 42:1,6-7, Mt 9:27-30, Mt 11:4-5, Mt 15:30-31, Mt 20:30-34, Mt 21:14, Jn 9:1,6-7

In the Old Testament, the psalmist said that God opened the eyes of the blind. (Psalm 146:8)

Psalm 146:8 The Lord openeth the eyes of the blind: the Lord raiseth them that are bowed down: the Lord loveth the righteous:

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the coming Christ would open the eyes of the blind. (Isa 29:18, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 42:1,6-7)

Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

Isa 35:5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

7 To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.

Jesus is the Christ who opened the eyes of the blind as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mt 9:27-30, Mt 11:4-5, Mt 15:30-31, Mt 20:30-34, Mt 21:14, Jn 9:1, 6-7)

Mt 9:27 And when Jesus departed thence, two blind men followed him, crying, and saying, Thou son of David, have mercy on us.

28 And when he was come into the house, the blind men came to him: and Jesus saith unto them, Believe ye that I am able to do this? They said unto him, Yea, Lord.

29 Then touched he their eyes, saying, According to your faith be it unto you.

30 And their eyes were opened; and Jesus straitly charged them, saying, See that no man know it.

Mt 11:4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

Mt 15:30 And great multitudes came unto him, having with them those that were lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and cast them down at Jesus' feet; and he healed them:

31 Insomuch that the multitude wondered, when they saw the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the God of Israel.

Mt 20:30 And, behold, two blind men sitting by the way side, when they heard that Jesus passed by, cried out, saying, Have mercy on us, O Lord, thou son of David.

31 And the multitude rebuked them, because they should hold their peace: but they cried the more, saying, Have mercy on us, O Lord, thou son of David.

32 And Jesus stood still, and called them, and said, What will ye that I shall do unto you?

33 They say unto him, Lord, that our eyes may be opened.

34 So Jesus had compassion on them, and touched their eyes: and immediately their eyes received sight, and they followed him.

Mt 21:14 And the blind and the lame came to him in the temple; and he healed them.

Jn 9:1 And as Jesus passed by, he saw a man which was blind from his birth.

6 When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay,

7 And said unto him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam, (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing.

1138. God and Christ to be praised (Ps 148:1-14)
Mt 21:9-11, Heb 1:6, 1 Pt 3:22, Rev 5:11-12

God is to be praised. (Psalm 148:1-14)

Psalm 148:1 Praise ye the Lord. Praise ye the Lord from the heavens: praise him in the heights.
2 Praise ye him, all his angels: praise ye him, all his hosts.
3 Praise ye him, sun and moon: praise him, all ye stars of light.
4 Praise him, ye heavens of heavens, and ye waters that be above the heavens.
5 Let them praise the name of the Lord: for he commanded, and they were created.
6 He hath also stablished them for ever and ever: he hath made a decree which shall not pass.
7 Praise the Lord from the earth, ye dragons, and all deeps:
8 Fire, and hail; snow, and vapours; stormy wind fulfilling his word:
9 Mountains, and all hills; fruitful trees, and all cedars:
10 Beasts, and all cattle; creeping things, and flying fowl:
11 Kings of the earth, and all people; princes, and all judges of the earth:
12 Both young men, and maidens; old men, and children:
13 Let them praise the name of the Lord: for his name alone is excellent; his glory is above the earth and heaven.
14 He also exalteth the horn of his people, the praise of all his saints; even of the children of Israel, a people near unto him. Praise ye the Lord.

The Israelites praised Jesus as the Son of David, the Christ to come in the name of God. (Matthew 21:9-11)

Matthew 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David:
Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.
10 And when he was come into Jerusalem, all the city was moved, saying, Who is this?
11 And the multitude said, This is Jesus the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee.

Even the angels praise Jesus, the Christ. (Heb 1:6, 1 Pet 3:22, Rev 5:11-12)

Heb 1:6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.

1 Pet 3:22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

Rev 5:11 And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders:
and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands;
12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

Proverbs

Bible

- 1139. Knowing God and Christ is the foundation of knowledge. (Prov 1:7)
- 1140. Christ preaching the Gospel in the square (Prov 1:20-23)
- 1141. Christ has poured out His Spirit upon us. (Prov 1:23)
- 1142. Jews rejected Christ. (Prov 1:24-28)
- 1143. Seek Christ, who is the true wisdom. (Prov 2:2-5)
- 1144. Love Christ. He will protect you. (Prov 4:6-9)
- 1145. Christ who created the heavens and the earth with God (Prov 8:22-31)
- 1146. He who has Christ has life. (Prov 8:34-35)
- 1147. If anyone does not love the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be accursed.
- 1148. Christ invited us to the heavenly wedding feast (Prov 9:1-6)
- 1149. There is no one in the world who has not sinned. (Prov 20:9)
- 1150. Christ repays each person according to their deeds. (Prov 24:12)
- 1151. God's word is as sweet as a honeycomb. (Prov 24:13-14)
- 1152. Do not be called teachers; for One is your Teacher, the Christ. (Prov 25:6-7)
- 1153. Love your enemies. (Prov 25:21-22)
- 1154. Christ has ascended into heaven and descended. (Prov 30:4)
- 1155. Jesus, the name of the Son of God (Prov 30:4)

1139. Knowing God and Christ is the foundation of knowledge. (Prov 1:7)
Ecc 12:13, Jn 17:3, 1 Jn 5:20

The Old Testament says that the fear of God is the beginning of knowledge and our duty. (Proverbs 1:7; Ecclesiastes 12:13)

Proverbs 1:7 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.

Ecclesiastes 12:13 Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: Fear God, and keep his commandments: for this is the whole duty of man.

Eternal life is to know the true God and the one whom God has sent, Jesus Christ. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: Fear God, and keep his commandments: for this is the whole duty of man.

Jesus is the Christ, and Jesus, the Christ, is the true God and eternal life. (1 John 5:20)

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

1140. Christ preaching the Gospel in the square (Prov 1:20-23)
Mt 4:12,17, Mk 1:14-15, Lk 11:49, Mt 23:34-36, 1 Cor 2:7-8

In the Old Testament, it is said that wisdom raises a voice in the square and spreads the gospel. (Proverbs 1:20-23)

Proverbs 1:20 Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets:

21 She crieth in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she uttereth her words, saying,
22 How long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? and the scorers delight in their scorning, and fools hate knowledge?

23 Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

Jesus preached the gospel in Galilee. (Matthew 4:12,17, Mark 1:14-15)

Matthew 4:12 Now when Jesus had heard that John was cast into prison, he departed into Galilee;

17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Mark 1:14 Now after that John was put in prison, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God,

15 And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.

Jesus is the wisdom of God who sent the evangelists into the world. (Luke 11:49, Matthew 23:34-36)

Luke 11:49 Therefore also said the wisdom of God, I will send them prophets and apostles, and some of them they shall slay and persecute:

Matthew 23:34 Wherefore, behold, I send unto you prophets, and wise men, and scribes: and some of them ye shall kill and crucify; and some of them shall ye scourge in your synagogues, and persecute them from city to city:

35 That upon you may come all the righteous blood shed upon the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel unto the blood of Zacharias son of Barachias, whom ye slew between the temple and the altar.

36 Verily I say unto you, All these things shall come upon this generation.

Jesus is the Christ, the wisdom of God. (1 Corinthians 1:24, 1 Corinthians 2:7-8)

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

1 Corinthians 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

1141. Christ has poured out His Spirit upon us. (Prov 1:23)
Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13, Act 2:36-38, Acts 5:31-32

In the Old Testament, it is said that God pours out the Spirit of God on us so that we may know the Word of God. (Proverbs 1:23)

Proverbs 1:23 Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

God has poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:36-38, Acts 5:31-32)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

God sends the Holy Spirit to us in the name of Christ to testify that Jesus is the Christ. (John 14:26, John 15:26, John 16:13)

John 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

John 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

1142. Jews rejected Christ. (Prov 1:24-28)

Jn 1:9-11, Mt 23:37-38, Lk 11:49, Rom 10:21

The Old Testament says that God preached the word of God to save the people of Israel, but the Israelites did not want to hear God's word and rather despised God's word. (Proverbs 1:24-28, Romans 10:21)

Proverbs 1:24 Because I have called, and ye refused; I have stretched out my hand, and no man regarded;

25 But ye have set at nought all my counsel, and would none of my reproof:

26 I also will laugh at your calamity; I will mock when your fear cometh;

27 When your fear cometh as desolation, and your destruction cometh as a whirlwind; when distress and anguish cometh upon you.

28 Then shall they call upon me, but I will not answer; they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me:

Romans 10:21 But to Israel he saith, All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.

Christ, the Word of God, came to this earth, but the Israelites did not receive him. (John 1:9-11)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

Jesus sent evangelists to rescue the Israelites, but the Israelites persecuted them. (Matthew 23:37-38, Luke 11:49)

Matthew 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

38 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate.

Luke 11:49 Therefore also said the wisdom of God, I will send them prophets and apostles, and some of them they shall slay and persecute:

1143. Seek Christ, who is the true wisdom. (Prov 2:2-5)

Isa 11:1-2, 1 Cor 1:24,30, Col 2:2-3, Mt 6:33, Mt 13:44-46, 2 Pt 3:18

In the Old Testament, it is said that if people listen to the word of wisdom and seek it, they will come to know God. (Proverbs 2:2-5)

Proverbs 2:2 So that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding;

3 Yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding;

4 If thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures;

5 Then shalt thou understand the fear of the Lord, and find the knowledge of God.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God's spirit of wisdom would come upon a descendant of Jesse. (Isa 11:1-2)

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Jesus is the wisdom of God and the mystery of God. (1 Corinthians 1:24,30, Colossians 2:2)

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

Colossians 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

If we seek first the kingdom of God and Christ, the righteousness of God, then God adds all things to us. (Mt 6:33)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

Discovering that Jesus is the Christ is like finding a treasure hidden in a field. (Mt 13:44-46)

Mt 13:44 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.

45 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls:

46 Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.

We need to know more deeply that Jesus is the Christ through the Old and New Testaments. (2 Peter 1:8)

2 Peter 1:8 For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1144. Love Christ. He will protect you. (Prov 4:6-9)

1 Cor 16:22, Mt 13:44-46, Rom 8:30, Phil 3:8-9, 2 Tim 4:8, James 1:12, Rev 2:10

The Old Testament proverb says to love wisdom, and wisdom will protect us. (Proverbs 4:6-9)

Proverbs 4:6 Forsake her not, and she shall preserve thee: love her, and she shall keep thee.

7 Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom: and with all thy getting get understanding.

8 Exalt her, and she shall promote thee: she shall bring thee to honour, when thou dost embrace her.

9 She shall give to thine head an ornament of grace: a crown of glory shall she deliver to thee.

If anyone does not love Jesus who is the Christ, he will be cursed. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

To discover that Jesus is the Christ is like a man to discover a hidden treasure in a field. (Mt 13:44-46)

Mt 13:44 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.

45 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls:

46 Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.

Knowing deeply that Jesus is the Christ is the best knowledge. (Phil 3:8-9)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

God has glorified us who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 8:30, 2 Tim 4:8, James 1:12, Rev 2:10)

Rom 8:30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

2 Tim 4:8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

James 1:12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.

Rev 2:10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.

1145. Christ who created the heavens and the earth with God (Prov 8:22-31)
Jn 1:1-2, 1 Cor 8:6, Col 1:14-17, Gen 1:31

The Old Testament says that God created the heavens and the earth with Christ. (Proverbs 8:22-31)

Proverbs 8:22 The Lord possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old.
23 I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was.
24 When there were no depths, I was brought forth; when there were no fountains abounding with water.
25 Before the mountains were settled, before the hills was I brought forth:
26 While as yet he had not made the earth, nor the fields, nor the highest part of the dust of the world.
27 When he prepared the heavens, I was there: when he set a compass upon the face of the depth:
28 When he established the clouds above: when he strengthened the fountains of the deep:
29 When he gave to the sea his decree, that the waters should not pass his commandment: when he appointed the foundations of the earth:
30 Then I was by him, as one brought up with him: and I was daily his delight, rejoicing always before him;
31 Rejoicing in the habitable part of his earth; and my delights were with the sons of men.

God made the heavens and the earth. (Genesis 1:31)

Genesis 1:31 And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.

Jesus, who came to this earth as the Word became flesh, created the heavens and the earth together with God. (John 1:1-3, 1 Corinthians 8:6)

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.
2 The same was in the beginning with God.
3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

1 Corinthians 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

The world was created by and for Christ. (Col 1:14-17)

Col 1:14 In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:
15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:
16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:
17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

1146. He who has Christ has life. (Prov 8:34-35)
1 Jn 5:11-13, Rev 3:20

The Old Testament proverb says that he who finds wisdom finds life. (Proverbs 8:34-35)

Proverbs 8:34 Blessed is the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors.
35 For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the Lord.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ have eternal life. (1 John 5:11-13)

1 John 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.
12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.
13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

Now Jesus is knocking on the door of people's hearts. Those who accept Jesus as the Christ have life. (Rev 3:20, John 1:12)

Rev 3:20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me.

John 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1147. If anyone does not love the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be accursed. (Prov 8:36)
1 Cor 16:22, Jn 15:23, Heb 10:29

The Old Testament proverb says that he who hates wisdom loves death. (Proverbs 8:36)

Proverbs 8:36 But he that sinneth against me wrongeth his own soul: all they that hate me love death.

Cursed are those who do not love Jesus, the Christ. (1 Corinthians 16:22, Heb 10:29)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

Heb 10:29 Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?

Those who hate Jesus Christ hate God. (John 15:23)

John 15:23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.

1148. Christ invited us to the heavenly wedding feast (Prov 9:1-6)
Mt 22:1-4, Rev 19:7-9

The Old Testament proverb says that wisdom throws a feast and invites the unwise. (Proverbs 9:1-6)

Proverbs 9:1 Wisdom hath builded her house, she hath hewn out her seven pillars:
2 She hath killed her beasts; she hath mingled her wine; she hath also furnished her table.
3 She hath sent forth her maidens: she crieth upon the highest places of the city,
4 Whoso is simple, let him turn in hither: as for him that wanteth understanding, she saith to him,
5 Come, eat of my bread, and drink of the wine which I have mingled.
6 Forsake the foolish, and live; and go in the way of understanding.

Jesus compared his kingdom to a king who gave a wedding feast for his son. (Mt 22:1-4)

Mt 22:1 And Jesus answered and spake unto them again by parables, and said,
2 The kingdom of heaven is like unto a certain king, which made a marriage for his son,
3 And sent forth his servants to call them that were bidden to the wedding: and they would not come.
4 Again, he sent forth other servants, saying, Tell them which are bidden, Behold, I have prepared my dinner: my oxen and my fatlings are killed, and all things are ready: come unto the marriage.

God invited us to the wedding feast of Jesus, the Lamb of God. (Rev 19:7-9)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.
8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.
9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

1149. There is no one in the world who has not sinned. (Prov 20:9)
Ecc 7:20, Rom 3:9-12,23

The Old Testaments say that no one can say that he is without sin. (Proverbs 20:9, Ecclesiastes 7:20)

Proverbs 20:9 Who can say, I have made my heart clean, I am pure from my sin?

Ecclesiastes 7:20 For there is not a just man upon earth, that doeth good, and sinneth not.

Everyone is a sinner (Romans 3:9-12,23)

Romans 3:9 What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin;

10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

1150. Christ repays each person according to their deeds. (Prov 24:12)
Mt 16:27, 1 Cor 3:8, 2 Cor 5:9-10, 2 Tim 4:1-8, Rev 2:23, Rev 22:12

The Old Testament proverb says that God will reward each person for what he has done. (Proverbs 24:12)

Proverbs 24:12 If thou sayest, Behold, we knew it not; doth not he that pondereth the heart consider it? and he that keepeth thy soul, doth not he know it? and shall not he render to every man according to his works?

When Jesus comes back to this earth, He will repay each person according to their deeds. (Matthew 16:27, 1 Corinthians 3:8, 2 Corinthians 5:9-10, Revelation 2:23, Revelation 22:12)

Matthew 16:27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.

1 Corinthians 3:8 Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour.

2 Corinthians 5:9 Wherefore we labour, that, whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him.

10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

Revelation 2:23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.

Revelation 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ and proclaim that Jesus is the Christ will receive the crown of righteousness that Christ gives on that day. (2 Timothy 4:1-8)

2 Timothy 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

3 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears;

4 And they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.

5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

6 For I am now ready to be offered, and the time of my departure is at hand.

7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

1151. God's word is as sweet as a honeycomb. (Prov 24:13-14)
Ps 19:10, Ps 119:103, Phil 3:8-9

The Old Testament proverb says that wisdom is sweet as honey. (Proverbs 24:13-14)

Proverbs 24:13 My son, eat thou honey, because it is good; and the honeycomb, which is sweet to thy taste:
14 So shall the knowledge of wisdom be unto thy soul: when thou hast found it, then there shall be a reward, and thy expectation shall not be cut off.

In the Old Testament, David and the psalmist confessed that the word of God is sweeter than honey. (Psalm 19:10, Psalm 119:103)

Psalm 19:10 More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb.

Psalm 119:103 How sweet are thy words unto my taste! yea, sweeter than honey to my mouth!

Deep knowledge that Jesus is the Christ is the best knowledge. (Phil 3:8-9)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,
9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

1152. Do not be called teachers; for One is your Teacher, the Christ. (Prov 25:6-7)
Mt 23:8-10, Lk 14:7-9

In the Old Testament, Solomon told us not to show high esteem before the king. (Proverbs 25:6-7)

Proverbs 25:6 Put not forth thyself in the presence of the king, and stand not in the place of great men:
7 For better it is that it be said unto thee, Come up hither; than that thou shouldest be put lower in the presence of the prince whom thine eyes have seen.

Jesus said not to be called a teacher. Because there is only one leader, Christ. (Matthew 23:8-10)

Matthew 23:8 But be not ye called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all ye are brethren.
9 And call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven.
10 Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ.

Jesus said in parables that when you are invited to the wedding banquet, do not sit in high places. Because a higher man will come and take his place. Jesus alone is our Teacher and Leader. (Luke 14:7-9)

Luke 14:7 And he put forth a parable to those which were bidden, when he marked how they chose out the chief rooms; saying unto them.
8 When thou art bidden of any man to a wedding, sit not down in the highest room; lest a more honourable man than thou be bidden of him;
9 And he that bade thee and him come and say to thee, Give this man place; and thou begin with shame to take the lowest room.

1153. Love your enemies. (Prov 25:21-22)

Mt 5:44, Lk 6:27-28, Lk 23:34, Rom 12:19-20, Ezk 18:23, Ezk 33:11

An Old Testament proverb tells us to feed our enemies when they are hungry. Then they will be ashamed and God will reward us. (Proverbs 25:21-22)

Proverbs 25:21 If thine enemy be hungry, give him bread to eat; and if he be thirsty, give him water to drink:
22 For thou shalt heap coals of fire upon his head, and the Lord shall reward thee.

Jesus tells us to love our enemies. (Matthew 5:44, Luke 6:27-28)

Matthew 5:44 But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you;

Luke 6:27 But I say unto you which hear, Love your enemies, do good to them which hate you,
28 Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you.

When Jesus died on the cross, he asked God to forgive those who killed him. (Luke 23:34)

Luke 23:34 Then said Jesus, Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

We must not take revenge, but love them. God will avenge our enemies. (Romans 12:19-20)

Romans 12:19 Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves, but rather give place unto wrath: for it is written, Vengeance is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord.

20 Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head.

Even God wants his enemies to turn and be saved. (Ezekiel 18:23, Ezekiel 33:11)

Ezekiel 18:23 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

Ezekiel 33:11 Say unto them, As I live, saith the Lord God, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways; for why will ye die, O house of Israel?

1154. Christ has ascended into heaven and descended. (Prov 30:4)
Jn 3:13, Eph 4:7-10

In the Old Testament, the writer of Proverbs revealed that only God and the Son of God were those who ascended into heaven and then came down. (Proverbs 30:4)

Proverbs 30:4 Who hath ascended up into heaven, or descended? who hath gathered the wind in his fists? who hath bound the waters in a garment? who hath established all the ends of the earth? what is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou canst tell?

Jesus made it clear that no one has ascended to heaven except Christ, who has come down from heaven. (John 3:13)

John 3:13 And no man hath ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.

Jesus is the Christ who came down from heaven to earth and ascended back to heaven to complete all things. (Eph 4:7-10)

Eph 4:7 But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ.

8 Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.

9 (Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?

10 He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.)

1155. Jesus, the name of the Son of God (Prov 30:4)

Isa 9:6, Mt 1:21-23, Mt 3:16-17, Mt 17:4-5

In the Old Testament, the psalmist stated that only God and the Son of God ascended to heaven and then came down. (Proverbs 30:4)

Proverbs 30:4 Who hath ascended up into heaven, or descended? who hath gathered the wind in his fists? who hath bound the waters in a garment? who hath established all the ends of the earth? what is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou canst tell?

God has sent the Son of God to us. (Isa 9:6)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

The Son of God has come to this earth. That is Jesus. (Matthew 1:21-23)

Matthew 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,

23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

God Himself revealed that Jesus is the Son of God. (Mt 3:16-17, Mt 17:4-5)

Mt 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Mt 17:4 Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.

5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

1156. Christ and evangelism are the only things that are not in vain in this world. (Ecc 1:2)
1157. If anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. (Ecc 1:9-10)
1158. Because of Satan, people became confused in their longing for God. (Ecc 3:11)
1159. Our best life is to believe in Christ and to preach Christ. (Ecc 6:12)
1160. Believe in Jesus as the Christ before the hard days come.(Ecc 12:1-2)
1161. Christ is the shepherd who gives wisdom. (Ecc 12:9-11)
1162. Man's all is to believe Jesus as the Christ. (Ecc 12:13)
1163. God and Christ judge all things between good and evil. (Ecc 12:14)

1156. Christ and evangelism are the only things that are not in vain in this world. (Ecc 1:2)

Dan 12:3, 1 Thess 2:19-20, Isa 40:8, Mt 24:35, Mk 13:31, 1 Pt 1:25, Rev 1:17-18, Rev 2:8, Rev 22:12-13

In the Old Testament, the son of David confessed that all things in the world were in vain. (Ec 1:2)

Ec 1:2 Vanity of vanities, saith the Preacher, vanity of vanities; all is vanity.

In the Old Testament, Daniel said that those who turn many to righteousness will shine like a star forever and ever. (Dan 12:3)

Dan 12:3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah confessed that only the Word of God is eternal. (Isa 40:8)

Isa 40:8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

Only the words of Jesus are eternal. The eternal word in the Old Testament is the word of the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Matthew 24:35, Mark 13:31, 1 Peter 1:25)

Matthew 24:35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Mark 13:31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

1 Peter 1:25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

Jesus, the Christ, is the first and the last and the eternal. (Rev 1:17-18, Rev 2:8, Rev 22:12-13)

Rev 1:17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:

18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.

Rev 2:8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;

Rev 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

Those to whom we have preached the gospel become our glory and joy forever. (1 Thessalonians 2:19-20)

1 Thessalonians 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?

20 For ye are our glory and joy.

1157. If anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. (Ecc 1:9-10)
Ezk 36:26, 2 Cor 5:17, Rom 6:4, Eph 2:15

In the Old Testament, the son of David confessed that there is nothing new under the sun. (Ecclesiastes 1:9-10)

Ecclesiastes 1:9 The thing that hath been, it is that which shall be; and that which is done is that which shall be done: and there is no new thing under the sun.

10 Is there any thing whereof it may be said, See, this is new? it hath been already of old time, which was before us.

In the Old Testament, Ezekiel prophesied that God would give us a new spirit and a new heart. (Ezekiel 36:26)

Ezekiel 36:26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.

If you believe in Jesus as the Christ, you become a new creation. (2 Corinthians 5:17)

2 Corinthians 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

We believe that Jesus is the Christ, so we died with him, and we were raised with him, and we received a new life. (Rom 6:4, Eph 2:15)

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

Eph 2:15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

1158. Because of Satan, the people of the world are blinded to see Christ, the gospel of God's glory. (Ec 3:11)
Gen 3:4-6, Rom 1:21-23, 2 Cor 4:4

In the Old Testament, the evangelist confessed that God gave man a heart to long for eternity. (Ec 3:11)

Ec 3:11 Todo lo hizo hermoso en su tiempo: y aun el mundo di  en su coraz n, de tal manera que no alcance el hombre la obra de Dios desde el principio hasta el cabo.

However, Satan persuaded the first man, Adam and Eve, to disobey God's Word and to turn away from God.
(Genesis 3:4-6)

Genesis 3:4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:

5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

Even now, Satan is blinding people so that they cannot believe that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Corinthians 4:4)

2 Corinthians 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Therefore, people do not seek the true God, but worship idols as God. (Romans 1:21-23)

Romans 1:21 Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.

22 Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools,

23 And changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things.

1159. Our best life is to believe in Christ and to preach Christ.(Ecc 6:12)
Phil 3:7-14, 2 Cor 11:2, Col 4:3, 2 Tim 4:5,17, Titus 1:3

In the Old Testament, the evangelist asked himself if any of the people knew what the best life was. (Ec 6:12)

Ec 6:12 For who knoweth what is good for man in this life, all the days of his vain life which he spendeth as a shadow? for who can tell a man what shall be after him under the sun?

Our best life is to believe that Jesus is the Christ and to know it deeply. (Phil 3:7-14, 2 Peter 3:18)

Phil 3:7 But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ.

8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,

14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

2 Peter 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

And our best life is to preach that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Corinthians 11:2, Col 4:3, 2 Tim 4:5,17, Titus 1:3)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

2 Tim 4:5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

17 Notwithstanding the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and that all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion.

Titus 1:3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

1160. Believe in Jesus as the Christ before the hard days come. (Ecc 12:1-2)
Isa 49:8, 2 Cor 6:1-2, Jn 17:3, Acts 16:29-34, Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7

In the Old Testament, the son of King David said to remember the Creator before the hard days come. (Ecclesiastes 12:1-2)

Ecclesiastes 12:1 Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth, while the evil days come not, nor the years draw nigh, when thou shalt say, I have no pleasure in them;
2 While the sun, or the light, or the moon, or the stars, be not darkened, nor the clouds return after the rain:

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would deliver us in a time of grace and make us a covenant people. (Isa 49:8)

Isa 49:8 Thus saith the Lord, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

Now is the time to receive grace. At this time, we must believe in Jesus as the Christ to be saved. (2 Corinthians 6:1-2)

2 Corinthians 6:1 We then, as workers together with him, beseech you also that ye receive not the grace of God in vain.
2 (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)

Eternal life is believing in the true God and Jesus Christ. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

When we hear that Jesus is the Christ through the Bible, we must open our hearts and firmly believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7)

Heb 3:7 Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, To day if ye will hear his voice,
8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:

Heb 4:7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.

The jailer who imprisoned Paul heard that Jesus was the Christ, and believed in Jesus as the Christ and was saved. (Acts 16:29-34)

Acts 16:29 Then he called for a light, and sprang in, and came trembling, and fell down before Paul and Silas,
30 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved?
31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed their stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.
34 And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house.

1161. Christ is the shepherd who gives wisdom. (Ecc 12:9-11)
Jn 10:11,14-15, Col 2:2-3

In the Old Testament, the son of David taught the people the words of wisdom he had received from a shepherd.
(Ecclesiastes 12:9-11)

Ecclesiastes 12:9 And moreover, because the preacher was wise, he still taught the people knowledge; yea, he gave good heed, and sought out, and set in order many proverbs.

10 The preacher sought to find out acceptable words: and that which was written was upright, even words of truth.

11 The words of the wise are as goads, and as nails fastened by the masters of assemblies, which are given from one shepherd.

Jesus is the true Shepherd who laid down his life to save us. (John 10:11,14-15)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

Jesus is the Christ, the mystery of God and the wisdom of God. (Col 2:2-3)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

1162. Man's all is to believe Jesus as the Christ. (Ecc 12:13) Jn 5:39, Jn 6:29, Jn 17:3

In the Old Testament, the son of David, the evangelist, said that the duty of man is to fear God and keep the word of God. (Ecclesiastes 12:13)

Ecclesiastes 12:13 Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: Fear God, and keep his commandments: for this is the whole duty of man.

Jesus revealed that the Old Testament testifies of Christ and that Christ is Himself. (John 5:39)

John 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

It is God's work and eternal life to believe that Jesus is the Christ, the one sent by God. (John 6:29, John 17:3)

John 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

1163. God and Christ judge all things between good and evil. (Ecc 12:14)
Mt 16:27, 1 Cor 3:8, 2 Cor 5:9-10, 2 Tim 4:1-8, Rev 2:23, Rev 22:12

In the Old Testament, the son of David, the evangelist, said that God judges all deeds. (Ecclesiastes 12:14)

Ecclesiastes 12:14 For God shall bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether it be good, or whether it be evil.

When Jesus comes back to this earth in the glory of God, He will repay each person according to their deeds.
(Matthew 16:27, 1 Corinthians 3:8, Revelation 2:23, Revelation 22:12)

Matthew 16:27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.

1 Corinthians 3:8 Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour.

Revelation 2:23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.

Revelation 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

Therefore, we must be those who please Jesus. That is, we must preach the word in season and out of season. (2 Corinthians 5:9-10, 2 Timothy 4:1-8)

2 Corinthians 5:9 Wherefore we labour, that, whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him.

10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

2 Timothy 4:1 ge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

3 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears;

4 And they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.

5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

6 For I am now ready to be offered, and the time of my departure is at hand.

7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

Song of Solomon

Bible

1164. Christ welcomes us as His bride. (Song 3:6-11)

1165. We are the pure bride of Christ. (Song 4:7,12)

1166. Christ wants to come into our hearts and live with us. (Song 5:2-4)

1167. Christ's love is stronger than death. (Song 8:6-7)

1164. Christ welcomes us as His bride. (Song 3:6-11)
Rev 19:7, Jn 3:27-29, 2 Cor 11:2, Eph 5:31-32

In the Song of Songs in the Old Testament, preparations for receiving Solomon's bride on his wedding day are described. (Song 3:6-11)

Song 3:6 Who is this that cometh out of the wilderness like pillars of smoke, perfumed with myrrh and frankincense, with all powders of the merchant?

7 Behold his bed, which is Solomon's; threescore valiant men are about it, of the valiant of Israel.

8 They all hold swords, being expert in war: every man hath his sword upon his thigh because of fear in the night.

9 King Solomon made himself a chariot of the wood of Lebanon.

10 He made the pillars thereof of silver, the bottom thereof of gold, the covering of it of purple, the midst thereof being paved with love, for the daughters of Jerusalem.

11 Go forth, O ye daughters of Zion, and behold king Solomon with the crown wherewith his mother crowned him in the day of his espousals, and in the day of the gladness of his heart.

John the Baptist describes us as the bride of Jesus. (John 3:27-29)

John 3:27 John answered and said, A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven.

28 Ye yourselves bear me witness, that I said, I am not the Christ, but that I am sent before him.

29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled.

Paul worked hard to match us to Christ our Husband. (2 Corinthians 11:2)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

The church is the bride of Christ. (Ephesians 5:31-32)

Ephesians 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

We will participate in the wedding ceremony as the bride of Jesus when Jesus, the Lamb of God, comes back to this earth. (Rev 19:7)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

1165. We are the pure bride of Christ. (Song 4:7,12)
2 Cor 11:2, Eph 5:26-27, Col 1:22, Rev 14:4

In the Old Testament, Solomon sang of the purity of his bride. (Song 4:7,12)

Song 4:7 Thou art all fair, my love; there is no spot in thee.
12 A garden inclosed is my sister, my spouse; a spring shut up, a fountain sealed.

Paul tried to match us to Christ as His pure brides. (2 Corinthians 11:2)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

We must be prepared to be the pure bride of Christ. (Eph 5:26-27, Colossians 1:22)

Eph 5:26 That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word,
27 That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.

Colossians 1:22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreprouvable in his sight:

As the pure bride of Christ, we belong to God and to the Lamb of God. (Rev 14:4)

Rev 14:4 These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb.

1166. Christ wants to come into our hearts and live with us. (Song 5:2-4)
Rev 3:20, Gal 2:20

In the Old Testament, in the Song of Songs, Solomon asked his loved one to open the door. (Song 5:2-4)

Song 5:2 I sleep, but my heart waketh: it is the voice of my beloved that knocketh, saying, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night.
3 I have put off my coat; how shall I put it on? I have washed my feet; how shall I defile them?
4 My beloved put in his hand by the hole of the door, and my bowels were moved for him.

Jesus, the Christ, knocks on the door of our hearts and wants to come into our hearts and live with us. (Revelation 3:20)

Revelation 3:20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me.

By believing in Jesus as the Christ, we died on the cross with Christ and rose again with Christ. It is no longer we who live in us, but Christ lives in us. (Ga 2:20)

Ga 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

1167. Christ's love is stronger than death. (Song 8:6-7)
Jn 13:1, Gal 1:4, Rom 5:8, 2 Cor 5:14-15, Rom 8:35, 1 Jn 4:10

In the Old Testament, Solomon said in his Song of Songs that love is as strong as death and overcomes all things.
(Song 8:6-7)

Song 8:6 Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love is strong as death; jealousy is cruel as the grave: the coals thereof are coals of fire, which hath a most vehement flame.

7 Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it: if a man would give all the substance of his house for love, it would utterly be contemned.

God loves us and sent His Son as a propitiation for our sins. (1 John 4:10)

1 John 4:10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Jesus loves us to the end. (John 13:1)

John 13:1 Now before the feast of the passover, when Jesus knew that his hour was come that he should depart out of this world unto the Father, having loved his own which were in the world, he loved them unto the end.

Jesus loved us and died to save us. (Galatians 1:4, Romans 5:8, 2 Corinthians 5:14-15)

Galatians 1:4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father:

Romans 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

2 Corinthians 5:14 For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:

15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

No one can separate us from the love of Christ. (Romans 8:35,39)

Romans 8:35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1168. The Jews rejected Jesus because they did not know that He was the Christ. (Isa 1:2-3)
1169. Among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel believes in Jesus as the Christ.(Isa 1:9)
1170. God does not want us to sacrifice, but He wants us to know Christ, who is the way to meet Him. (Isa 1:11-15)
1171. God has made our sins cleansed by the blood of Christ. (Isa 1:18)
1172. All nations will be gathered unto the word of Christ. (Isa 2:2)
1173. The Gospel will begin in Jerusalem and be preached to all nations. (Isa 2:3)
1174. Christ gives us true peace. (Isa 2:4)
1175. God punishes those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 2:8-10)
1176. Only God and Christ alone are glorified. (Isa 2:11,17)
1177. Through Christ, the branch of the Lord the earth will be restored. (Isa 4:2)
1178. If you believe in Jesus as the Christ, your name will be written in the Lamb's Book of Life. (Isa 4:3) 1179.
1179. Isaiah saw the glory of God and Christ. (Isa 6:1-3)
1180. God prevented those who were not chosen from understanding Christ. (Isa 6:9-10)
1181. Among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel believes in Jesus as the Christ.(Isa 6:11-13) 1182. A virgin conceives and gives birth to a Son, Christ. (Isa 7:14)
1182. A virgin conceives and gives birth to a Son, Christ. (Isa 7:14)
1183. Because God is with us, our enemies will be defeated in the end. (Isa 8:8-10)
1184. For those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ, Christ becomes a stone to bump into. (Isa 8:14-15)
1185. Christ released us, who were Satan's servants. (Isa 8:17-18)
1186. Christ shed a light on the Gentiles as well. (Isa 9:1-2)
1187. Christ is the Son of God. (Isa 9:6-7)
1188. Among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel believes in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 10:20-22)
1189. Christ who came as the seed of David and the Holy Spirit came (Isa 11:1-5)
1190. Christ has given us true peace. (Isa 11:6-9)
1191. In that day the nations will return to God through Christ. (Isa 11:10-12)
1192. The most beautiful thing that God has done is to send us Christ. (Isa 12:2-5)
1193. Gentiles also believe in Christ and become God's people. (Isa 19:24-25)

1194. Christ holds the keys of David. (Isa 22:22)
1195. God destroys death through Christ on that day and wipes away our tears. (Isa 25:8)
1196. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ, even if he dies, will be resurrected in the day of the Lord. (Isa 26:19)
1197. When the Israelites put on God's mercy and cast off their idols and believe in Christ, their sins will be forgiven. (Isa 27:9)
1198. In the day of Christ God will gather the children of God. (Isa 27:12-13)
1199. Christ is a tried stone for those who do not believe in Christ. (Isa 28:15-16)
1200. God did not allow the Jews to understand the Gospel of Christ, so He turned this Gospel to the Gentiles. (Isa 29:10-12)
1201. The Jews did not believe in Christ, the commandment of God, but followed the commandment of man. (Isa 29:13)
1202. For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God. (Isa 29:14)
1203. God was angry with the Jews to make known Christ, the power of God. (Isa 29:16)
1204. When Christ comes, the blind see and hear the deaf, and the gospel is preached to the poor. (Isa 29:18-19)
1205. The people of Israel will also be saved through Christ, the mercy of God. (Isa 29:22-24)
1206. In the future, a king, Christ, will come and rule us in justice. (Isa 32:1-4)
1207. We have peace with God through Christ. (Isa 32:16-18)
1208. God healed us and forgiven our sins through Christ. (Isa 33:22-24)
1209. Christ came to heal and save us. (Isa 35:4-6)
1210. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ will enter that holy path. (Isa 35:8-10)
1211. John the Baptist Preparing the Way of Christ (Isa 40:3-5)
1212. This gospel that Jesus is the Christ will stand forever. (Isa 40:6-8)
1213. Preach the beautiful news to the world that Jesus is the Christ. (Isa 40:9)
1214. Christ came with strong hand. (Isa 40:10)
1215. Christ the True Shepherd (Isa 40:11)
1216. God and Christ are the first and last who govern history. (Isa 41:4)
1217. Christ is the hope of Israel and the Redeemer of Israel. (Isa 41:14)
1218. Christ brings forth judgment to the Gentiles. (Isa 42:1-4)
1219. God made Christ the covenant of Israel and the light of the Gentiles. (Isa 42:6-9)

- 1220. Christ delivered us from darkness. (Isa 42:16)
- 1221. Christ is the true witness and true servant of God. (Isa 43:10)
- 1222. There is no way to be saved except Christ. (Isa 43:11)
- 1223. We are created to glorify God through Christ. (Isa 43:21)
- 1224. God poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 44:3)
- 1225. God and Christ are the first and last. (Isa 44:6)
- 1226. Every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. (Isa 45:23)
- 1227. God made us known from the beginning and sent the Christ, who pleases God. (Isa 46:10)
- 1228. God saved the Gentiles and the people of Israel through Christ. (Isa 49:5-7)
- 1229. Behold, now is the day to believe in Jesus as the Christ and receive salvation. (Isa 49:8)
- 1230. Christ is our shepherd and leads us to the fountain of life. (Isa 49:9-10)
- 1231. Christ suffered according to the Bible. (Isa 50:6)
- 1232. Heaven and earth will pass away, but the gospel that Jesus is the Christ will be eternal. (Isa 51:6)
- 1233. We are poured out of the Holy Spirit so that we can make God known. (Isa 52:6)
- 1234. Christ preached the gospel of peace to us. (Isa 52:7-10)
- 1235. You will see Christ, the true servant of God. (Isa 52:13-15)
- 1236. Christ came to this earth, but His people did not receive Him. (Isa 53:1)
- 1237. Christ was despised according to the Scriptures. (Isa 53:2-3)
- 1238. Christ died on the cross, carrying all our sins to save us. (Isa 53:4-6)
- 1239. Christ did not open his mouth like a lamb being brought to a slaughterhouse and died for our sins. (Isa 53:7-9)
- 1240. Christ became an offering for sin to God to save us and to justify us. (Isa 53:10-11)
- 1241. According to the Scriptures, Christ was regarded as one of the criminals. (Isa 53:12)
- 1242. There will be many more children of the promise who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 54:1)
- 1243. Christ becomes our husband. (Isa 54:5)
- 1244. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be taught by God through the Holy Spirit. (Isa 54:13)
- 1245. The Holy Trinity God gives us the water of life. (Isa 55:1)
- 1246. The sure grace that God gave to David: Christ's resurrection (Isa 55:3)
- 1247. God's eternal covenant to David: Christ (Isa 55:3-4)

1248. Behold, now is the day to believe in Jesus as the Christ and receive salvation. (Isa 55:6)
1249. My house shall be called an house of prayer for all people. (Isa 56:7)
1250. Christ preached the gospel of peace to those who are far away or near. (Isa 57:19)
1251. Christ gives us the water of life forever. (Isa 58:11)
1252. We were all under sin, but through Christ we were justified before God. (Isa 59:2)
1253. New covenant established by God: Christ (Isa 59:21)
1254. Christ came as the light of the world. (Isa 60:1-2)
1255. World evangelization to be done (Isa 60:3-9)
1256. God and Christ will be our eternal light, and our sorrow will end. (Isa 60:19-20)
1257. Christ was anointed by the Holy Spirit and preached the gospel of salvation. (Isa 61:1-2)
1258. God and Christ welcome us as their brides. (Isa 62:4-5)
1259. Christ came to this earth as the Savior. (Isa 62:11)
1260. The Israelites disobeyed God until the gospel was preached to the Gentiles. (Isa 65:1-2)
1261. God has made us understand the mystery of God, Christ, through the Holy Spirit. (Isa 64:4)
1262. God will lead us into a new heaven and a new earth on the Lord's day. (Isa 65:17-19)
1263. The Israelites killed Christ, the true temple. (Isa 66:1)
1264. God made the Gentiles believe in Jesus as the Christ and commanded us to spread this gospel to the ends of the earth. (Isa 66:18-19)
1265. God has made us a royal priesthood through Christ. (Isa 66:20-21)

1168. The Jews rejected Jesus because they did not know that He was the Christ. (Isa 1:2-3)
Jn 1:9-11, Mt 23:37-38, Lk 11:49, Rom 10:21

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that God raised the children of God, the people of Israel, but the people of Israel did not understand it. (Isa 1:2-3)

Isa 1:2 Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth: for the Lord hath spoken, I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me.

3 The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib: but Israel doth not know, my people doth not consider.

He said that Christ came to his people, but his own people did not receive Christ. (John 1:9-11)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

Jesus sent many evangelists to protect his people, but they did not want to and persecuted the evangelists. (Matthew 23:37-38, Romans 10:21, Luke 11:49)

Matthew 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

38 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate.

Romans 10:21 But to Israel he saith, All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.

Luke 11:49 Therefore also said the wisdom of God, I will send them prophets and apostles, and some of them they shall slay and persecute:

1169. Among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel believes in Jesus as the Christ.(Isa 1:9)
Isa 10:20-22, Isa 37:31-32, Zech 13:8-9, Rom 9:27-29

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that God did not destroy all of them for the sake of the nation of Israel, but left some of them. And God said that the remnant would return to God. (Isa 1:9, Isa 10:20-22, Isa 37:31-2, Zec 13:8-9)

Isa 1:9 Except the Lord of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, and we should have been like unto Gomorrah.

Isa 10:20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

21 The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

Isa 37:31 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

21 The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

Zec 13:8 And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the Lord, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein.

9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The Lord is my God.

Only the remnant of Israel will be saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 9:27-29)

Rom 9:27 Esaias also crieth concerning Israel, Though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved:

28 For he will finish the work, and cut it short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth.

29 And as Esaias said before, Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.

1170. God does not want us to sacrifice, but He wants us to know Christ, who is the way to meet Him. (Isa 1:11-15)

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that God did not want sacrifices and offerings. (Isa 1:11-15)

In the Old Testament, Hosea said that God did not want sacrifices, but rather the knowledge of God rather than the burnt offerings. (Ho 6:6)

Ho 6:6 For I desired mercy, and not sacrifice; and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings.

God wants obedience to God's word rather than sacrifice. (1 Samuel 15:22)

1 Samuel 15:22 And Samuel said, Hath the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams.

Jesus sanctified us by offering his body once for all to fulfill God's will to save us. (Hebrews 10:4-10)

Hebrews 10:4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins.

5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:

6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.

8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

Eternal life is to believe in God and in Jesus Christ, whom God has sent. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Only through Jesus can we know the will of God and meet God. (John 14:6)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus said that God did not want sacrifices, but that people should believe in the One whom God sent, Christ. (Matthew 9:13)

Matthew 9:13 But go ye and learn what that meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice: for I am not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.

To obey God's Word is to believe in Jesus as the Christ. As a proof, God has given the Holy Spirit to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

1171. God has made our sins cleansed by the blood of Christ. (Isa 1:18)
Eph 1:7, Heb 9:14, Heb 13:12, Rev 7:14

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that God would cleanse us from our sins. (Isa 1:18)

Isa 1:18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.

God has made us clean by the blood of Christ. (Heb 9:14, Heb 13:12, Eph 1:7, Rev 7:14)

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

Heb 13:12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate.

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Rev 7:14 And I said unto him, Sir, thou knowest. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

1172. All nations will be gathered unto the word of Christ. (Isa 2:2)
Acts 2:4-12

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that in the last days the mountain with the temple of God would stand on top of every mountain, and all nations would gather to it. (Isa 2:2)

Isa 2:2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

When the Jews from all over the world gathered in Jerusalem, they heard that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 2:4-12)

Acts 2:4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

5 And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.

6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.

7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?

8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,

10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,

11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.

12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?

1173. The Gospel will begin in Jerusalem and be preached to all nations. (Isa 2:3)
Lk 24:47, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that many people would hear the word of God proclaimed in Jerusalem. (Isa 2:3)

Isa 2:3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ will be preached to all nations, beginning in Jerusalem. (Luke 24:47, Acts 1:8)

Luke 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

1174. Christ gives us true peace. (Isa 2:4)

Isa 11:6-9, Isa 60:17-18, Hos 2:18, Mic 4:3, Jn 16:8-11, Acts 17:31, Rev 19:11, Rev 7:17, Rev 21:4

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would judge the world and give us true peace. (Isa 2:4, Isa 11:6-9, Isa 60:17-18, Ho 2:18, Mic 4:3)

Isa 2:4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

Isa 11:6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.

9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

Isa 60:17 For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness.

18 Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise.

Ho 2:18 And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely.

Mic 4:3 And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

The Comforter, the Holy Spirit, comes and tells people that not believing that Jesus is the Christ is a sin. The Comforter, the Holy Spirit, also informs that the ruler of the world has already been judged. (John 16:8-11)

John 16:8 And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:

9 Of sin, because they believe not on me;

10 Of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more;

11 Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.

God testified that Jesus is the one who will judge the world by raising Jesus from the dead. (Acts 17:31)

Acts 17:31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

Jesus will judge the world in the last days. (Rev 19:11)

Rev 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.

And Jesus will lead us to the fountain of the water of life, and God will wipe away the tears from all our eyes. (Rev 7:17, Rev 21:4)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

Rev 21:4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

1175. God punishes those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 2:8-10)
Isa 2:18-21, 2 Thess 1:8-9, Rev 6:14-17

In the Old Testament, Isaiah asked God not to forgive those who did not believe in God and worshiped idols. (Isa 2:8-10)

Isa 2:8 Their land also is full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made:

9 And the mean man boweth down, and the great man humbleth himself: therefore forgive them not.

10 Enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah spoke of God destroying those who worship idols. (Isa 2:18-21)

Isa 2:18 And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which they made each one for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Paul said that those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ will perish forever. (2 Thessalonians 1:8-9)

2 Thessalonians 1:8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:

9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;

When Jesus comes back to earth, He will destroy those who do not believe in Him as the Christ. (Revelation 6:14-17)

Revelation 6:14 And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places.

15 And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains;

16 And said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb:

17 For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand?

1176. Only God and Christ alone are glorified. (Isa 2:11,17)
Mt 24:30-31, Jn 8:54, 2 Thess 1:10, Rev 5:12-13, Rev 7:12, Rev 19:7

In the Old Testament, Isaiah spoke of God alone being exalted. (Isa 2:11,17)

Isa 2:11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

17 And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low: and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

When Jesus comes again to this earth, He comes with His power and great glory. (Mt 24:30-31)

Mt 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

God glorified Jesus. (John 8:54)

John 8:54 Jesus answered, If I honour myself, my honour is nothing: it is my Father that honoureth me; of whom ye say, that he is your God:

When Jesus returns, we glorify Him. (2 Thessalonians 1:10, Rev 5:12-13)

2 Thessalonians 1:10 When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.

Rev 5:12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.

Also on that day we give glory to God. (Rev 7:12, Rev 19:7)

Rev 7:12 Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen.

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

1177. Through Christ, the branch of the Lord the earth will be restored. (Isa 4:2)
Isa 11:1, Jer 23:5-6, Jer 33:15-16, Zech 6:12-13, Mt 1:1,6

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the seed of God would restore the remnant of Israel. (Isa 4:2)

Isa 4:2 In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth shall be excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ would come to save the nation of Israel as the descendants of Jesse and David. (Isa 11:1, Jer 23:5-6, Jer 33:15-16)

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

6 In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, The Lord Our Righteousness.

Jer 33:15 In those days, and at that time, will I cause the Branch of righteousness to grow up unto David; and he shall execute judgment and righteousness in the land.

16 In those days shall Judah be saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell safely: and this is the name wherewith she shall be called, The Lord our righteousness.

In the Old Testament, Zechariah prophesied that the seed of God would come to this earth to build a temple and become king and priest. (Zec 6:12-13)

Zec 6:12 And speak unto him, saying, Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying, Behold the man whose name is The Branch; and he shall grow up out of his place, and he shall build the temple of the Lord:

13 Even he shall build the temple of the Lord; and he shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon his throne; and he shall be a priest upon his throne: and the counsel of peace shall be between them both.

As a descendant of David, the seed of God, Christ, has come to this earth. That is Jesus. (Matthew 1:1,6,16)

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

6 And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her that had been the wife of Urias;

16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

1178. If you believe in Jesus as the Christ, your name will be written in the Lamb's Book of Life. (Isa 4:3)
Dan 12:1, Mal 3:16, Phil 4:3, 1 Jn 5:1,12-13, Rev 13:8, Rev 17:8, Rev 21:27

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that the remnant of Israel would be called holy if their names were written in the directory of the citizens of the city of Jerusalem. (Isa 4:3)

Isa 4:3 And it shall come to pass, that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem:

In the Old Testament, Daniel said that during the last great tribulation, those whose names are written in God's book of life will be saved. (Da 12:1)

Da 12:1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.

God wrote in the book of life the names of those who feared God and honored His name. (Mal 3:16)

Mal 3:16 Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

Those who believed in Jesus as the Christ and preached the gospel that Jesus was the Christ, their names were written in the book of life. (Phil 4:3)

Phil 4:3 And I intreat thee also, true yokefellow, help those women which laboured with me in the gospel, with Clement also, and with other my fellowlabourers, whose names are in the book of life.

Those who believe in Jesus Christ have life, and their names are written in the Lamb's book of life. (John 5:1,12-13, Revelation 21:27)

John 5:1 After this there was a feast of the Jews; and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.

12 Then asked they him, What man is that which said unto thee, Take up thy bed, and walk?

13 And he that was healed wist not who it was: for Jesus had conveyed himself away, a multitude being in that place.

Revelation 21:27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ worship idols without their names written in the Lamb of God's book of life. (Revelation 13:8)

1179. Isaiah saw the glory of God and Christ. (Isa 6:1-3)
Jn 12:36-41

In the Old Testament, Isaiah saw the glory of God in a vision. (Isa 6:1-3)

Isa 6:1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

2 Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

The glory that Isaiah saw in the Old Testament is also the glory of Christ Jesus. (John 12:36-41)

John 12:36 While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light. These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them.

37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:

38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed?

39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,

40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.

41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

1180. God prevented those who were not chosen from understanding Christ. (Isa 6:9-10)
Jn 12:36-41, Mt 13:13-17, Mk 4:10-12, Lk 8:10, Acts 28:23-28, Rom 11:7-8

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that God had kept the Israelites from understanding God's Word. (Isa 6:9-10)

Isa 6:9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

The Israelites did not understand the words of Jesus, the Christ, according to the prophecy of Isaiah in the Old Testament. (John 12:36-41, Matthew 13:13-17)\

John 12:36 While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light. These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them.
37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:
38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed?
39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,
40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.
41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

Matthew 13:13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.

14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:
15 For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.
16 But blessed are your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.
17 For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.

Only those who are chosen by God can understand the mystery of the kingdom of God, that is, that Jesus is the Christ. (Mark 4:10-12, Luke 8:10)

Mark 4:10 And when he was alone, they that were about him with the twelve asked of him the parable.
11 And he said unto them, Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God: but unto them that are without, all these things are done in parables:
12 That seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and their sins should be forgiven them.

Luke 8:10 And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand.

Paul said that the gospel of God's salvation, that is, the gospel of God's salvation, was preached to the Gentiles because the people of Israel did not realize that Jesus was the Christ. (Rom 11:7, Acts 28:23-28)

Rom 11:7 What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and

out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

24 And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not.

25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers,

26 Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive:

27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it.

1181. Among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel believes in Jesus as the Christ.(Isa 6:11-13)
Isa 10:20-22, Isa 37:31-32, Zech 13:8-9, Rom 9:27-29

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the remnant of Israel would become a stump and sprout again. (Isa 6:11-13)

Isa 6:11 Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate,
12 And the Lord have removed men far away, and there be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.
13 But yet in it shall be a tenth, and it shall return, and shall be eaten: as a teil tree, and as an oak, whose substance is in them, when they cast their leaves: so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that on that day the remnant of Israel would return to God. (Isa 10:20-22)

Isa 10:20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.
21 The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.
22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

In the Old Testament, God told the remnant of Israel that He would bring forth new fruit. (Isa 37:31-32, Zechariah 13:8-9)

Isa 37:31 And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward:
32 For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the Lord of hosts shall do this.

Zechariah 13:8 And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the Lord, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein.
9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The Lord is my God.

Paul also quoted the Old Testament and said that only a remnant of Israel would be saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 9:27-29)

Rom 9:27 Esaias also crieth concerning Israel, Though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved:
28 For he will finish the work, and cut it short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth.
29 And as Esaias said before, Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.

1182. A virgin conceives and gives birth to a Son, Christ. (Isa 7:14)
Gen 3:15, Jer 31:22, Mt 1:21-23

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ would come to this earth through a virgin. (Isa 7:14)

Isa 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

In the Old Testament, God said that He would crush Satan's head through the offspring of a woman. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

In the Old Testament, Jeremiah also prophesied that God would do new things through the offspring of women. (Jeremiah 31:22)

Jeremiah 31:22 How long wilt thou go about, O thou backsliding daughter? for the Lord hath created a new thing in the earth, A woman shall compass a man.

As the Old Testament prophesied, the descendants of women came to this earth. That is Jesus. (Mt 1:16, 21-23)

Mt 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.
21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.
22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,
23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

1183. Because God is with us, our enemies will be defeated in the end. (Isa 8:8-10)
Mt 1:21-23, Gen 3:15

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that our enemies would be destroyed because God was with us. (Isa 8:8-10)

Isa 8:8 And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

9 Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear, all ye of far countries: gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

10 Take counsel together, and it shall come to nought; speak the word, and it shall not stand: for God is with us.

In the Old Testament, God spoke of destroying our enemies through the offspring of women. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus is Emmanuel. In other words, through Jesus we can be together with God. Jesus has saved us from our sins and from our enemies. (Matthew 1:21-23)

Matthew 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,

23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

1184. For those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ, Christ becomes a stone to bump into. (Isa 8:14-15)
Rom 9:32-33, 1 Pt 2:7-8, Rom 11:9-10, Mt 21:42-44

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the coming Christ would be our refuge, and that those who did not believe in Christ would stumble upon Him. (Isa 8:14-15)

Isa 8:14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

15 And many among them shall stumble, and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

The New Testaments says that those who do not believe in Christ and rely on their works will stumble upon Him, as the Old Testament prophesied. (Rom. 9:32-33; 1 Pet. 2:7-8; Rom. 11:9)

Rom. 9:32 Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;

33 As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

1 Pet. 2:7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,

8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.

Rom. 11:9 And David saith, Let their table be made a snare, and a trap, and a stumblingblock, and a recompence unto them:

Jesus said that if he does not believe in himself, who is the cornerstone prophesied in the Old Testament, he will perish. (Mt 21:42-45)

Mt 21:42 Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof.

44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

45 And when the chief priests and Pharisees had heard his parables, they perceived that he spake of them.

1185. Christ released us, who were Satan's servants. (Isa 8:17-18)
Heb 2:13-16

In the Old Testament, Isaiah knew that God would restore the nation of Israel by giving him children. (Isa 8:17-18)

Isa 8:17 And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.
18 Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of hosts, which dwelleth in mount Zion.

Jesus died on the cross to save us, who were slaves of Satan, and to make us children. (Heb 2:13-16)

Heb 2:13 And again, I will put my trust in him. And again, Behold I and the children which God hath given me.

14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

16 For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.

We are set free from the law of sin and death through faith in Jesus Christ. (Romans 8:2)

Romans 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

1186. Christ shed a light on the Gentiles as well. (Isa 9:1-2)
Mt 4:12-16, Lk 2:28-32, Jn 2:11, Lk 4:14-15

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the light of salvation would shine even to the Gentiles in the future. (Isa 9:1-2)

Isa 9:1 Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus preached the gospel in Galilee, a Gentile region. (Matthew 4:12-16, John 2:11, Luke 4:14)

Matthew 4:12 Now when Jesus had heard that John was cast into prison, he departed into Galilee;

13 And leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the sea coast, in the borders of Zabulon and Nephthalim:

14 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,

15 The land of Zabulon, and the land of Nephthalim, by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles;

16 The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up.

John 2:11 This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him.

Luke 4:14 And Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit into Galilee: and there went out a fame of him through all the region round about.

Simeon held the baby Jesus and confessed that Jesus was the light that illuminates the Gentiles. (Luke 2:28-32)

Luke 2:28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,

29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:

30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,

31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;

32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

1187. Christ is the Son of God. (Isa 9:6-7)

Lk 1:31-35, Mt 1:23, Jn 1:14, Jn 3:16-17, 1 Jn 4:10, 1 Jn 5:20

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would send His Son to this earth. (Isa 9:6-7)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

The Son of God has come to this earth. That is Jesus. (Luke 1:31-35, Matthew 1:23, John 1:14)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

34 Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?

35 And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

Matthew 1:23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

To save us, God sent His Son to this earth as a propitiation offering. (John 3:16-17, 1 John 4:10)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

1 John 4:10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God. (Matthew 16:16, 1 John 5:20)

Matthew 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

1188. Among the Israelites, only the remnant of Israel believes in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 10:20-22)
Isa 10:20-22, Isa 37:31-32, Zech 13:8-9, Rom 9:27-29

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that only a remnant of Israel would return to God. (Isa 10:20-22, Isa 37:31-32, Zechariah 13:8-9)

Isa 10:20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

21 The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

Isa 37:31 And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward:

32 For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the Lord of hosts shall do this.

Zechariah 13:8 And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the Lord, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein.

9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The Lord is my God.

Paul quotes the Old Testament and says that only a remnant of Israel will be saved. (Rom 9:27-29)

Rom 9:27 Esaias also crieth concerning Israel, Though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved:

28 For he will finish the work, and cut it short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth.

29 And as Esaias said before, Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.

1189. Christ who came as the seed of David and received the Holy Spirit (Isaiah 11:1-5)
Mt 2:23, Acts 13:22-23, Rom 15:12, Mt 3:16, Jn 1:32

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ would come to this earth as a descendant of Jesse and that the Holy Spirit would come upon him. (Isa 11:1-5)

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;
3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:
4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth: with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.
5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

Paul testified that Jesus was the Christ, the descendant of Jesse and David. (Acts 13:22-23, Romans 15:12)

Acts 13:22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

Romans 15:12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

As the Old Testament prophesied, the Holy Spirit came upon Jesus. (Matthew 3:16, John 1:32)

Matthew 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

John 1:32 And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him.

1190. Christ has given us true peace. (Isa 11:6-9)
Isa 52:7, Jn 14:27, Jn 16:33, Eph 2:13-17

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that true peace would come when the world was filled with the knowledge of God. (Isa 11:6-9)

Isa 11:6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.

9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that peace would come when the news of God's reign was proclaimed. (Isa 52:7)

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

Jesus gave us true peace by dying on the cross. (Eph 2:13-17, John 14:27, John 16:33)

Eph 2:13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.

14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

John 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

1191. In that day the nations will return to God through Christ. (Isa 11:10-12)
Rom 15:8-12, Mt 12:21, Acts 26:15-18

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that on that day the nations would return to Christ, the descendant of Jesse. (Isa 11:10-12)

Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

By being circumcised, Jesus made the Gentiles who believed in him also receive God's mercy. (Romans 15:8-9)

Romans 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

Jesus became the hope of the Gentiles according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Mt 12:21)

Mt 12:21 And in his name shall the Gentiles trust.

The resurrected Jesus appeared to Saul and said that he would send Saul to the Gentiles to preach the gospel and bring them back to God. (Acts 26:15-18)

Acts 26:15 And I said, Who art thou, Lord? And he said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest.

16 But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister and a witness both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in the which I will appear unto thee;

17 Delivering thee from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee,

18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

1192. The most beautiful thing that God has done is to send us Christ. (Isa 12:2-5)
Isa 52:7, Isa 61:1-4, Lk 4:16-21, Jn 3:16, Jn 20:31

In the Old Testament, Isaiah praised God for doing the most beautiful thing, the work of saving us. (Isa 12:2-5)

Isa 12:2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord Jehovah is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.

3 Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

4 And in that day shall ye say, Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

5 Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things: this is known in all the earth.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah reveals that the good news is that God saves us. (Isa 52:7)

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would pour out the Holy Spirit on the coming Christ and preach the gospel of salvation through Christ. (Isa 61:1-4)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

4 And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations.

Jesus revealed that he was the Christ prophesied by Isaiah in the Old Testament. (Luke 4:16-21)

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

God loves us and sent Christ to this earth to save us. (John 3:16)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ have eternal life. (John 20:31)

John 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

1193. Gentiles also believe in Christ and become God's people. (Isa 19:24-25)
Rom 9:24-25, Rom 15:9-11

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would make the Gentiles His people in the future. (Isa 19:24-25)

Isa 19:24 In that day shall Israel be the third with Egypt and with Assyria, even a blessing in the midst of the land:
25 Whom the Lord of hosts shall bless, saying, Blessed be Egypt my people, and Assyria the work of my hands, and Israel mine inheritance.

Paul revealed that, according to the prophecies of the Old Testament, God made Gentiles also to believe in Jesus as the Christ and made them His people. (Acts 13:46-48, Romans 9:24-25, Romans 15:9-11)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Romans 9:24 Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles?

25 As he saith also in Osee, I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved.

Romans 15:9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

1194. Christ holds the keys of David. (Isa 22:22)
Rev 3:7, Mt 16:16-19

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would give the key of David to the coming Christ, so that no one could stop the works of Christ. (Isa 22:22)

Isa 22:22 And the key of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open.

Jesus is the Christ with the key of David. (Revelation 3:7)

Revelation 3:7 And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth;

Jesus has given the key to preaching the gospel of the kingdom to us who believe in Jesus Christ. (Mt 16:16-19)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

19 And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

1195. God destroys death through Christ on that day and wipes away our tears. (Isa 25:8)
1 Cor 15:51-57, Rev 7:17, Rev 21:3-4

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would wipe away the tears of God's people on that day. (Isa 25:8)

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.

On the day when Jesus comes again, we will be victorious through Christ. (1 Corinthians 15:51-57)

1 Corinthians 15:51 Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed,
52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.
53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.
54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.
55 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?
56 The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law.
57 But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

In that day Christ Jesus, the Lamb of God, will lead us to the fountain of the water of life, and God will wipe away all our tears. (Rev 7:17, Rev 21:3-4)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

Rev 21:3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.
4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

1196. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ, even if he dies, will be resurrected in the day of the Lord. (Isa 26:19)
Jn 5:24-29, Jn 11:25, Acts 4:1-2, 1 Cor 15:12-20

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God's children would rise again after death. (Isa 26:19)

Isa 26:19 Thy dead men shall live, together with my dead body shall they arise. Awake and sing, ye that dwell in dust: for thy dew is as the dew of herbs, and the earth shall cast out the dead.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ have life and are resurrected after death. (John 5:24-29, John 11:25)

John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

25 Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live.

26 For as the Father hath life in himself; so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself;

27 And hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man.

28 Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice,

29 And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.

John 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

Because Jesus died and rose again, those who believe in Jesus Christ will be resurrected like Jesus after death. (1 Corinthians 15:12-20)

1 Corinthians 15:12 Now if Christ be preached that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection of the dead?

13 But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ not risen:

14 And if Christ be not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain.

15 Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God; because we have testified of God that he raised up Christ: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not.

16 For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised:

17 And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; ye are yet in your sins.

18 Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished.

19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.

20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

1197. When the Israelites put on God's mercy and cast off their idols and believe in Christ, their sins will be forgiven. (Isa 27:9)

Rom 11:25-27, Jer 31:31-34

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that when the people of Israel forsook their idols and turned to God, their sins were forgiven. (Isa 27:9)

Isa 27:9 By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up.

Paul quoted the Old Testament as saying that Christ would forgive the sins of the people of Israel. (Rom 11:25-27)

Rom 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.

26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

27 For this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.

In the Old Testament, Jeremiah said that God would put God's law in the hearts of the Israelites and forgive their sins. (Jeremiah 31:31-34)

Jeremiah 31:31 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah:

32 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was an husband unto them, saith the Lord:

33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

1198. In the day of Christ God will gather the children of God. (Isa 27:12-13)
Mt 24:29-31, Mk 13:27

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would gather God's children on that day. (Isa 27:12-13)

Isa 27:12 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall beat off from the channel of the river unto the stream of Egypt, and ye shall be gathered one by one, O ye children of Israel.

13 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt, and shall worship the Lord in the holy mount at Jerusalem.

When Jesus, the Christ, comes back to this earth, he will gather the children of God. (Mt 24:29-31, Mark 13:27)

Mt 24:29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken:

30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Mark 13:27 And then shall he send his angels, and shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven.

1199. Christ is a tried stone for those who do not believe in Christ. (Isa 28:15-16)
Mt 21:38-44, Lk 20:17-18, Acts 4:11-12, Rom 9:30-33, Rom 10:11, 1Pt 2:4-8

In the Old Testament, God placed a solid foundation stone and said that those who do not believe in it will stumble upon it, and those who believe in it will never be disappointed. (Isa 28:15-16)

Isa 28:15 Because ye have said, We have made a covenant with death, and with hell are we at agreement; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come unto us: for we have made lies our refuge, and under falsehood have we hid ourselves:

16 Therefore thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

Jesus said that those who do not believe in the cornerstone of God will be deprived of the kingdom of God, just as the owner of a vineyard takes the land he had entrusted to the wicked farmer and gives it to a farmer who produces fruit. (Matthew 21:38-44, Luke 20:17-18)

Matthew 21:38 But when the husbandmen saw the son, they said among themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance.

39 And they caught him, and cast him out of the vineyard, and slew him.

40 When the lord therefore of the vineyard cometh, what will he do unto those husbandmen?

41 They say unto him, He will miserably destroy those wicked men, and will let out his vineyard unto other husbandmen, which shall render him the fruits in their seasons.

42 Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof.

44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Luke 20:17 And he beheld them, and said, What is this then that is written, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?

18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Jesus is the stone rejected by the Israelites and is the headstone of the corner of the house. There is no way of salvation except through Jesus. (Acts 4:11-12)

Acts 4:11 his is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

The Gentiles who believed in Jesus as Christ were righteous, and the Israelites who did not believe in Jesus as the Christ were judged by Christ. (Rom. 9:30-33)

Rom. 9:30 What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith.

31 But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness.

32 Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;

33 As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will not be put to shame. (Romans 10:11)

Romans 10:11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

1200. God did not allow the Jews to understand the Gospel of Christ, so He turned this Gospel to the Gentiles. (Isa 29:10-12)

Rom 11:7-12, Acts 28:23-28

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would prevent the people of Israel from understanding the gospel of God. (Isa 29:10-12)

Isa 29:10 For the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered.

11 And the vision of all is become unto you as the words of a book that is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I cannot; for it is sealed:

12 And the book is delivered to him that is not learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I am not learned.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, the Israelites did not understand the gospel of God, that is, Jesus was the Christ. So the gospel of God was delivered to the Gentiles. (Romans 11:7-12)

Romans 11:7 What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.

8 (According as it is written, God hath given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;) unto this day.

9 And David saith, Let their table be made a snare, and a trap, and a stumblingblock, and a recompence unto them:

10 Let their eyes be darkened, that they may not see, and bow down their back alway.

11 I say then, Have they stumbled that they should fall? God forbid: but rather through their fall salvation is come unto the Gentiles, for to provoke them to jealousy.

12 Now if the fall of them be the riches of the world, and the diminishing of them the riches of the Gentiles; how much more their fulness?

Paul explained to the many Jews who visited him in the Roman prison that the Old Testament was explaining the coming Christ and that that Christ was Jesus. But the Jews did not believe it, so the gospel of God was delivered to the Gentiles. (Acts 28:23-28)

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

24 And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not.

25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers,

26 Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive:

27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it.

1201. The Jews did not believe in Christ, the commandment of God, but followed the commandment of man. (Isa 29:13)

Mt 15:7-9, Mk 7:5-9, Col 2:16-17

In the Old Testament, the Israelites did not follow God's Word with their hearts, but followed them formally. (Isa 29:13, Mt 15:7-9, Mark 7:5-9)

Isa 29:13 Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:

Mt 15:7 Ye hypocrites, well did Esaias prophesy of you, saying,

8 This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me.

9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.

Mark 7:5 Then the Pharisees and scribes asked him, Why walk not thy disciples according to the tradition of the elders, but eat bread with unwashen hands?

6 He answered and said unto them, Well hath Esaias prophesied of you hypocrites, as it is written, This people honoureth me with their lips, but their heart is far from me.

7 Howbeit in vain do they worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.

8 For laying aside the commandment of God, ye hold the tradition of men, as the washing of pots and cups: and many other such like things ye do.

9 And he said unto them, Full well ye reject the commandment of God, that ye may keep your own tradition.

The eating and drinking, feasts, new moons, and the Sabbaths described in the Old Testament are meant to describe Christ. (Col 2:16-17)

Col 2:16 Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days:

17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.

1202. For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God. (Isa 29:14)

1 Cor 1:18-24, Mt 11:25-26, Lk 10:21

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would do God's marvelous works, but the wise would not understand it. (Isa 29:14)

Isa 29:14 Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

The wise did not realize that Jesus completed the work of Christ by dying on the cross, but we understood and believed it. (Matthew 11:25-26, Luke 10:21)

Matthew 11:25 At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.

26 Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.

Luke 10:21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.

The wise did not understand God's most wonderful work, that is, the way of the cross. However, we believe in the work of Christ accomplished by Jesus dying on the cross. This message of the cross is the power of God to us. (1 Corinthians 1:18-24)

1 Corinthians 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

19 For it is written, I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent.

20 Where is the wise? where is the scribe? where is the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world?

21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.

22 For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom:

23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

1203. God was angry with the Jews to make known Christ, the power of God. (Isa 29:16)
Rom 9:19-24, 1 Cor 1:18

The Old Testament says that we cannot say that the God who made us is without wisdom. (Isa 29:16)

Isa 29:16 Surely your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay: for shall the work say of him that made it, He made me not? or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, He had no understanding?

God was angry with the Jews to make known the power of God, Christ. (Rom 9:19-24, 1 Cor 1:18)

Rom 9:19 Thou wilt say then unto me, Why doth he yet find fault? For who hath resisted his will?

20 Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing formed say to him that formed it, Why hast thou made me thus?

21 Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour?

22 What if God, willing to shew his wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction:

23 And that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had afore prepared unto glory,

24 Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles?

1 Cor 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

1204. When Christ comes, the blind see and hear the deaf, and the gospel is preached to the poor. (Isa 29:18-19)
Mt 11:2-5, Lk 7:22, Lk 4:16-21

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the coming Christ would come to this earth so that the deaf would hear and see the blind. (Isa 29:18-19)

Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

19 The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

When John the Baptist's disciples asked Jesus if he was the Christ, Jesus showed that the prophecies about Christ in the Old Testament had been fulfilled in Himself. (Matthew 11:2-5, Luke 7:22)

Matthew 11:2 Now when John had heard in the prison the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples,

3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?

4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

Luke 7:22 Then Jesus answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things ye have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached.

Jesus also went to the synagogue and showed the Jews that what was written about Christ in Isaiah had been fulfilled in Himself. (Luke 4:16-21)

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

1205. The people of Israel will also be saved through Christ, the mercy of God. (Isa 29:22-24)
Rom 11:25-32

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the Israelites would eventually hear the word of God and return to God. (Isa 29:22-24)

Isa 29:22 Therefore thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob, Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

23 But when he seeth his children, the work of mine hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

24 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

The people of Israel will be saved by believing in Christ, who is the mercy of God, not by keeping the law. (Rom 11:25-32)

Rom 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.

26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

27 For this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.

28 As concerning the gospel, they are enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election, they are beloved for the father's sakes.

29 For the gifts and calling of God are without repentance.

30 For as ye in times past have not believed God, yet have now obtained mercy through their unbelief:

31 Even so have these also now not believed, that through your mercy they also may obtain mercy.

32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.

1206. In the future, a king, Christ, will come and rule us in justice. (Isa 32:1-4)
Jer 23:5-6, Jer 33:15, Zech 9:9, Mt 21:4-9

The Old Testament prophesied that God would send Christ, a king from the descendants of David, and that Christ would rule over us. (Isa 32:1-4, Jer 23:5-6, Jer 33:15, Zec 9:9)

Isa 32:1 Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment.

2 And a man shall be as an hiding place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest; as rivers of water in a dry place, as the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.

3 And the eyes of them that see shall not be dim, and the ears of them that hear shall hearken.

4 The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly.

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

6 In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, The Lord Our Righteousness.

Jer 33:15 In those days, and at that time, will I cause the Branch of righteousness to grow up unto David; and he shall execute judgment and righteousness in the land.

Zec 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

According to the prophecy of the Old Testament, a king, Christ, has come as a descendant of David. That is Jesus. (Mt 21:4-9)

Mt 21:4 All this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying,

5 Tell ye the daughter of Sion, Behold, thy King cometh unto thee, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt the foal of an ass.

6 And the disciples went, and did as Jesus commanded them,

7 And brought the ass, and the colt, and put on them their clothes, and they set him thereon.

8 And a very great multitude spread their garments in the way; others cut down branches from the trees, and strawed them in the way.

9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

1207. We have peace with God through Christ. (Isa 32:16-18)
Mic 4:3-4, Rom 5:1

The Old Testament prophesied that we would enjoy peace through the coming Christ. (Isa 32:16-18, Mic 4:3-4)

Isa 32:16 Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field.
17 And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever.
18 And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places;

Mic 4:3 And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

4 But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of the Lord of hosts hath spoken it.

Through Jesus, the Christ, we have peace with God and have found peace. (Romans 5:1, John 14:27, John 16:33)

Romans 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

John 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

1208. God healed us and forgiven our sins through Christ. (Isa 33:22-24)
Acts 10:38-43

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would heal us and forgive our sins in the future. (Isa 33:22-24)

Isa 33:22 For the Lord is our judge, the Lord is our lawgiver, the Lord is our king; he will save us.

23 Thy tacklings are loosed; they could not well strengthen their mast, they could not spread the sail: then is the prey of a great spoil divided; the lame take the prey.

24 And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein shall be forgiven their iniquity.

Jesus healed us and forgave our sins according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Acts 10:38-43)

Acts 10:38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:

40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.

42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

1209. Christ came to heal and save us. (Isa 35:4-6)
Jn 12:14-16, Mt 11:2-5, Mk 7:32-35, Lk 7:20-22

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would come and heal and save us at that time. (Isa 35:4-6)

Isa 35:4 Say to them that are of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance, even God with a recompence; he will come and save you.

5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Jesus is the Christ God has sent to heal and save us. (Matthew 11:2-5, Mark 7:32-35, Luke 7:20-22)

Matthew 11:2 Now when John had heard in the prison the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples,

3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?

4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

Mark 7:32 And they bring unto him one that was deaf, and had an impediment in his speech; and they beseech him to put his hand upon him.

33 And he took him aside from the multitude, and put his fingers into his ears, and he spit, and touched his tongue;

34 And looking up to heaven, he sighed, and saith unto him, Ephphatha, that is, Be opened.

35 And straightway his ears were opened, and the string of his tongue was loosed, and he spake plain.

Luke 7:20 When the men were come unto him, they said, John Baptist hath sent us unto thee, saying, Art thou he that should come? or look we for another?

21 And in that same hour he cured many of their infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many that were blind he gave sight.

22 Then Jesus answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things ye have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached.

1210. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ will enter that holy path. (Isa 35:8-10)
Rev 21:26-27

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that only the redeemed would enter the holy way. (Isa 35:8-10)

Isa 35:8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein.

9 No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there:

10 And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Only those who are written in the Lamb's book of life, that is, those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, will enter the sanctuary. (Rev 21:26-27)

Rev 21:26 And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.

27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

1211. John the Baptist Preparing the Way of Christ (Isa 40:3-5)
Lk 3:3-6, Mt 3:1-3, Mk 1:1-4, Lk 1:76-77, Jn 1:22-23

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the voice of a crying man would prepare the way for God. (Isa 40:3-5)

Isa 40:3 The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God.

4 Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low: and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain:

5 And the glory of the Lord shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see it together: for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.

John the Baptist is the voice of a cryer who prepared the way for Christ, as prophesied by Isaiah in the Old Testament. (Luke 3:3-6, Matthew 3:1-3, Mark 1:1-4, Luke 1:76-77, John 1:22-23)

Luke 3:3 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins;

4 As it is written in the book of the words of Esaias the prophet, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

5 Every valley shall be filled, and every mountain and hill shall be brought low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough ways shall be made smooth;

6 And all flesh shall see the salvation of God.

Matthew 3:1 In those days came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judaea,

2 And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

3 For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

Mark 1:1 The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God;

2 As it is written in the prophets, Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee.

3 The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.

Luke 1:76 And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways;

77 To give knowledge of salvation unto his people by the remission of their sins,

John 1:22 Then said they unto him, Who art thou? that we may give an answer to them that sent us. What sayest thou of thyself?

23 He said, I am the voice of one crying in the wilderness, Make straight the way of the Lord, as said the prophet Esaias.

1212. This gospel that Jesus is the Christ will stand forever.(Isa 40:6-8)
1 Pt 1:24-25, Mt 24:35, Lk 21:33

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that the word of God would stand forever. (Isa 40:6-8)

Isa 40:6 The voice said, Cry. And he said, What shall I cry? All flesh is grass, and all the goodliness thereof is as the flower of the field:

7 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: because the spirit of the Lord bloweth upon it: surely the people is grass.

8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

Jesus made it clear that his words are eternal. (Matthew 24:35, Luke 21:33)

Matthew 24:35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Luke 21:33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

In the Old Testament, the eternal Word of God spoken of by Isaiah is this gospel, that is, Jesus is the Christ. (1 Peter 1:24-25)

1 Peter 1:24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:

25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

1213. Preach the beautiful news to the world that Jesus is the Christ. (Isa 40:9)
Isa 52:7, Isa 61:1, Lk 24:44-47, Mt 28:18-20, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, Isaiah told the evangelists to preach the good news: the salvation and reign of God. (Isa 40:9, Isa 52:7)

Isa 40:9 O Zion, that bringest good tidings, get thee up into the high mountain; O Jerusalem, that bringest good tidings, lift up thy voice with strength; lift it up, be not afraid; say unto the cities of Judah, Behold your God!

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the Spirit of God would come upon Christ and that Christ would heal and preach the gospel. (Isa 61:1)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

The Old Testament contains the record of the coming Christ. Jesus revealed to his disciples that he was the Christ recorded in the Old Testament. (Luke 24:44-47)

Luke 24:44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

The resurrected Jesus told us to preach the gospel, that is, that Jesus is the Christ, to the whole world. Through us, this gospel will be preached to the whole world. (Matthew 28:18-20, Acts 1:8)

Matthew 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

1214. Christ came with strong hand. (Isa 40:10)
Mal 3:1, Jn 12:13-16, Eph 1:20-22, Phil 2:10-11

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would come as a powerful God. (Isa 40:10)

Isa 40:10 Behold, the Lord God will come with strong hand, and his arm shall rule for him: behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

The Old Testament book of Malachi prophesied that God would suddenly come to the temple. (Mal 3:1)

Mal 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus came to Jerusalem as the King of Israel. (John 12:13-16)

John 12:13 Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.

14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,

15 Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.

16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

God bestowed upon Christ the power of God to subject all things to Him. (Ephesians 1:20-22, Phil 2:10-11)

Ephesians 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

Phil 2:10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

1215. Christ the True Shepherd (Isa 40:11)
Jn 10:11-15, Heb 13:20-21, 1 Pt 2:24-25, Rev 7:16-17

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that God embraces and guides us like a shepherd. (Isa 40:11)

Isa 40:11 He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young.

Jesus is the true good shepherd who laid down his life to save us. (John 10:11-15, Hebrews 13:20-21, 1 Peter 2:24-25)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

12 But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.

13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

1 Peter 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

Christ Jesus, the Lamb of God, is our shepherd and leads us to the fountain of life. (Rev 7:16-17)

Rev 7:16 They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat.

17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1216. God and Christ are the first and last who govern history. (Isa 41:4)
Rev 1:4-5,17, Rev 2:8, Rev 22:12-13, Rev 1:8, Rev 21:5-6

God rules history and is the beginning and the end. (Isa 41:4)

Isa 41:4 Who hath wrought and done it, calling the generations from the beginning? I the Lord, the first, and with the last; I am he.

Jesus is the first and the last. (Rev 1:4-5, 8, 17, Rev 2:28, Rev 22:12-13)

Rev 1:4 John to the seven churches which are in Asia: Grace be unto you, and peace, from him which is, and which was, and which is to come; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne;

5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

8 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty.

17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:

Rev 2:28 And I will give him the morning star.

Rev 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

1217. Christ is the hope of Israel and the Redeemer of Israel. (Isa 41:14)
Lk 1:68-71, Lk 2:38, Acts 5:30-31, Acts 28:20

In the Old Testament, God promised to help and redeem Israel. (Isa 41:4)

Isa 41:4 Who hath wrought and done it, calling the generations from the beginning? I the Lord, the first, and with the last; I am he.

God raised Christ from the house of David to redeem Israel. That Christ is Jesus. (Luke 1:68-71, Luke 2:38)

Luke 1:68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:
71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;

Luke 2:38 And she coming in that instant gave thanks likewise unto the Lord, and spake of him to all them that looked for redemption in Jerusalem.

God raised Jesus from the dead and made him King and Savior of Israel. (Acts 5:30-31)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.
31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

Paul was bound by his chains while preaching Christ, the hope of Israel. (Acts 28:20)

Acts 28:20 For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see you, and to speak with you: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain.

1218. Christ brings forth judgment to the Gentiles.(Isa 42:1-4)
Mt 12:15-21, Mt 3:17, Mt 17:5, Mk 1:10-11, Lk 3:22, Lk 9:33-35

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send Christ to bring justice to the Gentiles with the truth, and that the Gentiles would wait for Christ's justice. (Isa 42:1-4)

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

2 He shall not cry, nor lift up, nor cause his voice to be heard in the street.

3 A bruised reed shall he not break, and the smoking flax shall he not quench: he shall bring forth judgment unto truth.

4 He shall not fail nor be discouraged, till he have set judgment in the earth: and the isles shall wait for his law.

According to the prophecies of the Old Testament, Jesus did justice to the Gentiles with the truth. (Mt 12:15-21)

Mt 12:15 But when Jesus knew it, he withdrew himself from thence: and great multitudes followed him, and he healed them all;

16 And charged them that they should not make him known:

17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,

18 Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall shew judgment to the Gentiles.

19 He shall not strive, nor cry; neither shall any man hear his voice in the streets.

20 A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.

21 And in his name shall the Gentiles trust.

1219. God made Christ the covenant of Israel and the light of the Gentiles. (Isa 42:6-9)
Lk 2:28-32, Mt 11:2-5, Acts 26:22-23

In the Old Testament, God said that He would establish Christ to be the covenant of Israel and the light of the Gentiles. (Isa 42:6-9)

Isa 42:6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;
7 To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.
8 I am the Lord: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.
9 Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them.

Simeon embraced the baby Jesus and confessed that this Jesus was the light to the Gentiles and the glory of Israel. (Luke 2:28-32)

Luke 2:28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,
29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:
30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,
31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;
32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

Jesus is the Christ who heals us as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Matthew 11:2-5)

Matthew 11:2 Now when John had heard in the prison the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples,
3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?
4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:
5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

Paul testified to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ who prophesied the light to Israel and the Gentiles prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 26:22-23)

Acts 26:22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:
23 That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

1220. Christ delivered us from darkness. (Isa 42:16)
Lk 1:78-79, Eph 2:1-5, Acts 26:16-18

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would open the eyes of the blind in the future. (Isa 42:16)

Isa 42:16 And I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them.

John the Baptist's father prophesied that the coming Christ would lead us out of darkness into the way of peace. (Luke 1:78-79)

Luke 1:78 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us,
79 To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.

God raised us, who were children of wrath by nature, together with Christ. (Eph 2:1-5)

Eph 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;

2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:

3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

Jesus had Paul preach the gospel, so that Israel and the Gentiles were turned from darkness to light and from the power of Satan to God. (Acts 26:16-18)

Acts 26:16 But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister and a witness both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in the which I will appear unto thee;
17 Delivering thee from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee,
18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

1221. Christ is the true witness and true servant of God. (Isa 43:10)
Jn 8:28, Jn 13:18-19

In the Old Testament, God said that God would make the people of Israel know that God is the true God through Christ, the servant of God. (Isa 43:10)

Isa 43:10 Ye are my witnesses, saith the Lord, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.

Jesus is the true witness of God. (John 8:28)

John 8:28 Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.

Jesus is the true servant of God, who accomplished the work of Christ, which God commanded, through death. (John 13:18-19)

John 13:18 I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the scripture may be fulfilled, He that eateth bread with me hath lifted up his heel against me.

19 Now I tell you before it come, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that I am he.

1222. There is no way to be saved except Christ. (Isa 43:11)
Acts 4:12, Jn 14:6

There is no savior but God. (Isa 43:11)

Isa 43:11 I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no saviour.

God sent only Christ to this earth as a savior. (Acts 4:12)

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Only Jesus is the way to meet God. (John 14:6)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

1223. We are created to glorify God through Christ. (Isa 43:21)
1 Pt 2:9, Heb 13:15, Eph 1:11-12

God made us to praise Him. (Isa 43:21)

Isa 43:21 This people have I formed for myself; they shall shew forth my praise.

We have become God's people through Christ. God has chosen us to praise God and to tell of what God has done through Christ Jesus. (1 Peter 2:9, Hebrews 13:15, Ephesians 1:11-12)

1 Peter 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

Hebrews 13:15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

Ephesians 1:11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will:

12 That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ.

1224. God poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 44:3)
Joel 2:28, Act 2:16-18,33, Acts 5:31-32

In the Old Testament, God promised to pour out the Holy Spirit on the Israelites in the future. (Isa 44:3)

Isa 44:3 For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring:

In the Old Testament, God promised to pour out the Holy Spirit on all people. (Joel 2:28)

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

As prophesied in the Old Testament, God poured out the Holy Spirit on all who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:16-18,33, Acts 5:31-32, Acts 10:36-45)

Acts 2:16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)
37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;

38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:

40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.

42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

44 While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

1225. God and Christ are the first and last. (Isa 44:6)
Rev 1:4-5,17, Rev 2:8, Rev 22:12-13, Rev 1:8, Rev 21:5-6

The Old Testament says that God is the first and the last. (Isa 44:6)

Isa 44:6 Thus saith the Lord the King of Israel, and his redeemer the Lord of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God.

Jesus, who died for us and rose again, is the first and the last. (Rev 1:4-5,17, Rev 2:8, Rev 22:12-13)

Rev 1:4 John to the seven churches which are in Asia: Grace be unto you, and peace, from him which is, and which was, and which is to come; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne;
5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,
17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:

Rev 2:8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;

Rev 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.
13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

God is the first and the last. (Rev 1:8, Rev 21:5)

Rev 1:8 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty.

Rev 21:5 And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful.

1226. Every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. (Isa 45:23)
Phil 2:10-11

In the Old Testament, God said that everyone should bow their knees to God and confess that He is God. (Isa 45:23)

Isa 45:23 I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear.

God made everyone kneel to Jesus and confess Jesus Christ as Lord, to the glory of God. (Phil 2:10-11)

Phil 2:10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

1227. God made us known from the beginning and sent the Christ, who pleases God. (Isa 46:10)
Gen 3:15, Gen 22:17-18, Gal 3:16, Gen 49:10, Jn 3:16

In the Old Testament, God foretold what God would do and said that He would accomplish it. (Isa 46:10)

Isa 46:10 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

In the Old Testament, God foretold in advance that He would send Christ, the descendant of a woman, to this earth to crush Satan's head. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

In the Old Testament, God foretold in advance that through the descendants of Abraham, the enemy would be defeated and all peoples under the world would be blessed. (Ge 22:17-18)

Ge 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

The descendant of Abraham, whom God spoke of in the Old Testament, is Christ. (Ga 3:16)

Ga 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

In the Old Testament, God foretold that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah and that all people would obey Him. (Ge 49:10)

Ge 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

As God said in the Old Testament, He loved us and sent Christ to this earth. (John 3:16)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

1228. God saved the Gentiles and the people of Israel through Christ. (Isa 49:5-7)
Lk 2:28-32, Lk 24:46-47, Acts 13:47-49

In the Old Testament, God spoke of bringing salvation to both the Israelites and the Gentiles. (Isa 49:5-7)

Isa 49:5 And now, saith the Lord that formed me from the womb to be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, Though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.
6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.
7 Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, and his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful, and the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee.

Simeon held the baby Jesus and confessed that this Jesus would save both Israel and the Gentiles. (Luke 2:28-32)

Luke 2:28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,
29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:
30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,
31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;
32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

It will be preached to all nations, beginning in Jerusalem, that Jesus died and rose again the third day for the forgiveness of our sins. (Luke 24:46-47)

Luke 24:46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:
47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

The resurrected Christ Jesus commanded us to preach the gospel to all Gentiles to the ends of the earth. (Acts 13:47-49)

Acts 13:47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.
48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.
49 And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.

1229. Behold, now is the day to believe in Jesus as the Christ and receive salvation. (Isa 49:8)
2 Cor 6:1-2, Lk 4:17-19, Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7, Acts 16:31

In the Old Testament, God heard the prayer of Christ on the day of salvation to come, and made Christ the covenant of the people of Israel to save the people of Israel. (Isa 49:8)

Isa 49:8 Thus saith the Lord, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

Now is the day of salvation by believing in Jesus Christ, the time of grace. (2 Corinthians 6:1-2, Luke 4:17-19)

2 Corinthians 6:1 We then, as workers together with him, beseech you also that ye receive not the grace of God in vain.

2 (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)

Luke 4:17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

When God reveals that Jesus is the Christ through the Old and New Testaments, we should not harden our hearts and listen to His voice. (Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7)

Heb 3:7 Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, To day if ye will hear his voice,

8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:

Heb 4:7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.

We are saved when we believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 16:31)

Acts 16:31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

1230. Christ is our shepherd and leads us to the fountain of life.(Isa 49:9-10)
Jn 4:14, Jn 7:37-39, Rev 7:16-17

In the Old Testament, God promised to lead us to a spring of water. (Isa 49:9-10)

Isa 49:9 That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Shew yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus gave us the eternal water of life, the Holy Spirit. (John 14:14, John 7:37-39)

John 14:14 If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it.

John 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

Christ Jesus, the Lamb of God, leads us to the fountain of the water of life. (Rev 7:16-17)

Rev 7:16 They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat.

17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1231. Christ suffered according to the Bible. (Isa 50:6)
Lk 18:31-33, Mk 10:32-34, Mt 26:67-68, Mt 27:29-30

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ would be reproached. (Isa 50:6)

Isa 50:6 I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus prophesied that He would be insulted, die, and rise again the third day. (Luke 18:31-33, Mark 10:32-34)

Luke 18:31 Then he took unto him the twelve, and said unto them, Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of man shall be accomplished.

32 For he shall be delivered unto the Gentiles, and shall be mocked, and spitefully entreated, and spitted on:

33 And they shall scourge him, and put him to death: and the third day he shall rise again.

Mark 10:32 And they were in the way going up to Jerusalem; and Jesus went before them: and they were amazed; and as they followed, they were afraid. And he took again the twelve, and began to tell them what things should happen unto him,

33 Saying, Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be delivered unto the chief priests, and unto the scribes; and they shall condemn him to death, and shall deliver him to the Gentiles:

34 And they shall mock him, and shall scourge him, and shall spit upon him, and shall kill him: and the third day he shall rise again.

Jesus was insulted just as the Old Testament prophesied. (Mt 26:67-68, Mt 27:29-30)

Mt 26:67 Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him; and others smote him with the palms of their hands,
68 Saying, Prophecy unto us, thou Christ, Who is he that smote thee?

Mt 27:29 And when they had platted a crown of thorns, they put it upon his head, and a reed in his right hand: and they bowed the knee before him, and mocked him, saying, Hail, King of the Jews!

30 And they spit upon him, and took the reed, and smote him on the head.

1232. Heaven and earth will pass away, but the gospel that Jesus is the Christ will be eternal. (Isa 51:6)
Heb 1:10-12, 1 Pt 1:24-25, Mt 24:35, Lk 21:33

In the Old Testament, God said that heaven and earth would pass away, but God's salvation and His righteousness are eternal. (Isa 51:6)

Isa 51:6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

The writer of Hebrews quoted the Old Testament saying that God is eternal. (Heb 1:10-12)

Heb 1:10 And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands:

11 They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment;

12 And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.

Jesus said his own words are eternal. (Matthew 24:35, Luke 21:33)

Matthew 24:35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Luke 21:33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

The eternal word of the Lord prophesied in the Old Testament is the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Peter 1:24-25)

1 Peter 1:24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:

25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

1233. We are poured out of the Holy Spirit so that we can make God known. (Isa 52:6)
Heb 8:10-11, 1 Jn 2:27, 1 Jn 5:20

In the Old Testament, God said that on that day the people of Israel would know God. (Isa 52:6)

Isa 52:6 Therefore my people shall know my name: therefore they shall know in that day that I am he that doth speak: behold, it is I.

The writer of Hebrews said that God will write the word of God in our hearts so that we will all know Him. (Hebrews 8:10)

Hebrews 8:10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

The Holy Spirit has been poured out upon us, and we have come to know God. (1 John 2:27, 1 John 5:20)

1 John 2:27 But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

1234. Christ preached the gospel of peace to us. (Isa 52:7-10)
Isa 61:1-3, Acts 10:36-38, Rom 10:14-15, Eph 2:12-17

In the Old Testament, Isaiah proclaimed that God would set the Israelites free from the Babylonian captivity. It also means that in the future Christ will set us free from sin and the hands of Satan. (Isa 52:7-10)

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!
8 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing: for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.
9 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem: for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
10 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the Spirit of God would come upon Christ and that Christ would preach the gospel. (Isa 61:1-3)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;
2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;
3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Christ Jesus came to bring us the gospel of peace. (Acts 10:36-38, Romans 10:14-15)

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)
37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;
38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

Romans 10:14 How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?
15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

The gospel of Christ's peace was also preached to the Gentiles. (Eph 2:12-17)

Eph 2:12 That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world:
13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.
14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;
15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;
16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:
17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

1235. You will see Christ, the true servant of God. (Isa 52:13-15)
Acts 3:13-15, Mt 13:14-17, Rom 15:21, Rom 16:25-27, 1 Jn 1:1-2

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the coming Christ would be bruised and that the nations would later hear and understand the gospel of Christ. (Isa 52:13-15)

Isa 52:13 Behold, my servant shall deal prudently, he shall be exalted and extolled, and be very high.

14 As many were astonished at thee; his visage was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men:

15 So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him: for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Jesus, the Christ, was handed over to Pilate to save us, died and rose from the dead three days later. (Acts 3:13-15)

Acts 3:13 The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his Son Jesus; whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let him go.

14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

Some of the people of Israel heard and saw the gospel that most of the people of Israel did not understand. (Matthew 13:14-17, Romans 15:21)

Matthew 13:14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:

15 For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

16 But blessed are your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.

17 For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.

Romans 15:21 But as it is written, To whom he was not spoken of, they shall see: and they that have not heard shall understand.

The gospel of Christ, hidden from time immemorial, was delivered through the writings of the prophets, and the reality of that gospel was revealed. The gospel is that Jesus is the Christ. (Romans 16:25-27, 1 John 1:1-2)

Romans 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

1236. Christ came to this earth, but His people did not receive Him. (Isa 53:1)
Jn 12:36-40, Rom 10:15-16, Jn 1:10-12

In the Old Testament, Isaiah was surprised that no one believed that Christ suffered. (Isa 53:1)

Isa 53:1 Who hath believed our report? and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

Although Christ Jesus performed many miracles, as the Old Testament prophesied, the Jews did not believe in Jesus as the Christ. (John 12:36-40, Romans 10:15-16)

John 12:36 While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light. These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them.

37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:

38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed?

39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,

40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.

Romans 10:15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

Christ Jesus came to his land, but his people did not accept him as the Christ. However, those who accept Jesus as the Christ become children of God. (John 1:10-12, 1 John 5:1)

John 1:10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

1237. Christ was despised according to the Scriptures. (Isa 53:2-3)
Mt 26:67-68, Mt 27:39-40, Mk 9:12, Lk 9:22, Lk 18:31-33, Jn 1:10-11

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the coming Christ would be despised. (Isa 53:2-3)

Isa 53:2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Jesus was despised as the Old Testament prophesied. (Mt 26:67-68, Mt 27:39-40, Mk 9:12)

Mt 26:67 Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him; and others smote him with the palms of their hands,
68 Saying, Prophecy unto us, thou Christ, Who is he that smote thee?

Mt 27:39 And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads,
40 And saying, Thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest it in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross.

Mk 9:12 And he answered and told them, Elias verily cometh first, and restoreth all things; and how it is written of the Son of man, that he must suffer many things, and be set at nought.

Jesus suffered according to the scriptures, died according to the scriptures, and rose again on the third day. (Luke 9:22, Luke 18:31-33)

Luke 9:22 Saying, The Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be slain, and be raised the third day.

Luke 18:31 Then he took unto him the twelve, and said unto them, Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of man shall be accomplished.

32 For he shall be delivered unto the Gentiles, and shall be mocked, and spitefully entreated, and spitted on:

33 And they shall scourge him, and put him to death: and the third day he shall rise again.

1238. Christ died on the cross, carrying all our sins to save us. (Isa 53:4-6)

Jn 1:29, Mt 8:16-17, Gal 3:13, 1 Pt 2:24, 1 Cor 15:3, 2 Cor 5:21, Rom 5:6-10, 1 Pt 3:18

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the coming Christ would suffer and die to pay for our sins and save us. (Isa 53:4-6)

Isa 53:4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus bore the sins and sufferings of the world. (John 1:29, Matthew 8:16-17)

John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Matthew 8:16 When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with his word, and healed all that were sick:

17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.

Jesus took our sins and died on the cross to save us according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Gal 3:13, 1 Pet 2:24, 1 Cor 15:3, 2 Cor 5:21, Romans 5:6-10, 1 Pet 3:18)

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

1 Pet 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

2 Cor 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Romans 5:6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.

7 For scarcely for a righteous man will one die: yet peradventure for a good man some would even dare to die.

8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

1 Pet 3:18 For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:

1239. Christ did not open his mouth like a lamb being brought to a slaughterhouse and died for our sins. (Isa 53:7-9)
Mt 27:11-12, Mk 14:60-61, Acts 8:30-35, 1 Pt 2:22-24

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ would not open his mouth like a lamb to the slaughter, but would die for our sins. (Isa 53:7-9)

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus did not answer the governor's question, Are you the Christ? (Mt 27:11-12, Mark 14:60-61)

Mt 27:11 And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of the Jews? And Jesus said unto him, Thou sayest.

12 And when he was accused of the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing.

Mark 14:60 And the high priest stood up in the midst, and asked Jesus, saying, Answerest thou nothing? what is it which these witness against thee?

61 But he held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him, Art thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed?

The Ethiopian eunuch asked Philip who did not open his mouth like a lamb to the slaughter of which Isaiah spoke. Philip explained it and testified to the Ethiopian eunuch that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 8:30-35)

Acts 8:30 And Philip ran thither to him, and heard him read the prophet Esaias, and said, Understandest thou what thou readest?

31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus died on the cross to forgive our sins without answering anything. (1 Peter 2:22-24)

1 Peter 2:22 Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth:

23 Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed himself to him that judgeth righteously:

24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

1240. Christ became an offering for sin to God to save us and to justify us. (Isa 53:10-11)
Heb 7:27, Heb 9:14,25-26, Heb 10:8-12, 1 Jn 4:9-10, Mk 14:24,
Mt 20:28, Rom 3:23-24, Rom 4:24-25

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would use Christ as a sin offering for our sins. (Isa 53:10-11)

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.
11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus offered Himself as a trespass offering to God once for the forgiveness of our sins. (Hebrews 7:27, Heb 9:14,25-26, Heb 10:8-12)

Hebrews 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

Heb 10:8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:

12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

God loves us so much that He sent His only begotten Son into this world as a propitiation sacrifice. (1 John 4:9-10)

1 John 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Jesus willingly shed His blood to save us. (Mark 14:24, Matthew 20:28)

Mark 14:24 And he said unto them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.

Matthew 20:28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

We are justified because Jesus died for us and rose again. (Romans 3:23-24, Romans 4:24-25)

Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

Romans 4:24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

1241. According to the Scriptures, Christ was regarded as one of the criminals. (Isa 53:12)
Lk 22:37, Mk 15:27, Lk 23:33

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that Christ would be considered one of the criminals in the future. (Isa 53:12)

Isa 53:12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus was regarded as one of the criminals. (Luke 22:37, Mark 15:27, Luke 23:33)

Luke 22:37 For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me, And he was reckoned among the transgressors: for the things concerning me have an end.

Mark 15:27 And with him they crucify two thieves; the one on his right hand, and the other on his left.

Luke 23:33 And when they were come to the place, which is called Calvary, there they crucified him, and the malefactors, one on the right hand, and the other on the left.

1242. There will be many more children of the promise who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Isa 54:1)
Gal 4:23-28, Phil 2:8-11

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that women would have many more children even if the Israelites who were captive to Babylon had no husbands. (Isa 54:1)

Isa 54:1 Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Paul said that there would be many more children of the promise of faith like Isaac. (Galatians 4:23-28)

Galatians 4:23 But he who was of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman was by promise.
24 Which things are an allegory: for these are the two covenants; the one from the mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage, which is Agar.

25 For this Agar is mount Sinai in Arabia, and answereth to Jerusalem which now is, and is in bondage with her children.

26 But Jerusalem which is above is free, which is the mother of us all.

27 For it is written, Rejoice, thou barren that bearest not; break forth and cry, thou that travailest not: for the desolate hath many more children than she which hath an husband.

28 Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are the children of promise.

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ will be preached in all the earth, so that more children of promise will glorify God. (Phil 2:8-11)

Phil 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

1243. Christ becomes our husband. (Isa 54:5)
Eph 5:31-32, 2 Cor 11:2, Rev 19:7

In the Old Testament, Isaiah says that God is our husband. (Isa 54:5)

Isa 54:5 For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.

As the church, we are the bride of Christ. (Ephesians 5:31-32)

Ephesians 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

Paul worked hard to match us to Christ, our husband. (2 Corinthians 11:2)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

When Christ comes again, we will partake of the marriage supper of the Lamb as the bride of Christ. (Rev 19:7)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

1244. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be taught by God through the Holy Spirit. (Isa 54:13)
Jn 6:45-47, Jn 14:26, 1 Cor 2:10, Eph 4:21, 1 Jn 2:20,27

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God's children would receive God's instruction. (Isa 54:13)

Isa 54:13 And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

Jesus said that all of God's children will come to him and be taught. (John 6:45-47)

John 6:45 It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.

46 Not that any man hath seen the Father, save he which is of God, he hath seen the Father.

47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.

The Holy Spirit, whom God will send in the name of Jesus, makes us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (John 14:26, 1 Corinthians 2:10, Ephesians 4:21, 1 John 2:20,27)

John 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

1 Corinthians 2:10 But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

Ephesians 4:21 If so be that ye have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus:

1 John 2:20 But ye have an unction from the Holy One, and ye know all things.

27 But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.

1245. The Holy Trinity God gives us the water of life. (Isa 55:1)
Jn 6:35, Jn 7:37-39, Rev 21:5-6, Rev 22:17

In the Old Testament, God promised to give us the water of life freely. (Isa 55:1)

Isa 55:1 Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Jesus said that he is the bread of life and that those who believe in him will never thirst. (John 6:35)

John 6:35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

Jesus also promised to pour out the Holy Spirit on those who believe that Jesus is the Christ. (John 7:37-39)

John 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

God gives us the water of life. (Rev 21:5-6)

Rev 21:5 And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful.

6 And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.

The Holy Spirit also gives us the water of life. (Rev 22:17)

Rev 22:17 And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.

1246. The sure grace that God gave to David: Christ's resurrection (Isa 55:3)
Acts 13:32-38

In the Old Testament, God promised us an eternal covenant, that is, the sure grace given to David. (Isa 55:3)

Isa 55:3 Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

David's sure grace that God promised us in the Old Testament is the resurrection. God raised Jesus from the dead and made Him the first fruits of the resurrection. (Acts 13:32-38)

Acts 13:32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,
33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.
34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.
35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.
36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:
37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.
38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we too will be resurrected like Christ. (1 Corinthians 15:20-23)

1 Corinthians 15:20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.
21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.
22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.
23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

1247. God's eternal covenant to David: Christ (Isa 55:3-4)
2 Sam 7:12,16, 2 Sam 23:5, Acts 2:29-32,36

In the Old Testament, God promised David that He would send an eternal covenant, that is, Christ who would come as David's descendant. (Isa 55:3, 2 Samuel 7:12,16, 2 Samuel 23:5)

Isa 55:3 Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

4 Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people.

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

16 And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever.

2 Sam 23:5 Although my house be not so with God; yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant, ordered in all things, and sure: for this is all my salvation, and all my desire, although he make it not to grow.

God sent Christ, the eternal promise promised to David in the Old Testament. God also raised Christ from the dead according to the sure grace he had granted David. That Christ is Jesus. (Acts 2:29-32,36)

Acts 2:29 Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.

30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;

31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.

32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

1248. Behold, now is the day to believe in Jesus as the Christ and receive salvation. (Isa 55:6)
2 Cor 6:1-2, Lk 4:17-19, Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7, Acts 16:31

In the Old Testament, Isaiah tells us to seek God while we can. (Isa 55:6)

Isa 55:6 Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near:

Now is the acceptable time and the day of salvation. Therefore, we must open the door of our hearts and believe in Jesus as the Christ to be saved. (2 Corinthians 6:1-2, Luke 4:17-19, Hebrews 3:7-8, Hebrews 4:7, Acts 16:31)

2 Corinthians 6:1 We then, as workers together with him, beseech you also that ye receive not the grace of God in vain.

2 (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)

Luke 4:17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

Hebrews 3:7 Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, To day if ye will hear his voice,

8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:

Hebrews 4:7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.

Acts 16:31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

1249. My house shall be called an house of prayer for all people. (Isa 56:7)
Mt 21:12-13, Mk 11:15-17, Lk 19:45-46, Acts 13:46-48

In the Old Testament, God said that the temple of God would be called the house of prayer for all people. (Isa 56:7)

Isa 56:7 Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people.

Jesus quoted the Old Testament as saying that the temple of God is a house of prayer and drove out those who traded in front of the temple. (Matthew 21:12-13, Mark 11:15-17, Luke 19:45-46)

Matthew 21:12 And Jesus went into the temple of God, and cast out all them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves,
13 And said unto them, It is written, My house shall be called the house of prayer; but ye have made it a den of thieves.

Mark 11:15 And they come to Jerusalem: and Jesus went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves;
16 And would not suffer that any man should carry any vessel through the temple.
17 And he taught, saying unto them, Is it not written, My house shall be called of all nations the house of prayer? but ye have made it a den of thieves.

Luke 19:45 And he went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold therein, and them that bought;
46 Saying unto them, It is written, My house is the house of prayer: but ye have made it a den of thieves.

This gospel was directed to the Gentiles because the Jews did not receive God's word that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 13:46-48)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

1250. Christ preached the gospel of peace to those who are far away or near. (Isa 57:19)
Acts 2:38-39, Eph 2:16-17, Mk 16:15, Lk 10:5-6

In the Old Testament, God said that He would preach the gospel of peace to those who were far away and those who were near. (Isa 57:19)

Isa 57:19 I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, saith the Lord; and I will heal him.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, even those who are far away will receive the forgiveness of sins and the gift of the Holy Spirit if they believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:38-39)

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

By dying on the cross for us, Jesus shared the gospel of peace with God even to those far away. (Eph 2:16-17)

Eph 2:16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:
17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

We must preach the gospel of the peace of Christ Jesus to everyone near and far. (Luke 10:5-6, Mark 16:15)

Luke 10:5 And into whatsoever house ye enter, first say, Peace be to this house.

6 And if the son of peace be there, your peace shall rest upon it: if not, it shall turn to you again.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

1251. Christ gives us the water of life forever. (Isa 58:11)
Jn 4:13-14, Jn 6:35, Jn 7:37-39, 1 Cor 10:4, Rev 22:17

In the Old Testament, God said that He would protect us like a watered garden. (Isa 58:11)

Isa 58:11 And the Lord shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites could live in the wilderness by drinking the spiritual drink given by Christ, the spiritual rock. (1 Corinthians 10:4)

1 Corinthians 10:4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will never thirst. (John 4:13-14, John 6:35)

John 4:13 Jesus answered and said unto her, Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:
14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

John 6:35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

The Holy Spirit comes upon those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, like a river of living water. (John 7:37-39)

John 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

We will receive the water of eternal life freely in heaven. (Rev 22:17)

Rev 22:17 And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.

1252. We were all under sin, but through Christ we were justified before God. (Isa 59:2)
Isa 59:7-11, Rom 3:9-24

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that the people of Israel had turned away from God because of their sins. (Isa 59:2)

Isa 59:2 But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.

In the Old Testament, Isaiah said that we are all sinners. (Isa 59:7-11)

Isa 59:7 Their feet run to evil, and they make haste to shed innocent blood: their thoughts are thoughts of iniquity; wasting and destruction are in their paths.

8 The way of peace they know not; and there is no judgment in their goings: they have made them crooked paths: whosoever goeth therein shall not know peace.

9 Therefore is judgment far from us, neither doth justice overtake us: we wait for light, but behold obscurity; for brightness, but we walk in darkness.

10 We grope for the wall like the blind, and we grope as if we had no eyes: we stumble at noon day as in the night; we are in desolate places as dead men.

11 We roar all like bears, and mourn sore like doves: we look for judgment, but there is none; for salvation, but it is far off from us.

Everyone is under sin. But those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are justified freely by the grace of God through the redemption of Christ Jesus. (Romans 3:9-24)

Romans 3:9 What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin;

10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

13 Their throat is an open sepulchre; with their tongues they have used deceit; the poison of asps is under their lips:

14 Whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness:

15 Their feet are swift to shed blood:

16 Destruction and misery are in their ways:

17 And the way of peace have they not known:

18 There is no fear of God before their eyes.

19 Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.

20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

1253. New covenant established by God: Christ (Isa 59:21)
Heb 8:5-12, Heb 10:12-18, Acts 5:42, Acts 28:30-31

In the Old Testament, God spoke of God's new covenant, that is, that God's Word would never depart from our mouths. (Isa 59:21)

Isa 59:21 As for me, this is my covenant with them, saith the Lord; My spirit that is upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.

The first covenant that God established in the Old Testament, the law, is the model of the new covenant. God's new covenant is the written word of God in our hearts. (Hebrews 8:5-12)

Hebrews 8:5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, See, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.

6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

God's new covenant is that Christ died for our sins so that we may be perfected forever. (Hebrews 10:12-18)

Hebrews 10:12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

15 Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,

16 This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;

17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.

18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

The early church daily proclaimed that Jesus, the new covenant of God, is the Christ. (Acts 5:42)

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

Even in prison, Paul testified of Christ Jesus, the new covenant prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 28:30)

Acts 28:30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

1254. Christ came as the light of the world. (Isa 60:1-2)
Mt 4:12-16, Lk 2:25-32, Jn 1:9-12, Jn 8:12, Jn 12:44-46, Rev 21:23

In the Old Testament, it was said that God would let the light of His glory shine upon us. (Isa 60:1-2)

Isa 60:1 Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon thee.
2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.

As the Old Testament prophesied, the light of God's glory was shone upon the Gentiles. (Matthew 4:12-16, Luke 2:25-32)

Matthew 4:12 Now when Jesus had heard that John was cast into prison, he departed into Galilee;
13 And leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the sea coast, in the borders of Zabulon and Nephthalim:
14 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,
15 The land of Zabulon, and the land of Nephthalim, by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles;
16 The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up.

Luke 2:25 And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him.
26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death, before he had seen the Lord's Christ.
27 And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law,
28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,
29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:
30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,
31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;
32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

The light of God's glory has come to this earth. That is Jesus. But the Israelites did not welcome him. (John 1:9-12)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.
10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.
11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.
12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Jesus is the light of the world. He who believes in Jesus does not walk in darkness, but he has the light of life. (John 8:12, John 12:44-46)

John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

John 12:44 Jesus cried and said, He that believeth on me, believeth not on me, but on him that sent me.
45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.
46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

There is no need for the sun and moon in heaven. Because God and Christ Jesus are light. (Revelation 21:23)

Revelation 21:23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did

lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

1255. World evangelization to be done (Isa 60:3-9)
Mt 8:11, Acts 1:8, Rev 21:21-27

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the nations would come out in the light of God's glory. (Isa 60:3-9)

Isa 60:3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

4 Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side.

5 Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged; because the abundance of the sea shall be converted unto thee, the forces of the Gentiles shall come unto thee.

6 The multitude of camels shall cover thee, the dromedaries of Midian and Ephah; all they from Sheba shall come: they shall bring gold and incense; and they shall shew forth the praises of the Lord.

7 All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered together unto thee, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto thee: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify the house of my glory.

8 Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows?

9 Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the Lord thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee.

Jesus also said that many Gentiles from the east and the west will be saved and sit in the kingdom of heaven. (Mt 8:11)

Mt 8:11 And I say unto you, That many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven.

We must tell the world that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 1:8)

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Eventually, many Gentiles will be saved and go to heaven. (Rev 21:21-27)

Rev 21:21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls: every several gate was of one pearl: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass.

22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

24 And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it.

25 And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there.

26 And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.

27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

1256. God and Christ will be our eternal light, and our sorrow will end. (Isa 60:19-20)
Rev 21:23, Rev 7:16-17, Rev 21:3-4

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would be our eternal light and that our sorrow would end. (Isa 60:19-20)

Isa 60:19 The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the Lord shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory.

20 Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the Lord shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.

God and the Lamb of God, Christ Jesus, will be our light and all our tears will be washed away. (Rev 21:23, Rev 7:16-17, Rev 21:3-4)

Rev 21:23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

Rev 7:16 They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat.

17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

Rev 21:3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.

4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

1257. Christ was anointed by the Holy Spirit and preached the gospel of salvation. (Isa 61:1-2)
Lk 4:16-21, Mt 11:3-5, Lk 7:21-22, Acts 10:38

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that the Spirit of God would come upon Christ and preach the gospel of salvation from Christ. (Isa 61:1-2)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

Jesus testified that the prophecies prophesied by Isaiah in the Old Testament had been fulfilled in Himself. (Luke 4:16-21)

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

Jesus is the Christ who healed people and preached the gospel of salvation according to the prophecies of the Old Testament. (Matthew 11:3-5, Luke 7:21-22, Acts 10:38)

Matthew 11:3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?

4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

Luke 7:21 And in that same hour he cured many of their infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many that were blind he gave sight.

22 Then Jesus answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things ye have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached.

Acts 10:38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

1258. God and Christ welcome us as their brides. (Isa 62:4-5)

Isa 54:5, Isa 61:10, Hos 2:19-20, Eph 5:31-32, 2 Cor 11:2, Rev 19:7, Rev 21:9

In the Old Testament, Isaiah prophesied that God would welcome us as his bride and rejoice. (Isa 62:4-5, Isa 54:5, Isa 61:10, Ho 2:19-20)

Isa 62:4 Thou shalt no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any more be termed Desolate: but thou shalt be called Hephzibah, and thy land Beulah: for the Lord delighteth in thee, and thy land shall be married.

5 For as a young man marrieth a virgin, so shall thy sons marry thee: and as the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride, so shall thy God rejoice over thee.

Isa 54:5 For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.

Isa 61:10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.

Ho 2:19 And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.

20 I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord.

As the church, we are the bride of Christ. (Eph 5:31)

Eph 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

Paul tried to mediate us to Christ. (2 Corinthians 11:2)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

We will participate as the bride of Christ at the wedding supper of the Lamb. (Rev 19:7, Rev 21:9)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

Rev 21:9 And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife.

1259. Christ came to this earth as the Savior. (Isa 62:11)
Zech 9:9, Mt 21:1-5, Jn 12:14-15

The Old Testament prophesied that a Savior who would save us would come to this earth. (Isa 62:11, Zechariah 9:9)

Isa 62:11 Behold, the Lord hath proclaimed unto the end of the world, Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh; behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

Zechariah 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

Jesus is the Christ who came to this earth as King and Savior as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Matthew 21:1-5, John 12:14-15)

Matthew 21:1 And when they drew nigh unto Jerusalem, and were come to Bethphage, unto the mount of Olives, then sent Jesus two disciples,

2 Saying unto them, Go into the village over against you, and straightway ye shall find an ass tied, and a colt with her: loose them, and bring them unto me.

3 And if any man say ought unto you, ye shall say, The Lord hath need of them; and straightway he will send them.

4 All this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying,

5 Tell ye the daughter of Sion, Behold, thy King cometh unto thee, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt the foal of an ass.

John 12:14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,

15 Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.

1260. The Israelites disobeyed God until the gospel was preached to the Gentiles. (Isa 65:1-2)
Rom 10:20-21, Rom 9:24-26, Mt 23:37, Lk 13:34, Acts 7:51-52, 1
Thess 2:15-16

In the Old Testament, God said that He would visit the Gentiles who did not seek Him. (Isa 65:1-2)

Isa 65:1 I am sought of them that asked not for me; I am found of them that sought me not: I said, Behold me, behold me, unto a nation that was not called by my name.

2 I have spread out my hands all the day unto a rebellious people, which walketh in a way that was not good, after their own thoughts;

The Israelites disobeyed God, so God went to the Gentiles and made them His people. (Romans 10:20-21, Romans 9:24-26)

Romans 10:20 But Esaias is very bold, and saith, I was found of them that sought me not; I was made manifest unto them that asked not after me.

21 But to Israel he saith, All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.

Romans 9:24 Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles?

25 As he saith also in Osee, I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved.

26 And it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living God.

The people of Israel who had killed the prophets in the Old Testament did not want the Christ to protect and save them, but killed that Christ. (Matthew 23:37, Luke 13:34, Acts 7:51-52, Thessalonians 2:15-16)

Matthew 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

Luke 13:34 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, which killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee; how often would I have gathered thy children together, as a hen doth gather her brood under her wings, and ye would not!

Acts 7:51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

1 Thessalonians 2:15 Who both killed the Lord Jesus, and their own prophets, and have persecuted us; and they please not God, and are contrary to all men:

16 Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved, to fill up their sins alway: for the wrath is come upon them to the uttermost.

1261. God has made us understand the mystery of God, Christ, through the Holy Spirit. (Isa 64:4)
1 Cor 2:7-10, Eph 3:5-6, Col 1:26-27

In the Old Testament, God did not allow people to understand God even if they heard the word of God. (Isa 64:4)

Isa 64:4 For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen,
O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him.

The mystery of God, the wisdom of God, is Christ Jesus. (Col 1:26-27)

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his
saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is
Christ in you, the hope of glory:

God did not allow people to understand Christ, the wisdom of God, but only through the Holy Spirit. (1 Corinthians
2:7-10; Ephesians 3:5-6)

1 Corinthians 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained
before the world unto our glory:

8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of
glory.

9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which
God hath prepared for them that love him.

10 But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

Ephesians 3:5 Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy
apostles and prophets by the Spirit;

6 That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:

1262. God will lead us into a new heaven and a new earth on the Lord's day. (Isa 65:17-19)
2 Pt 3:10-13, Rev 21:1-4, Rev 7:17

In the Old Testament, God said that He would create a new heaven and a new earth and lead us to it. (Isa 65:17-19)

Isa 65:17 For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind.

18 But be ye glad and rejoice for ever in that which I create: for, behold, I create Jerusalem a rejoicing, and her people a joy.

19 And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

The day of the Lord is coming like a thief, and we who believe in Jesus Christ must look forward to a new heaven and a new earth. (2 Peter 3:10-13)

2 Peter 3:10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

11 Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness,

12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?

13 Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.

We will become God's people in the new heaven and new earth, and all our sorrows will be gone. (Rev 21:1-4, Rev 7:17)

Rev 21:1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.

2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.

3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.

4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1263. The Israelites killed Christ, the true temple. (Isa 66:1)
Acts 7:46-52, Jn 2:19-21, Mt 26:60, Mt 27:40

In the Old Testament, God said that there is no temple or a place for God to rest on this earth. (Isa 66:1)

Isa 66:1 Thus saith the Lord, The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool: where is the house that ye build unto me? and where is the place of my rest?

Rather, the Jews killed Jesus Christ, the Temple. (Acts 7:46-52, John 2:19-21, Matt 27:40)

Acts 7:46 Who found favour before God, and desired to find a tabernacle for the God of Jacob.

47 But Solomon built him an house.

48 Howbeit the most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as saith the prophet,

49 Heaven is my throne, and earth is my footstool: what house will ye build me? saith the Lord: or what is the place of my rest?

50 Hath not my hand made all these things?

51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

John 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.

20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?

21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

Matt 27:40 And saying, Thou that destroyest the temple, and buildest it in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross.

1264. God made the Gentiles believe in Jesus as the Christ and commanded us to spread this gospel to the ends of the earth. (Isa 66:18-19)

Rom 15:9-12, Rom 16:26, Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

In the Old Testament, God said that He would spread His glory to the nations. (Isa 66:18-19)

Isa 66:18 For I know their works and their thoughts: it shall come, that I will gather all nations and tongues; and they shall come, and see my glory.

19 And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, to Tubal, and Javan, to the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles.

The nations have hope in Christ who will save them and bring glory to God. (Romans 15:9-12)

Romans 15:9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, all nations will believe in Christ and obey God. (Romans 16:26)

Romans 16:26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

We must tell all nations that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 28:18-20, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

1265. God has made us a royal priesthood through Christ. (Isa 66:20-21)
Rom 15:16, 1 Pt 2:5,9

In the Old Testament, God said that He would bring the people of Israel who were scattered throughout the nations to the holy land and make them priests to offer gifts to God. (Isa 66:20)

Isa 66:20 And they shall bring all your brethren for an offering unto the Lord out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon mules, and upon swift beasts, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, saith the Lord, as the children of Israel bring an offering in a clean vessel into the house of the Lord.

God has given us the duty of priests of the gospel of God to preach the gospel to the Gentiles and to offer the Gentiles as sacrifices to God. (Romans 15:16, 1 Peter 2:5,9)

Romans 15:16 That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.

1 Peter 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

1266. God has called us to preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ to everyone. (Jer 1:7-8)
1267. The Israelites had forsaken God and Christ, who were the source of living water. (Jer 2:13)
1268. Return to God and Christ our Husband. (Jer 3:14)
1269. Christ is the true Shepherd who is after God's own heart and will nurture us. (Jer 3:15)
1270. God makes us His children when we believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Jer 3:19)
1271. The Israelites did not believe in Christ, the covenant of God, but believed that if there was only the temple, they would be safe. (Jer 7:9-11)
1272. Because the Israelites did not believe in Christ, God destroyed the temple on which the Israelites depended. (Jer 7:12-14)
1273. Only boast in the knowledge of Christ and the message of the cross of Christ. (Jer 9:23-24)
1274. If any man preaches any other gospel unto you than that Jesus is the Christ, let him be accursed. (Jer 14:13-14)
1275. Cursed are those whose hearts turn from God and who do not love Christ. (Jer 17:5)
1276. We cannot but speak that Jesus is the Christ. (Jer 20:9)
1277. Christ as the true shepherd who will guide us (Jer 23:2-4)
1278. Christ is the righteousness of God who will save us. (Jer 23:5-6)
1279. The Jews persecuted the prophets who foretold the coming of Christ. (Jer 25:4)
1280. From the seed of David, God raised up Christ, the Savior of Israel. (Jer 30:8-9)
1281. King Herod killed children to kill the Christ who was born. (Jer 31:15)
1282. God's New Covenant: Christ, Not the Law (Jer 31:31-34)
1283. When the fullness of the Gentiles has come in, God restores the nation of Israel. (Jer 32:43-44)
1284. Christ is the righteousness of God who will save us. (Jer 33:14-17)
1285. Christ is the eternal High Priest. (Jer 33:18)
1286. The Jews killed the prophets and the Christ whom the prophets had promised to come. (Jer 44:4-6)
1287. Come and let us join ourselves to the Lord in a perpetual covenant, Christ (Jer 50:5)
1288. Christ waiting for the people of Israel to return (Jer 50:6)

1266. God has called us to preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ to everyone. (Jer 1:7-8)
Jer 1:17-19, Acts 18:9, Acts 26:17-18

In the Old Testament, God was with Jeremiah and had Jeremiah preach the gospel of salvation. (Jeremiah 1:7-8, Jer 1:17-19)

Jeremiah 1:7 But the Lord said unto me, Say not, I am a child: for thou shalt go to all that I shall send thee, and whatsoever I command thee thou shalt speak.

8 Be not afraid of their faces: for I am with thee to deliver thee, saith the Lord.

Jer 1:17 Thou therefore gird up thy loins, and arise, and speak unto them all that I command thee: be not dismayed at their faces, lest I confound thee before them.

18 For, behold, I have made thee this day a defenced city, and an iron pillar, and brasen walls against the whole land, against the kings of Judah, against the princes thereof, against the priests thereof, and against the people of the land.

19 And they shall fight against thee; but they shall not prevail against thee; for I am with thee, saith the Lord, to deliver thee.

God sent Paul to Israel and the Gentiles to preach the gospel of God's salvation. (Acts 18:9, Acts 26:17-18)

Acts 18:9 Then spake the Lord to Paul in the night by a vision, Be not afraid, but speak, and hold not thy peace:

Acts 26:17 Delivering thee from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee,

18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

1267. The Israelites had forsaken God and Christ, who were the source of living water. (Jer 2:13)
Jn 4:13-14, Jn 7:37-39, Rev 21:6, Jn 1:10-11, Acts 3:14-15

In the Old Testament, the Israelites forsook God, the source of living water. (Jeremiah 2:13)

Jeremiah 2:13 For my people have committed two evils; they have forsaken me the fountain of living waters, and hewed them out cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.

Jesus gives us the Holy Spirit, the water of eternal life. (John 4:13-14, John 7:37-39, Revelation 21:6)

John 4:13 Jesus answered and said unto her, Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:

14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

John 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

Revelation 21:6 And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.

The Israelites did not accept Christ Jesus, the source of living water, but rather killed him. (John 1:10-11, Acts 3:14-15)

John 1:10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

1268. Return to God and Christ our Husband. (Jer 3:14)
Jer 2:2, Hos 2:19-20, Eph 5:31-32, 2 Cor 11:2, Rev 19:7, Rev 21:9

In the Old Testament, God tells us to turn to God, our Husband. (Jeremiah 3:14)

Jeremiah 3:14 Turn, O backsliding children, saith the Lord; for I am married unto you: and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zi

In the Old Testament, the Israelites loved God as husbands when they were young. (Jeremiah 2:2)

Jeremiah 2:2 Go and cry in the ears of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the Lord; I remember thee, the kindness of thy youth, the love of thine espousals, when thou wentest after me in the wilderness, in a land that was not sown.

In the Old Testament God said that He would marry the people of Israel and live with them forever. (Ho 2:19-20)

Ho 2:19 And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.
20 I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord.

As the church, we are the bride of Christ. (Ephesians 5:31-32)

Ephesians 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.
32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

Paul tried to match us to Christ. (2 Corinthians 11:2)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

We will participate as the bride of Christ at the wedding supper of the Lamb. (Rev 19:7, Rev 21:9)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

Rev 21:9 And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife.

1269. Christ is the true Shepherd who is after God's own heart and will nurture us. (Jer 3:15)
Jer 23:4, Ezk 34:23, Ezk 37:24, Jn 10:11,14-15, Heb 13:20, 1 Pt 2:25, Rev 7:17

In the Old Testament, God told us that He would send us a true shepherd to nurture and protect us. (Jer 3:15, Jer 23:4, Eze 34:23, Eze 37:24)

Jer 3:15 And I will give you pastors according to mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.

Jer 23:4 And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the Lord.

Eze 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

Eze 37:24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

Jesus is the true Shepherd who laid down his life to save us. (John 10:11,14-15, Hebrews 13:20, 1 Peter 2:25)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

1 Peter 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

Our Shepherd, Christ Jesus, will lead us to the fountain of the water of life, and God will wipe away all our tears. (Rev 7:17)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1270. God makes us His children when we believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Jer 3:19)
1 Jn 5:1, Jn 1:11-13, Rom 8:15-16, 2 Cor 6:17-18, Gal 3:26, Gal 4:5-7, Eph 1:5, 1 Jn 3:1-2

In the Old Testament, God decided to make the Israelites His children. (Jeremiah 3:19)

Jeremiah 3:19 But I said, How shall I put thee among the children, and give thee a pleasant land, a goodly heritage of the hosts of nations? and I said, Thou shalt call me, My father; and shalt not turn away from me.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ become children of God. (1 John 5:1, John 1:11-13, Romans 8:15-16, 2 Corinthians 6:17-18, Gal 3:26, Gal 4:5-7, Eph 1:5, 1 John 3:1-2)

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

John 1:11-13 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

13 Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

Romans 8:15 15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

2 Corinthians 6:17 Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you.

18 And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.

Gal 3:26 For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

Gal 4:5 o redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

7 Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

Eph 1:5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

1 John 3:1 Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.

2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

1271. The Israelites did not believe in Christ, the covenant of God, but believed that if there was only the temple, they would be safe. (Jer 7:9-11)
Mt 21:12-13, Mk 11:17, Lk 19:46

In the Old Testament, the Israelites believed that even if they sinned against God, they would be saved if they entered the temple. (Jeremiah 7:9-11)

Jeremiah 7:9 Will ye steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense unto Baal, and walk after other gods whom ye know not;

10 And come and stand before me in this house, which is called by my name, and say, We are delivered to do all these abominations?

11 Is this house, which is called by my name, become a den of robbers in your eyes? Behold, even I have seen it, saith the Lord.

Jesus drove the Jews out of the temple because they had turned it into a den of robbers. (Matthew 21:12-13, Mark 11:17, Luke 19:46)

Matthew 21:12 And Jesus went into the temple of God, and cast out all them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves,

13 And said unto them, It is written, My house shall be called the house of prayer; but ye have made it a den of thieves.

Mark 11:17 And he taught, saying unto them, Is it not written, My house shall be called of all nations the house of prayer? but ye have made it a den of thieves.

Luke 19:46 Saying unto them, It is written, My house is the house of prayer: but ye have made it a den of thieves.

1272. Because the Israelites did not believe in Christ, God destroyed the temple on which the Israelites depended.
(Jer 7:12-14)

Mt 24:1-2, Mk 13:1-2

In the Old Testament, God spoke of destroying the temple on which the people of Israel depended because of Israel's evil. (Jeremiah 7:12-14)

Jeremiah 7:12 But go ye now unto my place which was in Shiloh, where I set my name at the first, and see what I did to it for the wickedness of my people Israel.

13 And now, because ye have done all these works, saith the Lord, and I spake unto you, rising up early and speaking, but ye heard not; and I called you, but ye answered not;

14 Therefore will I do unto this house, which is called by my name, wherein ye trust, and unto the place which I gave to you and to your fathers, as I have done to Shiloh.

Jesus said that the temple on which the Israelites depended would be destroyed. (Mt 24:1-2, Mark 13:1-2)

Mt 24:1 And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple.

2 And Jesus said unto them, See ye not all these things? verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.

Mark 13:1 And as he went out of the temple, one of his disciples saith unto him, Master, see what manner of stones and what buildings are here!

2 And Jesus answering said unto him, Seest thou these great buildings? there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.

1273. Only boast in the knowledge of Christ and the message of the cross of Christ. (Jer 9:23-24)
Gal 6:14, Phil 3:3, 1 Jn 5:20, 1 Cor 1:31, 2 Cor 10:17

In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites not to boast about themselves, but to boast about knowing God.
(Jeremiah 9:23-24)

Jeremiah 9:23 Thus saith the Lord, Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty man glory in his might, let not the rich man glory in his riches:

24 But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I am the Lord which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these things I delight, saith the Lord.

We have nothing to boast about except in the cross of the Lord Jesus Christ. (Gal 6:14, Phil 3:3, 1 Cor 1:31, 2 Cor 10:17)

Gal 6:14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

Phil 3:3 For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.

1 Cor 1:31 That, according as it is written, He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

2 Cor 10:17 But he that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Christ made us to know God. Also, Christ Jesus is the true God. (1 John 5:20)

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

1274. If any man preach any other gospel unto you than that Jesus is the Christ, let him be accursed. (Jer 14:13-14)
Mt 7:15-23, 2 Pt 2:1, Gal 1:6-9 [Lists](#)

In the Old Testament, God said that prophets not sent by God prophesy false revelations. (Jeremiah 14:13-14)

Jeremiah 14:13 Then said I, Ah, Lord God! behold, the prophets say unto them, Ye shall not see the sword, neither shall ye have famine; but I will give you assured peace in this place.

14 Then the Lord said unto me, The prophets prophesy lies in my name: I sent them not, neither have I commanded them, neither spake unto them: they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination, and a thing of nought, and the deceit of their heart.

We must be careful not to be deceived by false prophets. (Matthew 7:15-23, 2 Peter 2:1)

Matthew 7:15 Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

16 Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

20 Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.

21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.

22 Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works?

23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

2 Peter 2:1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.

There is no other gospel than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. Anyone who preaches another gospel will be cursed. (Ga 1:6-9)

Ga 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:

7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

1275. Cursed are those whose hearts turn from God and who do not love Christ. (Jer 17:5)
Jer 17:13, 1 Cor 16:22

In the Old Testament, God said that those who turn away from God in their hearts will be cursed. (Jeremiah 17:5, Jer 17:13)

Jeremiah 17:5 Thus saith the Lord; Cursed be the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm, and whose heart departeth from the Lord.

Jer 17:13 O Lord, the hope of Israel, all that forsake thee shall be ashamed, and they that depart from me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken the Lord, the fountain of living waters.

Cursed is anyone who does not love Christ Jesus. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

1276. We cannot but speak that Jesus is the Christ. (Jer 20:9)
Acts 4:18-20, 1 Cor 9:16

In the Old Testament, Jeremiah said that if he did not proclaim God, he would become frustrated and unable to bear it. (Jeremiah 20:9)

Jeremiah 20:9 Then I said, I will not make mention of him, nor speak any more in his name. But his word was in mine heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was weary with forbearing, and I could not stay.

We cannot but say that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 4:12,18-20)

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus.

19 But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye.

20 For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.

Woe to us if we do not proclaim that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Corinthians 9:16)

1 Corinthians 9:16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

1277. Christ as the true shepherd who will guide us (Jer 23:2-4)
Ezk 34:23, Ezk 37:24, Jn 10:11,14-15, Heb 13:20, 1 Pt 2:25, Rev 7:17

In the Old Testament, God told the shepherds of Israel that He would recompense their evil deeds and raise up a new shepherd in Israel. (Jer 23:2-4, Eze 34:23, Eze 37:24)

Jer 23:2 Therefore thus saith the Lord God of Israel against the pastors that feed my people; Ye have scattered my flock, and driven them away, and have not visited them: behold, I will visit upon you the evil of your doings, saith the Lord.

3 And I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries whither I have driven them, and will bring them again to their folds; and they shall be fruitful and increase.

4 And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the Lord.

Eze 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

Eze 37:24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

Jesus is the true Shepherd sent by God who gave his life to save us. (John 10:11,14-15, Hebrews 13:20, 1 Peter 2:25)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

1 Peter 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

On that day, Christ Jesus, the Lamb of God who became our shepherd, will lead us to the fountain of the water of life, and God will wash away all our tears. (Rev 7:17)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1278. Christ is the righteousness of God who will save us. (Jer 23:5-6)
Mt 1:21, Lk 1:32-33, 1 Cor 1:30

In the Old Testament, God promised to send His righteousness, Christ, to save us. (Jeremiah 23:5-6)

Jeremiah 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

6 In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, The Lord Our Righteousness.

Jesus is the Christ, the righteousness of God who will save us whom God promised to send in the Old Testament. (Matthew 1:2, Luke 1:32-33, 1 Corinthians 1:30)

Matthew 1:2 Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judas and his brethren;

Luke 1:32-33 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

1 Corinthians 1:30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

1279. The Jews persecuted the prophets who foretold the coming of Christ. (Jer 25:4)
Mt 23:29-37, Acts 7:51-52

In the Old Testament, Jeremiah said that the people of Israel did not listen to the prophets sent by God. (Jeremiah 25:4)

Jeremiah 25:4 And the Lord hath sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending them; but ye have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear.

The Israelites persecuted the evangelists sent by Jesus just as they persecuted the prophets sent by God in the Old Testament. (Matthew 23:29-37)

Matthew 23:29 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because ye build the tombs of the prophets, and garnish the sepulchres of the righteous,
30 And say, If we had been in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partakers with them in the blood of the prophets.
31 Wherefore ye be witnesses unto yourselves, that ye are the children of them which killed the prophets.
32 Fill ye up then the measure of your fathers.
33 Ye serpents, ye generation of vipers, how can ye escape the damnation of hell?
34 Wherefore, behold, I send unto you prophets, and wise men, and scribes: and some of them ye shall kill and crucify; and some of them shall ye scourge in your synagogues, and persecute them from city to city:
35 That upon you may come all the righteous blood shed upon the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel unto the blood of Zacharias son of Barachias, whom ye slew between the temple and the altar.
36 Verily I say unto you, All these things shall come upon this generation.
37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

The Israelites persecuted the prophets sent by God and killed the Christ whom the prophets had prophesied of coming. (Acts 7:51-52)

Acts 7:51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

1280. From the seed of David, God raised up Christ, the Savior of Israel. (Jer 30:8-9)
 Ezk 34:23-24, Ezk 37:23-25, Hos 3:5, Lk 1:67-69, Acts 13:22-23

In the Old Testament, God said that He would raise up Christ, the true King, from the seed of David to save us and make Him our shepherd. (Jeremiah 30:8-9, Eze 34:23-24, Eze 37:23-25, Ho 3:5)

Jeremiah 30:8 For it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord of hosts, that I will break his yoke from off thy neck, and will burst thy bonds, and strangers shall no more serve themselves of him:

9 But they shall serve the Lord their God, and David their king, whom I will raise up unto them.

Eze 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

24 And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the Lord have spoken it.

Eze 37:23 Neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with their detestable things, nor with any of their transgressions: but I will save them out of all their dwellingplaces, wherein they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their God.

24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

25 And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever.

Ho 3:5 Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the Lord their God, and David their king; and shall fear the Lord and his goodness in the latter days.

Zacharias prophesied that Jesus, the descendant of David, would save the people of Israel. (Luke 1:67-69)

Luke 1:67 And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Ghost, and prophesied, saying,

68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,

69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;

The descendant of David, whom God spoke of in the Old Testament, the true King who will save us, is Jesus Christ. (Acts 13:22-23)

Acts 13:22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

1281. King Herod killed children to kill the Christ who was born. (Jer 31:15)
Mt 2:13-18

In the Old Testament, the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, descendants of Rachel, went into captivity and many people died. Their ancestor Rachel mourned the death of her descendants. (Jeremiah 31:15)

Jeremiah 31:15 Thus saith the Lord; A voice was heard in Ramah, lamentation, and bitter weeping; Rahel weeping for her children refused to be comforted for her children, because they were not.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus fled to Egypt to escape from Herod's threat. Herod killed all the boys under the age of two to kill Jesus, the Christ. This is the fulfillment of what Jeremiah prophesied. (Mt 2:13-18)

Mt 2:13 And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him.

14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt:

15 And was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Out of Egypt have I called my son.

16 Then Herod, when he saw that he was mocked of the wise men, was exceeding wroth, and sent forth, and slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all the coasts thereof, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently inquired of the wise men.

17 Then was fulfilled that which was spoken by Jeremiah the prophet, saying,

18 In Rama was there a voice heard, lamentation, and weeping, and great mourning, Rachel weeping for her children, and would not be comforted, because they are not.

1282. God's New Covenant: Christ, Not the Law (Jer 31:31-34)
Jer 32:37-14, Heb 8:6-13, Heb 10:12-18

In the Old Testament, God promised to establish a new covenant with the people of Israel. Through the new covenant, God's law will be written on the hearts of the people of Israel, and the people of Israel will become God's people. (Jeremiah 31:31-34, Jeremiah 32:37-44)

Jeremiah 31:31 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah:

32 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was an husband unto them, saith the Lord:

33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

Jeremiah 32:37 Behold, I will gather them out of all countries, whither I have driven them in mine anger, and in my fury, and in great wrath; and I will bring them again unto this place, and I will cause them to dwell safely:

38 And they shall be my people, and I will be their God:

39 And I will give them one heart, and one way, that they may fear me for ever, for the good of them, and of their children after them:

40 And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me.

41 Yea, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with my whole heart and with my whole soul.

42 For thus saith the Lord; Like as I have brought all this great evil upon this people, so will I bring upon them all the good that I have promised them.

43 And fields shall be bought in this land, whereof ye say, It is desolate without man or beast; it is given into the hand of the Chaldeans.

44 Men shall buy fields for money, and subscribe evidences, and seal them, and take witnesses in the land of Benjamin, and in the places about Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, and in the cities of the mountains, and in the cities of the valley, and in the cities of the south: for I will cause their captivity to return, saith the Lord.

The new covenant that God established is not like the Old Testament law. Through the new covenant, God's law is written on the hearts of the people of Israel, and the people of Israel come to know God. (Hebrews 8:6-13)

Hebrews 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

Christ is the new covenant of God who made us eternally perfect by dying as a sacrifice to God for our sins.

(Hebrews 10:12-18)

Hebrews 10:12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;
13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.
14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.
15 Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,
16 This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;
17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.
18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

1283. When the fullness of the Gentiles has come in, God restores the nation of Israel. (Jer 32:43-44)
Jer 32:37, Jer 33:26, Rom 11:25-27

In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites to return from captivity and buy land in Israel. (Jeremiah 32:43-44, Jeremiah 32:37, Jeremiah 33:26)

Jeremiah 32:43 And fields shall be bought in this land, whereof ye say, It is desolate without man or beast; it is given into the hand of the Chaldeans.

44 Men shall buy fields for money, and subscribe evidences, and seal them, and take witnesses in the land of Benjamin, and in the places about Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, and in the cities of the mountains, and in the cities of the valley, and in the cities of the south: for I will cause their captivity to return, saith the Lord.

Jeremiah 32:37 Behold, I will gather them out of all countries, whither I have driven them in mine anger, and in my fury, and in great wrath; and I will bring them again unto this place, and I will cause them to dwell safely:

Jeremiah 33:26 Then will I cast away the seed of Jacob and David my servant, so that I will not take any of his seed to be rulers over the seed of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob: for I will cause their captivity to return, and have mercy on them.

When the fullness of the Gentiles comes in, God saves the people of Israel. (Rom 11:25-27)

Rom 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.

26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

27 For this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.

1284. Christ is the righteousness of God who will save us. (Jer 33:14-17)
Mt 1:21, Lk 1:32-33, 1 Cor 1:30

In the Old Testament, God said that He would send Christ as the descendant of David to save the people of Israel. (Jeremiah 33:14-17)

Jeremiah 33:14 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will perform that good thing which I have promised unto the house of Israel and to the house of Judah.

15 In those days, and at that time, will I cause the Branch of righteousness to grow up unto David; and he shall execute judgment and righteousness in the land.

16 In those days shall Judah be saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell safely: and this is the name wherewith she shall be called, The Lord our righteousness.

17 For thus saith the Lord; David shall never want a man to sit upon the throne of the house of Israel;

Jesus is the Christ who came to save the people of Israel as a descendant of David. (Matthew 1:21, Luke 1:32-33, 1 Corinthians 1:30)

Matthew 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

Luke 1:32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

1 Corinthians 1:30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

1285. Christ is the eternal High Priest. (Jer 33:18)
Heb 7:11-24

In the Old Testament, God appointed priests among the Levites to offer sacrifices to the Israelites. (Jeremiah 33:18)

Jeremiah 33:18 Neither shall the priests the Levites want a man before me to offer burnt offerings, and to kindle meat offerings, and to do sacrifice continually.

The Israelites could not obtain perfection from the Levitical priests of the Old Testament. God ordained Jesus as an eternal priest. (Hebrews 7:11-24)

Hebrews 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar.

14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest,

16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life.

17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.

19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest:

21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)

22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

23 And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death:

24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood.

1286. The Jews killed the prophets and the Christ whom the prophets had promised to come. (Jer 44:4-6) Jer 7:25, Jer 25:4, Jer 29:19, Jer 35:15, Mt 5:12, Mt 23:37, Mt 21:35-36, Acts 7:51-52, 1 Thess 2:15-16

In the Old Testament, God sent prophets to the Israelites to tell them not to do things that God hates. But the Israelites did not listen to the prophets. (Jeremiah 44:4-6, Jer 7:25, Jer 25:4, Jer 29:19, Jer 35:15)

Jeremiah 44:4 Howbeit I sent unto you all my servants the prophets, rising early and sending them, saying, Oh, do not this abominable thing that I hate.

5 But they hearkened not, nor inclined their ear to turn from their wickedness, to burn no incense unto other gods.

6 Wherefore my fury and mine anger was poured forth, and was kindled in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem; and they are wasted and desolate, as at this day.

Jer 7:25 Since the day that your fathers came forth out of the land of Egypt unto this day I have even sent unto you all my servants the prophets, daily rising up early and sending them:

Jer 25:4 And the Lord hath sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending them; but ye have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear.

Jer 29:19 Because they have not hearkened to my words, saith the Lord, which I sent unto them by my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending them; but ye would not hear, saith the Lord.

Jer 35:15 I have sent also unto you all my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending them, saying, Return ye now every man from his evil way, and amend your doings, and go not after other gods to serve them, and ye shall dwell in the land which I have given to you and to your fathers: but ye have not inclined your ear, nor hearkened unto me.

The Israelites did not listen to the righteous, Christ who the Old Testament prophets had promised to come, but rather killed Him. (Matthew 5:12, Matthew 23:37, Matthew 21:35-36, Acts 7:51-52, 1 Thessalonians 2:15-16)

Matthew 5:12 Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.

Matthew 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

Matthew 21:35 And the husbandmen took his servants, and beat one, and killed another, and stoned another. 36 Again, he sent other servants more than the first: and they did unto them likewise.

Acts 7:51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

1 Thessalonians 2:15 Who both killed the Lord Jesus, and their own prophets, and have persecuted us; and they please not God, and are contrary to all men:

16 Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved, to fill up their sins alway: for the wrath is come upon them to the uttermost.

1287. Come and let us join ourselves to the Lord in a perpetual covenant, Christ (Jer 50:5)
Heb 8:10, Rom 6:3-7

In the Old Testament, Jeremiah prophesied that the captives of Israel would be set free and united with God's eternal covenant. (Jeremiah 50:5)

Jeremiah 50:5 They shall ask the way to Zion with their faces thitherward, saying, Come, and let us join ourselves to the Lord in a perpetual covenant that shall not be forgotten.

After that day, God said that He would write the word of God in the hearts of the people of Israel and make the people of Israel God's people. (Hebrews 8:10)

Hebrews 8:10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

We are united to Christ Jesus by dying for us. (Romans 6:3-7)

Romans 6:3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

7 For he that is dead is freed from sin.

1288. Christ waiting for the people of Israel to return (Jer 50:6)
Mt 9:36-37, Mt 10:5-6, Mt 15:24

In the Old Testament, God said that the people of Israel were lost under the guidance of false shepherds. (Jeremiah 50:6)

Jeremiah 50:6 My people hath been lost sheep: their shepherds have caused them to go astray, they have turned them away on the mountains: they have gone from mountain to hill, they have forgotten their restingplace.

Jesus lamented that people suffered and were lost like sheep without a shepherd. And Jesus sent his disciples to find these sheep. (Mt 9:36-37, Mt 10:5-6, Mt 15:24)

Mt 9:36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd.

37 Then saith he unto his disciples, The harvest truly is plenteous, but the labourers are few;

Mt 10:5 These twelve Jesus sent forth, and commanded them, saying, Go not into the way of the Gentiles, and into any city of the Samaritans enter ye not:

6 But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

Mt 15:24 But he answered and said, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

1290. The image of the glory of the Lord, Christ (Ezk 1:26-28)
1291. Preach the gospel because God has appointed us as watchmen. (Ezk 3:17-21)
1292. Christ judges those who do not believe in Him. (Ezk 6:7-10)
1293. We believe in Jesus as the Christ and are sealed with the Holy Spirit. (Ezk 9:4-6)
1294. God poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ among the remnant of Israel and made them His people. (Ezk 11:17-20)
1295. But the righteous will live by their faith. (Ezk 14:14-20)
1296. Those who do not abide in Christ are thrown into the fire and burned. (Ezk 15:2-7)
1297. God's Eternal Covenant to the Israelites: Christ (Ezk 16:60-63)
1298. Christ comes as the descendant of David and gives us true peace. (Ezk 17:22-23)
1299. God wants everyone to be saved. (Ezk 18:23)
1300. Christ the Horn of Israel (Ezk 29:21)
1301. When we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we open our mouths. (Ezk 29:21)
1302. If he does not receive the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, his blood will return to his head. (Ezk 33:2-7)
1303. Believe in Jesus Christ to the end. (Ezk 33:12-13)
1304. The Gospel to Raise the Wicked: Jesus is the Christ. (Ezk 33:14-16)
1305. Christ is the true Shepherd who leads us. (Ezk 34:5)
1306. Christ our true Shepherd, our true King (Ezk 34:23-24)
1307. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Ezk 36:26-28)
1308. God has made us alive by the Holy Spirit given through Christ. (Ezk 37:4-5)
1309. In Christ, Israel in the north and Judah in the south became one, and Jews and Gentiles became one. (Ezk 37:16-23)
1310. God's Covenant of Peace to Us: Christ (Ezk 37:24-28)
1311. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Ezk 39:29)
1312. Christ the water of life (Ezk 47:1-12)

1290. The image of the glory of the Lord, Christ (Ezk 1:26-28)
 Rev 1:13-18, Col 1:14-15, Heb 1:2-3

In the Old Testament, when Ezekiel saw the image of God's glory, he fell down before the image and heard his voice. (Ezekiel 1:26-28)

Ezekiel 1:26 And above the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it.

27 And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and it had brightness round about.

28 As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain, so was the appearance of the brightness round about. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the Lord. And when I saw it, I fell upon my face, and I heard a voice of one that spake.

In a vision, John saw and heard the resurrected Christ Jesus. (Rev 1:13-18)

Rev 1:13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.

14 His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire;

15 And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters.

16 And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went a sharp twoedged sword: and his countenance was as the sun shineth in his strength.

17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:

18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.

Christ Jesus is the image of God. (Col 1:14-15, Hebrews 1:2-3)

Col 1:14 In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:

15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

Hebrews 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

1291. Preach the gospel because God has appointed us as watchmen. (Ezk 3:17-21)
Rom 10:13-15, 1 Cor 9:16

In the Old Testament, God appointed Ezekiel as a watchman for the people of Israel to spread the gospel. (Ezekiel 3:17-21)

Ezekiel 3:17 Son of man, I have made thee a watchman unto the house of Israel: therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me.

18 When I say unto the wicked, Thou shalt surely die; and thou givest him not warning, nor speakest to warn the wicked from his wicked way, to save his life; the same wicked man shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thine hand.

19 Yet if thou warn the wicked, and he turn not from his wickedness, nor from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but thou hast delivered thy soul.

20 Again, When a righteous man doth turn from his righteousness, and commit iniquity, and I lay a stumbling-block before him, he shall die: because thou hast not given him warning, he shall die in his sin, and his righteousness which he hath done shall not be remembered; but his blood will I require at thine hand.

21 Nevertheless if thou warn the righteous man, that the righteous sin not, and he doth not sin, he shall surely live, because he is warned; also thou hast delivered thy soul.

God has established us as watchmen who preach the gospel of salvation. If we do not preach the gospel of salvation, people cannot hear the gospel of salvation. (Romans 10:13-15)

Romans 10:13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

14 How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?

15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

Woe to us if we do not preach the gospel. (1 Corinthians 9:16)

1 Corinthians 9:16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

1292. Christ judges those who do not believe in Him. (Ezk 6:7-10)
 Jn 3:16-17, Rom 10:9, 2 Tim 4:1-2, Jn 5:26-27, Acts 10:42-43,
 1 Cor 3:11-15, 2 Cor 5:10, Acts 17:30-31, Rev 20:12-15

In the Old Testament, God said that He judges those who do not believe in Him. Only then do people know that God is God. (Ezekiel 6:7-10)

Ezekiel 6:7 And the slain shall fall in the midst of you, and ye shall know that I am the Lord.

8 Yet will I leave a remnant, that ye may have some that shall escape the sword among the nations, when ye shall be scattered through the countries.

9 And they that escape of you shall remember me among the nations whither they shall be carried captives, because I am broken with their whorish heart, which hath departed from me, and with their eyes, which go a whoring after their idols: and they shall lothe themselves for the evils which they have committed in all their abominations.

10 And they shall know that I am the Lord, and that I have not said in vain that I would do this evil unto them.

God gave Jesus the Son of God the authority to judge the world. (John 5:26-27, Acts 10:42-43, 1 Corinthians 3:11-15, 2 Corinthians 5:10, Acts 17:30-31, Revelation 20:12-15)

John 5:26 For as the Father hath life in himself; so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself;

27 And hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man.

Acts 10:42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

1 Corinthians 3:11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;

13 Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is.

14 If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

15 If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.

2 Corinthians 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

Acts 17:30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:

31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

Revelation 20:12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.

14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.

15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

God did not send Christ to judge the world, but He sent Christ to this earth to save the world. (John 3:16-17)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

Therefore, we must confess Jesus as Lord and Christ to be saved. (Romans 10:9)

Romans 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

Also, we must tell everyone that Jesus is the Christ so that they can believe before they are judged. (2 Timothy 4:1-2)

2 Timothy 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

1293. We believe in Jesus as the Christ and are sealed with the Holy Spirit. (Ezk 9:4-6)
Mk 16:15-16, Ackts 2:33-36, Acts 5:31-32, Rom 4:11, Gal 3:14,
Eph 1:13, Eph 4:30, Rev 7:2-3, Rev 9:4, Rev 14:1

In the Old Testament, God put a mark on the foreheads of those who lamented the abominations of the people of Israel and killed all but those who had a mark on their foreheads. (Ezek 9:4-6)

Ezek 9:4 And the Lord said unto him, Go through the midst of the city, through the midst of Jerusalem, and set a mark upon the foreheads of the men that sigh and that cry for all the abominations that be done in the midst thereof.
5 And to the others he said in mine hearing, Go ye after him through the city, and smite: let not your eye spare, neither have ye pity:
6 Slay utterly old and young, both maids, and little children, and women: but come not near any man upon whom is the mark; and begin at my sanctuary. Then they began at the ancient men which were before the house.

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will be condemned. (Mark 16:15-16)

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.
16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.

God has poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:33-36, Acts 5:31-32)

Acts 2:33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.
34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,
35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.
36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.
32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

God has sealed us with the Holy Spirit who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Eph 1:13, Eph 4:30, Ro 4:11, Gal 3:14)

Eph 1:13 In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

Eph 4:30 And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption.

Ro 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also:

Gal 3:14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

God does not judge those who believe in Jesus as the Christ and are sealed with the Holy Spirit. (Rev 7:2-3, Rev 9:4, Rev 14:1)

Rev 7:2 And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea,

3 Saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads.

Rev 9:4 And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads.

Rev 14:1 And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having his Father's name written in their foreheads.

1294. God poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ among the remnant of Israel and made them His people. (Ezk 11:17-20)

Heb 8:10-12, Acts 5:31-32

[Lists](#)

In the Old Testament, God spoke of giving the Holy Spirit of God into the hearts of the remnant of Israel to make them His people. (Ezek 11:17-20)

Ezek 11:17 Therefore say, Thus saith the Lord God; I will even gather you from the people, and assemble you out of the countries where ye have been scattered, and I will give you the land of Israel.

18 And they shall come thither, and they shall take away all the detestable things thereof and all the abominations thereof from thence.

19 And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh:

20 That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God.

The writer of Hebrews quoted from the Old Testament and said that God had put the word of God in the hearts of the people of Israel so that they might come to know God. (Hebrews 8:10-12)

Hebrews 8:10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

As promised in the Old Testament, God poured out the Holy Spirit on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 5:31-32)

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

1295. But the righteous will live by their faith. (Ezk 14:14-20)
 Ezk 18:2-4, 20, Heb 11:6-7, Rom 1:17

In the Old Testament, God said that people would be saved by believing in Him themselves. In other words, we cannot be saved through the faith of others. (Eze 14:14-20, Eze 18:2-4, 20)

Eze 14:14 Though these three men, Noah, Daniel, and Job, were in it, they should deliver but their own souls by their righteousness, saith the Lord God.

15 If I cause noisome beasts to pass through the land, and they spoil it, so that it be desolate, that no man may pass through because of the beasts:

16 Though these three men were in it, as I live, saith the Lord God, they shall deliver neither sons nor daughters; they only shall be delivered, but the land shall be desolate.

17 Or if I bring a sword upon that land, and say, Sword, go through the land; so that I cut off man and beast from it:

18 Though these three men were in it, as I live, saith the Lord God, they shall deliver neither sons nor daughters, but they only shall be delivered themselves.

19 Or if I send a pestilence into that land, and pour out my fury upon it in blood, to cut off from it man and beast:

20 Though Noah, Daniel, and Job were in it, as I live, saith the Lord God, they shall deliver neither son nor daughter; they shall but deliver their own souls by their righteousness.

Eze 18:2 What mean ye, that ye use this proverb concerning the land of Israel, saying, The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge?

3 As I live, saith the Lord God, ye shall not have occasion any more to use this proverb in Israel.

4 Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die.

20 The soul that sinneth, it shall die. The son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, neither shall the father bear the iniquity of the son: the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him.

In order to please God, we must believe that God exists. (Heb 11:6-7)

Heb 11:6 But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

7 By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith.

Ultimately, we are saved by believing in Christ Jesus, the righteous man of God. (Romans 1:17)

Romans 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

1296. Those who do not abide in Christ are thrown into the fire and burned. (Ezk 15:2-7)
Jn 15:5-6, Rev 20:15

In the Old Testament, God said that the people of Israel who did not believe in God would be thrown into the fire and burned. (Ezekiel 15:2-7)

Ezekiel 15:2 Son of man, what is the vine tree more than any tree, or than a branch which is among the trees of the forest?

3 Shall wood be taken thereof to do any work? or will men take a pin of it to hang any vessel thereon?

4 Behold, it is cast into the fire for fuel; the fire devoureth both the ends of it, and the midst of it is burned. Is it meet for any work?

5 Behold, when it was whole, it was meet for no work: how much less shall it be meet yet for any work, when the fire hath devoured it, and it is burned?

6 Therefore thus saith the Lord God; As the vine tree among the trees of the forest, which I have given to the fire for fuel, so will I give the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

7 And I will set my face against them; they shall go out from one fire, and another fire shall devour them; and ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I set my face against them.

Those who do not abide in Christ Jesus will be thrown into the fire and burned. (John 15:5-6)

John 15:5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.

6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will not be written in God's book of life and will be thrown into the lake of fire. (Rev 20:15)

Rev 20:15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

1297. God's Eternal Covenant to the Israelites: Christ (Ezk 16:60-63)
 Heb 8:6-13, Heb 13:20, Mt 26:28

In the Old Testament, God gave the Israelites eternal promises. (Ezekiel 16:60-63)

Ezekiel 16:60 Nevertheless I will remember my covenant with thee in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto thee an everlasting covenant.

61 Then thou shalt remember thy ways, and be ashamed, when thou shalt receive thy sisters, thine elder and thy younger: and I will give them unto thee for daughters, but not by thy covenant.

62 And I will establish my covenant with thee; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord:

63 That thou mayest remember, and be confounded, and never open thy mouth any more because of thy shame, when I am pacified toward thee for all that thou hast done, saith the Lord God.

God has given us a new, everlasting covenant that will not grow old. (Hebrews 8:6-13)

Hebrews 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

The eternal covenant God has given us is Christ Jesus, who shed His blood to save us. (Hebrews 13:20, Matt 26:28)

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

Matt 26:28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

1298. Christ comes as the descendant of David and gives us true peace. (Ezk 17:22-23)
Lk 1:31-33, Rom 1:3, Isa 53:2, Jn 1:47-51, Mt 13:31-32

In the Old Testament, God said that the people of Israel would rest at the top of the cedar tree, namely, by appointing one person from the family of David. (Eze 17:22-23)

Eze 17:22 Thus saith the Lord God; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar, and will set it; I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent:

23 In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it: and it shall bring forth boughs, and bear fruit, and be a goodly cedar: and under it shall dwell all fowl of every wing; in the shadow of the branches thereof shall they dwell.

Jesus is the Christ who inherited David's kingship forever as a descendant of David. (Luke 1:31-33, Romans 1:3)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Romans 1:3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;

Jesus knew that Nathanael was thinking of the coming Christ under the fig tree. (John 1:47-51)

John 1:47 Jesus saw Nathanael coming to him, and saith of him, Behold an Israelite indeed, in whom is no guile!

48 Nathanael saith unto him, Whence knowest thou me? Jesus answered and said unto him, Before that Philip called thee, when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee.

49 Nathanael answered and saith unto him, Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel.

50 Jesus answered and said unto him, Because I said unto thee, I saw thee under the fig tree, believest thou? thou shalt see greater things than these.

51 And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.

Jesus was like a tender shoot and as unsightly as a mustard seed, but he is the Christ who gives peace to all. (Isa 53:2, Mt 13:31-32)

Isa 53:2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him.

Mt 13:31 Another parable put he forth unto them, saying, The kingdom of heaven is like to a grain of mustard seed, which a man took, and sowed in his field:

32 Which indeed is the least of all seeds: but when it is grown, it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree, so that the birds of the air come and lodge in the branches thereof.

1299. God wants everyone to be saved. (Ezk 18:23)
Ezk 18:32, Lk 15:7, 1 Tim 2:4, 2 Pt 3:9, 2 Cor 6:2, Acts 16:31

In the Old Testament, God wanted the wicked to turn and turn from his way and be saved. (Ezekiel 18:23, Ezekiel 18:32)

Ezekiel 18:23 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

Ezekiel 18:32 For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: wherefore turn yourselves, and live ye.

God wants everyone to be saved. (1 Timothy 2:4, Luke 15:7, 2 Pet 3:9)

1 Timothy 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

Luke 15:7 I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, which need no repentance.

2 Pet 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

Today is the day of grace when you can receive salvation by believing in Jesus as the Christ. Therefore, people must believe in Jesus as the Christ to be saved. (2 Corinthians 6:2, Acts 16:31)

2 Corinthians 6:2 (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)

Acts 16:31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

1300. Christ, the Horn of Israel (Ezk 29:21)

Ps 132:17, Lk 1:68-69

In the Old Testament, God said that He would raise up a man from David's descendants who would show God's power so that people would come to know God through him. (Eze 29:21, Ps 132:17)

Eze 29:21 In that day will I cause the horn of the house of Israel to bud forth, and I will give thee the opening of the mouth in the midst of them; and they shall know that I am the Lord.

Ps 132:17 There will I make the horn of David to bud: I have ordained a lamp for mine anointed.

Jesus is the Christ, the descendant of David, who came to save the people of Israel. (Luke 1:68-69)

Luke 1:68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;

1301. When we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we open our mouths. (Ezk 29:21)
Ezk 24:25-27, Joel 2:28, Acts 2:1-18, Acts 4:18-20

In the Old Testament, God spoke of raising up Christ from the descendants of David on that day, and through Him who will come, all will meet God. (Ezekiel 29:21, Ezekiel 24:25-27)

Ezekiel 29:21 In that day will I cause the horn of the house of Israel to bud forth, and I will give thee the opening of the mouth in the midst of them; and they shall know that I am the Lord.

Ezekiel 24:25 Also, thou son of man, shall it not be in the day when I take from them their strength, the joy of their glory, the desire of their eyes, and that whereupon they set their minds, their sons and their daughters,
26 That he that escapeth in that day shall come unto thee, to cause thee to hear it with thine ears?
27 In that day shall thy mouth be opened to him which is escaped, and thou shalt speak, and be no more dumb: and thou shalt be a sign unto them; and they shall know that I am the Lord.

God said that He would pour out His Spirit on those who believed in Him. (Joel 2:28)

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

God poured out the Holy Spirit on all who believe in Jesus as the Christ to open their mouths to preach the gospel. (Acts 2:1-18)

Acts 2:1 And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.
2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.
3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.
4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.
5 And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.
6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.
7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?
8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?
9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,
10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,
11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.
12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?
13 Others mocking said, These men are full of new wine.
14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:
15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day.
16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;
17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

We cannot but say that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 4:18-20)

Acts 4:18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus.
19 But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you

more than unto God, judge ye.

20 For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.

1302. If he does not receive the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, his blood will return to his head. (Ezk 33:2-7) [Lists](#)
 Acts 18:5-6, Acts 13:45-47, Acts 20:26-27

In the Old Testament, God said that if a man hears the trumpet of God's judgment and does not repent, his blood will return to his head. (Eze 33:2-7)

Eze 33:2 Son of man, speak to the children of thy people, and say unto them, When I bring the sword upon a land, if the people of the land take a man of their coasts, and set him for their watchman:

3 If when he seeth the sword come upon the land, he blow the trumpet, and warn the people;

4 Then whosoever heareth the sound of the trumpet, and taketh not warning; if the sword come, and take him away, his blood shall be upon his own head.

5 He heard the sound of the trumpet, and took not warning; his blood shall be upon him. But he that taketh warning shall deliver his soul.

6 But if the watchman see the sword come, and blow not the trumpet, and the people be not warned; if the sword come, and take any person from among them, he is taken away in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at the watchman's hand.

7 So thou, O son of man, I have set thee a watchman unto the house of Israel; therefore thou shalt hear the word at my mouth, and warn them from me.

Paul testified to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ. But the Jews did not believe and it was their responsibility that they were not saved. (Acts 18:5-6, Acts 20:26-27)

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

6 And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook his raiment, and said unto them, Your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean; from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles.

Acts 20:26 Wherefore I take you to record this day, that I am pure from the blood of all men.

27 For I have not shunned to declare unto you all the counsel of God.

Because the Jews did not receive the gospel that Jesus was the Christ, this gospel was directed to the Gentiles as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 13:45-47)

Acts 13:45 But when the Jews saw the multitudes, they were filled with envy, and spake against those things which were spoken by Paul, contradicting and blaspheming.

46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

1303. Believe in Jesus Christ to the end. (Ezk 33:12-13)
Heb 2:3, Heb 12:25, Phil 2:12, 1 Cor 16:22, Rev 14:12

In the Old Testament, God said that even a righteous person will die if he believes in his own righteousness and commits iniquity. (Eze 33:12-13)

Eze 33:12 Therefore, thou son of man, say unto the children of thy people, The righteousness of the righteous shall not deliver him in the day of his transgression: as for the wickedness of the wicked, he shall not fall thereby in the day that he turneth from his wickedness; neither shall the righteous be able to live for his righteousness in the day that he sinneth.

13 When I shall say to the righteous, that he shall surely live; if he trust to his own righteousness, and commit iniquity, all his righteousnesses shall not be remembered; but for his iniquity that he hath committed, he shall die for it.

We must not neglect the great salvation that God has given us. (Heb 2:3, Heb 12:25)

Heb 2:3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him;

Heb 12:25 See that ye refuse not him that speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused him that spake on earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from him that speaketh from heaven:

Therefore, we must believe to the end that Jesus is the Christ and love Him to the end. (Phil 2:12, 1 Corinthians 16:22, Revelation 14:12)

Phil 2:12 Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.

1 Corinthians 16:22 f any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

Revelation 14:12 Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus.

1304. The Gospel to Raise the Wicked: Jesus is the Christ.(Ezk 33:14-16)
Acts 2:36-41, Acts 3:14-26, Acts 16:30-32, Act 13:46-48

In the Old Testament, God said that if the wicked hear the word of God and turn away from their sins, God will not remember their sins and raise them to life. (Eze 33:14-16)

Eze 33:14 Again, when I say unto the wicked, Thou shalt surely die; if he turn from his sin, and do that which is lawful and right;

15 If the wicked restore the pledge, give again that he had robbed, walk in the statutes of life, without committing iniquity; he shall surely live, he shall not die.

16 None of his sins that he hath committed shall be mentioned unto him: he hath done that which is lawful and right; he shall surely live.

When the Jews realized that Jesus was the Christ they had crucified, they repented and believed in Jesus as the Christ. And they were forgiven of their sins by God. (Acts 2:36-41, Acts 3:14-26)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.

41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

16 And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom ye see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.

17 And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance ye did it, as did also your rulers.

18 But those things, which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.

20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.

24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

25 Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

26 Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.

Anyone who believes in Jesus as the Christ will be saved. (Acts 16:30-32)

Acts 16:30 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved?

31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.

However, most Jews did not believe in Jesus as the Christ. So the gospel of salvation that Jesus is the Christ was directed to the Gentiles. (Acts 13:46-48)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

1305. Christ is the true Shepherd who leads us. (Ezk 34:5)
Ezk 34:11-15, Mt 9:36, Jn 10:11-15, 1 Pt 2:25

Ezk 34:5 And they were scattered, because there is no shepherd: and they became meat to all the beasts of the field, when they were scattered.

Ezk 34:11 For thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I, even I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out.

12 As a shepherd seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep that are scattered; so will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day.

13 And I will bring them out from the people, and gather them from the countries, and will bring them to their own land, and feed them upon the mountains of Israel by the rivers, and in all the inhabited places of the country.

14 I will feed them in a good pasture, and upon the high mountains of Israel shall their fold be: there shall they lie in a good fold, and in a fat pasture shall they feed upon the mountains of Israel.

15 I will feed my flock, and I will cause them to lie down, saith the Lord God.

Mt 9:36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd.

Jn 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

12 But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.

13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

1 Pt 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

1306. Christ our true Shepherd, our true King (Ezk 34:23-24)
Ezk 37:24-25, Heb 13:20, 1 Pt 2:25, 1 Pt 5:4, Rev 7:17, Lk 1:31-33, Acts 5:31

In the Old Testament, God said that He would raise a shepherd from the descendants of David to be our king and guide us. (Ezekiel 34:23-24, Ezekiel 37:24-25)

Ezekiel 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

24 And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the Lord have spoken it.

Ezekiel 37:24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

25 And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever.

Jesus is the Christ, our true Shepherd, who came as a descendant of David. (Luke 1:31-33, Acts 5:31)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

God raised Jesus to be our shepherd, and He made Him die to save us. And God resurrected Jesus. (Hebrews 13:20)

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

Now we have come back to Jesus by believing in Jesus as the Christ, and we will receive the crown of glory and be led to the fountain of the water of life. (1 Pet 2:25, 1 Pet 5:4, Rev 7:17)

1 Pet 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

1 Pet 5:4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

Rev 7:17 or the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

1307. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Ezk 36:26-28)
Joel 2:28, Acts 2:14-22, Acts 2:38, Acts 5:30-32

God has promised to pour out His Spirit on those who believe in Him. (Ezekiel 36:26-28, Joel 2:28)

Ezekiel 36:26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.

27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.

28 And ye shall dwell in the land that I gave to your fathers; and ye shall be my people, and I will be your God.

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

God has poured out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:14-22, Acts 2:38, Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 2:14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:

15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day.

16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:

20 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and notable day of the Lord come:

21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

1308. God has made us alive by the Holy Spirit given through Christ. (Ezk 37:4-5)
Rom 8:2, Eph 2:5, Col 2:13

In the Old Testament, God gave life to dry bones and gave them life. (Ezekiel 37:4-5)

Ezekiel 37:4 Again he said unto me, Prophecy upon these bones, and say unto them, O ye dry bones, hear the word of the Lord.

5 Thus saith the Lord God unto these bones; Behold, I will cause breath to enter into you, and ye shall live:

God has poured out the Holy Spirit on us who believe in Jesus Christ so that we can live. (Rom 8:2, Ephesians 2:5, Col 2:13)

Rom 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Ephesians 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

1309. In Christ, Israel in the north and Judah in the south became one, and Jews and Gentiles became one. (Ezk 37:16-23)

Jn 4:9, 20-26, 40-42, Jn 17:21, Acts 2:43-47, Eph 2:12-18

In the Old Testament, God said that the Israelites from the north and the Jews from the south, who were scattered across the nations, would gather together and become one under one king, and all of them would become God's people. (Ezekiel 37:16-23)

Ezekiel 37:16 Moreover, thou son of man, take thee one stick, and write upon it, For Judah, and for the children of Israel his companions: then take another stick, and write upon it, For Joseph, the stick of Ephraim and for all the house of Israel his companions:

17 And join them one to another into one stick; and they shall become one in thine hand.

18 And when the children of thy people shall speak unto thee, saying, Wilt thou not shew us what thou meanest by these?

19 Say unto them, Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in mine hand.

20 And the sticks whereon thou writest shall be in thine hand before their eyes.

21 And say unto them, Thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, whither they be gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land:

22 And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all: and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all.

23 Neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with their detestable things, nor with any of their transgressions: but I will save them out of all their dwellingplaces, wherein they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their God.

The Israelites in the north worshiped God in Samaria, and the Jews in the south worship God in Jerusalem. Now, the Samaritans of northern Israel and the southern Jews can worship God through Jesus the Christ. (John 4:9,20-26,40-42)

John 4:9 Then saith the woman of Samaria unto him, How is it that thou, being a Jew, askest drink of me, which am a woman of Samaria? for the Jews have no dealings with the Samaritans.

20 Our fathers worshipped in this mountain; and ye say, that in Jerusalem is the place where men ought to worship.

21 Jesus saith unto her, Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when ye shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father.

22 Ye worship ye know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews.

23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.

24 God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

25 The woman saith unto him, I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things.

26 Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he.

40 So when the Samaritans were come unto him, they besought him that he would tarry with them: and he abode there two days.

41 And many more believed because of his own word;

42 And said unto the woman, Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard him ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we all become one. (John 17:21)

John 17:21 That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me.

By believing in Jesus as the Christ, we are all one. (Acts 2:43-47)

Acts 2:43 And fear came upon every soul: and many wonders and signs were done by the apostles.

44 And all that believed were together, and had all things common;

45 And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men, as every man had need.

46 And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart,

47 Praising God, and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.

When Jews and Gentiles believe in Jesus as the Christ, they become one. (Eph 2:12-18)

Eph 2:12 That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world:

13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.

14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

1310. God's Covenant of Peace to Us: Christ (Ezk 37:24-28)

Rom 5:1,10-11, 2 Cor 5:18-19, Acts 10:36, Eph 2:16-18, Col 1:19-20, 1 Jn 2:2, 1 Jn 4:10

God promised to make a covenant of peace with us by sending Christ as the descendant of David. (Ezekiel 37:24-27)

Ezekiel 37:24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

25 And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever.

26 Moreover I will make a covenant of peace with them; it shall be an everlasting covenant with them: and I will place them, and multiply them, and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore.

27 My tabernacle also shall be with them: yea, I will be their God, and they shall be my people.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we will have peace with God. (Romans 5:1,10-11)

Romans 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

11 And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.

Through Christ Jesus, we have been able to enjoy peace with God, and we have been able to preach the gospel of peace to people. (2 Corinthians 5:18, Acts 10:36, Ephesians 2:16-18, Col 1:19, 1 John 2:2)

2 Corinthians 5:18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

Ephesians 2:16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

Col 1:19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

1311. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Ezk 39:29)
Joel 2:28, Acts 2:14-22, Acts 2:38, Acts 5:30-32

God promised to pour out His Spirit on the Israelites. (Eze 39:29, Joel 2:28)

Eze 39:29 Neither will I hide my face any more from them: for I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord God.

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:14-22, Acts 2:38, Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 2:14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:

15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day.

16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:

20 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and notable day of the Lord come:

21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

1312. Christ, the water of life (Ezk 47:1-12)
Jn 4:14, Jn 7:37-39

In the Old Testament, Ezekiel in a vision saw the water of life flowing out of the temple and raising all the dead. (Ezekiel 47:1-12)

Ezekiel 47:1 Afterward he brought me again unto the door of the house; and, behold, waters issued out from under the threshold of the house eastward: for the forefront of the house stood toward the east, and the waters came down from under from the right side of the house, at the south side of the altar.

2 Then brought he me out of the way of the gate northward, and led me about the way without unto the utter gate by the way that looketh eastward; and, behold, there ran out waters on the right side.

3 And when the man that had the line in his hand went forth eastward, he measured a thousand cubits, and he brought me through the waters; the waters were to the ankles.

4 Again he measured a thousand, and brought me through the waters; the waters were to the knees. Again he measured a thousand, and brought me through; the waters were to the loins.

5 Afterward he measured a thousand; and it was a river that I could not pass over: for the waters were risen, waters to swim in, a river that could not be passed over.

6 And he said unto me, Son of man, hast thou seen this? Then he brought me, and caused me to return to the brink of the river.

7 Now when I had returned, behold, at the bank of the river were very many trees on the one side and on the other.

8 Then said he unto me, These waters issue out toward the east country, and go down into the desert, and go into the sea: which being brought forth into the sea, the waters shall be healed.

9 And it shall come to pass, that every thing that liveth, which moveth, whithersoever the rivers shall come, shall live: and there shall be a very great multitude of fish, because these waters shall come thither: for they shall be healed; and every thing shall live whither the river cometh.

10 And it shall come to pass, that the fishers shall stand upon it from Engedi even unto Eneglaim; they shall be a place to spread forth nets; their fish shall be according to their kinds, as the fish of the great sea, exceeding many.

11 But the miry places thereof and the marishes thereof shall not be healed; they shall be given to salt.

12 And by the river upon the bank thereof, on this side and on that side, shall grow all trees for meat, whose leaf shall not fade, neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed: it shall bring forth new fruit according to his months, because their waters they issued out of the sanctuary: and the fruit thereof shall be for meat, and the leaf thereof for medicine.

Jesus poured out the water of life, that is, the Holy Spirit, on those who believed in Him as the Christ. (John 4:14, John 7:37-39)

John 4:14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

John 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

1313. Christ becomes the stone untouched, destroying all dominion and all authority and power, and reigns over the world. (Dan 2:34-35)
1314. Christ is with us and protects us. (Dan 3:23-29)
1315. Don't be arrogant. The only leader is Christ. (Dan 4:25,37)
1316. God sends angels to protect and guide us. (Dan 6:19-22)
1317. Christ will come again in the clouds and reign for ever and ever. (Dan 7:13-14)
1318. Christ will judge the world with justice, destroy the power of Satan, save us who believe in Christ, and reign with us for ever and ever. (Dan 7:21-27)
1319. The angel Gabriel informed Daniel when Christ would come as King and when Christ would die. (Dan 9:24-26)
1320. The Antichrist and the Great Tribulation in the Last Days (Dan 9:27)
1321. Even during the great tribulation, those who are written in the book of life will be saved. (Dan 12:1)
1322. The resurrection of those who believe in Jesus Christ (Dan 12:2)
1323. Those who preach the gospel so that many may be saved will shine like the stars forever. (Dan 12:3)
1324. Only then will the end come, until the full number of the Gentiles has been reached, that is, after the gospel has been preached throughout the world. (Dan 12:7)

1313. Christ becomes the stone untouched, destroying all dominion and all authority and power, and reigns over the world. (Dan 2:34-35)

[Lists](#)

Dan 2:44-45, Mt 21:44, Lk 20:17-18, 1 Cor 15:24, Rev 11:15

In the Old Testament, Daniel saw in a vision that a single cut stone would destroy all idols and fill the whole world. (Dan 2:34-35,44-45)

Dan 2:34 Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces.

35 Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.

44 And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.

45 Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.

Jesus also said that the stone that the builders rejected would break all authority as recorded in the Old Testament. (Matthew 21:44, Luke 20:17-18)

Matthew 21:44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Luke 20:17 And he beheld them, and said, What is this then that is written, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?

18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Jesus is the Christ who destroyed all principalities and all authority and power. (1 Corinthians 15:24)

1 Corinthians 15:24 Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.

When Jesus returns, He will judge the world and reign forever. (Revelation 11:15)

Revelation 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

1314. Christ is with us and protects us. (Dan 3:23-29)

Isa 43:2, Mt 28:20, Mk 16:18, Acts 28:5

In the Old Testament, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were thrown into a fiery furnace, but God protected them. (Da 3:23-29)

Da 3:23 And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.

24 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king.

25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.

26 Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the mouth of the burning fiery furnace, and spake, and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, ye servants of the most high God, come forth, and come hither. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, came forth of the midst of the fire.

27 And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.

28 Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own God.

29 Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak any thing amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, shall be cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dunghill: because there is no other God that can deliver after this sort.

God said that He would protect the people of Israel from both water and fire. (Isa 43:2)

Isa 43:2 When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee: when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon thee.

For those of us who believe in Jesus as the Christ, Jesus is always with us and protects us. (Mt 28:20, Mark 16:18, Acts 28:5)

Mt 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:18 They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

Acts 28:5 And he shook off the beast into the fire, and felt no harm.

1315. Don't be arrogant. The only leader is Christ. (Dan 4:25,37)
Mt 23:10

King Nebuchadnezzar, who acted proudly in the Old Testament, was driven out by people for 7 years and lived a painful life, and then he confessed that only God was worthy of praise. (Da 4:25,37)

Da 4:25 That they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field, and they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and they shall wet thee with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass over thee, till thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will.

37 Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour the King of heaven, all whose works are truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to abase.

The only leader in the world is Christ. (Mt 23:10)

Mt 23:10 Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ.

1316. God sends angels to protect and guide us. (Dan 6:19-22)
 Heb 1:14, Acts 12:5-11, Acts 27:23-24

In the Old Testament, God sent an angel to protect Daniel, who was thrown into the lions' den. (Da 6:19-22)

Da 6:19 Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions.

20 And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions?

21 Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever.

22 My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.

God sends angels to protect and guide us who have been saved. (Heb 1:14, Acts 12:5-11, Acts 27:23-24)

Heb 1:14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

Acts 12:5 Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing of the church unto God for him.

6 And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door kept the prison.

7 And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon him, and a light shined in the prison: and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from his hands.

8 And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals. And so he did. And he saith unto him, Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me.

9 And he went out, and followed him; and wist not that it was true which was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision.

10 When they were past the first and the second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth unto the city; which opened to them of his own accord: and they went out, and passed on through one street; and forthwith the angel departed from him.

11 And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from all the expectation of the people of the Jews.

Acts 27:23 For there stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve,

24 Saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Caesar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee.

1317. Christ will come again in the clouds and reign for ever and ever. (Dan 7:13-14)
Mt 24:30, Mt 26:64, Mk 13:26, Mk 14:61-62, Lk 21:27, Rev 1:7, Rev 11:15

In the Old Testament, Daniel saw in a vision that God gave Christ, who came in the cloud, with all authority over the world. (Da 7:13-14)

Da 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

Christ will come on the clouds with power and great glory to reign for ever and ever. (Matthew 24:30, Matthew 26:64, Mark 13:26, Mark 14:61-62, Luke 21:27, Revelation 1:7, Revelation 11:15)

Matthew 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

Matthew 26:64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

Mark 13:26 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.

Mark 14:61 But he held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him, Art thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed?

62 And Jesus said, I am: and ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

Luke 21:27 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.

Revelation 1:7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.

Revelation 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

1318. Christ will judge the world with justice, destroy the power of Satan, save us who believe in Christ, and reign with us for ever and ever. (Dan 7:21-27)
Rev 11:15, Rev 13:5, Rev 17:14, Rev 19:19-20, Rev 22:5

In the Old Testament, Daniel saw in a vision that Christ, the horn of God, with the saints, defeated the enemies, and reigned forever with God's people in the world. (Da 7:21-27)

Da 7:21 I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them;
22 Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.
23 Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.
24 And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.
25 And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.
26 But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy it unto the end.
27 And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him.

The Lamb of God, Jesus Christ, will fight and overcome the enemy with the saints. And Christ will rule the world for ever and ever with the saints. (Rev 17:14, Rev 19:19-20, Rev 11:15, Rev 22:5)

Rev 17:14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

Rev 19:19 And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army.
20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.

Rev 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

Rev 22:5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.

1319. The angel Gabriel informed Daniel when Christ would come as King and when Christ would die. (Dan 9:24-26)

1 Pt 1:10-11, Neh 2:1,8, Mt 26:17-18, Lk 19:38-40, Zech 9:9, Jn 19:31

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

25 Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.

26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.

The Old Testament foretold when Christ would suffer and when He would be glorified. (1 Peter 1:10-11)

1 Peter 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would enter Jerusalem riding on a colt. (Zec 9:9)

Zec 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a donkey. (Luke 19:38-40)

Luke 19:38 Saying, Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the Lord: peace in heaven, and glory in the highest.

39 And some of the Pharisees from among the multitude said unto him, Master, rebuke thy disciples.

40 And he answered and said unto them, I tell you that, if these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out.

Jesus died on the day prophesied in the Old Testament. (Matthew 26:17-18, John 19:31)

Matthew 26:17 Now the first day of the feast of unleavened bread the disciples came to Jesus, saying unto him, Where wilt thou that we prepare for thee to eat the passover?

18 And he said, Go into the city to such a man, and say unto him, The Master saith, My time is at hand; I will keep the passover at thy house with my disciples.

John 19:31 The Jews therefore, because it was the preparation, that the bodies should not remain upon the cross on the sabbath day, (for that sabbath day was an high day,) besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.

1320. The Antichrist and the Great Tribulation in the Last Days (Dan 9:27)
 Dan 11:31, Dan 12:11, Mt 24:15-28, 2 Thess 2:1-8

In the Old Testament, God spoke of things that would happen in the last days. (Dan 9:27, Dan 11:31, Dan 12:11)

Dan 9:27 And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.

Dan 11:31 And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate.

Dan 12:11 And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days.

Jesus said that there will be great tribulation when the abomination of destruction prophesied in the book of Daniel is seen standing in the holy place, and false Christs and false prophets will arise and deceive the elect. (Matthew 24:15-28)

Matthew 24:15 When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:)

16 Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains:

17 Let him which is on the housetop not come down to take any thing out of his house:

18 Neither let him which is in the field return back to take his clothes.

19 And woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck in those days!

20 But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day:

21 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be.

22 And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.

23 Then if any man shall say unto you, Lo, here is Christ, or there; believe it not.

24 For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

25 Behold, I have told you before.

26 Wherefore if they shall say unto you, Behold, he is in the desert; go not forth: behold, he is in the secret chambers; believe it not.

27 For as the lightning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

28 For wheresoever the carcase is, there will the eagles be gathered together.

We must not be deceived by false prophets in the last days and must firmly believe that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Thessalonians 2:1-8)

2 Thessalonians 2:1 Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him,

2 That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand.

3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

4 Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.

5 Remember ye not, that, when I was yet with you, I told you these things?

6 And now ye know what withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time.

7 For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way.
8 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming:

1321. Even during the great tribulation, those who are written in the book of life will be saved. (Dan 12:1) Mt 24:21, Mk 13:19, Rev 13:8, Rev 20:12-15, Rev 21:27

In the Old Testament, God said that even during the great tribulation, those who are written in the book of life will be saved. (Da 12:1)

Da 12:1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.

There will be great tribulation in the last days. (Mt 24:21, Mark 13:19)

Mt 24:21 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be.

Mark 13:19 For in those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which God created unto this time, neither shall be.

Those who are not written in God's book of life will be judged and thrown into the lake of fire. But those who are written in the Lamb's book of life will be saved. (Rev 13:8, Rev 20:12-13, Rev 21:27)

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Rev 20:12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.

Rev 21:27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

1322. Resurrection of those who believe in Jesus Christ (Dan 12:2)

Mt 25:46, Jn 5:28-29, Jn 11:25-27, Acts 24:14-15, 1 Cor 15:20-22, 1 Cor 15:51-54, 1 Thess 4:14

In the Old Testament, God said that some of the dead would have eternal life. God also said that there are some who will be put to shame forever. (Da 12:2)

Da 12:2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.

The Old Testament prophesies the resurrection of the righteous and the wicked. (Acts 24:14-15)

Acts 24:14 But this I confess unto thee, that after the way which they call heresy, so worship I the God of my fathers, believing all things which are written in the law and in the prophets:

15 And have hope toward God, which they themselves also allow, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will go into eternal life, and those who do not will go into eternal punishment. (Matthew 25:46, John 5:28-29, John 11:25-27)

Matthew 25:46 And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal.

John 5:28 Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice,
29 And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.

John 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

26 And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?

27 She saith unto him, Yea, Lord: I believe that thou art the Christ, the Son of God, which should come into the world.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be resurrected like Jesus. (1 Corinthians 15:20-22; 1 Corinthians 15:51-54; 1 Thessalonians 4:14)

1 Corinthians 15:20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.

22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

1 Corinthians 15:51 Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed,

52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.

53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.

54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.

1 Thessalonians 4:14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

1323. Those who preach the gospel so that many may be saved will shine like the stars forever. (Dan 12:3)
Phil 2:16, 1 Thes 2:19-20, 2 Tim 4:1-2,5,7-8

In the Old Testament, God said that those who turn many to righteousness will shine like the stars in the sky for eternity. (Da 12:3)

Da 12:3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.

We are proud of those who have heard the gospel through us and have been saved. (Phil 2:16, 1 Thessalonians 2:19-20)

Phil 2:16 Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.

1 Thessalonians 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?

20 For ye are our glory and joy.

Therefore, in season and out of season, we must proclaim that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Timothy 4:1-2,5,7-8)

2 Timothy 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

1324. Only then will the end come, until the full number of the Gentiles has been reached, that is, after the gospel has been preached throughout the world. (Dan 12:7)

Dan 9:27, Lk 21:24, Rom 11:25-26, Mt 24:14

In the Old Testament, the book of Daniel tells the time when all things will end. (Dan 12:7, Dan 9:27)

Dan 12:7 And I heard the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that it shall be for a time, times, and an half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished.

Dan 9:27 And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.

Jesus told the Israelites that Jerusalem would be trampled underfoot by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles were fulfilled, that is, until the gospel had been preached to all Gentiles. (Luke 21:24)

Luke 21:24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

When the full number of the Gentiles comes in, Israel will be saved. (Romans 11:25-26)

Romans 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.

26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

Only then will the end come after the gospel of the kingdom is preached to all nations. (Mt 24:14)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

1325. Christ, who saved us and made us His bride (Hos 2:16)
1326. Through Christ, God has compassion on the remnant of Israel and makes them His people. (Hos 2:23)
1327. After that, the children of Israel will seek Christ, and in the last days, through faith in Christ, they will come to the grace of God. (Hos 3:4-5)
1328. Knowledge of God: Christ (Hos 4:6)
1329. God brings the people of Israel back to life through the death and resurrection of Christ. (Hos 6:1-2)
1330. Let's do our best to know God and Christ. (Hos 6:3)
1331. God wants us to believe in Christ rather than sacrifice. (Hos 6:6)
1332. True Israel, Christ (Hos 11:1)
1333. God has revealed Himself to us through Christ. (Hos 12:4-5)
- 1334 God gives us victory through Christ. (Hos 13:14)

1325. Christ, who saved us and made us His bride (Hos 2:16)
Hos 2:19-20, Jn 3:29, Eph 5:25,31-32, 2 Cor 11:2, Rev 19:7

In the Old Testament, God said that He would make us His bride. (Ho 2:16, Ho 2:19)

Ho 2:16 And it shall be at that day, saith the Lord, that thou shalt call me Ishi; and shalt call me no more Baali.

Ho 2:19 And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.

John the Baptist was glad to hear the voice of Jesus, our bridegroom. (John 3:29)

John 3:29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled.

As the church, we are the bride of Christ. (Eph 5:25)

Eph 5:25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it;

Paul was zealous to match us to Christ Jesus. (2 Corinthians 11:2)

2 Corinthians 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

We participate as the bride of Christ at the wedding supper of the Lamb. (Rev 19:7)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

1326. Through Christ God has mercy on the Gentiles and makes them His people. (Ho 2:23)
Hos 1:10, Rom 9:25-26, 1 Pt 2:10

In the Old Testament, God said that He would make the Gentiles His people. (Ho 2:23, Ho 1:10)

Ho 2:23 And I will sow her unto me in the earth; and I will have mercy upon her that had not obtained mercy; and I will say to them which were not my people, Thou art my people; and they shall say, Thou art my God.

Ho 1:10 Yet the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured nor numbered; and it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people, there it shall be said unto them, Ye are the sons of the living God.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Gentiles also believed in Jesus as the Christ and became God's people. (Romans 9:25-26, 1 Pet 2:10)

Romans 9:25 As he saith also in Osee, I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved.

26 And it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living God.

1 Pet 2:10 Which in time past were not a people, but are now the people of God: which had not obtained mercy, but now have obtained mercy.

1327. After that, the children of Israel will seek Christ, and in the last days, through faith in Christ, they will come to the grace of God. (Hos 3:4-5)

[Lists](#)

Jer 30:9, Ezk 34:23, Isa 2:2-3, Mic 4:1-2, Acts 15:16-18

The Old Testament tells us that the people of Israel will spend many days without a king and without a priest, then find God and Christ and return to God in the last days. (Ho 3:4-5, Jer 30:9, Eze 34:23, Isa 2:2-3, Mic 4:1-2)

Ho 3:4 For the children of Israel shall abide many days without a king, and without a prince, and without a sacrifice, and without an image, and without an ephod, and without teraphim:

5 Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the Lord their God, and David their king; and shall fear the Lord and his goodness in the latter days.

Jer 30:9 But they shall serve the Lord their God, and David their king, whom I will raise up unto them.

Eze 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

Isa 2:2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

Mic 4:1 But in the last days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it.

2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

According to the prophecy of the Old Testament, the remnant of Israel and the Gentiles came to the grace of God by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 15:16-18)

Acts 15:16 After this I will return, and will build again the tabernacle of David, which is fallen down; and I will build again the ruins thereof, and I will set it up:

17 That the residue of men might seek after the Lord, and all the Gentiles, upon whom my name is called, saith the Lord, who doeth all these things.

18 Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.

1328. Knowledge of God: Christ (Hos 4:6)
Jn 17:3, 2 Cor 4:6

In the Old Testament, God said that the people of Israel were destroyed because they did not know God. (Ho 4:6)

Ho 4:6 My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children.

To know God and Jesus Christ whom God has sent is eternal life. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Jesus Christ is the knowledge of God. (2 Corinthians 4:6)

2 Corinthians 4:6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

1329. God brings the people of Israel back to life through the death and resurrection of Christ. (Hos 6:1-2) [Lists](#)
Mt 16:21, 1 Cor 15:4

In the Old Testament, Hosea prophesied that God would raise up the destroyed nation of Israel on the third day. (Ho 6:1-2)

Ho 6:1 Come, and let us return unto the Lord: for he hath torn, and he will heal us; he hath smitten, and he will bind us up.

2 After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus Christ died and was resurrected three days later. So the people of Israel can be resurrected by believing in Jesus Christ. (Mt 16:21, 1 Corinthians 15:4)

Mt 16:21 From that time forth began Jesus to shew unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.

1 Corinthians 15:4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

1330. Let's do our best to know God and Christ. (Hos 6:3)
Jn 17:3, 2 Pt 1:2, 2 Pt 3:18

The Old Testament tells us to strive to know God, and God will give us grace. (Ho 6:3)

Ho 6:3 Then shall we know, if we follow on to know the Lord: his going forth is prepared as the morning; and he shall come unto us as the rain, as the latter and former rain unto the earth.

To know the true God and the one whom God has sent, Jesus Christ, is the knowledge of eternal life. (John 17:3)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

We must grow in the knowledge of Christ. (2 Peter 3:18)

2 Peter 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

Then God's grace and peace will abound in us. (2 Peter 1:2)

2 Peter 1:2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,

1331. God wants us to believe in Christ rather than sacrifice. (Hos 6:6)
Mt 9:13, Mt 12:6-8

In the Old Testament, God wanted the Israelites to know Himself by offering sacrifices. (Ho 6:6)

Ho 6:6 For I desired mercy, and not sacrifice; and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings.

God wanted the Israelites to know God through sacrifice. (Matthew 9:13)

Matthew 9:13 But go ye and learn what that meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice: for I am not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.

God wanted the Israelites to know and believe in Christ who is the true temple and the true sacrifice through the temple and sacrifices. (Matthew 12:6-8)

Matthew 12:6 But I say unto you, That in this place is one greater than the temple.

7 But if ye had known what this meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice, ye would not have condemned the guiltless.

8 For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day.

1332. True Israel, Christ (Hos 11:1)
Mt 2:13-15

In the Old Testament, God spoke of calling Christ, the true Israel, out of Egypt. (Ho 11:1)

Ho 11:1 When Israel was a child, then I loved him, and called my son out of Egypt.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus, the Christ, fled to Egypt under the threat of King Herod, and returned to Israel from Egypt after King Herod's death. (Matthew 2:13-15)

Matthew 2:13 And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him.

14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt:

15 And was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Out of Egypt have I called my son.

1333. God has revealed Himself to us through Christ. (Hos 12:4-5)
Deut 5:2-3, Deut 29:14-15, Jn 1:14, Jn 12:45, Jn 14:6,9

In the Old Testament, God wrestled with Jacob and met Jacob. (Hos 12:4-5)

Hos 12:4 Yea, he had power over the angel, and prevailed: he wept, and made supplication unto him: he found him in Bethel, and there he spake with us;
5 Even the Lord God of hosts; the Lord is his memorial.

The covenant God made with the Israelites in the Old Testament is the same covenant he made with us. (Deut. 5:2, Deut. 29:14-15)

Deut. 5:2 The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb.

Deut. 29:14 Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath;
15 But with him that standeth here with us this day before the Lord our God, and also with him that is not here with us this day:

Jesus, the Christ, is the Son of God, full of the glory of God. (John 1:14)

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

God revealed Himself through Jesus, the Christ. (John 12:45, John 14:6,9)

John 12:45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.
9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father?

1334. God gives us victory through Christ. (Hos 13:14)
1 Cor 15:51-57

In the Old Testament, God said that He would deliver us from the power of death and destroy the power of death.
(Ho 13:14)

Ho 13:14 I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy plagues; O grave, I will be thy destruction: repentance shall be hid from mine eyes.

As the Old Testament prophesied, in the last days those who believe in Jesus Christ will be resurrected and will be victorious. (1 Corinthians 15:51-57)

1 Corinthians 15:51 Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed,
52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.
53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.
54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.
55 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?
56 The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law.
57 But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

1335. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Joel 2:28-32)

1336. Those who believe in Jesus as Lord and Christ will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

1335. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Joel 2:28-32)
 Acts 2:14-22,36, Acts 5:31-32, Titus 3:6

In the Old Testament, God said that He would pour out His Spirit on those who call on His name. (Joel 2:28-32)

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.

30 And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.

31 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and terrible day of the Lord come.

32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

As the Old Testament prophesied, God poured out the Holy Spirit only on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:14-22,36, Acts 5:31-32, Titus 3:6)

Acts 2:14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:

15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day.

16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:

20 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and notable day of the Lord come:

21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Titus 3:6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;

1336. Those who believe in Jesus as Lord and Christ will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

1335. God pours out the Holy Spirit only on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Joel 2:28-32)

1336. Those who believe in Jesus as Lord and Christ will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

Acts 2:21-22,36, Rom 10:9-13, 1 Cor 1:2

In the Old Testament, God said that those who call on His name will be saved. (Joel 2:32)

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

Calling on the name of the Lord as spoken of in the Old Testament is believing in Jesus as Lord and Christ. Anyone who believes in Jesus as Lord and Christ will be saved. (Acts 2:21-22, Romans 10:9-13, 1 Corinthians 1:2)

Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:

Romans 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

1 Corinthians 1:2 Unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both their's and our's:

Amos

Bible

1337. Come back to Christ. Then you will live (Amos 5:4-8)

1338. The Jews, against the Holy Spirit, killed Christ, whom the prophets foretold. (Amos 5:25-27)

1339. Through Christ, God saves the remnant of Israel and the Gentiles who are called by God's name. (Amos 9:11-12)

1337. Come back to Christ. Then you will live (Amos 5:4-8)
Hos 6:1-2, Joel 2:12, Isa 55:6-7, Jn 15:5-6, Acts 2:36-39

In the Old Testaments, God told the Israelites that if they sought God, they would live. (Amos 5:4-8, Hos 6:1-2, Joel 2:12, Isa 55:6-7)

Amos 5:4 For thus saith the Lord unto the house of Israel, Seek ye me, and ye shall live:

5 But seek not Bethel, nor enter into Gilgal, and pass not to Beersheba: for Gilgal shall surely go into captivity, and Bethel shall come to nought.

6 Seek the Lord, and ye shall live; lest he break out like fire in the house of Joseph, and devour it, and there be none to quench it in Bethel.

7 Ye who turn judgment to wormwood, and leave off righteousness in the earth,

8 Seek him that maketh the seven stars and Orion, and turneth the shadow of death into the morning, and maketh the day dark with night: that calleth for the waters of the sea, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth: The Lord is his name:

Hos 6:1 Come, and let us return unto the Lord: for he hath torn, and he will heal us; he hath smitten, and he will bind us up.

2 After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.

Joel 2:12 Therefore also now, saith the Lord, turn ye even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning:

Isa 55:6 Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near:

7 Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

Jesus is the Lord and the Christ, sent by God to save us. Therefore, if you believe in Jesus as Lord and Christ, you will be saved. (Acts 2:36-39)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

We must live in Christ Jesus. Without Jesus, the Christ, we cannot live. (John 15:5-6)

John 15:5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.

6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.

1338. The Jews, against the Holy Spirit, killed Christ, whom the prophets foretold. (Amos 5:25-27)
Acts 7:40-43,51-52

In the Old Testament, God said that the Israelites did not sacrifice to God during the 40 years in the wilderness, but sacrificed to an idol they had made for themselves. (Am 5:25-27)

Am 5:25 Have ye offered unto me sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years, O house of Israel?

26 But ye have borne the tabernacle of your Moloch and Chiun your images, the star of your god, which ye made to yourselves.

27 Therefore will I cause you to go into captivity beyond Damascus, saith the Lord, whose name is The God of hosts.

The Jews acted like their ancestors, killing the righteous, Christ, who came just as their ancestors killed the prophets who foretold that the righteous would come. (Acts 7:40-43,51-52)

Acts 7:40 Saying unto Aaron, Make us gods to go before us: for as for this Moses, which brought us out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.

41 And they made a calf in those days, and offered sacrifice unto the idol, and rejoiced in the works of their own hands.

42 Then God turned, and gave them up to worship the host of heaven; as it is written in the book of the prophets, O ye house of Israel, have ye offered to me slain beasts and sacrifices by the space of forty years in the wilderness?

43 Yea, ye took up the tabernacle of Moloch, and the star of your god Remphan, figures which ye made to worship them: and I will carry you away beyond Babylon.

51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

1339. Through Christ, God saves the remnant of Israel and the Gentiles who are called by God's name. (Amos 9:11-12)

Acts 15:15-18

In the Old Testament, God said that He would save the remnant of Israel and the Gentiles who were called by His name. (Am 9:11-12)

Am 9:11 In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen, and close up the breaches thereof; and I will raise up his ruins, and I will build it as in the days of old:

12 That they may possess the remnant of Edom, and of all the heathen, which are called by my name, saith the Lord that doeth this.

According to the prophecy of the Old Testament, both Jews and Gentiles who believed in Jesus as the Christ were saved. (Acts 15:15-18)

Acts 15:15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written,

16 After this I will return, and will build again the tabernacle of David, which is fallen down; and I will build again the ruins thereof, and I will set it up:

17 That the residue of men might seek after the Lord, and all the Gentiles, upon whom my name is called, saith the Lord, who doeth all these things.

18 Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.

Jonah

Bible

1340. Christ died to save us. (Jonah 1:12-15)

1341. The Sign of Jonah: Christ died for our sins and rose again the third day. (Jonah 1:17)

1342. The Jews did not receive Christ. (Jonah 3:4-5)

1343. God wants all people to come to salvation by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Jonah 4:8-11)

1340. Christ died to save us. (Jonah 1:12-15)
Jn 11:49-52, Mk 10:45

In the Old Testament, the prophet Jonah was thrown into the sea to save those who met a storm. (Jon 1:12-15)

Jon 1:12 And he said unto them, Take me up, and cast me forth into the sea; so shall the sea be calm unto you: for I know that for my sake this great tempest is upon you.
13 Nevertheless the men rowed hard to bring it to the land; but they could not: for the sea wrought, and was tempestuous against them.
14 Wherefore they cried unto the Lord, and said, We beseech thee, O Lord, we beseech thee, let us not perish for this man's life, and lay not upon us innocent blood: for thou, O Lord, hast done as it pleased thee.
15 So they took up Jonah, and cast him forth into the sea: and the sea ceased from her raging.

Jesus also died to save us. (John 11:49-52, Mark 10:45)

John 11:49 And one of them, named Caiaphas, being the high priest that same year, said unto them, Ye know nothing at all,
50 Nor consider that it is expedient for us, that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not.
51 And this spake he not of himself: but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus should die for that nation;
52 And not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad.

Mark 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

1341. The Sign of Jonah: Christ died for our sins and rose again the third day. (Jonah 1:17)
Jonah 2:10, Mt 12:39-41, Mt 16:4, 1 Cor 15:3-4

In the Old Testament, the prophet Jonah was swallowed by a large fish and vomited again from the fish three days later. (Jonah 1:17, Jonah 2:10)

Jonah 1:17 Now the Lord had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah. And Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights.

Jonah 2:10 And the Lord spake unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land.

The sign of the Old Testament prophet Jonah was to foreshadow Christ's death and resurrection three days later. (Mt 12:39-41, Mt 16:4)

Mt 12:39 But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas:

40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

41 The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they repented at the preaching of Jonas; and, behold, a greater than Jonas is here.

Mt 16:4 A wicked and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given unto it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas. And he left them, and departed.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus, the Christ, died and rose from the dead on the third day. (1 Corinthians 15:3-4)

1 Corinthians 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

1342. The Jews did not receive Christ. (Jonah 3:4-5)
Mt 11:20-21, Lk 10:9-13, Mt 12:41, Jn 1:11-12

In the Old Testament, all the people of Nineveh repented after hearing the word of God's judgment delivered by the prophet Jonah. (Jonah 3:4-5)

Jonah 3:4 And Jonah began to enter into the city a day's journey, and he cried, and said, Yet forty days, and Nineveh shall be overthrown.

5 So the people of Nineveh believed God, and proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them.

If Jesus had performed all the powers that Jesus performed in Tiro and Sidon, the people there would have repented. (Matthew 11:20-21, Luke 10:9-13)

Matthew 11:20 Then began he to upbraid the cities wherein most of his mighty works were done, because they repented not:

21 Woe unto thee, Chorazin! woe unto thee, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works, which were done in you, had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.

Luke 10:9 And heal the sick that are therein, and say unto them, The kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.

10 But into whatsoever city ye enter, and they receive you not, go your ways out into the streets of the same, and say,
11 Even the very dust of your city, which cleaveth on us, we do wipe off against you: notwithstanding be ye sure of this, that the kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.

12 But I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable in that day for Sodom, than for that city.

13 Woe unto thee, Chorazin! woe unto thee, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works had been done in Tyre and Sidon, which have been done in you, they had a great while ago repented, sitting in sackcloth and ashes.

At the judgment, the people of Nineveh will condemn the Jews. Because the Jews did not receive Christ when Christ came. (Matthew 12:41, John 1:11-12)

Matthew 12:41 The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they repented at the preaching of Jonas; and, behold, a greater than Jonas is here.

John 1:11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1343. God wants all people to come to salvation by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Jonah 4:8-11)
1 Tim 2:4, 2 Pt 3:9, Jn 3:16, Rom 10:9-11

In the Old Testament, the prophet Jonah was angry when he saw the people of Nineveh repented after hearing the word of God. God told this angry prophet Jonah that God loves all and wants to save them. (Jonah 4:8-11)

Jonah 4:8 And it came to pass, when the sun did arise, that God prepared a vehement east wind; and the sun beat upon the head of Jonah, that he fainted, and wished in himself to die, and said, It is better for me to die than to live.
9 And God said to Jonah, Doest thou well to be angry for the gourd? And he said, I do well to be angry, even unto death.

10 Then said the Lord, Thou hast had pity on the gourd, for the which thou hast not laboured, neither madest it grow; which came up in a night, and perished in a night:

11 And should not I spare Nineveh, that great city, wherein are more than sixscore thousand persons that cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand; and also much cattle?

God wants all people to come to salvation by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Timothy 2:4, 2 Pet 3:9)

1 Timothy 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

2 Pet 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

Anyone who believes in Jesus as the Christ will be saved. (John 3:16, Romans 10:9-11)

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Romans 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

Micah**Bible**

- 1344. The Gospel of Christ to be preached to all nations (Mic 4:2)
- 1345. Christ who gives us true peace (Mic 4:2-4)
- 1346. Christ was born in Bethlehem as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mic 5:2)
- 1347. Christ is our shepherd and guides us. (Mic 5:4)
- 1348. God's Holy Covenant to the People of Israel: Christ (Mic 7:20)

1344. The Gospel of Christ to be preached to all nations (Mic 4:2)
Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Lk24:47, Acts 1:8, Jn 6:45, Acts 13:47

In the Old Testament, the prophet Micah prophesied that many Gentiles would come to the temple of God and hear the word of God. (Mic 4:2)

Mic 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

This gospel, in which Jesus is the Christ, will be preached to all nations as prophesied in the Old Testament. (John 6:45, Luke 24:47, Acts 13:47)

John 6:45 It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.

Luke 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

Acts 13:47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Therefore, we must preach to all nations that Jesus is the Christ. And so it will be. (Mt 28:19-20, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:
20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

1345. Christ who gives us true peace (Mic 4:2-4)
1 Kings 4:25, Jn 14:27, Jn 20:19

In the Old Testament, the prophet Micah said that God would judge the peoples in the future and give them true peace. (Mic 4:2-4)

Mic 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

3 And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

4 But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of the Lord of hosts hath spoken it.

In the Old Testament, there was peace during the reign of King Solomon. (1 Kings 4:25)

1 Kings 4:25 And Judah and Israel dwelt safely, every man under his vine and under his fig tree, from Dan even to Beersheba, all the days of Solomon.

Jesus gives us true peace. (John 14:27, John 20:19)

John 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

John 20:19 Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, came Jesus and stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.

1346. Christ was born in Bethlehem as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mic 5:2)
Jn 7:42, Mt 2:4-6

Lists

The Old Testament book of Micah said that Christ, the one who would rule over Israel, would be born in Bethlehem. (Mic 5:2)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Christ was born in Bethlehem. That Christ is Jesus. (John 7:42, Matthew 2:4-6)

John 7:42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?

Matthew 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

1347. Christ is our shepherd and guides us. (Mic 5:4)
Mt 2:4-6, Jn 10:11,14-15,27-28

In the Old Testament, the prophet Micah spoke of the leader of Israel whom God would establish, and that Christ would become our shepherd and guide us. (Mic 5:4)

Mic 5:4 And he shall stand and feed in the strength of the Lord, in the majesty of the name of the Lord his God; and they shall abide: for now shall he be great unto the ends of the earth.

The leader of Israel, Christ, was born in Bethlehem as prophesied in the Old Testament and became our true shepherd. That Christ is Jesus. (John 10:11,14-15,27-28)

John 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:

28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.

1348. God's Holy Covenant to the People of Israel: Christ (Mic 7:20)
Gen 22:17-18, Gal 3:16, 2 Sam 7:12, Jer 31:33, Lk 1:54-55,68-73,

In the Old Testament, the prophet Micah spoke of God's faithful fulfillment of the holy covenant he made to the people of Israel. (Mic 7:20)

Mic 7:20 Thou wilt perform the truth to Jacob, and the mercy to Abraham, which thou hast sworn unto our fathers from the days of old.

The holy covenant God made to Abraham in the Old Testament was to send Christ. (Ge 22:17-18, Gal 3:16)

Ge 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

In the Old Testament, God promised to send Christ as a descendant of David. (2 Samuel 7:12)

2 Samuel 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

In the Old Testament, God promised to write His Word in our hearts. (Jeremiah 31:33)

Jeremiah 31:33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

God sent Christ, the holy covenant he made to the people of Israel, to this earth. That Christ is Jesus. (Luke 1:54-55,68-69,70-73)

Luke 1:54 He hath helped his servant Israel, in remembrance of his mercy;
55 As he spake to our fathers, to Abraham, and to his seed for ever.
68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:
71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;
72 To perform the mercy promised to our fathers, and to remember his holy covenant;
73 The oath which he sware to our father Abraham,

1349. Christ who brought us the gospel of peace (Nah 1:15)
Isa 61:1-3, Acts 10:36-43

In the Old Testament, the prophet Nahum said that the gospel of peace would be preached to the suffering people of Israel. (Nahum 1:15)

Nahum 1:15 Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through thee; he is utterly cut off.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would let the Spirit of God come upon Christ to preach the gospel of peace. (Isa 61:1-3)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

God poured out his Holy Spirit and power on Jesus and made him preach the gospel of peace. The Jews put Jesus, the Christ, to death by hanging him on a tree, but God raised him to life on the third day and made him judge between the living and the dead. Anyone who believes in Jesus as the Christ receives forgiveness of sins. (Acts 10:36-43)

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)
37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;

38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:

40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.

42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

Habakkuk

Bible

1350. If you do not believe in Jesus as the Christ, you will perish like the old Israel. (Hab 1:5-7)

1351. Believe to the end that Jesus is the Christ. (Hab 2:2-4)

1352. But the righteous will live by faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Hab 2:4)

1353. Christ saves us and gives us strength. (Hab 3:17-19)

1350. If you do not believe in Jesus as the Christ, you will perish like the old Israel. (Hab 1:5-7)
Acts 13:26-41

In the Old Testament, God spoke of destroying the people of Israel who did not believe in God. (Hab 1:5-7)

Hab 1:5 Behold ye among the heathen, and regard, and wonder marvelously: for I will work a work in your days which ye will not believe, though it be told you.

6 For, lo, I raise up the Chaldeans, that bitter and hasty nation, which shall march through the breadth of the land, to possess the dwellingplaces that are not their's.

7 They are terrible and dreadful: their judgment and their dignity shall proceed of themselves.

Jesus said that all the words of Christ in the Old Testament were fulfilled in him. That is, Jesus is the Christ who the Old Testament prophets said would come. Now, if you do not believe in Jesus as the Christ, you will be destroyed just like the old Israel. (Acts 13:26-41)

Acts 13:26 Men and brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth God, to you is the word of this salvation sent.

27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled them in condemning him.

28 And though they found no cause of death in him, yet desired they Pilate that he should be slain.

29 And when they had fulfilled all that was written of him, they took him down from the tree, and laid him in a sepulchre.

30 But God raised him from the dead:

31 And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses unto the people.

32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,

33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

40 Beware therefore, lest that come upon you, which is spoken of in the prophets;

41 Behold, ye despisers, and wonder, and perish: for I work a work in your days, a work which ye shall in no wise believe, though a man declare it unto you.

1351. Believe to the end that Jesus is the Christ. (Hab 2:2-4)
Heb 10:36-39, 2 Pt 3:9-10

In the Old Testament, God had the prophet Habakkuk write the revelations of God on stone tablets. And God said that the revelation will come true, and those who believe in it to the end will live. (Hab 2:2-4)

Hab 2:2 And the Lord answered me, and said, Write the vision, and make it plain upon tables, that he may run that readeth it.

3 For the vision is yet for an appointed time, but at the end it shall speak, and not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not tarry.

4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

We must believe to the end that Jesus is the Christ. Jesus, the Christ, will come without delay. (Hebrews 10:35-39)

Hebrews 10:35 Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward.

36 For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.

37 For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.

38 Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.

39 But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.

It is not that the second coming of Jesus is delayed, but God wants more people to be saved. (2 Peter 3:9-10)

2 Peter 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

1352. But the righteous will live by faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Hab 2:4)
Rom 1:17, Gal 3:11-14, Heb 10:38-39

In the Old Testament, God said that the just shall live by his faith. (Hab 2:4)

Hab 2:4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

In the gospel God has given, it is written that the righteous will live by faith. (Romans 1:17)

Romans 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

We cannot be made righteous by keeping the law. We receive the Holy Spirit and become righteous through faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Galatians 3:11-14)

Galatians 3:11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.

12 And the law is not of faith: but, The man that doeth them shall live in them.

13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

We are saved by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Hebrews 10:38-39)

Hebrews 10:38 Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.

39 But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.

1353. Christ saves us and gives us strength. (Hab 3:17-19)
Lk 1:68-71, Lk 2:25-32, 2 Cor 12:9-10, Phil 4:13

In the Old Testament, the prophet Habakkuk praised God who would save the people of Israel in the future even though Israel was destroyed. (Hab 3:17-19)

Hab 3:17 Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls:
18 Yet I will rejoice in the Lord, I will joy in the God of my salvation.
19 The Lord God is my strength, and he will make my feet like hinds' feet, and he will make me to walk upon mine high places. To the chief singer on my stringed instruments.

God sent Christ as the descendant of David to save the people of Israel. (Luke 1:68-71)

Luke 1:68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:
71 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;

Simeon, who lives in Jerusalem, was waiting for Christ, the comfort of Israel. When he saw the baby Jesus, he knew that Jesus was the Christ and praised God. (Luke 2:25-32)

Luke 2:25 And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him.
26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death, before he had seen the Lord's Christ.
27 And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law,
28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,
29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:
30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,
31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;
32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

When we are weak, we know more that Christ is our strength and strength. (2 Corinthians 12:9-10, Phil 4:13)

2 Corinthians 12:9 And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may rest upon me.
10 Therefore I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for Christ's sake: for when I am weak, then am I strong.

Phil 4:13 I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.

1354. Do not be afraid, for the King of Israel, our King, Christ is among us. (Zeph 3:15)
Jn 1:49, Jn 12:14-15, Jn 19:19, Mt 27:42, Mk 15:32

In the Old Testament, the prophet Zephaniah told us not to be afraid because God the King of Israel is with us. (Zeph 3:15)

Zep 3:15 The Lord hath taken away thy judgments, he hath cast out thine enemy: the king of Israel, even the Lord, is in the midst of thee: thou shalt not see evil any more.

Nathanael confessed that Jesus was the Son of God and the King of Israel. (John 1:49)

John 1:49 Nathanael answered and saith unto him, Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel.

Jesus is the Christ, the true King of Israel, prophesied to come in the Old Testament. (John 12:14, John 19:19, Matthew 27:42, Mark 15:32)

John 12:14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,

John 19:19 And Pilate wrote a title, and put it on the cross. And the writing was Jesus Of Nazareth The King Of The Jews.

Matthew 27:42 He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the King of Israel, let him now come down from the cross, and we will believe him.

Mark 15:32 Let Christ the King of Israel descend now from the cross, that we may see and believe. And they that were crucified with him reviled him.

Haggai

Bible

1355. Since we have received a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us receive grace. (Hag 2:6-7)

1356. Christ, who gives us peace as the true temple (Hag 2:9)

1357. God establishes David's kingship, the kingdom of God, firmly through Christ, typified by Zerubbabel. (Hag 2:23)

1355. Since we have received a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us receive grace. (Hag 2:6-7)
Heb 12:26-28

In the Old Testament, God said that He would shake everything in the world. (Hag 2:6-7)

Hag 2:6 For thus saith the Lord of hosts; Yet once, it is a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land;

7 And I will shake all nations, and the desire of all nations shall come: and I will fill this house with glory, saith the Lord of hosts.

God will shake everything that shakes and leave only the things that do not shake. Since we have been given a country that cannot be shaken, let us receive grace. (Hebrews 12:26-28)

Hebrews 12:26 Whose voice then shook the earth: but now he hath promised, saying, Yet once more I shake not the earth only, but also heaven.

27 And this word, Yet once more, signifieth the removing of those things that are shaken, as of things that are made, that those things which cannot be shaken may remain.

28 Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear:

1356. Christ, who gives us peace as the true temple (Hag 2:9)
Jn 2:19-21, Jn 14:27

In the Old Testament, God said that He would give us a more beautiful temple than the beautiful temple in the past and that He would give us peace. (Hag 2:9)

Hag 2:9 The glory of this latter house shall be greater than of the former, saith the Lord of hosts: and in this place will I give peace, saith the Lord of hosts.

Jesus is the true temple that is more beautiful than the Old Testament temple. Jesus said that He, the true temple, would be killed and resurrected on the third day. (John 2:19-21)

John 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.
20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?
21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

Jesus gives us true peace. (John 14:27)

John 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

1357. God establishes David's kingship, the kingdom of God, firmly through Christ, typified by Zerubbabel. (Hag 2:23)

Isa 42:1, Isa 49:5-6, Isa 52:13, Isa 53:11, Ezk 34:23-24, Ezk 37:24-25, Mt 12:18

In the Old Testament, God told the destroyed Israelites that Zerubbabel would be appointed as a king. (Hag 2:23)

Hag 2:23 In that day, saith the Lord of hosts, will I take thee, O Zerubbabel, my servant, the son of Shealtiel, saith the Lord, and will make thee as a signet: for I have chosen thee, saith the Lord of hosts.

In the Old Testament, God spoke of raising up the tribes of Jacob and saving the Gentiles through Christ, whom he would send. (Isa 42:1, Isa 49:5-6)

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

Isa 49:5 And now, saith the Lord that formed me from the womb to be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, Though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.
6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

In the Old Testament, God said that the true David, whom God would send, would be the king and shepherd of the people of Israel, who would please God and make known God's judgment to the Gentiles. (Ezekiel 34:23-24, Ezekiel 37:24-25, Mt 12:18)

Ezekiel 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

24 And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the Lord have spoken it.

Ezekiel 37:24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

25 And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever.

Mt 12:18 Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall shew judgment to the Gentiles.

In the Old Testament, God said that Christ, who would come in the future, would bear their sins in order to justify many people and that in the end, Christ would be extremely exalted. (Isa 52:13-15, Isa 53:11)

Isa 52:13 Behold, my servant shall deal prudently, he shall be exalted and extolled, and be very high.

14 As many were astonished at thee; his visage was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men:

15 So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him: for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Isa 53:11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

- 1358. God has washed away our sins with the blood of Christ and made us new. (Zech 3:3-5)
- 1359. Christ, the servant of God, who came as the descendant of David. (Zech 3:8)
- 1360. Christ as the Cornerstone of Judgment of the World (Zech 3:9)
- 1361. God invites us to Christ, the true peace. (Zech 3:10)
- 1362. A Temple to be Rebuilt through Christ: His church (Zech 6:12-13)
- 1363. Through Christ the Gentiles will turn to God. (Zech 8:20-23)
- 1364. Christ the King riding on the colt (Zech 9:9)
- 1365. Christ Brings Peace to the Gentiles (Zech 9:10)
- 1366. Christ our shepherd was sold for thirty pieces of silver. (Zech 11:12-13)
- 1367. Christ was nailed to the cross to save us. (Zech 12:10)
- 1368. All the sheep were scattered, and Christ took our sins and died by God that we might live. (Zech 13:7)
- 1369. The Day of Christ's Second Coming (Zech 14:4-7)

1358. God has washed away our sins with the blood of Christ and made us new. (Zech 3:3-5)
Isa 61:10, 1 Cor 6:11, 2 Cor 5:17, Gal 3:27, Col 3:10, Rev 7:14

In the Old Testament, Satan sued Joshua, the high priest representing the people of Israel who had sinned. But God took off the clothes of the high priest Joshua, who was wearing dirty clothes, and took away his sins and put on beautiful clothes. (Zec 3:1-5)

Zec 3:1 And he shewed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him.
2 And the Lord said unto Satan, The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan; even the Lord that hath chosen Jerusalem rebuke thee: is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?
3 Now Joshua was clothed with filthy garments, and stood before the angel.
4 And he answered and spake unto those that stood before him, saying, Take away the filthy garments from him. And unto him he said, Behold, I have caused thine iniquity to pass from thee, and I will clothe thee with change of raiment.
5 And I said, Let them set a fair mitre upon his head. So they set a fair mitre upon his head, and clothed him with garments. And the angel of the Lord stood by.

In the Old Testament, God promised to clothe us with the garments of salvation. (Isa 61:10)

Isa 61:10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.

We have been sanctified through the forgiveness of sins through Christ. (1 Cor 6:11, 2 Cor 5:17, Gal 3:27, Col 3:10, Rev 7:14)

1 Cor 6:11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.

2 Cor 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

Gal 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

Col 3:10 And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:

Rev 7:14 And I said unto him, Sir, thou knowest. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

1359. Christ, the servant of God, who came as the descendant of David. (Zech 3:8)
Isa 11:1-2, Isa 42:1, Ezk 34:23, Jer 23:5, Lk 1:31-33

In the Old Testament, God promised to send His servant, Christ. (Zec 3:8)

Zec 3:8 Hear now, O Joshua the high priest, thou, and thy fellows that sit before thee: for they are men wondered at: for, behold, I will bring forth my servant the Branch.

The Old Testaments speak of the coming of Christ as the descendant of David. (Isa 11:1-2, Isa 42:1, Eze 34:23, Jer 23:5)

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

Eze 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

The Christ who came as the descendant of David is Jesus. (Luke 1:31-33)

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

1360. Christ as the Cornerstone of Judgment of the World (Zech 3:9)
Ps 118:22-23, Mt 21:42-44, Acts 4:11-12, Rom 9:30-33, 1 Pt 2:4-8

In the Old Testament, God said that He would take away the sins of the earth through a single stone. (Zec 3:9, Psalm 118:22)

Zec 3:9 For behold the stone that I have laid before Joshua; upon one stone shall be seven eyes: behold, I will engrave the graving thereof, saith the Lord of hosts, and I will remove the iniquity of that land in one day.

Psalm 118:22 The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner.

Jesus said that the stone that the builders rejected, as prophesied in the Old Testament, would judge people. (Mt 21:42-44)

Mt 21:42 Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof.

44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Jesus is the stone rejected by the builders prophesied in the Old Testament. Only through Jesus can we be saved. (Acts 4:11-12, Romans 9:30-33, 1 Peter 2:4-8)

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Romans 9:30 What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith.

31 But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness.

32 Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;

33 As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

1 Peter 2:4 To whom coming, as unto a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious,
5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.

7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,

8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.

1361. God invites us to Christ, the true peace. (Zech 3:10)
Mic 4:4, Mt 11:28, Jn 1:48-50, Jn 14:27, Rom 5:1, 2 Cor 5:18-19

In the Old Testaments, God said that He would invite us to the path of peace. (Zec 3:10, Mic 4:4)

Zec 3:10 In that day, saith the Lord of hosts, shall ye call every man his neighbour under the vine and under the fig tree.

Mic 4:4 But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of the Lord of hosts hath spoken it.

Jesus gives us true rest. (Mt 11:28)

Mt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Nathanael was thinking of the coming Christ under the fig tree. Jesus knew this and called Nathanael. Nathanael confessed that Jesus was the Son of God and the King of Israel. (John 1:48-50)

John 1:48 Nathanael saith unto him, Whence knowest thou me? Jesus answered and said unto him, Before that Philip called thee, when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee.

49 Nathanael answered and saith unto him, Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel.

50 Jesus answered and said unto him, Because I said unto thee, I saw thee under the fig tree, believest thou? thou shalt see greater things than these.

Jesus, the Christ, has given us true peace. (John 14:27)

John 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

We have been reconciled to God by believing that Jesus is the Christ, and we are able to reconcile people to God. (Romans 5:1, 2 Corinthians 5:18-19)

Romans 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

2 Corinthians 5:18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

1362.A Temple to be Rebuilt through Christ: His church (Zech 6:12-13)
Mt 16:16-18, Jn 2:19-21, Eph 1:20-23, Eph 2:20-22, Col 1:18-20

In the Old Testament, God said that Christ, whom God would send, would build God's temple, rule the world, and perform priestly work. (Zec 6:12-13)

Zec 6:12 And speak unto him, saying, Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying, Behold the man whose name is The Branch; and he shall grow up out of his place, and he shall build the temple of the Lord:
13 Even he shall build the temple of the Lord; and he shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon his throne; and he shall be a priest upon his throne: and the counsel of peace shall be between them both.

Jesus said that the Jews would kill Himself as a temple, but on the third day He would raise Himself as a temple. (John 2:19-21)

John 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.
20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?
21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

Jesus builds the church based on the belief that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 16:16-18, Ephesians 1:20-23, Eph 2:20-22, Colossians 1:18-20)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.
17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.
18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

Ephesians 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,
21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:
22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,
23 Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;
21 In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord:
22 In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

Colossians 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.
19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;
20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

1363. Through Christ the Gentiles will turn to God. (Zech 8:20-23)
Gal 3:8, Mt 8:11, Acts 13:47-48, Acts 15:15-18, Rom 15:9-12, Rev 7:9-10

In the Old Testament, God said that on that day many Gentiles would return to God. (Zec 8:20-23)

Zec 8:20 Thus saith the Lord of hosts; It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities:

21 And the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to pray before the Lord, and to seek the Lord of hosts: I will go also.

22 Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the Lord.

23 Thus saith the Lord of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.

God first preached the gospel of justification by faith to Abraham and told Abraham that the Gentiles would be saved through faith just like Abraham. (Ga 3:8)

Ga 3:8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed.

Jesus also said that many Gentiles would be saved. (Mt 8:11)

Mt 8:11 And I say unto you, That many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven.

When the Gentiles heard the gospel that Jesus was the Christ, they were saved by believing in it. (Acts 13:47-48)

Acts 13:47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

According to the prophecies of the Old Testament prophets, the Gentiles sought God and were saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 15:15-18, Romans 15:9-12)

Acts 15:15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written,

16 After this I will return, and will build again the tabernacle of David, which is fallen down; and I will build again the ruins thereof, and I will set it up:

17 That the residue of men might seek after the Lord, and all the Gentiles, upon whom my name is called, saith the Lord, who doeth all these things.

18 Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.

Romans 15:9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

In the future, the peoples of each nation will be saved and will praise God and Christ. (Rev 7:9-10)

Rev 7:9 After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and

people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands;

10 And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb.

1364. Christ the King riding on the colt (Zech 9:9)
Mt 21:4-9, Mk 11:7-10, Jn 12:14-16

In the Old Testament, the prophet Zechariah prophesied that the coming King, Christ, would enter Jerusalem riding on a colt. (Zec 9:9)

Zec 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

Jesus entered Jerusalem riding on a colt as prophesied by the prophet Zechariah in the Old Testament. In other words, Jesus is the King of Israel, the Christ. (Matthew 21:4-9, Mark 11:7-10, John 12:14-16)

Matthew 21:4 All this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying,
5 Tell ye the daughter of Sion, Behold, thy King cometh unto thee, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt the foal of an ass.
6 And the disciples went, and did as Jesus commanded them,
7 And brought the ass, and the colt, and put on them their clothes, and they set him thereon.
8 And a very great multitude spread their garments in the way; others cut down branches from the trees, and strawed them in the way.
9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

Mark 11:7 And they brought the colt to Jesus, and cast their garments on him; and he sat upon him.
8 And many spread their garments in the way: and others cut down branches off the trees, and strawed them in the way.
9 And they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna; Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord:
10 Blessed be the kingdom of our father David, that cometh in the name of the Lord: Hosanna in the highest.

John 12:14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,
15 Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.
16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

1365. Christ Brings Peace to the Gentiles (Zech 9:10)
Eph 2:13-17, Col 1:20-21

In the Old Testament, God said that the coming Christ would bring peace to the Gentiles. (Zec 9:10)

Zec 9:10 And I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim, and the horse from Jerusalem, and the battle bow shall be cut off: and he shall speak peace unto the heathen: and his dominion shall be from sea even to sea, and from the river even to the ends of the earth.

Jesus shed His blood for us on the cross to make us peace with God. That is, Jesus is the Christ who gave us peace as Gentiles, as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Eph 2:13-17, Colossians 1:20-21)

Eph 2:13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.

14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

Colossians 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled

1366. Christ our shepherd was sold for thirty pieces of silver. (Zech 11:12-13)
Mt 26:14-15, Mt 27:9-10

In the Old Testament, the prophet Zechariah prophesied that the coming Christ would be sold for thirty pieces of silver. (Zec 11:12-13)

Zec 11:12 And I said unto them, If ye think good, give me my price; and if not, forbear. So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver.

13 And the Lord said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was prised at of them. And I took the thirty pieces of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the Lord.

According to the prophecy of the prophet Zechariah in the Old Testament, Jesus was sold for thirty pieces of silver. (Mt 26:14-15, Mt 27:9-10)

Mt 26:14 Then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot, went unto the chief priests,

15 And said unto them, What will ye give me, and I will deliver him unto you? And they covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver.

Mt 27:9 Then was fulfilled that which was spoken by Jeremy the prophet, saying, And they took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of him that was valued, whom they of the children of Israel did value;

10 And gave them for the potter's field, as the Lord appointed me.

1367. Christ was nailed to the cross to save us. (Zech 12:10)
Jn 19:34-37, Lk 23:26-27, Acts 2:36-38, Rev 1:7

In the Old Testament, the prophet Zechariah prophesied that the Israelites would mourn when they realized that the Jesus they had killed was the Christ. (Zec 12:10)

Zec 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

As the Old Testament prophesied about Christ, when Jesus died, His side was pierced with a spear, and none of His bones were broken. (John 19:34-36)

John 19:34 But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water.
35 And he that saw it bare record, and his record is true: and he knoweth that he saith true, that ye might believe.
36 For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, A bone of him shall not be broken.

When Jesus' disciples saw Jesus' suffering, they mourned. (Luke 23:26-27)

Luke 23:26 And as they led him away, they laid hold upon one Simon, a Cyrenian, coming out of the country, and on him they laid the cross, that he might bear it after Jesus.
27 And there followed him a great company of people, and of women, which also bewailed and lamented him.

The Jews who killed Jesus mourned when they realized that the Jesus they had killed was the Christ. (Acts 2:36-38)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

When Jesus returns, those who do not believe in Him will mourn over their judgment. (Rev 1:7)

Rev 1:7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.

1368. All the sheep were scattered, and Christ took our sins and died by God that we might live. (Zech 13:7) [Lists](#)
Mt 26:31,54-56, Mk 14:27,49-50, Jn 16:32, 2 Cor 5:21, Gal 3:13

In the Old Testament, God said that Christ would be betrayed by those closest to him and that all of Christ's disciples would be scattered. (Zec 13:7)

Zec 13:7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the Lord of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones.

Jesus foretold that all of his disciples would desert him and run away. (John 16:32)

John 16:32 Behold, the hour cometh, yea, is now come, that ye shall be scattered, every man to his own, and shall leave me alone: and yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me.

As prophesied about Christ in the Old Testament, Jesus was arrested and all of Jesus' disciples abandoned Him and fled. (Mt 26:31,54-56, Mark 14:27, 49-50)

Mt 26:31 Then saith Jesus unto them, All ye shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written, I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad.

54 But how then shall the scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?

55 In that same hour said Jesus to the multitudes, Are ye come out as against a thief with swords and staves for to take me? I sat daily with you teaching in the temple, and ye laid no hold on me.

56 But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples forsook him, and fled.

Mark 14:27 And Jesus saith unto them, All ye shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written, I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered.

49 I was daily with you in the temple teaching, and ye took me not: but the scriptures must be fulfilled.

Jesus died for our sins and was cursed to save us. (2 Corinthians 5:21, Gal 3:13)

2 Corinthians 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

1369. The Day of Christ's Second Coming (Zech 14:4-7)
Mt 24:29-31, Mt 24:36, Acts 1:6-7, Mt 25:31

In the Old Testament, the prophet Zechariah described the day of the Second Coming of Christ. When Christ comes, there will be riots and people will flee. Then it will be dark and neither night nor day. Then Christ, our light, comes. (Zec 14:4-7)

Zec 14:4 And his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east, and the mount of Olives shall cleave in the midst thereof toward the east and toward the west, and there shall be a very great valley; and half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it toward the south.

5 And ye shall flee to the valley of the mountains; for the valley of the mountains shall reach unto Azal: yea, ye shall flee, like as ye fled from before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah: and the Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee.

6 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the light shall not be clear, nor dark:

7 But it shall be one day which shall be known to the Lord, not day, nor night: but it shall come to pass, that at evening time it shall be light.

Jesus said that in the last days the sun and the moon will not give their light, and the powers of heaven will be shaken. Then Jesus, the Christ, will come in the clouds. (Mt 24:29-31, Mt 25:31)

Mt 24:29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken:

30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Mt 25:31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:

The last day only God knows. (Matthew 24:36, Acts 1:6-7)

Matthew 24:36 But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Acts 1:6 When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?

7 And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.

Malachi

Bible

1370. The Israelites did not honor God, but the Gentiles became afraid of God through Christ. (Mal 1:11-12)

1371. John the Baptist prepared the way for Christ (Mal 3:1)

1372. Christ will suddenly come to us. (Mal 3:1)

1370. The Israelites did not honor God, but the Gentiles became afraid of God through Christ. (Mal 1:11-12) [Lists](#)
Rom 11:25, Rom 15:9-11, Rev 15:4

In the Old Testament, God said that the Israelites would not honor God, but the Gentiles would fear God. (Mal 1:11-12)

Mal 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the Lord of hosts.

12 But ye have profaned it, in that ye say, The table of the Lord is polluted; and the fruit thereof, even his meat, is contemptible.

God made the Gentiles glorify God by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Romans 15:9-11, Revelation 15:4)

Romans 15:9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

Revelation 15:4 Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest.

Until all the Gentiles who will be saved are saved, the people of Israel will become hardened and will not believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 11:25)

Rom 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.

1371. John the Baptist prepared the way for Christ (Mal 3:1)

Mal 4:5, Mk 1:2-4, Mk 9:11-13, Lk 1:13-17, Lk 1:76, Lk 7:24-27, Mt 11:1-5,10-14, Mt 17:10-13, Acts 19:4

In the Old Testament, God said that an angel of God would prepare the way for Christ. (Mal 3:1, Mal 4:5)

Mal 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.

Mal 4:5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord:

An angel appeared to Zacharias and told him that the child his wife would bear would prepare the way for Christ in the spirit of Elijah. (Luke 1:13-17,76)

Luke 1:13 But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John.

14 And thou shalt have joy and gladness; and many shall rejoice at his birth.

15 For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb.

16 And many of the children of Israel shall he turn to the Lord their God.

17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.

76 And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways;

As prophesied in the Old Testament, an angel of God appeared to prepare the way for Christ. That messenger is John the Baptist. (Mark 1:2-4, Mark 9:11-13, Luke 7:24-27, Matthew 17:10-13, Matthew 11:10-14)

Mark 1:2 As it is written in the prophets, Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee.

3 The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.

Mark 9:11 And they asked him, saying, Why say the scribes that Elias must first come?

12 And he answered and told them, Elias verily cometh first, and restoreth all things; and how it is written of the Son of man, that he must suffer many things, and be set at nought.

13 But I say unto you, That Elias is indeed come, and they have done unto him whatsoever they listed, as it is written of him.

Luke 7:24 And they asked him, saying, Why say the scribes that Elias must first come?

12 And he answered and told them, Elias verily cometh first, and restoreth all things; and how it is written of the Son of man, that he must suffer many things, and be set at nought.

13 But I say unto you, That Elias is indeed come, and they have done unto him whatsoever they listed, as it is written of him.

Matthew 17:10 And his disciples asked him, saying, Why then say the scribes that Elias must first come?

11 And Jesus answered and said unto them, Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things.

12 But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed. Likewise shall also the Son of man suffer of them.

13 Then the disciples understood that he spake unto them of John the Baptist.

Matthew 11:10 For this is he, of whom it is written, Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee.

11 Verily I say unto you, Among them that are born of women there hath not risen a greater than John the Baptist: notwithstanding he that is least in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he.

12 And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and the violent take it by force.

13 For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John.

14 And if ye will receive it, this is Elias, which was for to come.

John the Baptist had his disciples ask Jesus if he was the Christ foretold that Jesus would come. Then Jesus said that the prophecy of Christ in the Old Testament had been fulfilled to himself, and he revealed that he was the Christ. (Mt 11:1-5)

Mt 11:1 And it came to pass, when Jesus had made an end of commanding his twelve disciples, he departed thence to teach and to preach in their cities.

2 Now when John had heard in the prison the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples,

3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?

4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

Paul testified that the Christ John the Baptist was talking about was Jesus. (Acts 19:4)

Acts 19:4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

1372. Christ will suddenly come to us. (Mal 3:1)
2 Pt 3:9-10, Mt 24:42-43, 1 Thess 5:2-3

In the Old Testament, God said that Christ would suddenly come to the temple. (Mal 3:1)

Mal 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.

Christ will return as a thief when we do not know. Therefore, we must be awake. (2 Peter 3:9-10, Matthew 24:42-43, 1 Thessalonians 5:2-3)

2 Peter 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

Matthew 24:42 Watch therefore: for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come.

43 But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up.

1 Thessalonians 5:2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.

3 For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.

53. What Matthew would say in the gospel of Matthew?
54. Matthew continuously proved that Jesus was Christ who is to come in the Old Testament. (Mt 3)
55. Christ, who is the true Adam, who overcomes sin
56. The Evangelism of Jesus
57. Christ message in the Sermon on the Mount
58. Christ, the Light, who is to come into the world in the Old Testament and we who become light through the Christ
59. Christ, who is the end of the law
60. The purpose of loving enemies (Mt 5:44)
61. Lord's Prayer (Mt 6: 9-13)
62. What do the kingdom of God and the righteousness of God mean? (Mt 6:33)
63. The Will of My Father in heaven For people to believe Jesus is the Christ!
64. The Purpose of Jesus' Healing Ministry
65. A Miracle that Shows Jesus is the Son of God, Christ – Calming the Storm (Mt 8:24-27)
66. The ministry of Christ – Destroying Satan's work (Mt 8:32)
67. Jesus showed Himself as the Christ, who can forgive sins. (Mt 9:1-8)
68. Christ, who is our bridegroom (Mt 9:14-15)
69. The Evangelism of Jesus II (Mt 9:36-38)
70. The Evangelism of the Bible (Mt 10:11-14)
71. The fact that Jesus is the Christ is revealed. (Mt 10:26)
72. Jesus did not come to bring peace on earth.(Purpose of His coming) Mt10:34-39 Jesus came not to give peace to the world, but to make people believe in Him as the Christ.
73. Are You the Coming One, Christ? (Mt 11:2-5)
74. Jesus who said that He is the Son of God, the Christ (Mt 11:25-27)
75. Christ, who is greater than temple and Lord even of the Sabbath(Mt 12:1-8)
76. Christ, who does not quarrel and cry out (Mt 12:15-21)
77. The Son of God means Christ.(Mt12:22-23)
78. Jesus is the Christ, who destroy the works of the devil (Mt 12:28)
79. Christ, who is greater than Jonah. (Mt 12:38-41)
80. Christ, the true wisdom, is greater than Solomon (Mt 12:42)
81. Who is Jesus' family? (Mt12:46-50)
82. What did many prophets and righteous men desire to see and hear (Mt 13:13-17) Jesus is the Christ!
83. Evangelism of Jesus II (Mt13:8, 23)
84. To find Jesus is the Christ is like to find a treasure in a field. (Mt 13:44-46)
85. Jesus, who showed Himself to be the bread of true life, Christ through the miracle of five loaves and two fish (Mt14:13-21)

86. Jesus, who showed Himself to be the Christ by walking on the water (Mt 14:25, 32-33)
87. The Christ, who fulfilled the prophecy that He will work for the Gentiles (Mt 15:29-31)
88. The blessing of confessing Jesus as the Christ (Mt 16:13-20)
89. Death and Resurrection Prophecy to Christ (Mt 16:21)
90. Christ who wants to return in our time (Mt 16:28)
91. They saw no one but Jesus only. (Mt 17:1-8)
92. Who can be saved? (Mt 19:25, 29)
93. Christ, who uses Gentiles for world evangelization (Mt 20:10-16)
94. Death and Resurrection Prophecy to Christ II (Mt 20:17-19)
95. Christ, who came here as the true Priest to save us (Mt 20:28)
96. Jesus, Christ who came on a donkey as the true King by the prophecy (Mt 21:4-9)
97. Jesus, who was called as the Christ from all ages (Mt 21:15-16)
98. The Jews who will kill the Son of God (the vineyard parable of Jesus) (Mt 21:33-41, 45-46)
99. Christ, who is the stone which the builders rejected (Mt 21:42-44)
100. What is the gospel? (Mt 16:16)
101. The feast of heaven (Christ as Bridegroom, Mt 22:2)
102. Those who are not dressed in heavenly feasts (Mt 22:10-13)
103. God is God of the living (resurrection argument Mt 22:29-32)
104. Christ's greatest command love: saving souls (Mt 22:35-40)
105. The Son of David and the Lord of David, Christ (Mt 22:41-46)
106. Christ, who is equal with God (Jn 5:17,18)
107. If You are the Christ, tell us plainly. (Jn 20:24-30)
108. The Christ, the true teacher, and leader (Mt 23:8, 10)
109. What if we do not know that Jesus is the Christ? (Mt 23:13-15)
110. Christ who tried to save the nation of Israel through all Israel's history (Mt 23:37)
111. When will the end of this world come? (Mt 24:14)
112. Christ's Second Coming and Judgment (Mt 25:31-33, 41, 46)
113. Christ's death on the cross and His flesh and blood (Mt 26:2,12,26-28)
114. Before believing in Jesus as the Christ (Mt 26:33-34)
115. Christ, who truly died for us (Mt 26:38)
116. The crucifixion of Christ is the plan of God (Mt 26:54, 56)
117. What is the charge of Jesus' death sentence? Christ (Mt 26:62-65)
118. Jesus' death on the cross fulfilled the work of Christ (Mt 27:35,46,50,51)
119. The resurrected Christ, Jesus according to the Scriptures (Mt 28:6,9)
120. The Command of the Resurrected Christ, Jesus: World Evangelization (Mt 28:18-20)

53. What Matthew would say in the gospel of Matthew? Jesus is the Christ who was predicted to come in the Old Testament.

Mt 1:1, 16, 18-23, Isa 7:14, Mt 2:3-5, Mic 5:2, Mt 2:13-15, Hos 11:1, Mt 2:22-23, Isa 11:1

The Gospel of Matthew was written for the Jews. Matthew testifies to the Jews in the Gospel of Matthew that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament.

Matthew begins the Gospel of Matthew by revealing that Jesus came as the Christ who would come as the descendant of Abraham and David. (Mt 1:1, 16)

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Also, in the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would be born from a virgin body, and Jesus was born from a virgin body according to this prophecy. (Mt 1:18-23, Is 7:14)

Mt 1:18 Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise: When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost.

19 Then Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily.

20 But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost.

21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,

23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

Is 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Also, in the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would be born in Bethlehem, and Jesus was born in Bethlehem according to this prophecy. (Mt 2:3-5, Mic 5:2)

Mt 2:3 When Herod the king had heard these things, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him.

4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Also, in the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would call Christ out of Egypt, and Jesus will come to Israel after being in Egypt according to this prophecy. (Mt 2:13-15, Hos 11:1)

Mt 2:13 And when they were departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be thou there until I bring thee word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him.

14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt:

15 And was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Out of Egypt have I called my son.

Hos 11:1 When Israel was a child, then I loved him, and called my son out of Egypt.

Also in the Old Testament it was prophesied that Christ would be called a Nazarene, and Jesus lived in the town of Nazareth according to this prophecy. (Mt 2:22-23, Isa 11:1)

Mt 2:22 But when he heard that Archelaus did reign in Judaea in the room of his father Herod, he was afraid to go thither: notwithstanding, being warned of God in a dream, he turned aside into the parts of Galilee:

23 And he came and dwelt in a city called Nazareth: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophets, He shall be called a Nazarene.

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

54. Matthew proves that John the Baptist, the one who prepares the way of the Lord prophesied in the Old Testament, prepared the way of Christ and baptized Christ. (Mt 3:3)

Lists

Mt 3:3, Isa 40:3, Mal 3:1, Mt 3:11, Jn 1:33-34, Mt 3:16, Isa 11:2, Mt 3:15, Jn 1:29, Mt 3:17, Ps 2:7

The Old Testament prophesies that there will be someone who will prepare the way for Christ. That person is John the Baptist. (Mt 3:3, Isa 40:3, Mal 3:1)

Mt 3:3 For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

Isa 40:3 The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God.

Mal 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.

John the Baptist prophesied that Christ would baptize with the Holy Spirit. (Mt 3:11)

Mt 3:11 I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance. but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire:

Also, John the Baptist testified that the one to whom the Holy Spirit came when he baptized was Christ. It was foretold in the Old Testament that the Holy Spirit would come upon Christ. (Jn 1:33-34, Mt 3:16, Isa 11:2, Is 42:1)

Jn 1:33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

34 And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God.

Mt 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

Isa 11:2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Is 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

When John the Baptist baptized Christ, all the sins of the world were passed on to Him. (Mt 3:15, Jn 1:29)

Mt 3:15 And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness. Then he suffered him.

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

God confirmed by the word that Jesus was the Son of God who would accomplish the work of Christ. (Mt 3:17, Ps 2:7)

Mt 3:17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Ps 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

55. Christ, who is the true Adam, who overcomes sin (Mt 4:3-4)

Mt 4:3-4, Deut 8:3, Mt 4:5-7, Deut 6:16, Mt 4:8-10, Deut 6:13, Rom 5:14, 1 Cor 15:22, 45

The devil tempted Jesus, who had fasted for 40 days, to turn stones into loaves of bread. But Jesus overcame temptation by revealing that man does not live by bread alone, but by all the words of God. (Mt 4:1-4, Deut 8:3)

Mt 4:1 Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil.

2 And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward an hungred.

3 And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread.

4 But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

The devil also told Jesus to jump off the top of the temple because God will protect Him. But Jesus tells the devil not to tempt God. (Mt 4:5-7, Deut 6:16)

Mt 4:5 Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple,

6 And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in their hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone.

7 Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.

Deut 6:16 Ye shall not tempt the Lord your God, as ye tempted him in Massah.

Finally, the devil tempted Jesus to give him everything in the world if he worshiped him. But Jesus told the devil that only God in the world is worthy of worship. (Mt 4:8-10, Deut 6:13)

Mt 4:8 Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them;

9 And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me.

10 Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.

Deut 6:13 Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name.

Adam fell into the temptation of the devil, but Jesus did not fall into the temptation of the devil. Jesus also overcame sin with the word of God.

Because of Adam, death reigned over all mankind. Likewise, through Christ, who is the true Adam, we live. (Rom 5:14, 1 Cor 15:22,45)

Rom 5:14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.

1 Cor 15:22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

45 And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam was made a quickening spirit.

56. The Evangelism of Jesus

Mt 4:13-16, Isa 9:1-2, Mt 4:17,23, Mt 9:35, Mk 1:39, Lk 4:15,43-44, Mt 4:18-19, Mt 10:6

Jesus preached the gospel in Galilee. Gentile Galilee was a region primarily inhabited by mixed Jews. The Jews despised the Jews of Galilee. In other words, Jesus preached the gospel to lowly people. In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would preach the gospel to Galilee. (Mt 4:13-16, Isa 9:1-2)

Mt 4:13 And leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the sea coast, in the borders of Zabulon and Nephthalim:

14 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,

15 The land of Zabulon, and the land of Nephthalim, by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles;

16 The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up.

Isa 9:1 Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Also, Jesus preached the gospel of the kingdom. The content of the gospel of the kingdom is that Christ has come. (Mt 4:17,23)

Mt 4:17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.

Also, Jesus preached the gospel mainly in the synagogue. The synagogue is a gathering place for those who believe in Judaism. He opened the Old Testament to the Jews. (Mt 9:35, Mk 1:39, Lk 4:15,44)

Mt 9:35 And Jesus went about all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every disease among the people.

Mk 1:39 And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out devils.

Lk 4:15 And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of all.

43 And he said unto them, I must preach the kingdom of God to other cities also: for therefore am I sent.

44 And he preached in the synagogues of Galilee.

The key to Jesus' evangelism is finding disciples. (Mt 4:18-19)

Mt 4:18 And Jesus, walking by the sea of Galilee, saw two brethren, Simon called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers.

19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.

Jesus also sent his disciples to the read sheep of Israel. This is to explain the gospel of the kingdom to those who know the Old Testament but do not understand it accurately. (Mt 10:6)

Mt 10:6 But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

In conclusion, in order to save people, Jesus first found His disciples, went to those who knew the Old Testament first, and opened the Old Testament, telling them that Christ came and that Christ is Himself.

57. Christ message in the Sermon on the Mount (Mt 5:3-12)

The key to the Sermon on the Mount is that those who truly wait for Christ are blessed.

Those who are poor in spirit will receive the gospel of the kingdom. (Mt 5:3-4, Isa 61:1)

Mt 5:3 Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

4 Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted.

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

To be meek is to firmly believe that God will care for the righteous to the end. (Mt 5:5)

Mt 5:5 Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth.

Blessed are those who wait for Christ, the righteous of God. (Mt 5:6)

Mt 5:6 Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.

Blessed is he who has mercy on souls who do not know Christ. (Mt 5:7, Mk 6:34)

Mt 5:7 Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy.

Mk 6:34 And Jesus, when he came out, saw much people, and was moved with compassion toward them, because they were as sheep not having a shepherd: and he began to teach them many things.

The mind of the saints who are forgiven of sins by Christ and live as faithful people of the Lord (Mt 5:8)

Mt 5:8 Blessed are the pure in heart: for they shall see God.

A person who tells people that Jesus is the Christ (Mt 5:9, Nah 1:15)

Mt 5:9 Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God.

Nah 1:15 Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through thee; he is utterly cut off.

Blessed are those who are persecuted because of Christ. (Mt 5:10-12, Lk 6:22-23)

Mt 5:10 Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness' sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11 Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake.

12 Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.

Lk 6:22 Blessed are ye, when men shall hate you, and when they shall separate you from their company, and shall reproach you, and cast out your name as evil, for the Son of man's sake.

23 Rejoice ye in that day, and leap for joy: for, behold, your reward is great in heaven: for in the like manner did their fathers unto the prophets.

58. Jesus is the Christ, the Light, prophesied to come in the Old Testament and we become light through the Christ. (Mt 5:14-15)

[Lists](#)

Isa 42:6, Isa 49:6, Jn 1:9, Eph 5:8, Mt 5:16

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send Christ to this earth to be a light for the people of Israel and the Gentiles. (Isa 42:6, Isa 49:6)

Isa 42:6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

Christ, the light, has come to this earth. That light is Jesus. (Jn 1:9)

Jn 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

By believing in Jesus as the Christ, we too have become a light in Christ. Also, we have become those who preach this light, Christ. (Mt 5:14-16, Eph 5:8)

Mt 5:14 Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.

15 Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house.

16 Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

Eph 5:8 For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light:

59. Christ, who is the end of the law (Mt 5:17-18)
Rom 10:4, Gal 3:23-24, Eph 2:14-15, Heb 7:11-12,19,28

The law is the Pentateuch. Prophets are the book of prophets. The words Law and Prophets usually refer to the entire Old Testament. In other words, Jesus did not come to abolish the Old Testament. Jesus is the one who perfected the Old Testament. All the contents of the Old Testament were fulfilled through Jesus, the Christ.

Mt 5:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.
18 For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

Rom 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Gal 3:23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

Eph 2:14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

Heb 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

60. The purpose of loving enemies - To save souls (Mt 5:44)
Lev 19:34, Isa 49:6, Lk 23:34, Mt 22:10, Acts 7:59-60, 1 Pt 3:9-15

Jesus told us to love our enemies and to pray for them. (Mt 5:44)

Mt 5:44 But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you;

The Old Testament tells us not to hate the Gentiles. The reason is that God has a plan to save those Gentiles. (Lev 19:34, Isa 49:6)

Lev 19:34 But the stranger that dwelleth with you shall be unto you as one born among you, and thou shalt love him as thyself; for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt: I am the Lord your God.

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

When Jesus was crucified, He prayed to God to forgive those who killed Him. (Lk 23:34)

Lk 23:34 Then said Jesus, Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

Jesus explained the banquet of salvation in heaven with parables, and told them to invite both the good and the bad to the banquet. (Mt 22:10)

Mt 22:10 So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all as many as they found, both bad and good: and the wedding was furnished with guests.

Even Stephen, who was killed while preaching the gospel, prayed that those who killed him would be saved. (Acts 7:60)

Acts 7:59 And they stoned Stephen, calling upon God, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.

60 And he kneeled down, and cried with a loud voice, Lord, lay not this sin to their charge. And when he had said this, he fell asleep.

Peter told us not to repay evil for evil, but to pray that they might be saved. After all, the reason we must love our enemies is so that they can be saved. (2 Pt 3:9-15)

1 Pt 3:9 Not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing; knowing that ye are thereunto called, that ye should inherit a blessing.

10 For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile:

11 Let him eschew evil, and do good; let him seek peace, and ensue it.

12 For the eyes of the Lord are over the righteous, and his ears are open unto their prayers: but the face of the Lord is against them that do evil.

13 And who is he that will harm you, if ye be followers of that which is good?

14 But and if ye suffer for righteousness' sake, happy are ye: and be not afraid of their terror, neither be troubled;

15 But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear:

61 Christ's Message in the Lord's Prayer (Mt 6: 9-13)

Mt 6:9 (Isa 63:16), Mt 6:10 (Acts 1:3,8, Mt 28:19, Mt 24:14), Mt 6:11 (Prov 30:8, Jn 6:32,35) Mt 6:12 (Mt 18:24,27,33), Mt 6:13 (Jn 17:15, 1 Cor 10:13, Dan 3:18, Esther 4:16)

God is our Father. May God's name be hallowed. (Mt 6:9, Isa 63:16)

Mt 6:9 After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name.

Isa 63:16 Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O Lord, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.

God's will is to believe in Christ, whom God has sent. May the gospel of Christ be preached throughout the earth. (Mt 6:10, Jn 6:29, Acts 1:3,8, Mt 28:19)

Mt 6:10 Thy kingdom come, Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Acts 1:3 To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God:

8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Give us daily bread and let us know Christ, the bread of life every day. (Mt 6:11, Prov 30:8, Jn 6:32-35)

Mt 6:11 Give us this day our daily bread.

Prov 30:8 Remove far from me vanity and lies: give me neither poverty nor riches; feed me with food convenient for me:

Jn 6:32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.

33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.

35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

Since God has forgiven our sins, let us also forgive the sins of others. (Mt 6:12, Mt 18:24,27,33)

Mt 6:12 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

Mt 18:24 And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents.

27 Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt.

33 Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on thee?

Help me not to deny God even when temptation comes. (Mt 6:13, Jn 17:15, 1 Cor 10:13, Dan 3:18, Est 4:16)

Mt 6:13 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.

Jn 17:15 I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them

from the evil.

1 Cor 10:13 There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.

Dan 3:18 But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.

Est 4:16 Go, gather together all the Jews that are present in Shushan, and fast ye for me, and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day: I also and my maidens will fast likewise; and so will I go in unto the king, which is not according to the law: and if I perish, I perish.

62. What do the kingdom of God and the righteousness of God mean? (Mt 6:33)

The righteousness of God is Christ, who died on the cross for fulfilling God's righteousness. The kingdom of God is the evangelism to testify that Jesus is the Christ.

1 Cor 1:30, Rom 3:21, Rom 1:17, Rom 3:25-26, 2 Cor 5:21, Acts 1:3, Mt 28:18-19, Acts 1:8,

Jesus accomplished God's righteousness toward us by dying on the cross. (1 Cor 1:30, Rom 3:21, Rom 1:17, Rom 3:25-26, 2 Cor 5:21)

1 Cor 1:30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

Rom 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

Rom 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Rom 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

2 Cor 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Jesus commanded us to preach the gospel in order to establish the kingdom of God. (Acts 1:3, Mt 28:18-19, Acts 1:8)

Acts 1:3 To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God:

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

63. The Will of My Father in heaven For people to believe Jesus is the Christ!

Mt 7:21, Jn 6:40, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 5:39, Jn 20:31, Jn 3:16

Only those who do the Father's will can enter the kingdom of heaven. That is, only those who believe in Jesus as the Christ can enter the kingdom of heaven. (Mt 7:21, Jn 6:40, 1 Jn 5:1)

Mt 7:21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

God gave us the Old and New Testaments so that we might believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 5:39, Jn 20:31)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

In order to save us, God sent His only begotten son to this earth to do the work of Christ, and He gave eternal life to those who believe in it. (Jn 3:16)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

64. Purpose of Jesus's Healing Ministry (Matthew 8:16-17)

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and heal people (Psalm 146:8, Isa 29:18-19, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 42:7, Isa 53:4-5, Isa 61:1).

Psalm 146:8 The Lord openeth the eyes of the blind: the Lord raiseth them that are bowed down: the Lord loveth the righteous:

Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

19 The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

Isa 35:5-6 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Isa 42:7 To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.

The healing ministry of Jesus was not just to heal people. Jesus' healing ministry was to show that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. In other words, the purpose of Jesus' healing work was to make us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 8:16-17, Luke 4:16-19)

Mt 8:16 When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with his word, and healed all that were sick:

17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.

Luke 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

However, because of the healing work of Jesus, many people followed Him. But they did not believe in Jesus as the Christ. Eventually when Jesus was crucified and died, everyone who had followed Jesus ran away. The disciples also abandoned Jesus and ran away. If we don't understand the purpose of Jesus' healing ministry, we may also leave Him. (Mark 14:50)

Mark 14:50 And they all forsook him, and fled.

65. A Miracle that Shows Jesus is the Son of God - Calming the Storm (Mt 8:24-27)
Ps 107:29-30

Lists

The Old Testament says that God is the one who calms the storm and leads us to port. (Ps 107:29-30)

Ps 107:29 He maketh the storm a calm, so that the waves thereof are still.

30 Then are they glad because they be quiet; so he bringeth them unto their desired haven.

Jesus also calmed the storm. This is a miracle that shows that Jesus is the Son of God. (Mt 8:24-27)

Mt 8:24 And, behold, there arose a great tempest in the sea, insomuch that the ship was covered with the waves: but he was asleep.

25 And his disciples came to him, and awoke him, saying, Lord, save us: we perish.

26 And he saith unto them, Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith? Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm.

27 But the men marvelled, saying, What manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him!

66. The ministry of Christ - Destroying Satan's work (Mt 8:32)
 Gen 3:15, Isa 61:1, 1 Jn 3:8, Mt 12:28, Lk 10:17-18, Col 2:15

The three major works of Christ are the work of king, prophet, and priest. Here we will look at the ministry of Christ as King.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would come to this earth and crush Satan's head. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

It is also foretold that Christ will come and set us free from Satan and sin. (Isa 61:1)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Jesus came to this earth as the true King and destroyed the works of Satan. (1 Jn 3:8, Mt 8:32, Mt 12:28, Lk 10:17-18, Col 2:15)

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Mt 8:32 And he said unto them, Go. And when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran violently down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters.

Mt 12:28 But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

Lk 10:17 And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.

18 And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

Col 2:15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Jesus also set us free from the law of sin and death. (Rom 8:2)

Rom 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

In other words, Jesus is the Christ, the true King who has broken the head of Satan.

67. Jesus showed Himself as the Christ, who can forgive sins. (Mt 9:1-8)
Mt 9:6, Ps 130:8, Mk 2:7, Mt 1:21, Acts 4:12, Acts 5:31, Acts 13:38,

Only God can forgive our sins. (Ps 130:8, Mk 2:7)

Ps 130:8 And he shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.

Mk 2:7 Why doth this man thus speak blasphemies? who can forgive sins but God only?

God sent Christ to this earth to be a ransom for the forgiveness of our sins. Jesus is that Christ. (Mt 9:6, Mt 1:21)

Mt 9:6 But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (then saith he to the sick of the palsy,) Arise, take up thy bed, and go unto thine house.

Mt 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

Jesus alone is the Christ who can save us from our sins. (Acts 4:12, Acts 5:30-31, Acts 13:38)

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

Acts 13:38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

68. Christ our bridegroom (Mt 9:14-15)

Jer 31:4, Hos 2:16,19-20, Eph 5:31-32, 2 Cor 11:2, Rev 19:7

Jesus revealed that He is our bridegroom. (Mt 9:14-15)

Mt 9:14 Then came to him the disciples of John, saying, Why do we and the Pharisees fast oft, but thy disciples fast not?

15 And Jesus said unto them, Can the children of the bridechamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken from them, and then shall they fast.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites are often referred to as virgins. This is what God called the Israelites to do to receive them as God's bride. (Jer 31:4)

Jer 31:4 Again I will build thee, and thou shalt be built, O virgin of Israel: thou shalt again be adorned with thy tabrets, and shalt go forth in the dances of them that make merry.

On that day, God will make the people of Israel and the spiritual people of Israel His bride. (Hos 2:16,19-20)

Hos 2:16 And it shall be at that day, saith the Lord, that thou shalt call me Ishi; and shalt call me no more Baali.

19 And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.

20 I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord.

It can be seen that we are getting married in this world to understand Christ, our future bridegroom. (Eph 5:31-32)

Eph 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

Paul was eager to preach the gospel to us so that we could match up with Christ. (2 Cor 11:2)

2 Cor 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

We will stand as the bride of Christ at the wedding supper of the Lamb on the last day. (Rev 19:7)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

69. The Evangelism of Jesus : Disciples (Mt 9:36-38)

Mt 10:6, Mt 4:23, Mt 9:35, Mt 12:9, Mk 1:21,39, Mk 6:2, Lk 4:15-21,44, Mt 28:19-20

Jesus said that there are many people who will be saved, but to save them, we need harvest workers, that is, disciples. (Mt 9:36-38)

Mt 9:36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd.

37 Then saith he unto his disciples, The harvest truly is plenteous, but the labourers are few;

38 Pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers into his harvest.

Jesus first went to the people of Israel who knew the Old Testament to find disciples. (Mt 10:6)

Mt 10:6 But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

Jesus went to the synagogue. As Jesus opened the Old Testament to those who attended the synagogue, He revealed little by little that He was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament.

(Mt 4:23, Mt 9:35, Mt 12:9, Mk 1:21,39, Mk 6:2, Lk 4:15-21,44)

Mt 4:23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.

Mt 9:35 And Jesus went about all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every disease among the people.

Mt 12:9 And when he was departed thence, he went into their synagogue:

Mk 1:21 And they went into Capernaum; and straightway on the sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and taught.

39 And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out devils.

Mk 6:2 And when the sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing him were astonished, saying, From whence hath this man these things? and what wisdom is this which is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands?

Lk 4:15 And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of all.

16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

44 And he preached in the synagogues of Galilee.

And Jesus sent the found disciples to preach the gospel to all regions. (Mt 28:19-20)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

70. The Evangelism of the Bible (Mt 10:11-14)

Acts 2:36-37, 41-42, Acts 5:42, Acts 9:20,22, Acts 13:15,23, Acts 17:2-4,10, Acts 18:5, Acts 19:8-10, Acts 28:23, 30-31

Evangelism of the Bible is to tell people Jesus is the Christ, and finds those who truly believe in Jesus as the Christ, and testifies to them throughout the whole Scriptures that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 10:11-14)

Mt 10:11 And into whatsoever city or town ye shall enter, enquire who in it is worthy; and there abide till ye go thence.

12 And when ye come into an house, salute it.

13 And if the house be worthy, let your peace come upon it: but if it be not worthy, let your peace return to you.

14 And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when ye depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet.

Peter preached in Jerusalem that Jesus was the Christ. At that time, many people heard this, repented and believed in Jesus as the Christ. They were also taught by the apostles. (Acts 2:36-37, 41-42)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.

42 And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.

And those who believed in Jesus as the Christ taught and preached that Jesus was the Christ in the temple and at home. (Acts 5:42)

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

After meeting the resurrected Jesus on the road to Damascus, Paul realized that Jesus was the Christ. After that, he went to the synagogue and preached that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 9:20,22)

Acts 9:20 And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.

22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Paul went to the synagogue and explained the Old Testament to prove that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 13:15,23, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:4-5)

Acts 13:15 And after the reading of the law and the prophets the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, Ye men and brethren, if ye have any word of exhortation for the people, say on.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:4 And he reasoned in the synagogue every sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.

5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

Also, Paul gathered only the disciples separately and explained the Old Testament daily, arguing that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 19:8-10)

Acts 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

Even when Paul was imprisoned in a Roman prison for two years, he took the Old Testament and testified to those who visited him that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 28:23,30-31)

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

71.The fact that Jesus is the Christ is revealed.(Mt 10:26)
Mk 4:21-22, Lk 12:2-3, 1 Jn 1:1-2

The Bible says that Jesus is the very Christ God spoke of through the Old Testament. Many people may read the Bible but do not know it. But in the end, the fact that Jesus is the Christ is to be revealed. (Mt 10:26, Mk 4:21-22, Lk 12:2-3)

Mt 10:26 Fear them not therefore: for there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; and hid, that shall not be known.

Mk 4:21 And he said unto them, Is a candle brought to be put under a bushel, or under a bed? and not to be set on a candlestick?

22 For there is nothing hid, which shall not be manifested; neither was any thing kept secret, but that it should come abroad.

Lk 12:2 For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hid, that shall not be known.

3 Therefore whatsoever ye have spoken in darkness shall be heard in the light; and that which ye have spoken in the ear in closets shall be proclaimed upon the housetops.

God's plan of salvation planned from the beginning, that is, Christ, was finally revealed. Jesus is the Christ. (1 Jn 1:1-2)

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

72. Jesus did not come to bring peace on earth. (Purpose of His coming) (Mt 10:34)

Mt 10:34 Think not that I am come to send peace on earth: I came not to send peace, but a sword.

Jesus came to this earth to accomplish the work of Christ and to make people believe in this fact and be saved. (Jn 20:31)

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

The meaning of Christ is the anointed one. The word Christ means King, Prophet, and Priest. Jesus came to this earth to fulfill the work of the true King, the true Prophet, and the true Priest.

When Jesus died on the cross, He accomplished the work of the true King by crushing Satan's head. (1 Jn 3:8, Gen 3:15)

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus fulfilled the work of the true Priest by dying on the cross for us. (Mk 10:45)

Mk 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

By dying on the cross, Jesus fulfilled the work of the true Prophet who opened the way to meet God. (Jn 14:6)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus accomplished the work of Christ on the cross. (Jn 19:30)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

73. Are You the Coming One, Christ? (Mt 11:2-5)

Jesus is the Coming One, Christ!

Gen 49:10, Num 24:17, Deut 18:15, Dan 9:24, Jn 6:14, Isa 29:18-19, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 61:1

After being imprisoned, John the Baptist heard what Jesus had done and sent his disciples to ask if Jesus was the one who was to come, the Christ. Then Jesus told John's disciples to tell him what they had heard and what He had done. (Mt 11:2-5)

Mt 11:2 Now when John had heard in the prison the works of Christ, he sent two of his disciples,

3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?

4 Jesus answered and said unto them, Go and shew John again those things which ye do hear and see:

5 The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

All the righteous in the Old Testament waited for Christ. Throughout the Old Testament, prophecies of the coming of Christ are prophesied. (Gen 49:10, Num 24:17, Deut 18:15, Dan 9:24)

Gen 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Num 24:17 I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth.

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

The Old Testament also foretold the signs that Christ would perform when He comes. (Isa 29:18-19, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 61:1)

Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

19 The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

Isa 35:5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Jesus showed people that He was the Christ by performing the signs that Christ would perform in the Old Testament. (Jn 6:14)

Jn 6:14 Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world.

74. Jesus who said that He is the Son of God, the Christ (Mt 11:25-27)
 Lk 10:21-24, Mt 28:18, Jn 3:35-36, Jn 1:18, Jn 6:46, Jn 10:30, Jn 17:11,22

Jesus told his disciples that he was the Son of God, and he said, "Blessed are the disciples who knew it." (Mt 11:25-27, Lk 10:21-24)

Mt 11:25 At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.

26 Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.

27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

Lk 10:21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.

22 All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and he to whom the Son will reveal him.

23 And he turned him unto his disciples, and said privately, Blessed are the eyes which see the things that ye see: 24 For I tell you, that many prophets and kings have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.

Jesus also says that God has given all authority to Jesus, the Son of God. (Mt 28:18, Jn 3:35-36)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

Jn 3:35 The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hand.

36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.

Jesus is the only begotten Son who was with God. (Jn 1:18, Jn 6:46)

Jn 1:18 No man hath seen God at any time, the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

Jn 6:46 Not that any man hath seen the Father, save he which is of God, he hath seen the Father.

Jesus and God are one. That is, Jesus is the only begotten Son of God who is one with God. (Jn 10:30, Jn 17:11,22)

Jn 10:30 I and my Father are one.

Jn 17:11 And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to thee. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we are.

22 And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one:

75. Jesus is greater than the temple. And Jesus is Lord of the Sabbath. (Mt 12:1-8)
Mt 12:6, 2 Chr 6:18, Isa 66:1, Mal 3:1, Mt 11:28, Mt 12:8

The Jews do not know exactly why God gave the temple and the Sabbath. The temple is to wait for Christ to play the role of the true temple, and the Sabbath is to dwell in Christ who is the true rest.

God cannot dwell in the temple. (2 Chr 6:18, Isa 66:1)

2 Chr 6:18 But will God in very deed dwell with men on the earth? behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house which I have built!

Isa 66:1 Thus saith the Lord, The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool: where is the house that ye build unto me? and where is the place of my rest?

The one greater than the temple, Christ came to the temple. (Mt 12:6, Mal 3:1)

Mt 12:6 But I say unto you, That in this place is one greater than the temple.

Mal 3:1 behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.

The purpose of the Sabbath is to dwell in the true rest of God. The true rest of God is Christ. (Mt 11:28)

Mt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Jesus, the Christ, is Lord of the Sabbath. (Mt 12:8)

Mt 12:8 For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day.

In conclusion, the church is not a place to learn the law, but a place to learn Christ.

76.Christ, who does not quarrel and cry out (Mt 12:15-21)

Jesus is the Christ, who is predicted to come in the Old Testament. So He fulfills the words of the Old Testament.

The Old Testament prophesies that Christ does not quarrel and cry out. (Isa 42:1-4)

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

2 He shall not cry, nor lift up, nor cause his voice to be heard in the street.

3 A bruised reed shall he not break, and the smoking flax shall he not quench: he shall bring forth judgment unto truth.

4 He shall not fail nor be discouraged, till he have set judgment in the earth: and the isles shall wait for his law.

Jesus fulfilled the Old Testament word by warning not to reveal Himself. (Mt 12:19)

Mt 12:19 He shall not strive, nor cry; neither shall any man hear his voice in the streets.

Christ is also the hope of the Gentiles. (Mt 12:17-21, Rom 15:12, Isa 11:10)

Mt 12:17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,

18 Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall shew judgment to the Gentiles.

19 He shall not strive, nor cry; neither shall any man hear his voice in the streets.

20 A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.

21 And in his name shall the Gentiles trust.

Rom 15:12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

77.The Son of David means Christ.(Mt 12:22-23)

When the Jews speak of the Son of David, they are referring to Christ.

2 Sam 7:12-14, Ps 132:11, Isa 11:1-2, Jer 23:5, Mt 21:9-11, Ps 118:26

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of David. (2 Sam 7:12-14, Ps 132:11, Isa 11:1-2, Jer 23:5)

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

14 I will be his father, and he shall be my son. If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men:

Ps 132:11 The Lord hath sworn in truth unto David; he will not turn from it; Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne.

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

Jesus is the son of David, the Christ. (Mt 12:22-23, Mt 21:9-11, Ps 118:26)

Mt 12:22 Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and dumb both spake and saw.

23 And all the people were amazed, and said, Is not this the son of David?

Mt 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

10 And when he was come into Jerusalem, all the city was moved, saying, Who is this?

11 And the multitude said, This is Jesus the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee.

Ps 118:26 Blessed be he that cometh in the name of the Lord: we have blessed you out of the house of the Lord.

78. Jesus is the Christ, who destroy the works of the devil (Mt 12:28)
1 Jn 3:8, Lk 10:17-18, Heb 2:14

The representative works of Christ are the work of kings, priests, and prophets. The work of destroying the works of Satan is the work of Christ the King.

Jesus is the Christ who destroyed the works of Satan. (Mt 12:28, 1 Jn 3:8, Lk 10:17-18, Heb 2:14)

Mt 12:28 But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Lk 10:17 And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.

18 And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

79. Jonah's Sign: The Resurrection of Christ (Mt 12:38-41)

As Jonah was in belly of the great fish for three days and then rose again, Christ died on the cross and rose three days later

Lk 24:46, Acts 10:39-40, 1 Cor 15:3-4

Mt 12:38 Then certain of the scribes and of the Pharisees answered, saying, Master, we would see a sign from thee.

39 But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas:

40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

41 The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they repented at the preaching of Jonas; and, behold, a greater than Jonas is here.

Lk 24:46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

Acts 10:39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:

40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

80. Christ, the true wisdom, is greater than Solomon (Mt 12:42)
Prov 1:20, Mt 4:17, Lk 7:35, Lk 11:49, Mt 11:19, 1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:2-3

Solomon was the king of wisdom. So many kings came to Solomon to hear the wisdom of Solomon. But Christ is wiser than Solomon. (Mt 12:42)

Mt 12:42 The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: for she came from the uttermost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon is here.

Christ is wisdom itself. (Prov 1:20, Mt 4:17, Lk 7:35, Lk 11:49, Mt 11:19)

Prov 1:20 Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets:

Mt 4:17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Lk 7:35 But wisdom is justified of all her children.

Lk 11:49 Therefore also said the wisdom of God, I will send them prophets and apostles, and some of them they shall slay and persecute:

Mt 11:19 The Son of man came eating and drinking, and they say, Behold a man gluttonous, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners. But wisdom is justified of her children.

Christ is the wisdom of God. (1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:3)

1 Cor 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

81. Who is Jesus' family? (Mt 12:46-50)

Jesus' family is people who believe Jesus as the Christ.

Jn 6:29, 1 Jn 3:23, Jn 3:16, 1 Jn 5:1

Jesus says that those who do the will of God are the family of Jesus. (Mt 12:46-50)

Mt 12:46 While he yet talked to the people, behold, his mother and his brethren stood without, desiring to speak with him.

47 Then one said unto him, Behold, thy mother and thy brethren stand without, desiring to speak with thee.

48 But he answered and said unto him that told him, Who is my mother? and who are my brethren?

49 And he stretched forth his hand toward his disciples, and said, Behold my mother and my brethren!

50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father which is in heaven, the same is my brother, and sister, and mother.

The will of God is to believe in the One whom God has sent, Christ. (Jn 6:29, 1 Jn 3:23, Jn 3:16)

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

1 Jn 3:23 And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we become children of God. And Jesus is our eldest brother. (1 Jn 5:1, Rom 8:29)

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Rom 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

82. What many prophets and righteous people want to see and hear? Christ (Mt 13:16-17)
Heb 11:1-2, 35-39, 1 Jn 1:1-2

Many prophets and the righteous waited so long for Christ. They wanted to see Christ and to hear the word of Christ. (Mt 13:16-17)

Mt 13:16 But blessed are your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.

17 For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.

But they did not see Christ. But they were approved of God by faith in the coming of Christ. (Heb 11:1-2)

Heb 11:1 Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.

2 For by it the elders obtained a good report.

The forefathers of the Old Testament waited for Christ at their necks out. They did not see Christ, but they were saved by believing in the coming of Christ. (Heb 11:35-39)

Heb 11:35 Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:

36 And others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings, yea, moreover of bonds and imprisonment:

37 They were stoned, they were sawn asunder, were tempted, were slain with the sword: they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins; being destitute, afflicted, tormented;

38 (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth.

39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise:

The Christ has come. The apostles saw and touched the Christ. Jesus is the Christ. (1 Jn 1:1-2)

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

83. Evangelism of Jesus II (Mt13:8, 23)

If we find someone who truly believes that Jesus is the Christ, he will preach this gospel to the world by devoting his live.

Peter (Acts 4:10-12), Paul (Acts 19:8-10, 21, Rom 15:28) , Apollo (Act 18:24-28),

Jesus explained evangelism through the parable of the sower. Jesus explained that just as a seed sowed in good soil will bear a hundred fold, so those who hear the word and understand it will reap a hundred fold.(Mt 13:8, 23)

Mt 13:8 But other fell into good ground, and brought forth fruit, some an hundredfold, some sixtyfold, some thirtyfold.

23 But he that received seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word, and understandeth it; which also beareth fruit, and bringeth forth, some an hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.

Peter forsook Jesus and denied Jesus until he truly believed that Jesus was the Christ. However, after meeting the resurrected Jesus and believing that Jesus is the Christ, he preached the gospel even before his death. (Acts 4:10-12)

Acts 4:10 Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom ye crucified, whom God raised from the dead, even by him doth this man stand here before you whole.

11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

At first, Paul was a persecutor of those who believed in Jesus. But when Paul met the resurrected Jesus, he realized that Jesus was the Christ. After that, Paul risked his life to tell the world that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 19:8-10, 21, Rom 15:28)

Acts 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

21 After these things were ended, Paul purposed in the spirit, when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia, to go to Jerusalem, saying, After I have been there, I must also see Rome.

Rom 15:28 When therefore I have performed this, and have sealed to them this fruit, I will come by you into Spain.

Apollos seems to have at first conveyed the teachings of Jesus. However, after he heard the gospel from Prisca and his wife that Jesus was the Christ, he boldly told the Jews that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 18:27-28)

Acts 18:24 And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria, an eloquent man, and mighty in the scriptures, came to Ephesus.

25 This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spake and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing only the baptism of John.

26 And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto them, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly.

27 And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace:

28 For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

84. To find Jesus is the Christ is like to find a treasure in a field. (Mt 13:44-46)
Mt 16:13-19, Col 3:11

A person who discovers that Jesus is the Christ devotes his whole life to knowing Christ and preaching Christ. (Mt 13:44-46)

Mt 13:44 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.

45 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls:

46 Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.

Those who discover that Jesus is the Christ have received the greatest blessings in the world. (Mt 16:13-19)

Mt 16:13 When Jesus came into the coasts of Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, Whom do men say that I the Son of man am?

14 And they said, Some say that thou art John the Baptist: some, Elias; and others, Jeremias, or one of the prophets.

15 He saith unto them, But whom say ye that I am?

16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

19 And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Christ is everything. (Col 3:11)

Col 3:11 Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.

85. Christ as the true prophet who performed miracles like the prophets of the Old Testament (Mt 14:13-21)
2 Kings 4:1-7,42-44

Jesus had compassion on the crowd and performed a miracle of five fish. Such miracles are similar to those performed by the prophet Elisha. Jesus is the true prophet who performed the miracle of five fish. (Mt 14:13-21, 2 Kings 4:1-7,42-44)

Mt 14:13 When Jesus heard of it, he departed thence by ship into a desert place apart: and when the people had heard thereof, they followed him on foot out of the cities.

14 And Jesus went forth, and saw a great multitude, and was moved with compassion toward them, and he healed their sick.

15 And when it was evening, his disciples came to him, saying, This is a desert place, and the time is now past; send the multitude away, that they may go into the villages, and buy themselves victuals.

16 But Jesus said unto them, They need not depart; give ye them to eat.

17 And they say unto him, We have here but five loaves, and two fishes.

18 He said, Bring them hither to me.

19 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the grass, and took the five loaves, and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed, and brake, and gave the loaves to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.

20 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the fragments that remained twelve baskets full.

21 And they that had eaten were about five thousand men, beside women and children.

2 Kings 4:1 Now there cried a certain woman of the wives of the sons of the prophets unto Elisha, saying, Thy servant my husband is dead; and thou knowest that thy servant did fear the Lord: and the creditor is come to take unto him my two sons to be bondmen.

2 And Elisha said unto her, What shall I do for thee? tell me, what hast thou in the house? And she said, Thine handmaid hath not any thing in the house, save a pot of oil.

3 Then he said, Go, borrow thee vessels abroad of all thy neighbours, even empty vessels; borrow not a few.

4 And when thou art come in, thou shalt shut the door upon thee and upon thy sons, and shalt pour out into all those vessels, and thou shalt set aside that which is full.

5 So she went from him, and shut the door upon her and upon her sons, who brought the vessels to her; and she poured out.

6 And it came to pass, when the vessels were full, that she said unto her son, Bring me yet a vessel. And he said unto her, There is not a vessel more. And the oil stayed.

7 Then she came and told the man of God. And he said, Go, sell the oil, and pay thy debt, and live thou and thy children of the rest.

42 And there came a man from Baalshalisha, and brought the man of God bread of the firstfruits, twenty loaves of barley, and full ears of corn in the husk thereof. And he said, Give unto the people, that they may eat.

43 And his servitor said, What, should I set this before an hundred men? He said again, Give the people, that they may eat: for thus saith the Lord, They shall eat, and shall leave thereof.

44 So he set it before them, and they did eat, and left thereof, according to the word of the Lord.

86. Jesus, who showed Himself to be the Son of God by walking on the water (Mt 14:25, 32-33) [Lists](#)

Mt 14:25 And in the fourth watch of the night Jesus went unto them, walking on the sea.

32 And when they were come into the ship, the wind ceased.

33 Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth thou art the Son of God.

87. Jesus performed the healing work that Christ prophesied in the Old Testament would perform. (Mt 15:29-31)

Isa 35:5-6, Ps 103:3, Mt 4:23-24, Lk 7:21-22, Acts 2:22

[Lists](#)

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and bring about a work of healing. (Isa 35:5-6, Ps 103:3)

Isa 35:5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Ps 103:3 Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases;

Jesus performed the healing work of Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mt 4:23-24, Mt 15:29-31)

Mt 4:23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.

24 And his fame went throughout all Syria: and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with divers diseases and torments, and those which were possessed with devils, and those which were lunatick, and those that had the palsy; and he healed them.

Mt 15:29 And Jesus departed from thence, and came nigh unto the sea of Galilee; and went up into a mountain, and sat down there.

30 And great multitudes came unto him, having with them those that were lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and cast them down at Jesus' feet; and he healed them:

31 Insomuch that the multitude wondered, when they saw the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the God of Israel.

Jesus explained that his healing ministry was to testify that he was the Christ. (Lk 7:21-22)

Lk 7:21 And in that same hour he cured many of their infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many that were blind he gave sight.

22 Then Jesus answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things ye have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached.

God testified that Jesus was the Christ by showing great power, wonders, and signs through Jesus. (Acts 2:22)

Acts 2:22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:

88. The blessing of confessing Jesus as the Christ (Mt 16:13-20)

1 Jn 5:1

Peter confessed that Jesus was the Christ. Then Jesus said that he would build the church on the confession that Jesus was the Christ. He said that faith in Jesus as the Christ overcomes the powers of Hades. Also, those who confess that Jesus is the Christ can preach the gospel of the kingdom to people. (Mt 16:16-19)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

19 And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Also, those who believe in Jesus as the Christ become children of God. (1 Jn 5:1)

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

89. Death and Resurrection Prophecy to Christ (Mt 16:21)
Isa 53:12, Ps 22:16, Ps 16:10, Ps 49:15, 1 Cor 15:3-4

Jesus told His disciples that He would suffer, be killed, and be resurrected three days later. (Mt 16:21)

Mt 16:21 From that time forth began Jesus to shew unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would die for the sins of many. (Isa 53:12)

Isa 53:12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Also in the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would suffer and die. (Ps 22:16)

Ps 22:16 For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have inclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet.

Also in the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would rise from the dead. (Ps 16:10, Ps 49:15)

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Ps 49:15 But God will redeem my soul from the power of the grave: for he shall receive me. Selah.

Jesus is the Christ who died according to the Bible and rose again according to the Bible. (1 Cor 15:3-4)

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

91. They saw no one but Jesus only. (Mt 17:1-8)

Peter, James, and his brother John followed Jesus to a high mountain. And there they saw Jesus transfigured and conversing with Moses and Elijah. So Peter asked Jesus to build three tents for Jesus, Moses, and Elijah. But in the end, everyone disappears and only Jesus remains. (Mt 17:8)

Mt 17:8 And when they had lifted up their eyes, they saw no man, save Jesus only.

All the Old Testament was written to describe Christ. (Jn 5:39)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Moses waited for Christ and wrote the Pentateuch. (Gen 3:15, Deut 18:15, Heb 11:24-26)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

Heb 11:24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter;
25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;
26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.\

Abraham waited for Christ. (Jn 8:56)

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

All the prophets also wanted to see Christ. (Mt 13:17)

Mt 13:17 For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.

After all, through the Bible, only Christ remains for us.

92. Who can be saved? (Mt 19:25, 29)

A person who believes in Jesus as the Christ and preaches the gospel

Mt 10:37-8, Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1, Mt 4:19

A rich young man came to Jesus and asked what he must do to gain eternal life. Jesus told him to keep all the commandments first, then sell his possessions and give to the poor and follow Him. Then the young man returns with sorrow. At this time, the disciples asked Jesus who could be saved. (Mt 19:25)

Mt 19:25 When his disciples heard it, they were exceedingly amazed, saying, Who then can be saved?

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be saved. (Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1)

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are destined to preach the gospel. (Mt 19:29, Mt 10:37-38, Mt 4:19)

Mt 19:29 And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life.

Mt 10:37 He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me.

38 And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me.

Mt 4:19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.

93. Christ, who uses Gentiles for world evangelization (Mt 20:10-16)

The Jews who received the gospel first felt proud, but they did not know that Jesus was the Christ, the heart of the gospel. So the blessing of world evangelization was passed on to the Gentiles.

Lk 17:16-18, Acts 10:45, Acts 13:46, Acts 18:6, Acts 28:25-28

In the parable of the laborers in the vineyard, Jesus said that the Jews who received the gospel first were last, and the Gentiles who received the gospel last were first. This is because the Jews who received the Gospel first did not know the core of the Gospel, that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 20:10-16)

Mt 20:10 But when the first came, they supposed that they should have received more; and they likewise received every man a penny.

11 And when they had received it, they murmured against the goodman of the house,

12 Saying, These last have wrought but one hour, and thou hast made them equal unto us, which have borne the burden and heat of the day.

13 But he answered one of them, and said, Friend, I do thee no wrong: didst not thou agree with me for a penny?

14 Take that thine is, and go thy way: I will give unto this last, even as unto thee.

15 Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with mine own? Is thine eye evil, because I am good?

16 So the last shall be first, and the first last: for many be called, but few chosen.

Jesus healed ten lepers. But only the Gentiles among those lepers gave thanks to Jesus. (Lk 17:16-18)

Lk 17:16 And fell down on his face at his feet, giving him thanks: and he was a Samaritan.

17 And Jesus answering said, Were there not ten cleansed? but where are the nine?

18 There are not found that returned to give glory to God, save this stranger.

The Holy Spirit was poured out on Gentiles who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 10:45)

Acts 10:45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Paul and Barnabas preached the gospel to the Jews first, but they did not receive it, so they turned to the Gentiles. (Acts 13:46, Acts 18:6)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

Acts 18:6 And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook his raiment, and said unto them, Your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean; from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles.

After all, as the Old Testament prophesied, the Jews do not believe that Jesus is the Christ. Eventually, the message of God's salvation is transmitted to the Gentiles. (Acts 28:25-28)

Acts 28:25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers,

26 Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive:

27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it.

94. Death and Resurrection Prophecy to Christ II (Mt 20:17-19)

Mt 17:22-23, Mt 16:21, Lk 24:25-27, Isa 53:12, Ps 16:10, Ps 49:15, Heb 2:9

Jesus himself spoke of his own death and resurrection. (Mt 20:17-19, Mt 17:22-23, Mt 16:21)

Mt 20:17 And Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the twelve disciples apart in the way, and said unto them,
18 Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes, and they shall condemn him to death,
19 And shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify him: and the third day he shall rise again.

Mt 17:22 And while they abode in Galilee, Jesus said unto them, The Son of man shall be betrayed into the hands of men:

23 And they shall kill him, and the third day he shall be raised again. And they were exceeding sorry.

Mt 16:21 From that time forth began Jesus to shew unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.

Jesus told his disciples that the Old Testament prophesied the death and resurrection of Christ and that this had been fulfilled in him. (Lk 24:25-27)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

In the Old Testament, Christ's death for the sins of many and His resurrection were foretold. (Isa 53:12, Ps 16:10, Ps 49:15)

Isa 53:12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Ps 49:15 But God will redeem my soul from the power of the grave: for he shall receive me. Selah.

Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament, who died and rose again for all. (Heb 2:9)

Heb 2:9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

95. Christ, the true Priest who became the ransom for our salvation (Mt 20:28)

1 Tim 2:6, Isa 53:10, Heb 9:11-12, 25-26, 28

The representative work of Christ is the work of kings, priests, and prophets. Jesus is the true Priest, the Christ, who became the ransom to save us. (Mt 20:28, 1 Tim 2:6)

Mt 20:28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

1 Tim 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be a trespass offering for us. (Isa 53:10)

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

By dying on the cross, Jesus accomplished eternal atonement for us once and for all. (Heb 9:12,25-26,28)

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

96. Jesus, Christ who came on a donkey as the true King by the prophecy (Mt 21:4-9)
Isa 62:11, Zech 9:9

Jesus came to Jerusalem on a colt, just as the Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come to Jerusalem on a colt. Jesus came to this earth as the true King who will give us salvation. (Mt 21:4-9, Isa 62:11, Zech 9:9)

Mt 21:4 All this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying,

5 Tell ye the daughter of Sion, Behold, thy King cometh unto thee, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt the foal of an ass.

6 And the disciples went, and did as Jesus commanded them,

7 And brought the ass, and the colt, and put on them their clothes, and they set him thereon.

8 And a very great multitude spread their garments in the way; others cut down branches from the trees, and strawed them in the way.

9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

Isa 62:11 Behold, the Lord hath proclaimed unto the end of the world, Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh; behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

Zech 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

97. Jesus, who was called as the Christ from all ages (Mt 21:15-16)
Ps 8:2, Mt 9:27, Mt 15:22, Mt 21:9

In the Old Testament it was foretold that children and infants would call upon Christ. (Ps 8:2)

Ps 8:2 Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast thou ordained strength because of thine enemies, that thou mightest still the enemy and the avenger.

Jesus was called the Christ from children and sucklings, as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mt 21:15-16)

Mt 21:15 And when the chief priests and scribes saw the wonderful things that he did, and the children crying in the temple, and saying, Hosanna to the son of David; they were sore displeased,
16 And said unto him, Hearest thou what these say? And Jesus saith unto them, Yea; have ye never read, Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings thou hast perfected praise?

Jesus was called the Christ from the two blind men. (Mt 9:27)

Mt 9:27 And when Jesus departed thence, two blind men followed him, crying, and saying, Thou son of David, have mercy on us.

The Canaanite woman also called Jesus the Son of David, the Christ. (Mt 15:22)

Mt 15:22 And, behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, thou son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil.

Many people called Jesus the Son of David, the Christ. (Mt 21:9)

Mt 21:9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the son of David: Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.

98. The Jews who will kill the Son of God (vineyard farmer parable) (Mt 21:33-41, 45-46)
Jn 1:10-10

Through the parable of the vineyard farmer, Jesus prophesied that the Jews would kill Himself, the Son of God. (Mt 21:33-41,45-46)

Mt 21:33 Hear another parable: There was a certain householder, which planted a vineyard, and hedged it round about, and digged a winepress in it, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country:
34 And when the time of the fruit drew near, he sent his servants to the husbandmen, that they might receive the fruits of it.

35 And the husbandmen took his servants, and beat one, and killed another, and stoned another.

36 Again, he sent other servants more than the first: and they did unto them likewise.

37 But last of all he sent unto them his son, saying, They will reverence my son.

38 But when the husbandmen saw the son, they said among themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance.

39 And they caught him, and cast him out of the vineyard, and slew him.

40 When the lord therefore of the vineyard cometh, what will he do unto those husbandmen?

41 They say unto him, He will miserably destroy those wicked men, and will let out his vineyard unto other husbandmen, which shall render him the fruits in their seasons.

45 And when the chief priests and Pharisees had heard his parables, they perceived that he spake of them.

46 But when they sought to lay hands on him, they feared the multitude, because they took him for a prophet.

Christ, the light of the world, came to this earth, but Christ's people did not receive Him. (Jn 1:10-11)

Jn 1:10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.

11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

The Jews eventually killed Jesus, the Christ. But God confirmed that Jesus was the Christ by raising Him to life. (Acts 2:36, Acts 3:15)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 3:15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

99. Christ, who is the stone which the builders rejected (Mt 21:42-44)
Ps 118:22-23, Acts 4:11-12, Eph 2:20, Isa 8:14, Dan 2:34-35

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the stone rejected by the builders would become the cornerstone of Israel. (Ps 118:22-23)

Ps 118:22 The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner.
23 This is the Lord's doing; it is marvellous in our eyes.

The Jews have forsaken Jesus, but Jesus is the Christ, the cornerstone who saves Israel and the whole world. (Mt 21:42-43, Acts 4:11-12, Eph 2:20)

Mt 21:42 Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof.

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will perish. (Mt 21:44, Isa 8:14, Dan 21:42-44)

Mt 21:44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Isa 8:14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

Dan 2:34 Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces.

35 Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.

100. What is the gospel? (Mt 16:16)

(1) The Gospel is that Jesus is the Christ! (Mt 16:16)

(2) What does the Christ mean?

Christ means the Anointed One.

Only three jobs are anointed in the old testament; kings, priests, and prophets.

(3) All the bible talks about Christ!

(Gen 3:15, Lk 24:27,44, Acts 28:23)

(4) Why do we need Christ? Because of the original sin

We were image of God in the beginning. (Gen 1:27)

We enjoyed all the blessing of God. (Gen 1:28)

But our ancestor, Adam deceived by Satan. (Gen 3:1-6)

So, all the his descendants became slavers of Satan. (Jn 8:44)

Adam disobeyed God's Word, so all the his descendants became sinners. (Rom 3:23)

As the result, all the people are separated from God. Their destiny become Hell. (Isa 49:2)

(5) To solve these fundamental problems, we need Christ!

Jesus came here as the true King, who broke Satan's head.

(1 Jn 3:8)

Jesus came here as the true Priest, who forgave our sin on the cross. (Mk 10:45)

Jesus came here as the true Prophet, who is the way to meet God. (Jn 14:6)

Jesus fulfilled Christ job on the cross. (Jn 19:30)

So, Jesus is the Christ, who is the true King, the true Priest, and the true Prophet. (Mt 16:16)

When we believe Jesus as the Christ, we become children of God. (1 Jn 5:1)

When we believe Jesus as the Christ, we become free from the law of sin and death. (Rm 8:2)

When we believe Jesus as the Christ, our citizenship is in heaven. (Phil 3:20)

In Christ, anything cannot be a problem to us. (Phil 4:13)

101. The feast of heaven (Christ as Bridegroom, Mt 22:2)
Isa 54:5, Eph 5:23, Mt 25:1,9-10, Rev 19:7

Heaven is the place where we marry our Bridegroom Christ. (Mt 22:2, Rev 19:7)

Mt 22:2 The kingdom of heaven is like unto a certain king, which made a marriage for his son,

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

The Old Testament records that God is our Husband. (Isa 54:5)

Isa 54:5 For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.

How can God be our husband? It is possible because Jesus, the Son of God, becomes our Bridegroom. As we live on this earth, we are preparing to be the bride of Christ. (Eph 5:31-32, Mt 25:1,9-10)

Eph 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

Mt 25:1 Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom.

9 But the wise answered, saying, Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves.

10 And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut.

102. Those who are not dressed in heavenly feasts (Mt 22:10-13)
Gal 3:26-27, Rom 13:14

Who are those who do not wear robes at the heavenly feast? These are people who went to church but do not truly believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Mt 22:10-13, Gal 3:26-27, Rom 13:14)

Mt 22:10 So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all as many as they found, both bad and good: and the wedding was furnished with guests.

11 And when the king came in to see the guests, he saw there a man which had not on a wedding garment:

12 And he saith unto him, Friend, how camest thou in hither not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless.

13 Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness, there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Gal 3:26 For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

Rom 13:14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

103. God is God of the living (resurrection argument Mt 22:29-32)
Ex 3:6, Lk 20:38, Jn 5:29, Acts 24:15, Rev 22:5, Rev 20:10,15

Sadducees who did not believe in the resurrection came and asked Jesus whose wife the woman who had been married to many times would be in the resurrection. Then Jesus said that in the resurrection there will be no marriages and people will become like angels. He also said that God is the God of the living. Since God is the God of the living, to say that He is the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob means that there is a resurrection. (Mt 22:29-32, Ex 3:6)

Mt 22:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, Ye do err, not knowing the scriptures, nor the power of God.
30 For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.
31 But as touching the resurrection of the dead, have ye not read that which was spoken unto you by God, saying,
32 I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob? God is not the God of the dead, but of the living.

Ex 3:6 Moreover he said, I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God.

Everyone will be resurrected. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will come out to the resurrection of life, and those who do not will come out to the resurrection of judgment. (Jn 5:29, Acts 24:15)

Jn 5:29 And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.

Acts 24:15 And have hope toward God, which they themselves also allow, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be resurrected and reign with Christ forever. (Rev 22:5)

Rev 22:5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will be resurrected and thrown into the lake of fire that burns forever. (Rev 20:10,15)

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

104. Christ's greatest command love: saving souls (Mt 22:35-40)

This love is love to save the soul!

Jn 13:34, Jn 15:12-13, Rom 5:8, Jn 3:16, 1 Jn 4:9-11

Jesus said the greatest commandment is to love my neighbor as myself. (Mt 22:35-40)

Mt 22:35 Then one of them, which was a lawyer, asked him a question, tempting him, and saying,

36 Master, which is the great commandment in the law?

37 Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.

38 This is the first and great commandment.

39 And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

40 On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.

Jesus gave his disciples a new commandment to love one another. (Jn 13:34)

Jn 13:34 A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.

But this love is to love one another as Jesus loved us. That is, it refers to the love that Jesus gave his life to save us. We, too, should have a love that saves dying souls. (Jn 15:12-13, Rom 5:8, Jn 3:16)

Jn 15:12 This is my commandment, That ye love one another, as I have loved you.

13 Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

The love of God is the love that He gave His only begotten Son to die for us in order to save us. We too should have a love that saves the soul. (1 Jn 4:9-11)

1 Jn 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins. 11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another.

105. The Son of David and the Lord of David, Christ (Mt 22:41-46)

Ps 110:1, Mt 1:1, 2 Sam 7:12, Isa 11:1-2,10, Jer 23:5

Jesus explains to the Pharisees that Christ will come as David's descendant as Lord of David. (Mt 22:41-46)

Mt 22:41 While the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them,
42 Saying, What think ye of Christ? whose son is he? They say unto him, The son of David.
43 He saith unto them, How then doth David in spirit call him Lord, saying,
44 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool?
45 If David then call him Lord, how is he his son?
46 And no man was able to answer him a word, neither durst any man from that day forth ask him any more questions.

The Old Testament says that Christ is the Lord of David. (Ps 110:1)

Ps 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Also, the Old Testament said that Christ would come as a descendant of David. (2 Sam 7:12, Isa 11:1-2, Jer 23:5)

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

Jesus is the Lord of David, the Christ who came as a descendant of David. (Mt 1:1)

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

106. Jesus is equal with God. That is, Jesus is the Son of God.(Jn 5:17-18)
Jn 10:30-31, 33

Jesus revealed that He was equal with God. In other words, Jesus called God His Father and revealed that He was the only begotten Son of God. (Jn 5:17-18, Jn 10:30-31,33)

Jn 5:17 But Jesus answered them, My Father worketh hitherto, and I work.

18 Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he not only had broken the sabbath, but said also that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.

Jn 10:30 I and my Father are one.

31 Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.

33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself God.

108. The Christ, the true teacher and leader (Mt 23:8, 10)
Jn 6:45, Isa 54:13, Lk 14:8-9

There is only one true leader in the world. Only Christ is the leader. (Mt 23:8,10)

Mt 23:8 But be not ye called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all ye are brethren.

10 Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ.

If we try to exalt ourselves, we will be put to shame when Christ, who is higher than us, comes. (Lk 14:8-9)

Lk 14:8 When thou art bidden of any man to a wedding, sit not down in the highest room; lest a more honourable man than thou be bidden of him;

9 And he that bade thee and him come and say to thee, Give this man place; and thou begin with shame to take the lowest room.

When we receive the teachings of Christ, our true leader, we will have great peace. (Jn 6:45, Isa 54:13)

Jn 6:45 It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.

Isa 54:13 And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

109. What if we do not know that Jesus is the Christ? (Mt 23:13-15)

We become interrupters that prevent others from hearing the gospel. Lk 11:52

The hypocrites scribes and Pharisees are explainers of the Bible, but because they did not accurately convey the gospel of the Bible, they became people who closed the gates of heaven and sent people to hell. (Mt 23:13-15, Lk 11:52)

Mt 23:13 But woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye shut up the kingdom of heaven against men: for ye neither go in yourselves, neither suffer ye them that are entering to go in.

14 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye devour widows' houses, and for a pretence make long prayer: therefore ye shall receive the greater damnation.

15 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye compass sea and land to make one proselyte, and when he is made, ye make him twofold more the child of hell than yourselves.

Lk 11:52 Woe unto you, lawyers! for ye have taken away the key of knowledge: ye entered not in yourselves, and them that were entering in ye hindered.

110. Christ who tried to save the nation of Israel through all Israel's history (Mt 23:37)
Isa 31:5, Jn 8:58, Jer 35:15, Hos, Zech 1:4, Acts 7:52

Jesus worked throughout the history of Israel. Jesus and God sent prophets to the Israelites to cherish them like a hen nurtures them. But the people of Israel did not want the prophets. (Jn 8:58, Mt 23:37, Isa 31:5)

Jn 8:58 Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.

Mt 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

Isa 31:5 As birds flying, so will the Lord of hosts defend Jerusalem; defending also he will deliver it; and passing over he will preserve it.

In addition, the Israelites disobeyed the word of God delivered by the prophets and killed them. (Jer 35:15, Zech 1:4)

Jer 35:15 I have sent also unto you all my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending them, saying, Return ye now every man from his evil way, and amend your doings, and go not after other gods to serve them, and ye shall dwell in the land which I have given to you and to your fathers: but ye have not inclined your ear, nor hearkened unto me.

Zech 1:4 Be ye not as your fathers, unto whom the former prophets have cried, saying, Thus saith the Lord of hosts; Turn ye now from your evil ways, and from your evil doings: but they did not hear, nor hearken unto me, saith the Lord.

In the end, the people of Israel also killed Jesus, the Christ, the righteous man whom the prophets had foretold. (Acts 7:52)

Acts 7:52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

111. When will the end of this world come? (Mt 24:14)
Acts 1:6-7, Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Lk 24:47, Acts 1:8

[Lists](#)

We don't know when the end of the world will come. (Acts 1:6-7)

Acts 1:6 When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?

7 And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.

Jesus said that the end would come after the gospel was preached throughout the world. (Mt 24:14)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ will be preached throughout the world. And the end will come. (Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Lk 24:47, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Lk 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

112. Christ's Second Coming and Judgment (Mt 25:31-33, 41, 46)
Jn 10:25-28, Rev 21:27, Rev 20:15

Jesus is coming to this earth as the Judge. And He gives eternal punishment to those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ, and eternal life to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Mt 25:31-33, Jn 10:25-28, Rev 21:27, Rev 20:15)

Mt 25:31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:

32 And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats:

33 And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left.

Jn 10:25 Jesus answered them, I told you, and ye believed not: the works that I do in my Father's name, they bear witness of me.

26 But ye believe not, because ye are not of my sheep, as I said unto you.

27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:

28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.

Rev 21:27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

Rev 20:15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

113. Christ's death on the cross and His flesh and blood (Mt 26:2,12,26-28)
1 Cor 15:3, Isa 53:8, 12, 1 Pt 3:18, 1 Cor 11:25-26

Jesus prophesied that He would die on the cross. And it was for Jesus' burial that a woman poured perfume on Jesus. (Mt 26:2,12)

Mt 26:2 Ye know that after two days is the feast of the passover, and the Son of man is betrayed to be crucified. 12 For in that she hath poured this ointment on my body, she did it for my burial.

Jesus died according to the death of Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Isa 53:8, 1 Cor 15:3)

Isa 53:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

Christ died for our sins so that we might live. (1 Pt 3:18)

1 Pt 3:18 For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:

Through communion, we will have to proclaim that Jesus died to save us until Jesus comes again. (Mt 26:26-28, 1 Cor 11:25-26)

Mt 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body.

27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it;

28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

1 Cor 11:25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, this cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.

26 For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come.

114. Before believing in Jesus as the Christ (Mt 26:33-35)
 Zech 13:7, Lk 24:19, 25-26, Mk 14:50, 71, Jn 2:22, Acts 4:11-12

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that people would forsake Christ as their Shepherd. (Zech 13:7)

Zech 13:7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the Lord of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones.

Peter and his disciples told Jesus that they would not forsake Him. (Mt 26:33-35)

Mt 26:33 Peter answered and said unto him, Though all men shall be offended because of thee, yet will I never be offended.

34 Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, That this night, before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice.

35 Peter said unto him, Though I should die with thee, yet will I not deny thee. Likewise also said all the disciples.

This was a time when they did not truly believe in Jesus as the Christ. They knew Jesus as a mighty prophet. (Lk 24:19)

Lk 24:19 And he said unto them, What things? And they said unto him, Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, which was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people:

Also, the Old Testament was not understood because it was not believed that Jesus was the Christ. (Lk 24:26-27)

Lk 24:26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

In the end, as prophesied in the Old Testament, the disciples of Jesus abandoned Him and fled. Peter even cursed Jesus for fear that he might be caught. (Mk 14:50,71)

Mk 14:50 And they all forsook him, and fled.

71 But he began to curse and to swear, saying, I know not this man of whom ye speak.

After Jesus was resurrected, the disciples truly believed that Jesus was the Christ. Only then did they understand the Old Testament and the words of Jesus. (Jn 2:22)

Jn 2:22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.

After the disciples believed that Jesus was the Christ, they were able to preach that Jesus was the Christ even before death. (Acts 4:11-12)

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

116. The crucifixion of Christ is the plan of God (Mt 26:52-56)
Jn 3:16, Ps 41:9, Zech 11:12, Zech 12:10, Isa 53:7, Zech 13:7, Jn 19:30

When Jesus was arrested by the Jews, Peter cut off the ear of one of Jesus' captors. Jesus stopped Peter from doing that. Jesus could call the angels so he could set himself free. But He was taken by the Jews to accomplish God's plan, the work of Christ. (Mt 26:52-56)

Mt 26:52 Then said Jesus unto him, Put up again thy sword into his place: for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword.

53 Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels?

54 But how then shall the scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?

55 In that same hour said Jesus to the multitudes, Are ye come out as against a thief with swords and staves for to take me? I sat daily with you teaching in the temple, and ye laid no hold on me.

56 But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples forsook him, and fled.

It was God's plan to give us His only begotten Son. (Jn 3:16)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

God had Christ betrayed by a friend and sold for thirty pieces of silver. (Ps 41:9, Zech 11:12)

Ps 41:9 Yea, mine own familiar friend, in whom I trusted, which did eat of my bread, hath lifted up his heel against me.

Zech 11:12 And I said unto them, If ye think good, give me my price; and if not, forbear. So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver.

And God gave Christ to suffer and die for us. (Zech 12:10, Isa 53:7, Zech 13:7)

Zech 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

Zech 13:7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the Lord of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones.

The work of Christ was accomplished by Jesus dying on the cross. (Jn 19:30)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

117. What is the charge of Jesus' death sentence? Christ (Mt 26:62-66)
Mt 27:17,22

Jesus was sentenced to death because He claimed to be the Christ, the Son of God. (Mt 26:62-66)

Mt 26:62 And the high priest arose, and said unto him, Answerest thou nothing? what is it which these witness against thee?

63 But Jesus held his peace, And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God.

64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

65 Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, He hath spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? behold, now ye have heard his blasphemy.

66 What think ye? They answered and said, He is guilty of death.

The Israelites eventually killed the Christ they had been waiting for. (Mt 27:17,22)

Mt 27:17 Therefore when they were gathered together, Pilate said unto them, Whom will ye that I release unto you? Barabbas, or Jesus which is called Christ?

22 Pilate saith unto them, What shall I do then with Jesus which is called Christ? They all say unto him, Let him be crucified.

118. Jesus' death on the cross fulfilled the work of Christ (Mt 27:35,46,50,51)
Jn 19:30, Gen 3:15, Jn 3:8, Heb 9:11-12, Heb 10:19-20

Jesus fulfilled all the work of Christ prophesied in the Old Testament on the cross. (Gen 3:15, Jn 19:30)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

When Jesus died on the cross, He as the true King destroyed the works of Satan. (1 Jn 3:8)

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

When Jesus died on the cross, as the true priest, He became the ransom for all our sins. (Heb 9:11-12)

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

When Jesus died on the cross, Jesus tore His body to open the way for us to meet God. (Heb 10:19-20)

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,
20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

119. The resurrected Christ, Jesus according to the Scriptures (Mt 28:5-6,9)
Lk 24:25-27, 1 Cor 15:4, Ps 16:10, Acts 2:31, Acts 13:34-37

The Old Testament prophesied the resurrection of Christ. (Ps 16:10, Lk 24:25-27)

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

Jesus was resurrected according to the Scriptures. (Mt 28:5-6,9, 1 Cor 15:4)

Mt 28:5 And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not ye: for I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified.

6 He is not here: for he is risen, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay.

9 And as they went to tell his disciples, behold, Jesus met them, saying, All hail. And they came and held him by the feet, and worshipped him.

1 Cor 15:4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

God further confirmed Him as the Christ by resurrecting Jesus. (Acts 2:31-36)

Acts 2:31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.

32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.

34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

120. The Command of the Resurrected Christ, Jesus: World Evangelization (Mt 28:18-20)
Lk 24:47, Jer 31:34, Isa 2:2-3, Mic 4:1-2, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

The Old Testament prophesied that the gospel would be preached to all nations. (Lk 24:47, Jer 31:34, Isa 2:2-3, Mic 4:1-2)

Lk 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

Jer 31:34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

Isa 2:2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

Mic 4:1 But in the last days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it.

2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

The resurrected Jesus commanded us to do this world evangelization. (Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Mark**Bible**

- 121. The theme of Mark's Gospel: Jesus is the Christ (Mk 1:1)
- 122. When the time of Christ is fulfilled (Mk 1:15)
- 123. Christ, who comes for evangelism (Mk 1:38-39)
- 124. Do everything for the Lord (Mk 9:41-42)
- 125. What shall I do that I may inherit eternal life? (Mk 10:17)
- 126. Christ, who came as the true Ransome (Mk 10:45)
- 127. The Son of David, Christ (Mk 10:46-47)
- 129. Holy Spirit, who is witnessing Christ (Mk 13:11)
- 130. Christ, who died according to the Scriptures (Mk 15:23-28)
- 131. The Christ, who opens the way to meet God by dying on the cross (Mk 15:37-38)
- 132. Christ, who was resurrected according to Scripture (Mk 16:5-6)

121. Theme of Mark's Gospel: Jesus is the Christ (Mark 1:1)

Mark wrote the Gospel of Mark to bear witness that Jesus was the Christ, prophesied in the Old Testament and the Son of God. Everything in Mark's Gospel is actually directed at this topic. Mark 1:2-3, 8,11, Psalm 2:7, Isaiah 42:1

Mark first decided on the subject of the Gospel of Mark and wrote the Gospel of Mark. In other words, Jesus is the Christ and the Son of God. (Mark 1:1)

Mark 1:1 The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God;

Also, Mark reveals that John the Baptist was prophesied in the Old Testament to send someone who would prepare the way for Christ. (Mark 1:2-3,8)

Mark 1:2 As it is written in the prophets, Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee.

3 The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

8 I indeed have baptized you with water: but he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be poured out with the Holy Spirit and would be called the Son of God. (Isaiah 42:1, Psalm 2:7)

Isaiah 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

Psalm 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

When John the Baptist baptized Jesus, the Holy Spirit came upon Jesus, and God called Jesus the Son. That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mark 1:9-11)

Mark 1:9 And it came to pass in those days, that Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized of John in Jordan.

10 And straightway coming up out of the water, he saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit like a dove descending upon him:

11 And there came a voice from heaven, saying, Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

122. When the time of Christ is fulfilled (Mk 1:15)

Dan 9:24-26, Gal 4:4, 1 Tim 2:6

In the Old Testament it was foretold when Christ would come. (Dan 9:24-26)

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

25 Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.

26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.

The time of Christ is fulfilled. In other words, the time has come for Christ to come and begin the work of Christ. Jesus began the work of Christ. (Mk 1:15, Gal 4:4, 1 Tim 2:6)

Mk 1:15 And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

1 Tim 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

123. Christ, who comes for evangelism (Mk 1:38-39)

Mt 11:1, Mk 3:14, Lk 4:42-44

Jesus came to this earth to evangelize. (Mk 1:38-39, Mt 11:1, Mk 3:14, Lk 4:42-44)

Mk 1:38 And he said unto them, Let us go into the next towns, that I may preach there also: for therefore came I forth.

39 And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out devils.

Mt 11:1 And it came to pass, when Jesus had made an end of commanding his twelve disciples, he departed thence to teach and to preach in their cities.

Mk 3:14 And he ordained twelve, that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach,

Lk 4:42 And when it was day, he departed and went into a desert place: and the people sought him, and came unto him, and stayed him, that he should not depart from them.

43 And he said unto them, I must preach the kingdom of God to other cities also: for therefore am I sent.

44 And he preached in the synagogues of Galilee.

124. Do everything for the Lord (Mk 9:41)

1 Cor 8:12, 1 Cor 10:31, Col 3:17, 1 Pt 4:11, Rom 14:8, 2 Cor 5:15

Jesus said that anyone who gives even a cup of water to those who belong to Christ will be rewarded. This means that works done for Christ are rewarded. (Mk 9:41)

Mk 9:41 For whosoever shall give you a cup of water to drink in my name, because ye belong to Christ, verily I say unto you, he shall not lose his reward.

We must do all things for Christ. (1 Cor 8:12, 1 Cor 10:31, Col 3:17)

1 Cor 8:12 But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ.

1 Cor 10:31 Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

Col 3:17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

We are to do all things so that Christ may be glorified. (1 Pt 4:11)

1 Pt 4:11 If any man speak, let him speak as the oracles of God; if any man minister, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

We live for Christ. (Rom 14:8, 2 Cor 5:15)

Rom 14:8 For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.

2 Cor 5:15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

125. What shall I do that I may inherit eternal life? (Mk 10:17)

Believes in Jesus as the Christ and preaches the gospel

Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1, Mt 4:19

A rich young man came to Jesus and asked what he must do to gain eternal life. Jesus told him to keep all the commandments first, then sell his possessions and give to the poor and follow Him. Then the young man returns with sorrow. At this time, the disciples asked Jesus who could be saved. (Mk 10:17)

Mk 10:17 And when he was gone forth into the way, there came one running, and kneeled to him, and asked him, Good Master, what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be saved. (Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1)

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are destined to preach the gospel. (Mt 19:29, Mt 10:37-38, Mt 4:19)

Mt 19:29 And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life.

Mt 10:37 He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me.

38 And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me.

Mt 4:19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.

126. Christ, who came as the true ransome (Mk 10:45)

Isa 53:10-12, 2 Cor 5:21, Titus 2:14

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would come and become the ransom for the forgiveness of our sins. (Isa 53:10-12)

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Jesus became the ransom to save us. (Mk 10:45, 2 Cor 5:21, Titus 2:14)

Mk 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

2 Cor 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Titus 2:14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.

127. The Son of David, Christ (Mk 10:46-47)
Jer 23:5, Mt 22:41-42, Rev 22:16

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come as the son of David. (Jer 23:5)

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

After the fall of the nation of Israel, there was no more king, no priests, and no more prophets. So, the waiting for Christ that God would send happened to all the people. All the people were expecting that Christ to come and do the work of a true king, a true priest, and a true prophet.

At this time, a blind man felt Jesus passing by and called to Jesus, Son of David. The descendants of David are nicknames for Christ. That is, he called Jesus as the Christ. (Mk 10:46-47)

Mk 10:46 And they came to Jericho: and as he went out of Jericho with his disciples and a great number of people, blind Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus, sat by the highway side begging.

47 And when he heard that it was Jesus of Nazareth, he began to cry out, and say, Jesus, thou son of David, have mercy on me.

The Jews knew that Christ would come in the blood of David. (Mt 22:41-42)

Mt 22:41 While the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them,

42 Saying, What think ye of Christ? whose son is he? They say unto him, The son of David.

Jesus is the Christ who fulfilled the work of the true king, true priest, and true prophet who came as the descendant of David. (Rev 22:16)

Rev 22:16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.

129. Holy Spirit, who is witnessing Christ (Mk 13:10-11)
Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13, Acts 1:8

The main work of the Holy Spirit is to testify that Jesus is the Christ. The Holy Spirit works on the saints so that they can testify that Jesus is the Christ. (Mk 13:10-11)

Mk 13:10 And the gospel must first be published among all nations.

11 But when they shall lead you, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what ye shall speak, neither do ye premeditate: but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye: for it is not ye that speak, but the Holy Ghost.

The Holy Spirit reminds us of what Jesus said during his public life so that we can realize that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

Jn 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

When the Holy Spirit comes upon us, we will spread the gospel that Jesus is the Christ all over the world. (Acts 1:8)

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

130. Jesus, who died according to the Scriptures (Mk 15:23-28)
1 Cor 15:3, Ps 69:21, Ps 22:18, Ps 22:16, Isa 53:9,12

The Old Testament foretold how Christ would die. (Ps 69:21, Ps 22:16,18, Isa 53:9,12)

Ps 69:21 They gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink.

Ps 22:16 For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have inclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet.

18 They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture.

Isa 53:9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Jesus died according to the prophecies of Christ in the Old Testament. That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied to come in the Old Testament. (Mk 15:23-28, 1 Cor 15:3)

Mk 15:23 And they gave him to drink wine mingled with myrrh: but he received it not.

24 And when they had crucified him, they parted his garments, casting lots upon them, what every man should take.

25 And it was the third hour, and they crucified him.

26 And the superscription of his accusation was written over, The King Of The Jews.

27 And with him they crucify two thieves; the one on his right hand, and the other on his left.

28 And the scripture was fulfilled, which saith, And he was numbered with the transgressors.

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

131.The Christ, who opens the way to meet God by dying on the cross (Mk 15:37-38)
Heb 10:19-20, Jn 14:6

By dying on the cross, Jesus opened the way to meet God. (Mk 15:37-38, Heb 10:19-20, Jn 14:6)

Mk 15:37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.
38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom.

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,
20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

132. Christ, who was resurrected according to Scripture (Mk 16:5-6)

1 Cor 15:4, Lk 24:44-46, Ps 16:10, Acts 2:29-32, Acts 13:33, Ps 49:15

In the Old Testament, the resurrection of Christ was foretold. (Lk 24:44-46, Ps 16:10, Ps 49:15)

Lk 24:44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Ps 49:15 But God will redeem my soul from the power of the grave: for he shall receive me. Selah.

Jesus was resurrected according to the prophecy of the resurrection of Christ in the Old Testament. That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mk 16:5-6, Acts 2:29-32, Acts 13:33-38, 1 Cor 15:4)

Mk 16:5 And entering into the sepulchre, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white garment; and they were affrighted.

6 And he saith unto them, Be not affrighted: Ye seek Jesus of Nazareth, which was crucified: he is risen; he is not here: behold the place where they laid him.

Acts 2:29 Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.

30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;

31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.

32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

Acts 13:33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

1 Cor 15:4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

133. Purpose of Record of Luke (Lk 1:1-4)
134. John the Baptist who prepared the way of Christ (Lk 1:17)
135. Christ, who received David's throne for eternity (Lk 1:30-33)
136. Christ, who is called the Son of God (Lk 1:35)
137. Christ, who is joy and hope for all (Lk 1:41-44)
139. Christ came to this earth. He is Jesus. (Lk 2:10-11)
140. Christ, who is the Consolation of Israel (Lk 2:25-35)
141. Christ, whom the Holy Spirit descended upon according to the Old Testament (Lk 3:21-22)
142. Today, this Scripture is fulfilled in your hearing (Lk 4:16-21)
145. Christ, who called us as fishers of men (Lk 5:10-11)
146. Christ, who is the Lord of the Sabbath (Lk 6:5)
147. Christ, who spared the dead (Lk 7:11-16)
148. Christ, who is the One who is to come (Lk 7:18-22)
149. The goal of the life of those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, spreading the gospel (Lk 9:57-62)
150. Evangelism in the Bible: Finding disciples first (Lk 10:1-2)
151. Christ, who is the One prophets and kings saw (Lk 10:23-24)
152. The good part: Knowing Christ (Lk 10:38-42)
154. The blessed, who believe Jesus as the Christ (Lk 11:28)
156. If you know the owner's will and are not prepared (Lk 12:47-48)
157. The baptism that Christ received: The Death on the Cross (Lk 12:50)
158. The kingdom of God (World Evangelization) will be fulfilled. (Lk 13:18-21)
159. Jesus who finished the work of Christ by His death on the cross and resurrection from the dead (Lk 13:32)
160. The Christ, who came to find the lost sheep (Lk 15:3-7)
161. Preaching kingdom of God: Preaching Jesus is the Christ (Lk 16:16)
162. Salvation is our goal, not healing and miracles. (Lk 17:17-19)
163. Most people don't know how much Christ is needed to them until they die. (Lk 17:26-30)
164. when the Son of Man comes, will He really find faith on the earth?" (Lk 18:7-8)

165. The Bible is understood when it is truly believed that Jesus is the Christ.(Lk 18:31-34)
166. Christ, who is the chief cornerstone (Lk 20:17-18)
167. The resurrection, the greatest evidence that Jesus is the Christ (Lk 24:26, 46)
168. Christ, who was numbered with the transgressors (Lk 22:37)
169. "If You are the Christ, tell us." (Lk 22:66-69)
170. They did not know Christ, so they killed Christ. (Lk 23:34)
171. Christ, who has made the way to meet God by dying on the cross (Lk 23:44-46)

133. Purpose of Record of Luke (Lk 1:1-4)
Lk 9:20

Many eyewitnesses and ministers of the word saw Jesus' works and his resurrection and wrote that Jesus was the Christ. Likewise, Luke communicated to Sir Theophilus that Jesus is the Christ through the Gospel of Luke. (Lk 1:1-4, Lk 9:20)

Lk 1:1 Forasmuch as many have taken in hand to set forth in order a declaration of those things which are most surely believed among us,

2 Even as they delivered them unto us, which from the beginning were eyewitnesses, and ministers of the word;

3 It seemed good to me also, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write unto thee in order, most excellent Theophilus,

4 That thou mightest know the certainty of those things, wherein thou hast been instructed.

Lk 9:20 He said unto them, But whom say ye that I am? Peter answering said, The Christ of God.

134. John the Baptist who prepared the way of Christ (Lk 1:17)
Isa 40:3, Mal 4:5-6, Mt 3:1-3, Mt 11:13-14

Lists

An angel said that when John the Baptist was born, he would be the preparer of the way for Christ. (Lk 1:17)

Lk 1:17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.

The Old Testament prophesied that someone like the prophet Elijah would come, who would prepare the way for Christ. (Isa 40:3, Mal 4:5-6)

Isa 40:3 The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God.

Mal 4:5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord:
6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

John the Baptist is the man who will prepare the way for Christ as prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mt 3:1-3, Mt 11:13-14)

Mt 3:1 In those days came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judaea,
2 And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.
3 For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

Mt 11:13 For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John.
14 And if ye will receive it, this is Elias, which was for to come.

135. Christ, who received David's throne for eternity (Lk 1:30-33)

2 Sam 7:12-13, 16, Ps 132:11, Isa 9:6-7, Isa 16:5, Jer 23:5

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would receive the throne of David forever. (2 Sam 7:12-13, 16, Ps 132:11, Isa 9:6-7, Isa 16:5, Jer 23:5)

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

16 And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever.

Ps 132:11 The Lord hath sworn in truth unto David; he will not turn from it; Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne.

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

Isa 16:5 And in mercy shall the throne be established: and he shall sit upon it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging, and seeking judgment, and hasting righteousness.

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

An angel appeared to Mary and told her that Jesus, who would be born in her body, would receive the throne of David forever. In other words, Jesus who will be born in the body of Mary is the Christ. (Lk 1:30-33)

Lk 1:30 And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God.

31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

136. Jesus, who is called the Son of God (Lk 1:35)

Ps 2:7-8, Mt 3:16-17, Mt 14:33, Mt 16:16, Mt 17:5, Jn 1:34, Jn 20:31, Heb 1:2,8

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would entrust the work of Christ to the Son of God. (Ps 2:7-8, Heb 1:8-9)

Ps 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.

9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

From birth, Jesus was called the Son of God. (Lk 1:35)

Lk 1:35 And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

When Jesus began the work of Christ, he was called by God to be the Son of God. (Mt 3:16-17)

Mt 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

John the Baptist testified that Jesus was the Son of God. (Jn 1:34)

Jn 1:34 And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God.

And Jesus was called the Son of God by people because he performed miracles that only God could do. (Mt 14:33)

Mt 14:33 Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth thou art the Son of God.

Jesus continued to be called the Son of God. (Mt 17:5)

Mt 17:5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

Only the Son of God can accomplish the work of Christ. (Mt 16:16)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

Only the Son of God can do the work of Christ, namely, the true king, true priest, and true prophet.

Only the Son of God can break Satan's head. (1 Jn 3:8)

Jn 3:8 The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.

The only sinless sacrifice for the forgiveness of our sins is the Son of God. (Heb 9:14)

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

Only the Son of God who is with God can do the work of a true prophet. (Jn 1:1-2)

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

In other words, Jesus accomplished the work of Christ as the Son of God. (Jn 19:30, Jn 20:31)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

137. Christ, who is joy and hope for all (Lk 1:41-44)
Jer 17:13, Jn 4:13-14, Jn 7:38

This happened when Mary, who was pregnant with Jesus, visited Elizabeth, who was pregnant with John the Baptist. The baby in Elizabeth's womb jumped and played with joy when he saw Christ Jesus in Mary's womb. (Lk 1:41-44)

Lk 1:41 And it came to pass, that, when Elisabeth heard the salutation of Mary, the babe leaped in her womb; and Elisabeth was filled with the Holy Ghost:

42 And she spake out with a loud voice, and said, Blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the fruit of thy womb.

43 And whence is this to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

44 For, lo, as soon as the voice of thy salutation sounded in mine ears, the babe leaped in my womb for joy.

God is the hope of Israel and the fountain of living water. Likewise, Jesus is the source of living water and the hope of Israel. (Jer 17:13, Jn 4:13-14, Jn 7:38)

Jer 17:13 O Lord, the hope of Israel, all that forsake thee shall be ashamed, and they that depart from me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken the Lord, the fountain of living waters.

Jn 4:10 10 Jesus answered and said unto her, If thou knewest the gift of God, and who it is that saith to thee, Give me to drink; thou wouldest have asked of him, and he would have given thee living water.

Jn 7:38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

139. Christ came to this earth. He is Jesus. (Lk 2:10-11)

Isa 9:6, Isa 7:14, Mt 1:16, Gal 4:4, Mt 1:22-23

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would be born. (Isa 9:6, Isa 7:14, Mt 1:22-23)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Isa 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Mt 1:22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,
23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

Christ was born to save us on this earth. Jesus is the Christ. (Lk 2:10-11, Mt 1:16, Gal 4:4)

Lk 2:10 And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.

11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

Mt 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

140. Christ, who is the Consolation of Israel (Lk 2:25-32)
Isa 57:18, Isa 66:10-11

In the Old Testament, God promised to comfort Israel. (Isa 57:18, Isa 66:10-11)

Isa 57:18 I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also, and restore comforts unto him and to his mourners.

Isa 66:10 Rejoice ye with Jerusalem, and be glad with her, all ye that love her: rejoice for joy with her, all ye that mourn for her:

11 That ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that ye may milk out, and be delighted with the abundance of her glory.

Simeon was the man who waited for Christ, the comfort of Israel. He was instructed by the Holy Spirit that he would not die until he saw Christ. Then he saw the baby Jesus and knew he was the Christ. (Lk 2:25-32)

Lk 2:25 And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him.

26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death, before he had seen the Lord's Christ.

27 And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law,

28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,

29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:

30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,

31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;

32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

141. Christ, whom the Holy Spirit descended upon according to the Old Testament (Lk 3:21-22)
Isa 11:1-2, Isa 42:1

In the Old Testament it was foretold that the Holy Spirit would come upon Christ. (Isa 11:1-2, Isa 42:1, Isa 61:1)

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

The Holy Spirit came upon Jesus to come upon Christ. This means that Jesus is the Christ. (Lk 3:21-22)

Lk 3:21 Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened,
22 And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

142. Today, this Scripture is fulfilled in your hearing (Lk 4:16-21)
Lk 7:20-22

Jesus went into the synagogue and read the book of Isaiah. The text Jesus read records what will happen when Christ comes. Jesus revealed that what would happen to Christ happened to him. In other words, Jesus revealed himself in the synagogue to be the Christ. (Lk 4:16-21)

Lk 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.

John the Baptist sent his disciples to ask Jesus if he was the one who was to come, the Christ. Jesus told John the Baptist's disciples to see the miracles he was doing now, and he revealed that he was the Christ. Again, Jesus quoted from the Old Testament book of Isaiah what would happen when Christ came. (Lk 7:20-22)

Lk 7:20 When the men were come unto him, they said, John Baptist hath sent us unto thee, saying, Art thou he that should come? or look we for another?

21 And in that same hour he cured many of their infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many that were blind he gave sight.

22 Then Jesus answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things ye have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached.

145. Christ, who called us as fishers of men (Lk 5:10-11)
Mt 4:19, Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

Jesus called his disciples and made them fishers of men. (Lk 5:10-11, Mt 4:19)

Lk 5:10 And so was also James, and John, the sons of Zebedee, which were partners with Simon. And Jesus said unto Simon, Fear not; from henceforth thou shalt catch men.

11 And when they had brought their ships to land, they forsook all, and followed him.

Mt 4:19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.

Jesus has called us to be fishers of men. In other words, Jesus has called us to do world evangelization. (Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

146. Christ, who is the Lord of the Sabbath (Lk 6:5)
Gen 2:1-3, Ex 20:10, Ex 31:13, Heb 4:1-11, Mt 11:28

Jesus is Lord of the Sabbath. The Sabbath is a day to receive true rest through Jesus, the Christ. The laws of the Sabbath are a guide to lead to rest in Christ. (Lk 6:5)

Lk 6:5 And he said unto them, That the Son of man is Lord also of the sabbath.

In the Old Testament, it is recorded that God rested after creation. (Gen 2:1-3)

Gen 2:1 Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them.

2 And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made.

3 And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made.

Also, in order to keep this Sabbath, the Old Testament forbids working on the Sabbath. (Ex 20:10, Ex 31:13)

Ex 20:10 But the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates:

Ex 31:13 Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you.

But this rest is the shadow of Christ, the eternal rest. There is eternal rest only in Christ. (Heb 4:1-11, Mt 11:28)

Heb 4:1 Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.

2 For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.

3 For we which have believed do enter into rest, as he said, As I have sworn in my wrath, if they shall enter into my rest: although the works were finished from the foundation of the world.

4 For he spake in a certain place of the seventh day on this wise, And God did rest the seventh day from all his works.

5 And in this place again, If they shall enter into my rest.

6 Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief:

7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.

8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day.

9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God.

10 For he that is entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from his.

11 Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.

Mt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

147. Christ raised the dead (Lk 7:11-16)

1 Kings 17:22-24, 2 Kings 4:32-37, Lk 8:54-55, Jn 11:43-44,

In the Old Testament, prophets performed miracles that saved people. Of course, through these miracles, they showed that they were God's true prophets. (1 Kings 17:22-24, 2 King 4:32-37)

1 Kings 17:22 And the Lord heard the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived.

23 And Elijah took the child, and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother: and Elijah said, See, thy son liveth.

24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now by this I know that thou art a man of God, and that the word of the Lord in thy mouth is truth.

2 King 4:32 And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead, and laid upon his bed.

33 He went in therefore, and shut the door upon them twain, and prayed unto the Lord.

34 And he went up, and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands: and stretched himself upon the child; and the flesh of the child waxed warm.

35 Then he returned, and walked in the house to and fro; and went up, and stretched himself upon him: and the child sneezed seven times, and the child opened his eyes.

36 And he called Gehazi, and said, Call this Shunammite. So he called her. And when she was come in unto him, he said, Take up thy son.

37 Then she went in, and fell at his feet, and bowed herself to the ground, and took up her son, and went out.

Jesus also performed the miracle of raising the dead. This shows that Jesus is the true prophet of God. (Lk 7:11-16, Lk 8:54-55, Jn 11:43-44)

Lk 7:11 And it came to pass the day after, that he went into a city called Nain; and many of his disciples went with him, and much people.

12 Now when he came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow: and much people of the city was with her.

13 And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, Weep not.

14 And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.

15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.

16 And there came a fear on all: and they glorified God, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us; and, That God hath visited his people.

Lk 8:54 And he put them all out, and took her by the hand, and called, saying, Maid, arise.

55 And her spirit came again, and she arose straightway: and he commanded to give her meat.

Jn 11:43 And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth.

44 And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go.

148. Are You the Coming One, Christ? (Lk 7:18-22)

Jesus is the Coming One, Christ!

Gen 49:10, Num 24:17, Deut 18:15, Dan 9:24, Jn 6:14, Isa 29:18-19, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 61:1

After being imprisoned, John the Baptist heard what Jesus had done and sent his disciples to ask if Jesus was the one who was to come, the Christ. Then Jesus told John's disciples to tell him what they had heard and what He had done. (Mt 11:2-5)

Lk 7:18 And the disciples of John shewed him of all these things.

19 And John calling unto him two of his disciples sent them to Jesus, saying, Art thou he that should come? or look we for another?

20 When the men were come unto him, they said, John Baptist hath sent us unto thee, saying, Art thou he that should come? or look we for another?

21 And in that same hour he cured many of their infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many that were blind he gave sight.

22 Then Jesus answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things ye have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached.

Gen 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Num 24:17 I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth.

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

The Old Testament also foretold the signs that Christ would perform when He comes. (Isa 29:18-19, Isa 35:5-6, Isa 61:1)

Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

19 The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

Isa 35:5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Jesus showed people that He was the Christ by performing the signs that Christ would perform in the Old Testament. (Jn 6:14)

Jn 6:14 Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world.

149. The goal of the life of those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, spreading the gospel (Lk 9:57-62)

Lk 9:57 And it came to pass, that, as they went in the way, a certain man said unto him, Lord, I will follow thee whithersoever thou goest.

58 And Jesus said unto him, Foxes have holes, and birds of the air have nests; but the Son of man hath not where to lay his head.

59 And he said unto another, Follow me. But he said, Lord, suffer me first to go and bury my father.

60 Jesus said unto him, Let the dead bury their dead: but go thou and preach the kingdom of God.

61 And another also said, Lord, I will follow thee; but let me first go bid them farewell, which are at home at my house.

62 And Jesus said unto him, No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God.

150. Evangelism in the Bible: Finding disciples first (Lk 10:1-2)
Lk 10:4-11

Jesus sent his disciples to each village. He told his disciples to pray to God to send workers to the harvest.
Evangelism is finding disciples first. (Lk 10:1-2)

Lk 10:1 After these things the Lord appointed other seventy also, and sent them two and two before his face into every city and place, whither he himself would come.

2 Therefore said he unto them, The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few: pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he would send forth labourers into his harvest.

Visit the village and spread the gospel to each house. Then there will be a house that receives the Gospel. Enter such a house and preach the gospel. (Lk 10:4-9)

Lk 10:4 Carry neither purse, nor scrip, nor shoes: and salute no man by the way.

5 And into whatsoever house ye enter, first say, Peace be to this house.

6 And if the son of peace be there, your peace shall rest upon it: if not, it shall turn to you again.

7 And in the same house remain, eating and drinking such things as they give: for the labourer is worthy of his hire. Go not from house to house.

8 And into whatsoever city ye enter, and they receive you, eat such things as are set before you:

9 And heal the sick that are therein, and say unto them, The kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.

If you meet people who do not receive the Gospel, leave them. (Lk 10:10-11)

Lk 10:10 But into whatsoever city ye enter, and they receive you not, go your ways out into the streets of the same, and say,

11 Even the very dust of your city, which cleaveth on us, we do wipe off against you: notwithstanding be ye sure of this, that the kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.

Ultimately, this is the way to find disciples who will truly receive the Gospel.

151. Christ, whom many prophets and kings wanted to see (Lk 10:23-24)
Heb 11:13, 1 Pt 1:10-11, 1 Jn 1:1-2

In the Old Testament, many prophets and kings wanted to see Christ. (Heb 11:13, 1 Pt 1:10-11)

Heb 11:13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.

1 Pt 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

That Christ has come. Jesus is the Christ. (Lk 10:23-24, 1 Jn 1:1-2)

Lk 10:23 And he turned him unto his disciples, and said privately, Blessed are the eyes which see the things that ye see:

24 For I tell you, that many prophets and kings have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

152.The good part: Knowing Christ (Lk 10:38-42)
Jn 5:39-40, Jn 6:40, Jn 17:3

Jesus visited Martha's house. At that time Martha was busy serving Jesus, and Mary listened to Jesus. Jesus said to her that Mary chose the good side. (Lk 10:38-42)

Lk 10:38 Now it came to pass, as they went, that he entered into a certain village: and a certain woman named Martha received him into her house.

39 And she had a sister called Mary, which also sat at Jesus' feet, and heard his word.

40 But Martha was cumbered about much serving, and came to him, and said, Lord, dost thou not care that my sister hath left me to serve alone? bid her therefore that she help me.

41 And Jesus answered and said unto her, Martha, Martha, thou art careful and troubled about many things:

42 But one thing is needful: and Mary hath chosen that good part, which shall not be taken away from her.

To know and believe that Jesus is the Christ is to receive eternal life. (Jn 5:39-40, Jn 6:40, Jn 17:3)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

40 And ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Jn 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

154. The blessed, who believe Jesus as the Christ (Lk 11:28)
Jn 5:39, Jn 6:40, Jn 17:3

Jesus said that blessed are those who hear the word of God and keep it. (Lk 11:28)

Lk 11:28 But he said, Yea rather, blessed are they that hear the word of God, and keep it.

The Word of God is the Bible. And the Bible testifies of Christ. (Jn 5:39)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

To hear and keep the word of God is to believe in the One sent by God, Jesus Christ. (Jn 6:40, Jn 17:3)

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Jn 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

156. If you know the owner's will and are not prepared (Lk 12:47-48)
Jn 6:39-40, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 20:31, Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

In the parable of the steward, Jesus said that the servant who knows the master's will but does not do it will be beaten a lot. (Lk 12:47-48)

Lk 12:47 And that servant, which knew his lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes.

48 But he that knew not, and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes. For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required: and to whom men have committed much, of him they will ask the more.

Then, what is the will of the master, the will of God?

It is believing in One whom God has sent. God's will is to believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Jn 6:39-40, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 20:31)

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

And to spread this gospel to the whole world. (Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

157. The baptism that Christ received: The Death on the Cross (Lk 12:50)
Ps 69:1-2, Jonah 2:6, Mk 10:38, Rom 6:4

In the Old Testament it was foretold how frustrating it would be before Christ's death. (Ps 69:1-2, Jonah 2:5-6)

Ps 69:1 Save me, O God; for the waters are come in unto my soul.

2 I sink in deep mire, where there is no standing: I am come into deep waters, where the floods overflow me.

Jonah 2:5 The waters compassed me about, even to the soul: the depth closed me round about, the weeds were wrapped about my head.

6 I went down to the bottoms of the mountains; the earth with her bars was about me for ever: yet hast thou brought up my life from corruption, O Lord my God.

Jesus talked about how frustrated he was until the baptism he was to receive, namely his death on the cross. (Lk 12:50, Mk 10:38)

Lk 12:50 But I have a baptism to be baptized with; and how am I straitened till it be accomplished!

Mk 10:38 38 But Jesus said unto them, Ye know not what ye ask: can ye drink of the cup that I drink of? and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with?

When Christ died on the cross, we also died. Now we have new life in Christ. (Rom 6:4)

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

158. The kingdom of God (World Evangelization) will be fulfilled. (Lk 13:18-21)
Ezk 17:22-23, 1 Cor 1:21

In the Old Testament, world evangelization was prophesied. (Ezk 17:22-23)

Ezk 17:22 Thus saith the Lord God; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar, and will set it; I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent:

23 In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it: and it shall bring forth boughs, and bear fruit, and be a goodly cedar: and under it shall dwell all fowl of every wing; in the shadow of the branches thereof shall they dwell.

Jesus said that the kingdom of God is like the leaven of the flour. Evangelism will make everything swell like leaven. In other words, world evangelization will take place through evangelism. (Lk 13:18-21, 1 Cor 1:21)

Lk 13:18 Then said he, Unto what is the kingdom of God like? and whereunto shall I resemble it?

19 It is like a grain of mustard seed, which a man took, and cast into his garden; and it grew, and waxed a great tree; and the fowls of the air lodged in the branches of it.

20 And again he said, Whereunto shall I liken the kingdom of God?

21 It is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened.

1 Cor 1:21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.

159. Jesus who finished the work of Christ by His death on the cross (Lk 13:31-32)
Jn 19:30,

Jesus prophesied that it would happen on the third day when King Herod said that he would kill Jesus. And by his death, the work of Christ was fully accomplished. (Lk 13:31-32, Jn 19:30)

Lk 13:31 The same day there came certain of the Pharisees, saying unto him, Get thee out, and depart hence: for Herod will kill thee.

32 And he said unto them, Go ye, and tell that fox, Behold, I cast out devils, and I do cures to day and to morrow, and the third day I shall be perfected.

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

160. The Christ, who came to find the lost sheep (Lk 15:3-7)
Ezk 34:11-12,16

It was prophesied in the Old Testament that God would seek the lost sheep. (Ezk 34:11-12,16)

Ezk 34:11 For thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I, even I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out.
12 As a shepherd seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep that are scattered; so will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day.
16 will seek that which was lost, and bring again that which was driven away, and will bind up that which was broken, and will strengthen that which was sick: but I will destroy the fat and the strong; I will feed them with judgment.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus came to this earth to seek lost lambs. (Lk 15:3-7)

Lk 15:3 And he spake this parable unto them, saying,
4 What man of you, having an hundred sheep, if he lose one of them, doth not leave the ninety and nine in the wilderness, and go after that which is lost, until he find it?
5 And when he hath found it, he layeth it on his shoulders, rejoicing.
6 And when he cometh home, he calleth together his friends and neighbours, saying unto them, Rejoice with me; for I have found my sheep which was lost.
7 I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, which need no repentance.

161. Preaching kingdom of God : Preaching Jesus is the Christ (Lk 16:16)

Isa 52:7, Isa 40:9, Isa 61:1, Nahum 1:15, Rom 10:15-17, Acts 5:42

The Old Testament prophesied that the gospel of the kingdom of God would be preached. (Isa 52:7, Isa 40:9, Isa 61:1, Nahum 1:15)

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

Isa 40:9 O Zion, that bringest good tidings, get thee up into the high mountain; O Jerusalem, that bringest good tidings, lift up thy voice with strength; lift it up, be not afraid; say unto the cities of Judah, Behold your God!

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Nahum 1:15 Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through thee; he is utterly cut off.

The law and the words of the prophets were preached only until the time of John the Baptist. After that, the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached. (Lk 16:16)

Lk 16:16 The law and the prophets were until John: since that time the kingdom of God is preached, and every man presseth into it.

Now the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached. That is, the gospel that Jesus is the Christ is preached. (Rom 10:15-17, Acts 5:42)

Rom 10:15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

162. Salvation is our goal, not healing and miracles. (Lk 17:17-19)
Mk 14:50, Jn 2:22, Jn 20:31

Many people followed Jesus to be healed. But after they were healed, they left Jesus. (Lk 17:17-19)

Lk 17:17 And Jesus answering said, Were there not ten cleansed? but where are the nine?

18 There are not found that returned to give glory to God, save this stranger.

19 And he said unto him, Arise, go thy way: thy faith hath made thee whole.

The disciples also followed Jesus through many miracles. But they left him when he was about to die. (Mk 14:50)

Mk 14:50 And they all forsook him, and fled.

Until it is believed that Jesus is the Christ, neither the Old Testament nor the work of Jesus is understood. (Jn 2:22)

Jn 2:22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.

The Bible was written so that we might believe in Jesus as the Christ and be saved. (Jn 20:31)

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

163. Most people don't know how much Christ is needed to them until they die. (Lk 17:26-30)

Lk 17:26 And as it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man.

27 They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all.

28 Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded;

29 But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all.

30 Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed.

164. When the Son of Man comes, will He really find faith on the earth? (Lk 18:7-8)
2 Pt 3:4, Mt 24:14, 2 Pt 3:9-10

People in the world think that there will be no coming of Christ in their time. (2 Pt 3:4)

2 Pt 3:4 And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation.

But the gospel will be preached soon, and Christ will come soon. (Mt 24:14, 2 Pt 3:9-10)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

2 Pt 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

Will Jesus ever find those who truly believe in Him as the Christ? (Lk 18:7-8)

Lk 18:7 And shall not God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them?
8 I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?

165. The Bible is understood when it is truly believed that Jesus is the Christ.(Lk 18:31-34) Jn 2:19-22, Lk 24:32, Lk 24:44-45

[Lists](#)

Jesus told his disciples that he would be delivered to the Gentiles, suffer, die, and rise again on the third day, just as it was written in the Old Testament. But the disciples did not understand any of this. This was before the disciples truly believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Lk 18:31-34)

Lk 18:31 Then he took unto him the twelve, and said unto them, Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of man shall be accomplished.

32 For he shall be delivered unto the Gentiles, and shall be mocked, and spitefully entreated, and spitted on:

33 And they shall scourge him, and put him to death: and the third day he shall rise again.

34 And they understood none of these things: and this saying was hid from them, neither knew they the things which were spoken.

Jesus rebuked those who traded in the temple, saying, “Destroy this temple, and I will raise it up in three days”. This temple pointed to Jesus Himself. But the disciples did not understand this. This was before the disciples truly believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Jn 2:19-22)

When the resurrected Jesus opened the Bible to his disciples and explained that He was the Christ, the disciples understood the Bible. (Lk 24:32, 44-45)

Lk 24:32 And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

166. Christ, who is the chief cornerstone (Lk 20:17-18)

Ps 118:22-23, Acts 4:11-12, Eph 2:20, Isa 8:14, Dan 2:34-35

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the stone rejected by the builders would become the cornerstone of Israel. (Ps 118:22-23)

Ps 118:22 The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner.

23 This is the Lord's doing; it is marvellous in our eyes.

The Jews have forsaken Jesus, but Jesus is the Christ, the cornerstone who saves Israel and the whole world. (Lk 20:17, Acts 4:11-12, Eph 2:20)

Lk 20:17 And he beheld them, and said, What is this then that is written, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will perish. (Lk 20:18, Isa 8:14, Dan 21:42-44)

Lk 20:18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.

Isa 8:14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

Dan 2:34 Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces.

35 Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.

167. The resurrection, the greatest evidence that Jesus is the Christ (Lk 24:26, 46)
Acts 2:34-36, 1 Pt 1:10-11

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would suffer, die, and be resurrected. (1 Pt 1:10-11)

1 Pt 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

Jesus revealed himself to his disciples by telling them that Christ would suffer, die, and be resurrected. In other words, Jesus showed Himself to be the Christ. (Lk 24:26,46)

Lk 24:26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

During His public ministry, Jesus showed his disciples that he was the Christ. But the disciples did not believe it. But after Jesus was resurrected, it was believed that Jesus was the Christ. (Jn 2:22)

Jn 2:22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.

Peter testified that Jesus was resurrected as a sure proof that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 2:34-36)

Acts 2:34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

168. Christ, who was numbered with the transgressors (Lk 22:37)
Isa 53:12, Lk 24:26-27,44

The Old Testament foretold that Christ would be regarded as a fellow of the transgressors. (Isa 53:12)

Isa 53:12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus was regarded as a fellow of the transgressors. (Lk 22:37)

Lk 22:37 For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me, And he was reckoned among the transgressors: for the things concerning me have an end.

All the prophecies of Christ in the Old Testament were fulfilled in Jesus. That is, Jesus is the Christ. (Lk 24:26-27,44)

Lk 24:26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

169. Jesus revealed that He was the Christ. (Lk 22:66-71)

Lk 22:66 And as soon as it was day, the elders of the people and the chief priests and the scribes came together, and led him into their council, saying,

67 Art thou the Christ? tell us. And he said unto them, If I tell you, ye will not believe:

68 And if I also ask you, ye will not answer me, nor let me go.

69 Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of God.

70 Then said they all, Art thou then the Son of God? And he said unto them, Ye say that I am.

71 And they said, What need we any further witness? for we ourselves have heard of his own mouth.

170. They did not know that Jesus was the Christ. So they killed Jesus.. (Lk 23:34)
Acts 3:15,17,

The Jews did not know that Jesus was the Christ. So they killed Jesus by nailing Him to the cross. (Lk 23:34, Act 3:15,17)

Lk 23:34 Then said Jesus, Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. And they parted his raiment, and cast lots.

Act 3:15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

17 And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance ye did it, as did also your rulers.

After the resurrection of Jesus, the Jews who realized that Jesus was the Christ repented and believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:36-38)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

171. Jesus, who has made the way to meet God by dying on the cross (Lk 23:44-46)
Gen 3:15, Heb 9:7-8, Heb 10:19-20, Heb 10:14

By dying on the cross, Jesus completed the work of Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

When Jesus died, the veil in the sanctuary was torn. (Lk 23:44-46)

Lk 23:44 And it was about the sixth hour, and there was a darkness over all the earth until the ninth hour.

45 And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst.

46 And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

In the Old Testament the veil of the sanctuary was always closed. (Heb 9:7-8)

Heb 9:7 But into the second went the high priest alone once every year, not without blood, which he offered for himself, and for the errors of the people:

8 The Holy Ghost this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing:

However, Jesus tore His body on the cross for forgiveness of our sins and opened the way to meet God. (Heb 10:14,19-20)

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,

20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

John

Bible

- 172. Christ, who is the Word of God (Jn 1:1)
- 173. Christ, who created heaven and earth with God (Jn 1:2-3)
- 174. Christ, who is God (Jn 1:1)
- 176. Christ, who is the true life (Jn 1:4)
- 177. Christ, who is the true light (Jn 1:4, 9)
- 178. When we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we become children of God. (Jn 1:12)
- 181. The glory as of the only begotten of the Father, Christ (Jn 1:14)
- 183. Christ, who is full of grace and truth (Jn 1:14)
- 184. Christ, who is the only begotten God, who is in the bosom of the Father (Jn 1:8)
- 185. Christ, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world (Jn 1:29)
- 186. We have found the Messiah" (which is translated, the Christ) (Jn 1:41)
- 188. Jesus, Christ, who is the gate of Heaven (Jn 1:51)
- 189. Jesus, Christ, who is the true temple (Jn 2:19-21)
- 190. The Bible and the words of Jesus are understood when it is believed that Jesus is the Christ.(Jn 2:22)
- 191. Jesus, Christ, who knows everything (Jn 2:24-25)
- 192. One who is born again can enter the kingdom of God. (Jn 3:3,5)
- 193. Jesus, Christ, who came down from heaven (Jn 3:13)
- 194. Jesus, Christ, who was crucified to give us eternal life (Jn 3:14-16)
- 195. He who has received that Jesus is the Christ has certified that God is true. (Jn 3:32-33)
- 196. Christ, whom all things have been given to (Jn 3:35)
- 198. Jesus, Christ, who is eternal living water (Jn 4:13-14)
- 199. Jesus, who revealed Himself as the Christ (Jn 4:25-26)
- 200. What happens to us when we believe that Jesus is the Christ? Evangelization (Jn 4:26,28-29)
- 202. We believe in Christ, not in the testimony of men, but in the words of Christ. (Jn 4:39-42)
- 203. Jesus, Christ, who is equal with God (Jn 5:16-18)
- 204. Christ, who do not speak on His own authority but the Father. (Jn 5:19)
- 206. Christ, who gives life to whom He will (Jn 5:21)

- 207. Christ, who has been committed all judgment to by the Father (Jn 5:22)
- 208. One who hears Christ's word and believes in Him who sent Christ has everlasting life. (Jn 5:24)
- 209. The Scriptures testify of Christ. (Jn 5:39)
- 210. The work of God and the will of God (Jn 6:29, 39, 40)
- 211. Christ, who is the bread of life (Jn 6:31-35, 47-51)
- 214. Christ, who is the Holy One of God (Jn 6:69)
- 216. The Holy Spirit, whom we receive in believing Jesus as the Christ (Jn 7:39)
- 217. Christ, Jesus, who is the Prophet (Jn 7:40)
- 218. Christ, Jesus, who was from the town of Bethlehem (Jn 7:42)
- 219. Jesus, the Christ, who comes from the seed of David (J 7:42)
- 220. If you do not believe that Jesus is the Christ, (Jn 8:24, 25)
- 221. "When the Son of Man is lifted up , then you will know that He is the Christ. (Jn 8:28)
- 222. Christ, who God is always with (Jn 8:29)
- 223. Christ, who always do those things that please God (Jn 8:29)
- 224. And you shall know the truth, Christ and Christ shall make you free. (Jn 8:32)
- 225. Abraham rejoiced to see Christ's coming (Jn 8:56-59)
- 227. Christ, who opened the eyes of one who was born blind (Jn 9:31-33)
- 228. Christ, who is the door of the sheep (Jn 10:7-10)
- 229. Christ, who is the good shepherd (Jn 10:11-15)
- 230. Christ who led the Gentiles (Jn 10:16)
- 231. If You are the Christ, tell us plainly. (Jn 10:24-26)
- 232. Nobody shall snatch Christ's sheep out of His hand. (Jn 10:27-29)
- 233. Jesus (, who is the Christ) and God are one. (Jn 10:30-33, 38)
- 235. For you to believe that Jesus is the Christ (Jn 11:14,15)
- 236. Christ, who is the resurrection and the life (Jn 11:25, 26)
- 237. Christ, who groaned in the spirit because people did not believe Jesus as the Christ (Jn 11:33, 38)
- 238. The enemy also prophesies the death of Christ (Jn 11:49-52)
- 239. Mary who prepared the day of Christ's burial (Jn 12:3,7) (Christ, who is the true Priest)
- 240. Christ, who comes as the King of Israel (Jn 12:12-16)

- 241. The glory of Christ, the cross on the cross (Jn 12:33, 27-28, 31-33)
- 242. Those who do not believe in Jesus as Christ despite many signs of Jesus (Jn 12:37-43)
- 243. Believing Jesus as the Christ is believing in God. (Jn 12:44-50)
- 244. So that when it happens you will believe that I am the Messiah (Jn 13:18-19, 21)
- 245. A new commandment: you love one another; as I have loved you (saving souls) (Jn 13: 34,35)
- 246. Christ, who is the true way, truth, and life (Jn14:6)
- 247. the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, and testify of Me (Jn 14:26)
- 248. Without Christ, we can do nothing. (Jn 15:1-6)
- 249. If you abide in Me, and My words abide in you, you will ask what you desire (: Our prayer) (Jn 15:7-8)
- 250. The word might be fulfilled which is written in their law, 'They hated Christ without a cause. (Jn 15:23-25)
- 251. The works of the Holy Spirit (Jn 16:8-11)
- 252. This is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent. (Jn 17:3) (Jesus' Prayer)
- 253. Christ, who died for our sins according to the Scriptures (1 Co 15:3, Jn 19:23-24, 28, 33-34)
- 254. Jesus, who finished the job of the Christ on the cross (Jn 19:30)
- 255. Christ, who rose again according to the Scriptures (Jn 20:24-29)
- 256. The Purpose of the Bible (Jn 20:31)
- 257. The Messages of Christ after His Resurrection (Jn 21:15-17)

172. Christ, who is the Word of God (Jn 1:1)
Jn 1:2, Jn 1:14, Rev 19:13

Christ is the Word of God. Christ, together with God, created the heavens and the earth by His Word. (Jn 1:1-3)

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

And Christ came to this earth in a physical form that we can see. That is Jesus. (Jn 1:14)

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jesus wore a robe dipped in blood, and his nickname is the Word of God. (Rev 19:13)

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

Jesus revealed Himself to be the Christ through the Word of God.

173. Christ, who created heaven and earth with God (Jn 1:2-3)

Gen 1:1, Ps 33:6, Col 1:15-16, Heb 1:2

God created the heavens and the earth with the word of God. (Gen 1:1, Ps 33:6)

Gen 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

Ps 33:6 By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. Christ

created the heavens and the earth with God. (Jn 1:2-3, Col 1:15-16, Heb 1:2)

Jn 1:2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

174. Jesus, who is God (Jn 1:1)

1 Jn 5:20, Jn 20:28, Titus 2:13, Ps 45:6, Heb 1:8, Jn 10:30,33

Jesus is God. We believe in the Holy Trinity God. We believe in God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Jesus is God the Son. (Jn 1:1)

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

Jesus is God the Son. (1 Jn 5:20, Jn 20:28, Titus 2:13)

1 Jn 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

Jn 20:28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

In the Old Testament, the Son of God is called God. (Ps 45:6, Heb 1:8)

Ps 45:6 Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre.

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.

The Jews also recognized the Son of God as God. (Jn 10:30,33)

Jn 10:30 I and my Father are one.

33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself God.

176. Christ, who is the true life (Jn 1:4)

1 Jn 5:11, Jn 8:11-12, Jn 14:6, Jn 11:25, Col 3:4

There is life in Christ. (Jn 1:4)

Jn 1:4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men.

In Christ is our eternal life. (1 Jn 5:11-12)

1 Jn 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.

12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

Christ Himself is our life. (Jn 14:6, Jn 11:25, Col 3:4)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

177 Christ, who is the the true light (Jn 1:9)

Isa 9:2, Isa 49:6, Isa 42:6, Isa 51:4, Lk 2:28-32, Jn 8:12, Jn 9:5, Jn 12:46

In the Old Testament, God promised to send Christ to this earth to be the light of all. (Isa 9:2, Isa 49:6, Isa 42:6, Isa 51:4)

Isa 9:2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

Isa 42:6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

Isa 51:4 Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation: for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light of the people.

Christ came to this earth as the light. That is Jesus. (Jn 1:9, Lk 2:28-32)

Jn 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

Lk 2:28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,

29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:

30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,

31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;

32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

Jesus also revealed that He is the light of the world. (Jn 8:12, Jn 9:5, Jn 12:46)

Jn 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

Jn 9:5 As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world.

Jn 12:46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

178. When we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we become children of God. (Jn 1:12)
1 Jn 5:1, Jn 20:31

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

The purpose of the writing of the Bible is to believe in Jesus as the Christ and to be saved. (Jn 20:31)

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

181. The glory as of the only begotten of the Father, Christ (Jn 1:14)
Heb 1:3, Col 1:15, Phil 2:6

Jesus is the only begotten Son of God. Therefore, Jesus has the glory of God.

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

Phil 2:6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

183. Christ, who is full of grace and truth (Jn 1:14)

Ex 34:6, Ps 25:10, Ps 26:3, Ps 40:10, Jn 14:6, Jn 8:32, Jn 1:17

Truth and grace are attributes that only God has. (Ex 34:6, Ps 25:10, Ps 26:3, Ps 40:10)

Ex 34:6 And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth,

Ps 25:10 All the paths of the Lord are mercy and truth unto such as keep his covenant and his testimonies.

Ps 26:3 For thy lovingkindness is before mine eyes: and I have walked in thy truth.

Ps 40:10 I have not hid thy righteousness within my heart; I have declared thy faithfulness and thy salvation: I have not concealed thy lovingkindness and thy truth from the great congregation.

Christ, like God, is full of truth and grace. (Jn 1:14, Jn 1:17)

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Jn 1:17 For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

Jesus is the true truth, the Christ, who sets us free. (Jn 14:6, Jn 8:32)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jn 8:32 And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

184. Christ, who is the only begotten God, who is in the bosom of the Father (Jn 1:18)
Ex 33:20, Mt 11:27, 1 Tim 6:16, Ps 2:7, Jn 3:16, 1 Jn 4:9

No one in the world has seen God. When a man sees God, he dies. (Ex 33:20, 1 Tim 6:16) Ex 33:20 And he said,
Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live.

1 Tim 6:16 Who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto; whom no man hath seen, nor can see: to whom be honour and power everlasting. Amen.

But the only begotten God who was with God has appeared to us. That is Jesus. (Ps 2:7, Jn 1:18, Mt 11:27)

Ps 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

Jn 1:18 No man hath seen God at any time, the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

Mt 11:27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

God sent His only begotten Son to this earth to save us. (Jn 3:16, 1 Jn 4:9)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

1 Jn 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

185. Jesus, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world (Jn 1:29)
Ex 12:3, Ex 29:38-39, Acts 8:31-35, Isa 53:5-11, Rev 5:6-7,12,

In the Old Testament, God told us to put the blood of a lamb on the doorposts and eat the meat on the Passover. This is God's foreshadowing of what Christ will shed for us in the future. (Ex 12:3)

Ex 12:3 Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them every man a lamb, according to the house of their fathers, a lamb for an house:

In the Old Testament, a lamb was offered as a sacrifice to God for the forgiveness of sins. This is God's showing that Christ will be sacrificed for us in the future. (Ex 29:38-39)

Ex 29:38 Now this is that which thou shalt offer upon the altar; two lambs of the first year day by day continually.
39 The one lamb thou shalt offer in the morning; and the other lamb thou shalt offer at even:

Also in the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be led away like a Lamb to die for our sins. (Isa 53:5-11)

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Christ came to this earth. John knew that Jesus was the Christ. That is why John called Jesus the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world. (Jn 1:29)

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

Philip explained that Jesus was the Christ to a man who had read Isaiah but did not understand (Acts 8:31-35)

Acts 8:31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

Jesus is the Christ, the Lamb of God who died for our sins. (Rev 5:6-7,12)

Rev 5:6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a

Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.

7 And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne.

12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

186. "We have found the Messiah" (which is translated, the Christ).(Jn 1:41, 45)

Messiah is Hebrew and Christ is Greek. Also, what Moses wrote in the Law and what the prophets wrote were about Christ. (Jn 1:41,45)

Jn 1:41 He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, We have found the Messias, which is, being interpreted, the Christ.

45 Philip findeth Nathanael, and saith unto him, We have found him, of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph.

The meaning of the Messiah is the Anointed. Then who are anointed in the old testament? kings, priests, and prophets were anointed.

(king, prophet) 1 Kings 19:16 And Jehu the son of Nimshi shalt thou anoint to be king over Israel: and Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abelmeholah shalt thou anoint to be prophet in thy room.

(priest) Ex 29:7 Then shalt thou take the anointing oil, and pour it upon his head, and anoint him.

"Jesus is the Christ" means that Jesus is the true King, and the true Priest, and the true Prophet.

Jesus is the true King, who broke Satan's head.(1Jn 3:8)

1Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Jesus is the true Priest, who died on the cross for forgiving our sins.(Mk 10:45)

Mk 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Jesus is the true Prophet, who is the way to meet God.(Jn 14:6)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus is the Christ, the anointed of God. (Acts 4:27)

Acts 4:27 For of a truth against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod, and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together,

Jesus finished the Christ job on the cross! (Jn 19:30)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

188. Jesus, Christ, who is the gate of Heaven (Jn 1:50-51)
Gen 28:12-14,17, Jn 2:19-21, Jn 14:6

In the Old Testament, Jacob saw angels ascending and descending on a ladder that stood on the ground. God also blessed Jacob on the ladder. And Jacob confessed that it was the house of God and the gate of heaven. (Gen 28:12-14, 17)

Gen 28:12 And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it.

13 And, behold, the Lord stood above it, and said, I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed;

14 And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed.

17 And he was afraid, and said, How dreadful is this place! this is none other but the house of God, and this is the gate of heaven.

Jesus revealed that He was the gate of heaven. (Jn 1:50-51, Jn 14:6)

Jn 1:50 Jesus answered and said unto him, Because I said unto thee, I saw thee under the fig tree, believest thou? thou shalt see greater things than these.

51 And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus also revealed that He was the true temple. (Jn 2:19-21)

Jn 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.

20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?

21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

189. Jesus, Christ, who is the true temple (Jn 2:19-21)
Mt 26:61, Lk 24:46, Acts 10:39-40, 1 Cor 15:3-4

Jesus is the true temple. (Jn 2:21)

Jn 2:21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

When Jesus said that he would raise the temple on the third day, he was referring to Jesus' death and resurrection on the third day. (Jn 2:19-20, Mt 26:61, Lk 24:46)

Jn 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.
20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?

Mt 26:61 And said, This fellow said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would die and rise again the third day. As the Old Testament prophesied, Jesus died on the cross and rose from the dead on the third day. That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Lk 24:46, Acts 10:39-40, 1 Cor 15:3-4)

Lk 24:46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

Acts 10:39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:
40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

190. The Bible and the words of Jesus are understood when it is believed that Jesus is the Christ.(Jn 2:22)
Lk 24:19, 25-26, Lk 24:32, 44-45, Jn 12:16

Before the disciples believed Jesus was the Christ, they knew Jesus as a mighty prophet. At that time, the Old Testament and the words of Jesus were not understood. (Lk 24:19, 25-26, Jn 2:22)

Lk 24:19 And he said unto them, What things? And they said unto him, Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, which was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people:

25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

Jn 2:22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.

When the disciples saw the resurrected Jesus and truly believed that Jesus was the Christ, the Old Testament and the words of Jesus were understood. (Lk 24:32, 44-45, Jn 12:16)

Lk 24:32 And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

Jn 12:16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

191. Jesus knows people's hearts.(Jn 2:24-25)

1 Kings 8:39, 1 Chr 28:9, Ps 7:9, Jer 11:20, Acts 1:24, Mt 9:4, Jn 16:30, Rev 2:23

Only God knows the hearts of men. (1 Kings 8:39, 1 Chr 28:9, Ps 7:9, Jer 11:20, Acts 1:24)

1 Kings 8:39 Then hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man according to his ways, whose heart thou knowest; (for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;)

1 Chr 28:9 And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the Lord searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever.

Ps 7:9 Oh let the wickedness of the wicked come to an end; but establish the just: for the righteous God trieth the hearts and reins.

Jer 11:20 But, O Lord of hosts, that judgest righteously, that triest the reins and the heart, let me see thy vengeance on them: for unto thee have I revealed my cause.

Acts 1:24 And they prayed, and said, Thou, Lord, which knowest the hearts of all men, shew whether of these two thou hast chosen,

Jesus is the Son of God. So Jesus knows people's hearts. (Jn 2:24-25, Mt 9:4,Jn 16:30, Rev 2:23)

Jn 16:30 Now are we sure that thou knowest all things, and needest not that any man should ask thee: by this we believe that thou camest forth from God.

Jn 2:24 But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all men,
25 And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man.

Mt 9:4 And Jesus knowing their thoughts said, Wherefore think ye evil in your hearts?

Rev 2:23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.

192. One who is born again can enter the kingdom of God. (Jn 3:3,5)

Ezk 36:25-27, Jn 1:12, Gal 6:15, Titus 3:5, 1 Jn 5:1, Mk 16:16, Acts 5:30-32, Acts 2:38

Jesus said that only those who are born of the Holy Spirit can enter the kingdom of God. (Jn 3:3,5)

Jn 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send the Holy Spirit to us. (Ezk 36:25-27)

Ezk 36:25 Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you.

26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.

27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.

The Holy Spirit came upon those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. Only those who believe in Jesus as the Christ become children of God. (Acts 5:30-32, Acts 2:38, Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

We can be born again only by the Holy Spirit, which is given through faith in Jesus as the Christ, neither by circumcision nor by uncircumcision nor by works of righteousness. (Gal 6:15, Titus 3:5)

Gal 6:15 For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature.

Titus 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;

193. Jesus, who came down from heaven (Jn 3:13)
Prov 30:4, 1 Cor 15:47

The Old Testament says that only God and His Son came down from heaven. (Prov 30:4)

Prov 30:4 Who hath ascended up into heaven, or descended? who hath gathered the wind in his fists? who hath bound the waters in a garment? who hath established all the ends of the earth? what is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou canst tell?

Jesus is the one who came from heaven, the Son of God. (Jn 3:13, 1 Cor 15:47)

Jn 3:13 And no man hath ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.

1 Cor 15:47 The first man is of the earth, earthy; the second man is the Lord from heaven.

194. Jesus, Christ, who was crucified to give us eternal life (Jn 3:14-16)
Num 21:8-9, Rom 5:8, 1 Jn 4:9

In the Old Testament, God made those who were bitten by serpents live when they saw the bronze serpent on Moses' pole. This prophesied that Christ would die on the cross for us in order to save us in the future. (Num 21:8-9)

Num 21:8 And the Lord said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live.

9 And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.

As the Christ, Jesus died on the cross to save us. (Jn 3:14-16)

Jn 3:14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:

15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

God loved us so much that He sent His only begotten Son to die on the cross. (Rom 5:8, 1 Jn 4:9)

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

1 Jn 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

195. He who has received that Jesus is the Christ has certified that God is true. (Jn 3:32-33)

Jn 3:32 And what he hath seen and heard, that he testifieth; and no man receiveth his testimony.

33 He that hath received his testimony hath set to his seal that God is true.

To deny that Jesus is the Christ is to make God a liar. (1 Jn 5:10)

1 Jn 5:10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son.

196. Christ, whom all things have been given to (Jn 3:35)
Mt 11:27, Mt 28:18, Heb 2:8

Jn 3:35 The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hand.

Mt 11:27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

Heb 2:8 Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him.

197. He who believes in Jesus as the Christ and the Son of God has everlasting life. (Jn 3:36)
Mt 16:16, Jn 20:31, Jn 3:16-17, Jn 19:30

How do we believe in Jesus to receive eternal life? First, we must believe in Jesus as the Son of God. Second, we must believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Mt 16:16, Jn 20:31)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

God entrusted the work of Christ to Jesus, the Son of God. (Jn 3:36, Jn 3:16-17, Jn 19:30)

Jn 3:36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

198. Jesus, Christ, who is eternal living water (Jn 4:13-14)
Jn 6:35, Jer 2:13, Isa 49:10, Isa 55:1-3, Isa 35:6, 1 Cor 10:1-4

God is the source of living water. (Jer 2:13)

Jer 2:13 For my people have committed two evils; they have forsaken me the fountain of living waters, and hewed them out cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.

In the Old Testament, God promised to lead us to the fountain of living water. (Isa 49:10, Isa 55:1-3)

Isa 49:10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

Isa 55:1 Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.

2 Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness.

3 Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

Jesus is the source of the living water that God has promised. (Jn 4:13-14)

Jn 4:13 Jesus answered and said unto her, Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:

14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

In the Old Testament, Christ worked as the source of living water. (1 Cor 10:4)

1 Cor 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;

2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;

3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat;

4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

199. Jesus, who revealed Himself as the Christ (Jn 4:25-26)
Dan 9:24-25, Mt 26:63-64, Mk 14:61-62

The Old Testament prophesied when Christ would come. (Dan 9:24-25)

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

25 Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.

The people of Israel knew that when Christ came, Christ would tell them everything. Jesus revealed to the Samaritan woman that He was the Christ. (Jn 4:25-26)

Jn 4:25 The woman saith unto him, I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things.

26 Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he.

The people of Israel knew that the Son of God would come as Christ. Jesus revealed to them that He was the Christ. (Mt 26:63-64, Mk 14:61-62)

Mt 26:63 But Jesus held his peace, And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God.

64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

Mk 14:61 But he held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him, Art thou the Christ, the Son of the Blessed?

62 And Jesus said, I am: and ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

200. What happens to us when we believe that Jesus is the Christ? Evangelization (Jn 4:25-26,28-29)
Acts 2:36-38,41, Acts 5:42

When a Samaritan woman, who had lived a life that was shameful to others, found out that Jesus was the Christ, regardless of the shame, she ran to the villagers and told them that Jesus was the Christ. (Jn 4:25-26, 28-29)

Jn 4:25 The woman saith unto him, I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things.

26 Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he.

28 The woman then left her waterpot, and went her way into the city, and saith to the men,

29 Come, see a man, which told me all things that ever I did: is not this the Christ?

When people came to know that Jesus was the Christ, a great work of evangelism took place. And every day they taught and preached that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 2:36-38, 41, Acts 5:42)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

202. We believe in Christ, not in the testimony of men, but in the words of Christ. (Jn 4:39-42)
Jn 6:63, Jn 17:8

At first, people heard the testimony of the Samaritan woman and believed in Jesus, but later they came to believe that Jesus was the Christ, not because of that testimony but because of the words of Christ. (Jn 4:39-42)

Jn 4:39 And many of the Samaritans of that city believed on him for the saying of the woman, which testified, He told me all that ever I did.

40 So when the Samaritans were come unto him, they besought him that he would tarry with them: and he abode there two days.

41 And many more believed because of his own word;

42 And said unto the woman, Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard him ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world.

We also share the gospel through our testimonies. But the more accurate gospel is to testify that Jesus is the Christ through the words of Christ. (Jn 6:63, Jn 17:8)

Jn 6:63 It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life.

Jn 17:8 For I have given unto them the words which thou gavest me; and they have received them, and have known surely that I came out from thee, and they have believed that thou didst send me.

203. Jesus, Christ, who is equal with God (Jn 5:16-18)
Jn 10:30-33, Phil 2:6, Jn 19:7

Jesus said that because God the Father works, He also works on the Sabbath. Jesus revealed that He was the Only Begotten Son of God. (Jn 5:16-18, Jn 19:7)

Jn 5:16 And therefore did the Jews persecute Jesus, and sought to slay him, because he had done these things on the sabbath day.

17 But Jesus answered them, My Father worketh hitherto, and I work.

18 Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he not only had broken the sabbath, but said also that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.

Jn 19:7 The Jews answered him, We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God.

The Jews recognized the only begotten Son of God as God. (Jn 10:30-33)

Jn 10:30 Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.

32 Jesus answered them, Many good works have I shewed you from my Father; for which of those works do ye stone me?

33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself God.

Jesus is the Son of God who is equal to God. (Phil 2:6)

Phil 2:6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

204. Christ, who does not speak on His own authority but the Father. (Jn 5:19)
Jn 5:30, Jn 6:38-39, Jn 8:28, Jn 12:49-50, Jn 14:10

Jesus did not come to this earth to do His will, but to do the will of God. (Jn 5:19,30, Jn 6:38)

Jn 5:19 Then answered Jesus and said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise.

30 I can of mine own self do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me.

Jn 6:38 For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me.

39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

The words of Jesus were not his own words, but God's. In other words, the words of Jesus are the words of God. (Jn 8:28, Jn 12:49-50, Jn 14:10)

Jn 8:28 Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.

Jn 12:49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.

50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

Jn 14:10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.

206. Christ, who gives life to whom He will (Jn 5:21)
Dt 32:39, 1 Sam 2:6, 2 Kg 5:7, Lk 7:14, Lk 8:54-55, Jn 11:25-26

Only God can save and kill people. (Deut 32:39, 1 Sam 2:6, 2 King 5:7)

Deut 32:39 See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand.

1 Sam 2:6 The Lord killeth, and maketh alive: he bringeth down to the grave, and bringeth up.

2 King 5:7 And it came to pass, when the king of Israel had read the letter, that he rent his clothes, and said, Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man doth send unto me to recover a man of his leprosy? wherefore consider, I pray you, and see how he seeketh a quarrel against me.

Jesus raised whoever He wanted. (Jn 5:21, Lk 7:14-15, Lk 8:54-55)

Jn 5:21 For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth them; even so the Son quickeneth whom he will.

Lk 7:14 And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.

15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.

Lk 8:54 And he put them all out, and took her by the hand, and called, saying, Maid, arise.

55 And her spirit came again, and she arose straightway: and he commanded to give her meat.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ also live forever. (Jn 11:25-27)

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

26 And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?

27 She saith unto him, Yea, Lord: I believe that thou art the Christ, the Son of God, which should come into the world.

That is, Jesus is the Son of God who is like God, and Jesus is the Christ.

207. Jesus, the Son of God, who has been committed all judgment to by the Father (Jn 5:22)
Dan 7:9-10, 13-14, Acts 10:42, Acts 17:31, 1 Pt 4:5

God is the judge. (Dan 7:9-10)

Dan 7:9 I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne was like the fiery flame, and his wheels as burning fire.
10 A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened.

It was foretold in the Old Testament that God would entrust all judgment to His Son. (Dan 7:13-14)

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.
14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

God entrusted all judgment to His Son, Jesus. (Jn 5:22, Act 10:42, Acts 17:31, 1 Pt 4:5)

Jn 5:22 For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:

Act 10:42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

Acts 17:31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

1 Pt 4:5 Who shall give account to him that is ready to judge the quick and the dead.

208. One who hears Christ's word and believes in Him who sent Christ has everlasting life. (Jn 5:24)
Jn 3:15-16,36, Jn 6:40,47, Jn 11:25, Jn 20:31, Jn 17:2

The conclusion of Jesus' words is that he is the Christ. We must believe the Word. We must also believe that God sent Jesus. Only then can we gain eternal life. (Jn 5:24)

Jn 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

That is, if we believe that Jesus is the only begotten Son of God and the Christ, we have eternal life. (Jn 3:15-16,36)

Jn 3:15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.

The will of God, the purpose of the Bible, is that people may have eternal life by believing that Jesus is the Christ and the Son of God. (Jn 6:40,47, Jn 20:31, Jn 11:25, Jn 17:2)

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

Jn 17:2 As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

209. The Old Testament testify of Christ. (Jn 5:39)

Lk 24:27, Jn 5:46, Jn 1:45, Rom 1:2-4, Gen 3:15, Gen 22:17-18, Num 21:9, Deut 18:15, Ps 16:10, P 22:1, Ps 132:11, Isa 7:14, Isa 9:6, Jer 23:5, Jer 33:14-15, Ezk 37:25, Dan 9:24, Mal 3:1

Jesus testifies that the Old Testament is the testimony of Christ and that Christ is Himself. (Jn 5:39, Lk 24:27, Jn 5:46)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Lk 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

Jn 5:46 For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me; for he wrote of me.

The One who Moses wrote in the Law and the other prophets wrote, the Christ is Jesus. (Jn 1:45, Rom 1:2-4)

Jn 1:45 Philip findeth Nathanael, and saith unto him, We have found him, of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph.

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;

4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

The Old Testament describes Christ.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would die to forgive our sins and that He would also break Satan's head. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come as a descendant of Abraham. (Gen 22:17-18)

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would die on the cross. (Num 21:9)

Num 21:9 And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would raise up a prophet like Moses, Christ. (Deut 18:5)

Deut 18:5 For the Lord thy God hath chosen him out of all thy tribes, to stand to minister in the name of the Lord, him and his sons for ever.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be rejected by God. (Ps 22:1)

Ps 22:1 My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? why art thou so far from helping me, and from the words of my roaring?

,

In the Old Testament, the resurrection of Christ was foretold. (Ps 16:10)

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come as a descendant of David. (Jer 23:5)

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be born of a virgin. (Gen 3:15, Isa 7:14)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Isa 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would be born. (Isa 9:6)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

In the Old Testament it was foretold when Christ would die. (Dan 9:24-26)

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

25 Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.

26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the one who prepares the way for Christ would come first, and then Christ would come. (Mal 3:1)

Mal 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.

210. The work of God and the will of God (Jn 6:29, 40)
Jn 10:27-28, Jn 17:12, Jn 18:9, Jn 3:15-16

The work of God is to believe in the One whom God has sent. That is, believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 6:29)

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Also, it is God's will that people believe in Jesus as the Son of God and the Christ to receive eternal life. (Jn 6:40)

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Also, God's will is to find and save all those entrusted to us. (Jn 6:39, Jn 10:27-28, Jn 17:12, Jn 18:9)

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

Jn 10:27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:

28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.

Jn 17:12 While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled.

Jn 18:9 That the saying might be fulfilled, which he spake, Of them which thou gavest me have I lost none.

In order to save us, God sent His only begotten Son, Jesus, to this earth to do the work of Christ. (Jn 3:15-16)

Jn 3:15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

211. Christ, who is the bread of life (Jn 6:31-35, 47-51)
Deut 8:3, Ps 78:23-29

In the Old Testament, the Israelites ate the food God gave them from heaven and survived in the wilderness. (Ps 78:23-29)

Ps 78:23 Though he had commanded the clouds from above, and opened the doors of heaven,
24 And had rained down manna upon them to eat, and had given them of the corn of heaven.
25 Man did eat angels' food: he sent them meat to the full.
26 He caused an east wind to blow in the heaven: and by his power he brought in the south wind.
27 He rained flesh also upon them as dust, and feathered fowls like as the sand of the sea:
28 And he let it fall in the midst of their camp, round about their habitations.
29 So they did eat, and were well filled: for he gave them their own desire;

And the reason God gave this food is that man must live by all the words of the Bible. (Duet 8:3)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jesus said that the food that God gave in the Old Testament was to explain the bread of life that God would give us in the future. And he revealed that that food was Himself.(Jn 6:31-35, 47-51)

Jn 6:31 Our fathers did eat manna in the desert; as it is written, He gave them bread from heaven to eat.
32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.
33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.
34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.
35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.
47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.
48 I am that bread of life.
49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead.
50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.
51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

What is expressed as food is premised on what you should eat every day. We need to know every day that Jesus is the Christ through all the Scriptures.

214. Christ, who is the Holy One of God (Jn 6:69)
Ps 16:10, Mk 1:24, Lk 4:34, Acts 2:27, Acts 3:13-15

The Holy One of God means Christ. In the Old Testament, there is an expression of the Holy One of God. (Ps 16:10, Acts 2:27)

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Acts 2:27 Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Even the demons said that Jesus was the Holy One of God. (Mk 1:24, Lk 4:34)

Mk 1:24 Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God.

Lk 4:34 Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art; the Holy One of God.

Jesus is the Holy One of God, the Christ. (Act 3:13-15)

Act 3:13 The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his Son Jesus; whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let him go.

14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

216. The Holy Spirit, whom we receive in believing Jesus as the Christ (Jn 7:37-39)
Isa 44:3, Joel 2:28, Jn 1:33, Jn 14:16, Acts 5:32

In the Old Testament it was promised that God would pour out the Holy Spirit. (Isa 44:3, Joel 2:28)

Isa 44:3 For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring:

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

Jesus is the one who will baptize you with the Holy Spirit. (Jn 1:33)

Jn 1:33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

God pours out the Holy Spirit on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Jn 7:37-39, Jn 14:16)

Jn 7:37 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)

Jn 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

The Holy Spirit is poured out on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Act 5:30-32)

Act 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

217. Jesus, Christ, who is the Prophet (Jn 7:40)
Deut 18:15, Jn 6:14

In the Old Testament, Moses tells us that God will raise up a prophet like Moses, and listen to him. A prophet like Moses is Christ. (Deut 18:15)

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

When the people of Israel hear the miracles and words of Jesus, they think that Jesus is the prophet. (Jn 6:14, Jn 7:40)

Jn 6:14 Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world.

Jn 7:40 Many of the people therefore, when they heard this saying, said, Of a truth this is the Prophet.

Yes, Jesus is a prophet like Moses, the Christ.

218. Christ, Jesus, who was from town of Bethlehem (Jn 7:41-42)
Mic 5:2, Mt 2:1, Lk 2:3-7

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would be born in Bethlehem. (Mic 5:2, Mt 2:4-6)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Mt 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

Jesus was born in Bethlehem. (Mt 2:1, Lk 2:3-7)

Mt 2:1 Now when Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judaea in the days of Herod the king, behold, there came wise men from the east to Jerusalem,

Lk 2:3 And all went to be taxed, every one into his own city.

4 And Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judaea, unto the city of David, which is called Bethlehem; (because he was of the house and lineage of David:)

5 To be taxed with Mary his espoused wife, being great with child.

6 And so it was, that, while they were there, the days were accomplished that she should be delivered.

7 And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn.

Jesus was born in Bethlehem, but fled to Egypt when Herod tried to kill children under two years old in order to kill the Christ who was born. After Herod's death, Jesus' family returned to Israel, but because Herod's son became king, Jesus' family came to a town called Nazareth in Galilee. So Jesus was brought up in Nazareth in Galilee. (Mt 2:19-23, Jn 7:41-42)

Mt 2:19 But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appeareth in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, 20 Saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and go into the land of Israel: for they are dead which sought the young child's life.

21 And he arose, and took the young child and his mother, and came into the land of Israel.

22 But when he heard that Archelaus did reign in Judaea in the room of his father Herod, he was afraid to go thither: notwithstanding, being warned of God in a dream, he turned aside into the parts of Galilee:

23 And he came and dwelt in a city called Nazareth: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophets, He shall be called a Nazarene.

Jn 7:41 Others said, This is the Christ. But some said, Shall Christ come out of Galilee?

42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?

219. Jesus, the Christ, who comes from the seed of David (Jn 7:41-42)
Ps 132:11, Jer 23:5, Lk 1:30-33, Acts 13:22-23

The Jews were well aware of the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. Christ must be born in Bethlehem, come as a descendant of David, and is a miracle worker. (Jn 7:41-42)

Jn 7:41 Others said, This is the Christ. But some said, Shall Christ come out of Galilee?

42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come as the seed of David. (Ps 132:11, Jer 23:5)

Ps 132:11 The Lord hath sworn in truth unto David; he will not turn from it; Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne.

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

Jesus is the Christ who received the throne of David, who came as a descendant of David. (Lk 1:30-33, Acts 13:22-23)

Lk 1:30 And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God.

31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Acts 13:22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

220. If you do not believe that Jesus is the Christ, (Jn 8:24-25)
Mk 16:16, Jn 4:25-26,

Jesus revealed himself to be the Christ through His ministry. (Jn 8:25, Jn 4:25-26)

Jn 8:25 Then said they unto him, Who art thou? And Jesus saith unto them, Even the same that I said unto you from the beginning.

Jn 4:25 The woman saith unto him, I know that Messias cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things.

26 Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he.

If a person does not believe that Jesus is the Christ, he will die for sin. (Jn 8:24, Mk 16:16)

Jn 8:24 I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I am he, ye shall die in your sins.

Mk 16:16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.

221. "When the Son of Man is lifted up , then you will know that He is the Christ. (Jn 8:28)
Jn 2:22, Jn 12:16, Rom 1:4, Jn 3:14

No one believed in Jesus as the Christ until Jesus was crucified and resurrected. (Jn 8:28)

Jn 8:28 Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die on the cross. God nailed Christ to the cross to save us. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ have eternal life. (Jn 3:14-16)

Jn 3:14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:
15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.
16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

The Holy Spirit raised Jesus from the cross on the third day. (Rom 1:4)

Rom 1:4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

After Jesus died on the cross and rose from the dead on the third day, the disciples truly believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 2:22, Jn 12:16)

Jn 2:22 When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.

Jn 12:16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

222. Jesus, who God is always with (Jn 8:29)
Jn 14:10, Jn 8:16, Jn 16:32

Jesus was always with God. Therefore, the words Jesus speaks are the words God speaks in Jesus. In other words, the words of Jesus are the words of God. (Jn 8:29, Jn 16:32, Jn 14:10)

Jn 8:29 And he that sent me is with me: the Father hath not left me alone; for I do always those things that please him.

Jn 16:32 Behold, the hour cometh, yea, is now come, that ye shall be scattered, every man to his own, and shall leave me alone: and yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me.

Jn 14:10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.

Also, the judgment of Jesus is the judgment of God. (Jn 8:16)

Jn 8:16 And yet if I judge, my judgment is true: for I am not alone, but I and the Father that sent me.

223. Christ, who always do those things that please God (Jn 8:29)
Jn 4:34, Jn 6:39-40, Jn 17:4, Mt 26:39, Mt 27:46, Jn 19:30

God sent Jesus to this earth to complete the work of Christ. (Jn 3:14-16)

Jn 3:14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:

15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Jesus did the work of Christ. (Jn 4:34, Jn 8:29)

Jn 4:34 Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work.

Jn 8:29 And he that sent me is with me: the Father hath not left me alone; for I do always those things that please him.

Also, Jesus did not lose any of those whom God had entrusted to Him. (Evanglization, Jn 6:39-40)

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Jesus prayed to God before accomplishing the work of Christ that God had commanded Him to do. (Jn 17:4, Mt 26:39)

Jn 17:4 I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do.

Mt 26:39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

And Jesus fully accomplished the work of Christ on the cross. (Mt 27:46, Jn 19:30)

Mt 27:46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

224. And you shall know the truth, Jesus and Jesus shall make you free. (Jn 8:32)
Jn 14:6, Jn 1:14, 17, Jn 8:36, Rm 8:1-2, Rm 6:18,22

The truth is Jesus. (Jn 14:6)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jesus is the Word of Truth. (Jn 1:14,17)

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

17 For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

Jesus, the truth, sets us free. (Jn 8:32, 36)

Jn 8:32 And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

36 If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.

We are set free from the law of sin and death through Christ Jesus. (Rom 8:1-2, Rom 6:18,22)

Rom 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Rom 6:18 Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.

22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life.

225. Abraham rejoiced to see Christ's coming (Jn 8:56)
Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16

Abraham was waiting for the coming of Christ. God promised to send Christ as a descendant of Abraham. (Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16)

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

So, when Abraham saw the birth of his son Isaac, he rejoiced in anticipation of the birth of Christ. (Jn 8:56)

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

227. Christ, who opened the eyes of one who was born blind (Jn 9:30-33)
Ps 146:8, Isa 29:18, Isa 35:5

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come and open the eyes of the blind. (Ps 146:8, Isa 29:18, Isa 35:5)

Ps 146:8 The Lord openeth the eyes of the blind: the Lord raiseth them that are bowed down: the Lord loveth the righteous:

Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

Isa 35:5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

Jesus opened the eyes of the blind. That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied to come in the Old Testament. (Jn 9:30-33)

Jn 9:30 The man answered and said unto them, Why herein is a marvellous thing, that ye know not from whence he is, and yet he hath opened mine eyes.

31 Now we know that God heareth not sinners: but if any man be a worshipper of God, and doeth his will, him he heareth.

32 Since the world began was it not heard that any man opened the eyes of one that was born blind.

33 If this man were not of God, he could do nothing.

228. Jesus, who is the door of the sheep (Jn 10:7-10)
2 Sam 5:2, 2 Sam 7:8, Ps 118:19-20, Jn 14:6, Eph 2:18

In the Old Testament, the role of a king was compared to that of a shepherd. (2 Sam 5:2, 2 Sam 7:8)

2 Sam 5:2 Also in time past, when Saul was king over us, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the Lord said to thee, Thou shalt feed my people Israel, and thou shalt be a captain over Israel.

2 Sam 7:8 Now therefore so shalt thou say unto my servant David, Thus saith the Lord of hosts, I took thee from the sheepcote, from following the sheep, to be ruler over my people, over Israel:

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that there would be a gate of Jehovah through which the righteous would enter. (Ps 118:19-20)

Ps 118:19 Open to me the gates of righteousness: I will go into them, and I will praise the Lord:
20 This gate of the Lord, into which the righteous shall enter.

Jesus is the shepherd who rules over us and is the way to meet God. That is, Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 10:7-10, Jn 14:6, Eph 2:18)

Jn 10:7 Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep.

8 All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers: but the sheep did not hear them.

9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.

10 The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Eph 2:18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

229. Jesus, who is the good shepherd (Jn 10:11-15)

Ps 23:1, Isa 40:10-11, Ezk 34:23, Mk 10:45, Mt 20:28, Zech 13:7, Isa 53:10, Heb 13:20, 1 Pt 2:24-25, Rev 7:17

In the Old Testament, the role of a king was compared to that of a shepherd. (2 Sam 5:2, 2 Sam 7:8)

2 Sam 5:2 Also in time past, when Saul was king over us, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the Lord said to thee, Thou shalt feed my people Israel, and thou shalt be a captain over Israel.

2 Sam 7:8 Now therefore so shalt thou say unto my servant David, Thus saith the Lord of hosts, I took thee from the sheepcote, from following the sheep, to be ruler over my people, over Israel:

God is our shepherd. (Ps 23:1)

Ps 23:1 The Lord is my shepherd; I shall not want.

God has promised to send us Christ, the true King and true Shepherd. (Isa 40:10-11, Ezk 34:23)

Isa 40:10 Behold, the Lord God will come with strong hand, and his arm shall rule for him: behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

11 He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young.

Ezk 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ, the true shepherd, would die for the sheep. (Zech 13:7, Isa 53:10)

Zech 13:7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the Lord of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones.

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Jesus is the true Shepherd, the Christ, who died for us. (Jn 10:11-15, Mk 10:45, Mt 20:28, Heb 13:20, 1 Pt 2:24-25)

Jn 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

12 But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.

13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

Mk 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Mt 20:28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Heb 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

1 Pt 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

Jesus is the Christ, the true Shepherd, who died for us. (Rev 7:17)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

230. Jesus who led the Gentiles (Jn 10:16)

Isa 49:6, Isa 42:6, Isa 56:8, Isa 52:13-15, Mic 4:2, Zech 8:23, Mt 8:11, Jn 11:51-52, Jn 17:20, Act 10:45, Acts 11:18, Acts 13:46

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would save the Gentiles. (Isa 49:6, Isa 42:6, Isa 56:8, Isa 52:13-15, Mic 4:2, Zech 8:23)

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

Isa 42:6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

Isa 56:8 The Lord God, which gathereth the outcasts of Israel saith, Yet will I gather others to him, beside those that are gathered unto him.

Isa 52:13 Behold, my servant shall deal prudently, he shall be exalted and extolled, and be very high.

14 As many were astonished at thee; his visage was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men:

15 So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him: for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Mic 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

Zech 8:23 Thus saith the Lord of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.

Jesus came to this earth to save the Gentiles as well. (Jn 10:16, Mt 8:11)

Jn 10:16 And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

Mt 8:11 And I say unto you, That many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven.

Jesus died to save the Gentiles as well. (Jn 11:51-52)

Jn 11:51 And this spake he not of himself: but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus should die for that nation;

52 And not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad.

Jesus entrusted us with the work of salvation for the Gentiles. (Jn 17:20)

Jn 17:20 Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word;

The gospel is being preached to the Gentiles. (Act 10:45, Acts 11:18)

Act 10:45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that

on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 11:18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.

Also, since the Jews did not receive the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, the gospel is now directed to the Gentiles.
(Acts 13:46)

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

231. If You are the Christ, tell us plainly. (Jn 10:24-26)
Jn 7:31,41-43

The miracles that Jesus performed and his words made the Jews wonder if Jesus was the Christ. (Jn 7:31,41-43, Jn 10:24)

Jn 7:31 And many of the people believed on him, and said, When Christ cometh, will he do more miracles than these which this man hath done?

41 Others said, This is the Christ. But some said, Shall Christ come out of Galilee?

42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?

43 So there was a division among the people because of him.

Jn 10:24 Then came the Jews round about him, and said unto him, How long dost thou make us to doubt? If thou be the Christ, tell us plainly.

But because they are not the sheep of Christ, they do not believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 10:25-26)

Jn 10:25 Jesus answered them, I told you, and ye believed not: the works that I do in my Father's name, they bear witness of me.

26 But ye believe not, because ye are not of my sheep, as I said unto you.

232. Nobody shall snatch Jesus's™ sheep out of His hand. (Jn 10:27-29)
Jn 17:6 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 3:16, Jn 5:24, Rom 8:39

We are the sheep God gave to Jesus. And no one can snatch us from the hand of God and the hand of Jesus. (Jn 10:27-29, Jn 17:6)

Jn 10:27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:

28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.

29 My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.

Jn 17:6 I have manifested thy name unto the men which thou gavest me out of the world: thine they were, and thou gavest them me; and they have kept thy word.

In order to save us, God sent His only begotten Son to this earth to do the work of Christ. (Jn 3:16)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Therefore, those who believe that God sent Jesus as the Christ become children of God. (1 Jn 5:1, Jn 5:24)

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

Nothing can separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus. (Rom 8:39)

Rom 8:39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

233. Jesus and God are one. (Jn 10:30-33, 38)
Jn 17:21-23

Jesus showed that He was the only begotten Son of God. So Jesus and God are one. (Jn 10:30-33,38)

Jn 10:30 I and my Father are one.

31 Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.

32 Jesus answered them, Many good works have I shewed you from my Father; for which of those works do ye stone me?

33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, makest thyself God.

38 But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works: that ye may know, and believe, that the Father is in me, and I in him.

Jesus died on the cross to save us from our sins and make us children of God. (Jn 17:21-23)

Jn 17:21 That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me.

22 And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one:

23 I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.

235. For you to believe that Jesus is the Christ (Jn 11:14-15)
Jn 11:42-44,

Jesus went to Lazarus after he died to show that He was the Christ. And He raised Lazarus to life. (Jn 11:14-15,42-44)

Jn 11:14 Then said Jesus unto them plainly, Lazarus is dead.

15 And I am glad for your sakes that I was not there, to the intent ye may believe; nevertheless let us go unto him.

42 And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said it, that they may believe that thou hast sent me.

43 And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth.

44 And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go.

236. Jesus, who is the resurrection and the life (Jn 11:25-26)
Jn 5:21, Jn 6:39-40, Jn 14:6, 1 Jn 5:11-12,20, Jn 3:16,36, 1 Cor 15:22, Col 3:4

Because Jesus is the Son of God, He can raise the dead. (Jn 5:21)

Jn 5:21 For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth them; even so the Son quickeneth whom he will.

Jesus also resurrects all those who believe in Himself as the Christ on the last day. (Jn 6:39-40, 1 Cor 15:22)

Jn 6:39-40 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

1 Cor 15:22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

Jesus is our present life and eternal life. (Jn 14:6, Col 3:4, 1 Jn 5:11-12)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

1 Jn 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.

12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ have eternal life. (Jn 3:16,36)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.

237. Jesus, who groaned in the spirit because people did not believe Jesus as the Christ (Jn 11:33, 38)
1 Kings 17:22-24, 2 Kings 4:32-37, Jn 11:14-15, Jn 11:32-33, Jn 11:37-45

In the Old Testament, a prophet raised the dead to life. This was foretold in advance of the work that Christ would come and perform. (1 Kings 17:22-24, 2 Kings 4:32-37)

1 Kings 17:22 And the Lord heard the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived.
23 And Elijah took the child, and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother: and Elijah said, See, thy son liveth.

24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now by this I know that thou art a man of God, and that the word of the Lord in thy mouth is truth.

2 Kings 4:32 And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead, and laid upon his bed.

33 He went in therefore, and shut the door upon them twain, and prayed unto the Lord.

34 And he went up, and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands: and stretched himself upon the child; and the flesh of the child waxed warm.

35 Then he returned, and walked in the house to and fro; and went up, and stretched himself upon him: and the child sneezed seven times, and the child opened his eyes.

36 And he called Gehazi, and said, Call this Shunammite. So he called her. And when she was come in unto him, he said, Take up thy son.

37 Then she went in, and fell at his feet, and bowed herself to the ground, and took up her son, and went out.

Jesus was pleased that He was not there when Lazarus died, because He could raise Lazarus from the dead so that people would believe that Jesus was the Christ. (Jn 11:14-15)

Jn 11:14 Then said Jesus unto them plainly, Lazarus is dead.

15 And I am glad for your sakes that I was not there, to the intent ye may believe; nevertheless let us go unto him.

When Jesus saw how people were sad to see the death of Lazarus because they still did not believe that Jesus was the Christ, He groaned in the spirit. (Jn 11:32-33)

Jn 11:32 Then when Mary was come where Jesus was, and saw him, she fell down at his feet, saying unto him, Lord, if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died.

33 When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews also weeping which came with her, he groaned in the spirit, and was troubled.

When the people said that Jesus had not kept Lazarus from dying, Jesus once again groaned in the spirit. (Jn 11:37-38)

Jn 11:37 And some of them said, Could not this man, which opened the eyes of the blind, have caused that even this man should not have died?

38 Jesus therefore again groaning in himself cometh to the grave. It was a cave, and a stone lay upon it.

Jesus showed that He was the Christ by raising Lazarus from the dead. (Jn 11:40-45)

Jn 11:40 Jesus saith unto her, Said I not unto thee, that, if thou wouldest believe, thou shouldest see the glory of God?

41 Then they took away the stone from the place where the dead was laid. And Jesus lifted up his eyes, and said, Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me.

42 And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said it, that they may believe that thou hast sent me.

43 And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth.

44 And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a

napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go.

45 Then many of the Jews which came to Mary, and had seen the things which Jesus did, believed on him.

238. That year the high priest prophesied that Jesus would do the work of Christ. (Jn 11:49-52)
Jn 18:13-14

Jn 11:49 And one of them, named Caiaphas, being the high priest that same year, said unto them, Ye know nothing at all,

50 Nor consider that it is expedient for us, that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not.

51 And this spake he not of himself: but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus should die for that nation;

52 And not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad.

Jn 18:13 And led him away to Annas first; for he was father in law to Caiaphas, which was the high priest that same year.

14 Now Caiaphas was he, which gave counsel to the Jews, that it was expedient that one man should die for the people.

239. Mary who prepared the day of Jesus' burial (Jn 12:3,7)
Mt 2:9-11,Jn 19:30

When Jesus was born, the wise men brought gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh. These gifts symbolize the work of Christ. Each gift symbolizes a king, a priest, and death. (Mt 2:9-11)

Mt 2:9 When they had heard the king, they departed; and, lo, the star, which they saw in the east, went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was.

10 When they saw the star, they rejoiced with exceeding great joy.

11 And when they were come into the house, they saw the young child with Mary his mother, and fell down, and worshipped him: and when they had opened their treasures, they presented unto him gifts; gold, and frankincense and myrrh.

Mary prepared for Jesus' death on the cross, that is, the completion of Christ's work. (Jn 12:3,7)

Jn 12:3 Then took Mary a pound of ointment of spikenard, very costly, and anointed the feet of Jesus, and wiped his feet with her hair: and the house was filled with the odour of the ointment.

7 Then said Jesus, Let her alone: against the day of my burying hath she kept this.

By the death of Jesus, the work of Christ (the work of king, priest, and prophet) was completed. (Jn 19:30)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

240. Jesus, who comes as the King of Israel (Jn 12:12-16)
Zech 9:9, Ps 118:26, Jn 1:49, Jn 18:37

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would enter Jerusalem on the colt of a donkey as King of Israel. (Zech 9:9)

Zech 9:9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.

Also, the Old Testament said that Christ would come in the name of the Lord. (Ps 118:26)

Ps 118:26 Blessed be he that cometh in the name of the Lord: we have blessed you out of the house of the Lord.

Jesus is the Christ who came to this earth as the King of Israel. (Jn 1:49, Jn 12:12-16, Jn 18:37)

Jn 1:49 Nathanael answered and saith unto him, Rabbi, thou art the Son of God; thou art the King of Israel.

Jn 12:12 On the next day much people that were come to the feast, when they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem,

13 Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: Blessed is the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.

14 And Jesus, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written,

15 Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.

16 These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Jesus was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and that they had done these things unto him.

Jn 18:37 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

241. The glory of Jesus, the cross on the cross (Jn 12:23, 27-28, 31-33)
Jn 3:14, Isa 53:10, Heb 2:9, Gen 3:15

Jesus said the hour had come for him to be glorified. Its glory is death on the cross. (Jn 12:23)

Jn 12:23 And Jesus answered them, saying, The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified.

It was very difficult for Jesus to face his own death. But Jesus came to this earth to die on the cross. It was to glorify God and he was to glorify himself. (Jn 12:27-28)

Jn 12:27 Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour.

28 Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die to save us. (Isa 53:10, Gen 3:15, Jn 3:14)

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jn 3:14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:

Jesus died on the cross to save us. (Heb 2:9)

Heb 2:9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

Jesus cast out the ruler of the world (Satan) by dying on the cross. And He called the children of God together. (Jn 12:31-33)

Jn 12:31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.

32 And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me.

33 This he said, signifying what death he should die.

242. Those who do not believe in Jesus as Christ despite many signs of Jesus (Jn 12:37-43) Isa 53:1, Rom 10:16, Isa 6:9-10, Jn 1:5, 10-11

The Old Testament prophesied that God would blind people and harden their hearts so that they would not believe in Christ. (Isa 53:1, Rom 10:16, Isa 6:9-10)

Isa 53:1 Who hath believed our report? and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

Rom 10:16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

Isa 6:9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

Jesus, the Christ, came to this earth, but people did not realize it. (Jn 1:5,10-11)

Jn 1:5 And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not.
10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not.
11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

As the Old Testament prophesied, people did not believe that Jesus was the Christ. (Jn 12:37-43)

Jn 12:37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:
38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed?
39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,
40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.
41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.
42 Nevertheless among the chief rulers also many believed on him; but because of the Pharisees they did not confess him, lest they should be put out of the synagogue:
43 For they loved the praise of men more than the praise of God.

243. Believing Jesus as the Christ is believing in God. (Jn 12:44-45)
Mt 10:40, Jn 12:49-50

Jn 12:44 Jesus cried and said, He that believeth on me, believeth not on me, but on him that sent me.
45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.

Mt 10:40 He that receiveth you receiveth me, and he that receiveth me receiveth him that sent me.

Also, the words of Jesus are the words of God. (Jn 12:49-50)

Jn 12:49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.

50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

244. Jesus foretold what would happen so that the disciples would believe that He was the Christ. (Jn 13:18-19, 21)
Jn 14:29, Isa 46:9-10

Only God can tell what will happen. (Isa 46:9-10)

Isa 46:9 Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me,

10 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

Jesus foretold that one of his disciples would betray Him. Jesus foretold what was to come, so that His disciples might believe that He was the Christ. (Jn 13:18-19,21, Jn 14:29)

Jn 13:18 I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the scripture may be fulfilled, He that eateth bread with me hath lifted up his heel against me.

19 Now I tell you before it come, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that I am he.

21 When Jesus had thus said, he was troubled in spirit, and testified, and said, Verily, verily, I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me.

Jn 14:29 And now I have told you before it come to pass, that, when it is come to pass, ye might believe.

245. A new commandment : you love one another; as I have loved you (saving souls) (Jn 13: 34-35)
Eph 5:2, Jn 15:12-13, 1 Jn 3:23, 1 Jn 4:10-11

Jesus sacrificed his life to save us. The love of Jesus was the love that saved our souls. We, too, should have the love that saves souls. (Jn 13:34-35, Jn 15:12-13, Eph 5:2)

Jn 13:34 A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.

35 By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another.

Jn 15:12 This is my commandment, That ye love one another, as I have loved you.

13 Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

Eph 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.

God's commandment is to believe in Jesus as the Christ and love people to save their souls. (1 Jn 3:23, 1 Jn 4:10-11)

1 Jn 3:23 And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.

1 Jn 4:10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another.

246. Jesus, who is the true way, truth, and life (Jn14:6)

Heb 10:19-20, Jn 1:14,17, Jn 8:32, Jn 18:37, Jn 11:25, 1 Tim 2:5, Acts 4:12

Jesus is the only way to meet God. (Jn 14:6, Heb 10:19-20, Acts 4:12, 1 Tim 2:5)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,
20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

Only Jesus is the truth. (Jn 1:14,17, Jn 8:32, Jn 18:37)

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

17 For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

Jn 8:32 And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

Jn 18:37 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

Only Jesus is our life. (Jn 11:25)

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

247. The Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, and testify of Me (Jn 14:26)
Jn 15:26, Acts 5:30-32

The Holy Spirit reminds us of what Jesus taught. Jesus taught that He was the Christ. (Jn 14:26)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

The Holy Spirit testifies that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 15:26)

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

The Holy Spirit came upon those who believed that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

248. Without Christ we can do nothing. (Jn 15:1-6)

Jn 15:1 I am the true vine, and my Father is the husbandman.

2 Every branch in me that beareth not fruit he taketh away: and every branch that beareth fruit, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit.

3 Now ye are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you.

4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me.

5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.

6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.

249. If you abide in Me, and My words abide in you, you will ask what you desire (:Our prayer) (Jn 15:7-8)
1 Jn 5:14, Prov 11:30, Jn 6:39-40, Phil 3:10-14, Acts 21:13, Acts 19:21, Acts 23:11

When we are in Christ, and the word of Christ is in us, we seek to preach the gospel. As a result, we receive the fruit of the tree of life. That is, we are saving souls. (Jn 15:7-8, Prov 11:30)

Jn 15:7 f ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you.
8 Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.

Prov 11:30 The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; and he that winneth souls is wise.

We also want to get to know Christ more. (Phil 3:10-14)

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,

14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

Also, we want to preach the gospel even if we risk our lives. (Acts 21:13)

Acts 21:13 Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.

Also, we want to spread the gospel to the whole world. (Acts 19:21, Acts 23:11)

Acts 19:21 After these things were ended, Paul purposed in the spirit, when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia, to go to Jerusalem, saying, After I have been there, I must also see Rome.

Acts 23:11 And the night following the Lord stood by him, and said, Be of good cheer, Paul: for as thou hast testified of me in Jerusalem, so must thou bear witness also at Rome.

If you ask for anything according to God's will, God hears you. God's will is to spread the gospel. (1 Jn 5:14, Jn 6:39-40)

1 Jn 5:14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us:

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

250. The word might be fulfilled which is written in their law. They hated Christ without a cause. (Jn 15:23-25) Ps 35:19, Ps 69:4, Ps 109:3-5

In the Old Testament, it was written that Christ would be hated by men without a reason. (Ps 35:19, Ps 69:4, Ps 109:3-5)

Ps 35:19 Let not them that are mine enemies wrongfully rejoice over me: neither let them wink with the eye that hate me without a cause.

Ps 69:4 They that hate me without a cause are more than the hairs of mine head: they that would destroy me, being mine enemies wrongfully, are mighty: then I restored that which I took not away.

Ps 109:3 They compassed me about also with words of hatred; and fought against me without a cause.

4 For my love they are my adversaries: but I give myself unto prayer.

5 And they have rewarded me evil for good, and hatred for my love.

It was fulfilled in Jesus that Christ would be hated by men for no reason. This means that the Christ is Jesus. (Jn 15:23-25)

Jn 15:23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.

24 If I had not done among them the works which none other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father.

25 But this cometh to pass, that the word might be fulfilled that is written in their law, They hated me without a cause.

251. The works of the Holy Spirit (Jn 16:7-11)
Jn 3:18, Acts 2:36-38, Acts 2:31, Jn 19:30, Heb 2:14, 1 Jn 3:8

The Holy Spirit reproves the world of sin, righteousness, and judgment. (Jn 16:7-8)

Jn 16:7 Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.

8 And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:

The Holy Spirit reproves the sin of not believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 16:9, Jn 3:18, Jn 8:24)

Jn 16:9 Of sin, because they believe not on me;

Jn 3:18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

Jn 8:24 I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I am he, ye shall die in your sins.

The Holy Spirit reproves the world for not believing that Jesus accomplished God's righteousness by completing the work of Christ. (Jn 16:10, Jn 19:30, Acts 2:31)

Jn 16:10 Of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more;

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Acts 2:31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.

The Holy Spirit reproves the world for not believing in the work of Christ, in which Jesus as the true King destroyed the works of Satan. (Jn 16:11, 1 Jn 3:8, Heb 2:14)

Jn 16:11 Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

The Holy Spirit reproves the world to believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:36-38)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

252. This is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent. (Jn 17:3)
(Jesus' Prayer) Jn 17:1-26

Jn 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Jn 17:1 These words spake Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee:

2 As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

4 I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do.

5 And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.

6 I have manifested thy name unto the men which thou gavest me out of the world: thine they were, and thou gavest them me; and they have kept thy word.

7 Now they have known that all things whatsoever thou hast given me are of thee.

8 For I have given unto them the words which thou gavest me; and they have received them, and have known surely that I came out from thee, and they have believed that thou didst send me.

9 I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given me; for they are thine.

10 And all mine are thine, and thine are mine; and I am glorified in them.

11 And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to thee. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we are.

12 While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled.

13 And now come I to thee; and these things I speak in the world, that they might have my joy fulfilled in themselves.

14 I have given them thy word; and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.

15 I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them from the evil.

16 They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.

17 Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.

18 As thou hast sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world.

19 And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth.

20 Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word;

21 That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me.

22 And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one:

23 I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.

24 Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which thou hast given me: for thou lovedst me before the foundation of the world.

25 O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee: but I have known thee, and these have known that thou hast sent me.

26 And I have declared unto them thy name, and will declare it: that the love wherewith thou hast loved me may be in them, and I in them.

253. Jesus, who died for our sins according to the Scriptures (Jn 19:23-24, 28-29, 33-34)
1 Co 15:3, Ps 22:16-18, Ps 69:18, Ex 12:46, Num 9:12, Ps 34:20, Ps 69:21, Zech 12:10

The Old Testament foretold how Christ would die to save us.

Christ is nailed to the cross when he dies. (Ps 22:16)

Ps 22:16 For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have inclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet.

When Christ died, His bones were not broken. (Ex 12:46, Num 9:12, Ps 22:17, Ps 34:20)

Ex 12:46 In one house shall it be eaten; thou shalt not carry forth ought of the flesh abroad out of the house; neither shall ye break a bone thereof.

Num 9:12 They shall leave none of it unto the morning, nor break any bone of it: according to all the ordinances of the passover they shall keep it.

Ps 22:17 I may tell all my bones: they look and stare upon me.

Ps 34:20 He keepeth all his bones: not one of them is broken.

When Christ dies, people cast lots for His underwear. (Ps 22:18)

Ps 22:18 They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture.

When Christ died, He drinks vinegar mixed with gall. (Ps 69:21)

Ps 69:21 They gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink.

It is foretold that those who pierce Christ will see Him. (Zech 12:10)

Zech 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

Jesus died according to the prophecy of the Bible about how Christ would die. That is, Jesus is the Christ. (1 Cor 15:3, Jn 19:23-24, 28-29, 33-34)

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

Jn 19:23-24 Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took his garments, and made four parts, to every soldier a part; and also his coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout.

24 They said therefore among themselves, Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be: that the scripture might be fulfilled, which saith, They parted my raiment among them, and for my vesture they did cast lots. These things therefore the soldiers did.

28 After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith, I thirst.

29 Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar: and they filled a sponge with vinegar, and put it upon hyssop, and put it to his mouth.

33 But when they came to Jesus, and saw that he was dead already, they brake not his legs:

34 But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water.

254. Jesus, who finished the job of the Christ on the cross (Jn 19:30)

Gen 3:15, 1 Jn 3:8, Heb 2:14, Mk 10:45, Heb 9:12,28, Heb 10:14, Jn 14:6, Mk 15:37-38, Heb 10:20

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and accomplish Christ's work on the cross. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

The work of Christ is that of kings, priests, and prophets. Jesus completed the work of Christ by dying on the cross. (Jn 19:30)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

As the true King, Jesus broke the head of Satan on the cross. (1 Jn 3:8, Heb 2:14)

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

As the true Priest, Jesus died on the cross for our sins. (Mk 10:45, Heb 9:12,28, Heb 10:14)

Mk 10:45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

Heb 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

As the true Prophet, Jesus opened the way to meet God on the cross. (Jn 14:6, Mk 15:37-38, Heb 10:20)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Mk 15:37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.

38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom.

Heb 10:20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

255. Jesus, who rose again according to the Scriptures (Jn 20:24-29)
1 Cor 15:4, Ps 16:10, Isa 53:10, Mt 27:53, Acts 1:3, 1 Cor 15:6

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die and rise again. (Ps 16:10, Isa 53:10)

Ps 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

Jesus was resurrected according to the prophecies of Christ in the Old Testament. (Mt 27:53, Acts 1:3, 1 Cor 15:4-6)

Mt 27:53 And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many.

Acts 1:3 To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God:

1 Cor 15:4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

5 And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve:

6 After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some are fallen asleep.

Jesus is the Christ prophesied to come in the Old Testament.

256. The Purpose of the Bible (Jn 20:31)

Lk 24:27,44-45, 2 Tim 3:15, Acts 3:18-21,24, Acts 10:43, Acts 28:23, Rom 1:2-3, Rom 3:21-22, Rom 16:26-27, 1 Pt 1:10-11, 1 Jn 1:1-2

The purpose of the writing of the Bible is that people may be saved by believing that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God. (Jn 20:31)

Jn 20:31 ut these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

Jesus explained that the Old Testament was prophecies of Christ and that He was the Christ. (Lk 24:27,44-45)

Lk 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

Paul explained that the Old Testament is the account of Christ and that Christ is Jesus. Paul explained that believing in Jesus as the Christ leads to salvation. (2 Tim 3:15)

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

Paul testifies that the Old Testament prophets prophesied about Christ, and that Christ is Jesus. (Acts 3:18-21,24, Acts 10:43)

Acts 3:18 But those things, which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.

20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

Acts 10:43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

Paul testifies that Jesus is the Christ with the law of Moses and the words of the prophets (Old Testament). (Acts 28:23)

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

Paul testifies that the Christ promised in advance through the prophets in the Old Testament is Jesus. (Rom 1:2-3, Rom 3:21-22)

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;

Rom 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

The Christ prophesied through the prophets of the Old Testament is Jesus. God wants all nations to believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 16:26-27)

Rom 16:26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

The Old Testament describes salvation through Christ and prophesied when Christ would suffer and die and be resurrected. (1 Pt 1:10-12)

1 Pt 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

12 Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

The Christ prophesied in the Old Testament has appeared to us. Jesus is that Christ. (1 Jn 1:1-2)

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

257. The Messages of Jesus after His Resurrection (Jn 21:15-17)
Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8, Jer 3:15

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would send a shepherd to feed the sheep with knowledge and understanding. (Jer 3:15)

Jer 3:15 And I will give you pastors according to mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.

The resurrected Jesus told Peter to feed the sheep. This is to teach that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 21:15-17)

Jn 21:15 So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my lambs.

16 He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my sheep.

17 He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep.

And the resurrected Jesus told us to preach that Jesus is the Christ throughout the world. (Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

- 259. The kingdom of God: The kingdom ruled by Jesus Christ (Acts 1:3)
- 260. Our Concern: Not the time and the seasons but the world evangelization (Acts 1:6-8)
- 261. Christ, who will so come in like manner as you saw Him go into heaven (Acts 1:9-11)
- 263. Peter's First Preaching to Witness Jesus as the Christ (Acts 2:14-36)
- 264. The Holy Spirit who will come to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ (Acts 2:33, 38-39)
- 266. Peter's Second Preaching to Witness Jesus as the Christ (Acts 3:11-26)
- 267. His Servant Jesus, Christ, who was glorified by God (Acts 3:13)
- 268. The Christ, who God has been appointed for you and send (Acts 3:20-26)
- 269. Nor is there salvation in any other except Jesus, Christ (Acts 4:10-12)
- 271. Peter's Third Preaching to Witness Jesus as the Christ (Acts 5:29-32)
- 272. Daily Work: Teaching and proclaiming the good news that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 5:42)
- 273. Stephen who testifies to Jesus as the Christ (Acts 7:14-15)
- 274. Contents of evangelism: Jesus is the Christ! (Acts 8:5, 12)
- 275. Philip who testified of Jesus as the Christ to a eunuch of the Ethiopians (Acts 8:26-39)
- 276. How can I understand the reading, unless someone guides me? (Acts 8:30-35)
- 277. Paul who realized that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 9:1-5)
- 278. Paul who is a chosen vessel of Mine to bear My name before Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel (Acts 9:15-16)
- 279. The subject of all Paul's preaching: Jesus is the Christ! (Acts 9:19-22)
- 280. Peter testified to the Gentiles that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 10:34-43)
- 281. The Holy Spirit who came to the Gentile who believed in Jesus as the Christ (Acts 10:44-48, 11:15-18)
- 283. Works of the Holy Spirit: World Evangelization (Acts 13:2-5)
- 284. Paul's preaching to testify of Jesus as the Christ (Acts 13:15-41)
- 285. Jews did not know Him, nor even the voices of the Prophets which are read every Sabbath so they killed Jesus. (Acts 13:27)
- 286. Christ, who died for our sins and rose again the third day according to the Scriptures (Acts 13:29-37)
- 287. Receiving forgiveness of sins through Christ Jesus (Acts 13:38-39)
- 288. Finding a disciple is as precious as our life (Acts 14:19-23)

- 289. We can be saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ no by law. (Acts 15:5-11)
- 290. Bible discussion contents: Jesus is the Christ (Acts 17:1-3)
- 291. Paul's mistake: Athen Preaching (Acts 17:22-34)
- 292. Paul's work: Testifying Jesus is the Christ (Acts 18:5-11)
- 293. The more accurate message of the Lord: Jesus is the Christ (Acts 18:24-28)
- 294. The contents of reasoning daily in the school of Tyrannus for two years: Jesus is the Christ (Acts 19:8-10)
- 295. Paul was too short of time to convey the mystery of Christ. (Acts 20:7-12)
- 296. More precious thing than our life : Testifying the gospel of the grace of God (Acts 20:22-24)
- 297. For the Lord, for the Jews, for the Gentiles (Acts 21:17-26)
- 298. The promise made by God to our fathers, Christ (Acts 26:6, 17-18, 22-23)
- 300. The gospel never stops (Acts 28:30-31)
- 301. The salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles (Acts 28:23-28)

259. Kingdom of God: Proclamation that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 1:3)
Isa 9:1-3,6-7, Isa 35:5-10, Dan 2:44-45, Mt 12:28, Lk 24:45-47)

The Old Testament prophesied that the kingdom of God would be established when Christ came to this earth. (Isa 9:1-3,6-7, Isa 35:5-10, Dan 2:44-45)

Isa 9:1 Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

3 Thou hast multiplied the nation, and not increased the joy: they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

Isa 35:5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

6 Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

7 And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes.

8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein.

9 No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there:

10 And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Dan 2:44 And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.

45 Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.

It is the kingdom of God that is proclaimed and acknowledged by men that Jesus is the Christ. Jesus taught the kingdom of God by explaining the Old Testament. (Acts 1:3, Lk 24:45-47)

Acts 1:3 To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God:

Lk 24:45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

The kingdom of God began with the coming of Jesus. (Mt 12:28)

Mt 12:28 But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

260. Our Concern: Not the time and the seasons but the world evangelization (Acts 1:6-8)
Mt 24:14, 1 Th 5:1-2, 2 Pt 3:10

Before Jesus ascended to heaven, his disciples asked Jesus when Israel would be restored. But Jesus says that only God knows at that time and commands you to do world evangelization. (Act 1:6-8)

Act 1:6 When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?

7 And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.

8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

We do not know when the end of the world, or in other words, the second coming of Jesus. However, it is clear that the end will come when the gospel that Jesus is the Christ is preached throughout the world. (Mt 24:14)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

And surely the gospel will be preached all over the world, and the Lord will come. (1 Thess 5:1-2, 2 Pt 3:10)

1 Thess 5:1 But of the times and the seasons, brethren, ye have no need that I write unto you.

2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.

2 Pt 3:10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

261. Jesus, who will so come in like manner as you saw Him go into heaven (Acts 1:9-11)
Mt 24:30, Mk 13:26, 2 Th 1:10, Rev 1:7

Jesus will come again in the clouds with power and great glory. (Acts 1:9-11, Mt 24:30, Mk 13:26, 2 Thess 1:10, Rev 1:7)

Acts 1:9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.

10 And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel;
11 Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.

Mt 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

Mk 13:26 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.

2 Thess 1:10 When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.

Rev 1:7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.

263. Peter's First Preaching to Witness Jesus as the Christ (Acts 2:14-36)

By quoting the Old Testament, Peter testified that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament was Jesus.

Acts 2:14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:
15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day.
16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;
17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:
19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:
20 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and notable day of the Lord come:
21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.
22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:
23 Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:
24 Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it.
25 For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved:
26 Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope:
27 Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.
28 Thou hast made known to me the ways of life; thou shalt make me full of joy with thy countenance.
29 Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.
30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;
31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.
32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.
33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.
34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,
35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.
36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

264. The Holy Spirit who will come to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ (Acts 2:33, 38-39)
Acts 5:32, Jn 14:26,16, Joel 2:28

In the Old Testament, God promised to pour out the Holy Spirit on those who obey Him. (Joel 2:28)

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

The Holy Spirit did not come on the Jews who kept the law, but on those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. In other words, to believe in Jesus as the Christ is to obey God. (Acts 5:30-32, Acts 2:33,38-39)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Acts 2:33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

God pours out the Holy Spirit on us through Jesus. And the Holy Spirit makes us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 14:16,26)

Jn 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

266. Peter's Second Preaching to Witness Jesus as the Christ (Acts 3:11-26)

Peter testifies that Jesus is the Christ prophesied through the prophets in the Old Testament.

Acts 3:11 And as the lame man which was healed held Peter and John, all the people ran together unto them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly wondering.

12 And when Peter saw it, he answered unto the people, Ye men of Israel, why marvel ye at this? or why look ye so earnestly on us, as though by our own power or holiness we had made this man to walk?

13 The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his Son Jesus; whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let him go.

14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

16 And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom ye see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.

17 And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance ye did it, as did also your rulers.

18 But those things, which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.

20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.

24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

25 Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

26 Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.

267. His Servant Jesus, who was glorified by God (Acts 3:13)
Isa 42:1, Isa 49:6, Isa 53:2-3, Isa 53:4-12, Acts 3:15

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would pour out the Holy Spirit on Christ, the servant of God, and that Christ would bring justice to the Gentiles. (Isa 42:1)

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ, the servant of God, would bring salvation to both the Israelites and the Gentiles. (Isa 49:6)

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ, the servant of God, would suffer and die for us. (Isa 53:2-12)

Isa 53:2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Jesus is that servant, the Christ. As a proof, God glorified Jesus, that is, resurrected Him. (Acts 3:13,15)

Acts 3:13 The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his Son Jesus; whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let him go.

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

268. The Christ, who God has been appointed for you and send (Acts 3:20-26)
Gen 3:15, 2 Sam 7:12-17, Acts 13:22-23,34-38

God had long spoken through the mouths of the prophets that He would send Christ. (Gen 3:15, 2 Sam 7:12-17)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

14 I will be his father, and he shall be my son. If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men:

15 But my mercy shall not depart away from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I put away before thee.

16 And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever.

17 According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David.

The Christ who came according to the prophecy of the Old Testament is Jesus. (Acts 3:20-26, Acts 13:22-23)

Acts 3:20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.

24 Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

25 Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

26 Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.

Acts 13:22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

Also, as proof that Jesus is the Christ, God resurrected Jesus according to the prophecy of the resurrection of Christ in the Old Testament. (Acts 13:34-38)

Acts 13:34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

269. Nor is there salvation in any other except Jesus, Christ (Acts 4:10-12)
Jn 14:6, Acts 10:43, 1 Tim 2:5

The Old Testament prophesied that those who believed in Christ would have their sins forgiven. Jesus is the Christ.
(Act 10:42-43)

Act 10:42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.
43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

There is no salvation except Christ Jesus. (Act 4:10-12, Jn 14:6)

Act 4:10 Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom ye crucified, whom God raised from the dead, even by him doth this man stand here before you whole.
11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.
12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Only Christ Jesus is the mediator between God and man. (1 Tim 2:5)

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

271. Peter's Third Preaching to Witness Jesus as the Christ (Acts 5:29-32)

Acts 5:29 Then Peter and the other apostles answered and said, We ought to obey God rather than men.

30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

272. Daily Work: Teaching and proclaiming the good news that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 5:42)
2 Tim 4:2, Acts 9:20-22, Acts 17:1-3, Acts 18:5, Acts 19:8-10

Our daily task is to teach and proclaim that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 5:42, 2 Tim 4:2)

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

2 Tim 4:2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

Paul preached and taught that Jesus was the Christ throughout his life. (Acts 9:20-22, Acts 17:1-3, Acts 18:5, Acts 19:8-10)

Acts 9:20 And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.

21 But all that heard him were amazed, and said; Is not this he that destroyed them which called on this name in Jerusalem, and came hither for that intent, that he might bring them bound unto the chief priests?

22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews:

2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

Acts 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

273. Stephen who testifies to Jesus as the Christ (Acts 6:14-15)
Acts 7:51-52, Acts 3:14-15

Stephen said that you, the Jews, have killed Christ, the righteous, whom the prophets foretold. (Acts 7:51-52, Acts 6:14-15)

Acts 7:51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

Acts 6:14 For we have heard him say, that this Jesus of Nazareth shall destroy this place, and shall change the customs which Moses delivered us.

15 And all that sat in the council, looking stedfastly on him, saw his face as it had been the face of an angel.

Jesus is the righteous, the Christ, prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 3:14-15)

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

274. Contents of evangelism : Jesus is the Christ! (Acts 8:5, 12)

Acts 5:42, Acts 2:36, Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5,28, Acts 28:23,30-31

What is the content of evangelism that we must convey? To the Jews, the word Christ is well understood. They learned about Christ through the Old Testament. But as Gentiles, we do not know exactly about Christ. So we must explain the Old Testament to prove that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament.

Acts 8:12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 9:22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

28 For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

275. Philip who testified of Jesus as the Christ to an eunuch of the Ethiopians (Acts 8:26-35)

The Ethiopian eunuch did not realize who suffered for us while reading the book of Isaiah. Philip begins with this article and testifies that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 8:26-35)

Acts 8:26 And the angel of the Lord spake unto Philip, saying, Arise, and go toward the south unto the way that goeth down from Jerusalem unto Gaza, which is desert.

27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship,

28 Was returning, and sitting in his chariot read Esaias the prophet.

29 Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.

30 And Philip ran thither to him, and heard him read the prophet Esaias, and said, Understandest thou what thou readest?

31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

276. How can I understand the reading, unless someone guides me? (Acts 8:30-35)

Lk 24:25-27,32,44-45, Act 13:26-27, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:24-28, Acts 19:8-9, Acts 28:23,30-31

The Old Testament speaks of Christ. But if we don't explain it, people don't know if the Old Testament explains Christ. (Act 8:30-35, Acts 13:26-27)

Act 8:30 And Philip ran thither to him, and heard him read the prophet Esaias, and said, Understandest thou what thou readest?

31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

Acts 13:26 Men and brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth God, to you is the word of this salvation sent.

27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled them in condemning him.

Even Jesus' disciples did not know exactly about the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. Jesus explained to them the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament, and He told them that that Christ was Himself. (Lk 24:25-27,32,44-45)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

32 And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

Apollos zealously preached about Jesus, but did not say that Jesus was the Christ. After hearing the Priscilla and his wife's explanation, he said that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 18:24-28)

Acts 18:24 And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria, an eloquent man, and mighty in the scriptures, came to Ephesus.

25 This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spake and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing only the baptism of John.

26 And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto them, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly.

27 And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace:

28 For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

Paul went to the synagogue, explained the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament, and testified that that Christ was Jesus. (Acts 17:2-3)

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the

scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Paul testified that the entire Old Testament describes Christ and that Christ is Jesus. (Act 19:8-10, Act 28:23,30-31)

Act 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

Act 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

277. Paul who realized that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 9:1-5)
Acts 22:3, Acts 22:6-9, Acts 26:9-15

Paul was an outstanding scholar of the Old Testament. So Paul knew that the Old Testament was a prophecy of Christ. And he, too, was eagerly waiting for Christ. (Act 22:3)

Act 22:3 I am verily a man which am a Jew, born in Tarsus, a city in Cilicia, yet brought up in this city at the feet of Gamaliel, and taught according to the perfect manner of the law of the fathers, and was zealous toward God, as ye all are this day.

Paul was a persecutor of those who believed in Jesus. However, after Paul met the resurrected Jesus on the road to Damascus, he realized that Jesus was the Christ. (Act 9:1-5, Act 22:6-9, Acts 26:9-15)

Act 9:1 And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the disciples of the Lord, went unto the high priest,

2 And desired of him letters to Damascus to the synagogues, that if he found any of this way, whether they were men or women, he might bring them bound unto Jerusalem.

3 And as he journeyed, he came near Damascus: and suddenly there shined round about him a light from heaven:

4 And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?

5 And he said, Who art thou, Lord? And the Lord said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks.

Act 22:6 And it came to pass, that, as I made my journey, and was come nigh unto Damascus about noon, suddenly there shone from heaven a great light round about me.

7 And I fell unto the ground, and heard a voice saying unto me, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?

8 And I answered, Who art thou, Lord? And he said unto me, I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom thou persecutest.

9 And they that were with me saw indeed the light, and were afraid; but they heard not the voice of him that spake to me.

Acts 26:9 I verily thought with myself, that I ought to do many things contrary to the name of Jesus of Nazareth.

10 Which thing I also did in Jerusalem: and many of the saints did I shut up in prison, having received authority from the chief priests; and when they were put to death, I gave my voice against them.

11 And I punished them oft in every synagogue, and compelled them to blaspheme; and being exceedingly mad against them, I persecuted them even unto strange cities.

12 Whereupon as I went to Damascus with authority and commission from the chief priests,

13 At midday, O king, I saw in the way a light from heaven, above the brightness of the sun, shining round about me and them which journeyed with me.

14 And when we were all fallen to the earth, I heard a voice speaking unto me, and saying in the Hebrew tongue, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks.

15 And I said, Who art thou, Lord? And he said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest.

278. Paul who is a chosen vessel of Mine to bear My name before Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel (Acts 9:15-16)

Acts 22:21, Eph 3:8, 1 Tim 2:7, Rom 1:5, Rom 11:13, Gal 2:8

Acts 9:15 But the Lord said unto him, Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel:

16 For I will shew him how great things he must suffer for my name's sake.

God established Paul to preach the gospel to the Gentiles. (Acts 22:21, Eph 3:8, 1 Tim 2:7, Rom 1:5, Rom 11:13, Gal 2:8)

Acts 22:21 And he said unto me, Depart: for I will send thee far hence unto the Gentiles.

Eph 3:8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;

1 Tim 2:7 Whereunto I am ordained a preacher, and an apostle, (I speak the truth in Christ, and lie not;) a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and verity.

Rom 1:5 By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name:

Rom 11:13 For I speak to you Gentiles, inasmuch as I am the apostle of the Gentiles, I magnify mine office:

Gal 2:8 (For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles:)

279. The subject of all Paul's preaching: Jesus is the Christ! (Acts 9:19-22)
Acts 11:26, Acts 17:1-3, Acts 18:5, Acts 19:8-10, Acts 20:20-21, Acts 28:23, 30-31

After meeting the resurrected Jesus on the road to Damascus, Paul realized that Jesus was the Christ. So he preached throughout his life that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament was Jesus.

Acts 9:19 And when he had received meat, he was strengthened. Then was Saul certain days with the disciples which were at Damascus.

20 And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.

21 But all that heard him were amazed, and said; Is not this he that destroyed them which called on this name in Jerusalem, and came hither for that intent, that he might bring them bound unto the chief priests?

22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews:

2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,
3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

Acts 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

Acts 20:20 And how I kept back nothing that was profitable unto you, but have shewed you, and have taught you publicly, and from house to house,

21 Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

And the disciples who heard the gospel from Paul also preached that Jesus was the Christ. So they earned the nickname Christians by others. (Acts 11:26)

Acts 11:26 And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.

280. Peter testified to the Gentiles that Jesus is the Christ (Acts 10:34-45)

Gal 2:8

Peter preached the gospel to the Gentiles under the guidance of the Holy Spirit. Peter was amazed to see the Holy Spirit come upon the Gentiles who believed in Jesus as the Christ. That is, Peter did not understand that the gospel should be preached to the Gentiles. So, in the end, Peter became an apostle to the Jews and Paul was an apostle to the Gentiles. (Gal 2:8)

Acts 10:34 Then Peter opened his mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons:

35 But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.

36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;

38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.

39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:

40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.

42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.

43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

44 While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Gal 2:8 (For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles:)

281. The Holy Spirit who came to the Gentile who believed in Jesus as the Christ (Acts 10:44-48, 11:15-18)
Isa 42:1,6, Isa 49:6

The Old Testament prophesied that the gospel would be preached to the Gentiles. (Isa 42:1,6, Isa 49:6)

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

The Holy Spirit came upon those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 10:44-48, Acts 11:15-18)

Acts 10:44 While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.

Acts 11:15 And as I began to speak, the Holy Ghost fell on them, as on us at the beginning.

16 Then remembered I the word of the Lord, how that he said, John indeed baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost.

17 Forasmuch then as God gave them the like gift as he did unto us, who believed on the Lord Jesus Christ; what was I, that I could withstand God?

18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.

283. Works of the Holy Spirit: Evangelism (Acts 13:2-5)

When the Holy Spirit works on us, we preach the gospel. (Acts 1:8, Acts 2:4, 8-11)

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 2:4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,

10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,

11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.

Acts 13:2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

3 And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid their hands on them, they sent them away.

4 So they, being sent forth by the Holy Ghost, departed unto Seleucia; and from thence they sailed to Cyprus.

5 And when they were at Salamis, they preached the word of God in the synagogues of the Jews: and they had also John to their minister.

284. Paul's preaching to testify of Jesus as the Christ (Acts 13:15-41)

Paul explained the Old Testament and testified that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament.

Acts 13:15 And after the reading of the law and the prophets the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, Ye men and brethren, if ye have any word of exhortation for the people, say on.

16 Then Paul stood up, and beckoning with his hand said, Men of Israel, and ye that fear God, give audience.

17 The God of this people of Israel chose our fathers, and exalted the people when they dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt, and with an high arm brought he them out of it.

18 And about the time of forty years suffered he their manners in the wilderness.

19 And when he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Chanaan, he divided their land to them by lot.

20 And after that he gave unto them judges about the space of four hundred and fifty years, until Samuel the prophet.

21 And afterward they desired a king: and God gave unto them Saul the son of Cis, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years.

22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

24 When John had first preached before his coming the baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel.

25 And as John fulfilled his course, he said, Whom think ye that I am? I am not he. But, behold, there cometh one after me, whose shoes of his feet I am not worthy to loose.

26 Men and brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth God, to you is the word of this salvation sent.

27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled them in condemning him.

28 And though they found no cause of death in him, yet desired they Pilate that he should be slain.

29 And when they had fulfilled all that was written of him, they took him down from the tree, and laid him in a sepulchre.

30 But God raised him from the dead:

31 And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses unto the people.

32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,

33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

40 Beware therefore, lest that come upon you, which is spoken of in the prophets;

41 Behold, ye despisers, and wonder, and perish: for I work a work in your days, a work which ye shall in no wise believe, though a man declare it unto you.

285. Jews did not know Him, nor even the voices of the Prophets which are read every Sabbath so they killed Jesus. (Acts 13:27)

Acts 15:21, Acts 3:14-17, Lk 23:35-37

The Jews read the Old Testament in the synagogue every Sabbath. (Acts 15:21)

Acts 15:21 For Moses of old time hath in every city them that preach him, being read in the synagogues every sabbath day.

But the Jews did not know that the words of the prophets had been fulfilled in Jesus. That is, they did not know that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. So the Jews killed Jesus. (Acts 3:14-17, Acts 13:27, Lk 23:35-37)

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

16 And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom ye see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.

17 And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance ye did it, as did also your rulers.

Acts 13:27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled them in condemning him.

Lk 23:35 And the people stood beholding. And the rulers also with them derided him, saying, He saved others; let him save himself, if he be Christ, the chosen of God.

36 And the soldiers also mocked him, coming to him, and offering him vinegar,

37 And saying, If thou be the king of the Jews, save thyself.

286. Jesus, who died for our sins and rose again the third day according to the Scriptures (Acts 13:29-37)
1 Cor 15:3-4

It was prophesied in the Old Testament that God would raise Christ from the dead. God raised Jesus from the dead. That is, Jesus is the Christ who came as prophesied in the Old Testament.

Acts 13:29 And when they had fulfilled all that was written of him, they took him down from the tree, and laid him in a sepulchre.

30 But God raised him from the dead:

31 And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses unto the people.

32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,

33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

287. Receiving forgiveness of sins through Christ Jesus (Acts 13:38-39)
Isa 53:10-11, Jn 3:16, Acts 5:30-31, Rom 8:3-4, Gal 2:16

No one can be justified by the law of Moses. But those who believe in Jesus as the Christ receive forgiveness of sins and are justified. (Acts 13:38-39, Gal 2:16)

Acts 13:38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would die to bear our sins. (Isa 53:10-11)

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

God showed us that Jesus was the Christ by raising Jesus to life. And God forgave the sins of those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 5:30-31)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

God made Jesus bear our sins and forgave us. (Rom 8:3-4)

Rom 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

4 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

288. Finding a disciple is as precious as our life (Acts 14:19-23)
2 Cor 11:23-28

The Jews stoned Paul and thought he was dead. But Paul rose again, sought his disciples, and established his disciples. (Acts 14:19-23)

Acts 14:19 And there came thither certain Jews from Antioch and Iconium, who persuaded the people, and having stoned Paul, drew him out of the city, supposing he had been dead.

20 Howbeit, as the disciples stood round about him, he rose up, and came into the city: and the next day he departed with Barnabas to Derbe.

21 And when they had preached the gospel to that city, and had taught many, they returned again to Lystra, and to Iconium, and Antioch,

22 Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.

23 And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.

Paul risked his life to find and make disciples. (2 Cor 11:23-28)

2 Cor 11:23 Are they ministers of Christ? (I speak as a fool) I am more; in labours more abundant, in stripes above measure, in prisons more frequent, in deaths oft.

24 Of the Jews five times received I forty stripes save one.

25 Thrice was I beaten with rods, once was I stoned, thrice I suffered shipwreck, a night and a day I have been in the deep;

26 In journeyings often, in perils of waters, in perils of robbers, in perils by mine own countrymen, in perils by the heathen, in perils in the city, in perils in the wilderness, in perils in the sea, in perils among false brethren;

27 In weariness and painfulness, in watchings often, in hunger and thirst, in fastings often, in cold and nakedness.

28 Beside those things that are without, that which cometh upon me daily, the care of all the churches.

289. We can be saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ no by law. (Acts 15:5-11)
Rom 1:16, Rom 3:30, Gal 2:16, Eph 2:8, Rom 10:11, Isa 28:16, Rom 10:13, Joel 2:32

Jewish Christians demanded the law from Gentile Christians. Then Peter said that salvation comes not through the law, but through faith in Jesus Christ. (Acts 15:5-11)

Acts 15:5 But there rose up certain of the sect of the Pharisees which believed, saying, That it was needful to circumcise them, and to command them to keep the law of Moses.

6 And the apostles and elders came together for to consider of this matter.

7 And when there had been much disputing, Peter rose up, and said unto them, Men and brethren, ye know how that a good while ago God made choice among us, that the Gentiles by my mouth should hear the word of the gospel, and believe.

8 And God, which knoweth the hearts, bare them witness, giving them the Holy Ghost, even as he did unto us;

9 And put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith.

10 Now therefore why tempt ye God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?

11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they.

All who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be saved. (Rom 1:16, Rom 3:20, Gal 2:16)

Rom 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

Rom 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

Salvation does not come through our efforts. You are saved by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Eph 2:8)

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

The Old Testament speaks of salvation through faith in Christ. (Rom 10:11, Isa 28:16, Hab 2:4)

Rom 10:11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

Isa 28:16 Therefore thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

Hab 2:4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

Anyone who believes in Jesus as the Christ and calls Him Lord will be saved. (Rom 10:13, Joel 2:32)

Rom 10:13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Joel 2:32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

290. Bible discussion contents: Jesus is the Christ (Acts 17:1-3)
Acts 9:20, Acts 18:5, Lk 4:16, Lk 24:27,44

As Paul went around the synagogue and explained the contents of the Old Testament he had read in the synagogue, he testified that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 17:1-3, Act 9:20, Acts 18:5,28)

Acts 17:1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews:

2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,
3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Act 9:20 And straightway he preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

28 For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

Jesus also went around the synagogue and explained the contents of the Old Testament, testifying that he was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Lk 4:16)

Lk 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

The Old Testament speaks of Christ, and that Christ is Jesus. (Lk 24:27, 44)

Lk 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

291. Paul's mistake : Athen Preaching (Acts 17:22-34)
1 Cor 2:1-2, Gal 6:14

Paul failed in his attempt to evangelize using his philosophical wisdom and the experiences he had during his conversion in Athens. (Acts 17:22-34)

Acts 17:22 Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars' hill, and said, Ye men of Athens, I perceive that in all things ye are too superstitious.

23 For as I passed by, and beheld your devotions, I found an altar with this inscription, To The Unknown God. Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.

24 God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands;

25 Neither is worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things;

26 And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;

27 That they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him, though he be not far from every one of us:

28 For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.

29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.

30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:

31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

32 And when they heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked: and others said, We will hear thee again of this matter.

33 So Paul departed from among them.

34 Howbeit certain men clave unto him, and believed: among the which was Dionysius the Areopagite, and a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

So Paul decided not to preach except that Jesus was the Christ and that He was on the cross. (1 Cor 2:1-2, Gal 6:14)

1 Cor 2:1 And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God.

2 For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified.

Gal 6:14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

292. Paul's work : Testifying Jesus is the Christ (Acts 18:5-11)
Acts 9:22, Act 17:1-3, Acts 28:23,30-31

Paul's ministry was to testify of Jesus as the Christ. Paul interprets all the contents of the Old Testament and testifies that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament is Jesus. (Acts 9:22, Act 17:1-3, Acts 18:5-11, Acts 28:23,30-31)

Acts 9:22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Act 17:1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews:

2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

6 And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook his raiment, and said unto them, Your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean; from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles.

7 And he departed thence, and entered into a certain man's house, named Justus, one that worshipped God, whose house joined hard to the synagogue.

8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized.

9 Then spake the Lord to Paul in the night by a vision, Be not afraid, but speak, and hold not thy peace:

10 For I am with thee, and no man shall set on thee to hurt thee: for I have much people in this city.

11 And he continued there a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

293. More accurate message of the Lord : Jesus is the Christ (Acts 18:24-28)

Apollos was a mighty man in the Bible. He learned the teachings of Jesus and eagerly taught people about Jesus. But he did not realize that Jesus was the Christ. After the Priscilla couple heard Apollo's sermon, they explained to Apollos that Jesus was the Christ. As a result, Apollos' preaching changed. Apollos proclaimed that Jesus was the Christ and overcame the Jews. (Acts 18:24-28)

Acts 18:24 And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria, an eloquent man, and mighty in the scriptures, came to Ephesus.

25 This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spake and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing only the baptism of John.

26 And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto them, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly.

27 And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace:

28 For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

294. The contents of reasoning daily in the school of Tyrannus for two years: Jesus is the Christ (Acts 19:8-10)
Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:4-5, Acts 26:22-23, Acts 28:23,30-31

Paul gathered his disciples apart and preached on the Old Testament daily for two years in the school of Tyrannus.
Paul preached that the Old Testament describes Christ and that the Christ is Jesus. (Acts 19:8-10)

Acts 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

As Paul explained the Old Testament throughout his life, he testified that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament was Jesus. (Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:4-5, Acts 26:22-23, Acts 28:23,30-31)

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:4 And he reasoned in the synagogue every sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.

5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

Acts 26:22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:

23 That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

295. Paul was too short of time to convey the mystery of Christ. (Acts 20:7-12)

Paul had to leave tomorrow, so he told his disciples that Jesus was the Christ until late at night. There sat in a window a certain young man named Eutychus, being fallen into a deep sleep: and as Paul was long preaching, he sunk down with sleep, and fell down from the third loft, and was taken up dead. Paul prayed and saved the young man. And Paul testified that Jesus was the Christ until dawn.

Acts 20:7 And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight.

8 And there were many lights in the upper chamber, where they were gathered together.

9 And there sat in a window a certain young man named Eutychus, being fallen into a deep sleep: and as Paul was long preaching, he sunk down with sleep, and fell down from the third loft, and was taken up dead.

10 And Paul went down, and fell on him, and embracing him said, Trouble not yourselves; for his life is in him.

11 When he therefore was come up again, and had broken bread, and eaten, and talked a long while, even till break of day, so he departed.

12 And they brought the young man alive, and were not a little comforted.

296. More precious thing than our life : Testifying the gospel of the grace of God (Acts 20:22-24)
Acts 23:12-14, Acts 20:31-32, 36-38, Acts 21:10-14

The Jews pursued Paul to kill him. (Acts 23:12-14)

Acts 23:12 And when it was day, certain of the Jews banded together, and bound themselves under a curse, saying that they would neither eat nor drink till they had killed Paul.

13 And they were more than forty which had made this conspiracy.

14 And they came to the chief priests and elders, and said, We have bound ourselves under a great curse, that we will eat nothing until we have slain Paul.

But Paul did not regard his life as precious to finish preaching the gospel of God's grace, that is, that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 20:22-24)

Acts 20:22 And now, behold, I go bound in the spirit unto Jerusalem, not knowing the things that shall befall me there:

23 Save that the Holy Ghost witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me.

24 But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might finish my course with joy, and the ministry, which I have received of the Lord Jesus, to testify the gospel of the grace of God.

Paul preached this gospel to his disciples for three years. (Acts 20:31-32, 36-38)

Acts 20:31 Therefore watch, and remember, that by the space of three years I ceased not to warn every one night and day with tears.

32 And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.

36 And when he had thus spoken, he kneeled down, and prayed with them all.

37 And they all wept sore, and fell on Paul's neck, and kissed him,

38 Sorrowing most of all for the words which he spake, that they should see his face no more. And they accompanied him unto the ship.

A prophet prophesied that Paul would be arrested if he went to Jerusalem, but Paul was prepared to die in Jerusalem to preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Act 21:10-14)

Act 21:10 And as we tarried there many days, there came down from Judaea a certain prophet, named Agabus.

11 And when he was come unto us, he took Paul's girdle, and bound his own hands and feet, and said, Thus saith the Holy Ghost, So shall the Jews at Jerusalem bind the man that owneth this girdle, and shall deliver him into the hands of the Gentiles.

12 And when we heard these things, both we, and they of that place, besought him not to go up to Jerusalem.

13 Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.

14 And when he would not be persuaded, we ceased, saying, The will of the Lord be done.

297. For the Lord, for the Jews, for the Gentiles (Acts 21:17-26)
1 Cor 9:19-23, 1 Cor 10:31, Rom 14:6,

Paul came to Jerusalem and reported to the Jerusalem church about the evangelism work that God had done to the Gentiles. But when they heard through the rumor that Paul was saying that Gentiles should not be circumcised and should not keep the law, they thought that Paul was not keeping the law. In order to show that he himself was a law keeper, Paul practiced the law with them and cut his hair. (Acts 21:17-26)

Acts 21:17 And when we were come to Jerusalem, the brethren received us gladly.

18 And the day following Paul went in with us unto James; and all the elders were present.

19 And when he had saluted them, he declared particularly what things God had wrought among the Gentiles by his ministry.

20 And when they heard it, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, Thou seest, brother, how many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law:

21 And they are informed of thee, that thou teachest all the Jews which are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, saying that they ought not to circumcise their children, neither to walk after the customs.

22 What is it therefore? the multitude must needs come together: for they will hear that thou art come.

23 Do therefore this that we say to thee: We have four men which have a vow on them;

24 Them take, and purify thyself with them, and be at charges with them, that they may shave their heads: and all may know that those things, whereof they were informed concerning thee, are nothing; but that thou thyself also walkest orderly, and keepest the law.

25 As touching the Gentiles which believe, we have written and concluded that they observe no such thing, save only that they keep themselves from things offered to idols, and from blood, and from strangled, and from fornication.

26 Then Paul took the men, and the next day purifying himself with them entered into the temple, to signify the accomplishment of the days of purification, until that an offering should be offered for every one of them.

To save Jews and Gentiles, Paul became to the Jews as under the law and to the Gentiles as one without the law. (1 Cor 9:19-23)

1 Cor 9:19 For though I be free from all men, yet have I made myself servant unto all, that I might gain the more.

20 And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law;

21 To them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ,) that I might gain them that are without law.

22 To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all men, that I might by all means save some.

23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with you.

Paul did all things for the Lord. (1 Cor 10:31, Rom 14:6)

1 Cor 10:31 Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

Rom 14:6 He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord; and he that regardeth not the day, to the Lord he doth not regard it. He that eateth, eateth to the Lord, for he giveth God thanks; and he that eateth not, to the Lord he eateth not, and giveth God thanks.

298. The promise made by God to our fathers, Christ
(Acts 26:6, 22-23)

Acts 13:32, Gen 3:15, Gen 22:18, Gen 26:4, Gen 49:10, Deut 18:15,
2 Sam 7:12, Ps 132:11, Isa 4:2, Isa 7:14, Isa 9:6, Jer 23:5,
Jer 33:14-16, Ezk 34:23-24, Dan 9:24

God has promised to send Christ to our ancestors. (Acts 26:6,22-23, Acts 13:32)

Acts 26:6 And now I stand and am judged for the hope of the promise made of God, unto our fathers:

22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:

23 That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

Acts 13:32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,

God's Promise : Christ

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gen 26:4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

Gen 49:10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Deut 18:15 The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

Ps 132:11 The Lord hath sworn in truth unto David; he will not turn from it; Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne.

Isa 4:2 In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth shall be excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel.

Isa 7:14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Jer 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

Jer 33:14 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will perform that good thing which I have promised unto the house of Israel and to the house of Judah.

15 In those days, and at that time, will I cause the Branch of righteousness to grow up unto David; and he shall

execute judgment and righteousness in the land.

16 In those days shall Judah be saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell safely: and this is the name wherewith she shall be called, The Lord our righteousness.

Ezk 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

24 And I the Lord will be their God, and my servant David a prince among them; I the Lord have spoken it.

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

300. The gospel never stops (Acts 28:30-31)
Acts 5:42, 2 Tim 2:9, Isa 40:8, Isa 55:11

The gospel of God never stops and must be fulfilled (Isa 40:8, Isa 55:11)

Isa 40:8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

Isa 55:11 So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.

The Jews eventually put Paul in prison. However, the gospel that Paul preached that Jesus is the Christ never stops.
(Act 28:30-31, 2 Tim 2:9, Acts 5:42)

Act 28:30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,
31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

2 Tim 2:9 Wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, even unto bonds; but the word of God is not bound.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

301. The salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles
(Acts 28:23-28)

Isa 6:9-10, Acts 13:46-48, Acts 18:6

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the people of Israel would not understand the gospel of God. (Isa 6:9-10)

Isa 6:9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

In the end, as prophesied in the Old Testament, the Jews did not understand the gospel that Jesus was the Christ. So, the gospel of God's salvation was directed to the Gentiles. (Acts 28:23-28, Acts 13:46-48, Acts 18:6)

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

24 And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not.

25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers,

26 Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive:

27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it.

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Acts 18:6 And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook his raiment, and said unto them, Your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean; from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles.

- 302. Definition of the Gospel (Rom 1:1-4)
- 303. For obedience to the faith among all nations for His name (Rm 1:5)
- 305. The gospel of Christ is the power of God to salvation for everyone who believes (Rm 1:16)
- 306. The just shall live by faith that Jesus is the Christ. (Rm 1:17)
- 308. There is none righteous, no, not one (Rm 3:9-18)
- 309. The Christ, the righteousness of God apart from the law is revealed (Rm 3:19-22)
- 310. Christ, who is God's grace and God's righteousness (Rm 3:23-26)
- 311. Abraham Justified by Faith of Christ (Rm 4:1-3)
- 312. Abraham showed that we are righteous by only faith in Christ (Rm 4:9-25)
- 313. Therefore, having been justified by the faith of Jesus as the Christ, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ (Rm 5:1-11)
- 314. Therefore, as through Adam's offense judgment came to all men, resulting in condemnation, even so through Christ, the free gift came to all men, resulting in justification of life. (Rm 5:12-21)
- 315. Our old man was crucified with Christ, but We are alive to God in Christ Jesus our Lord (Rm 6:1-14)
- 316. Now having been set free from sin, and having become slaves of God, you have your fruit to holiness, and the end, everlasting life.(Rm 6:16-23)
- 317. Now we bear fruit for God through Christ, not through law. (Rm 7:4,6)
- 318. I have been crucified with Christ; it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me. (Rm 8:5-10)
- 319. Now if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he is not His.(Rm 8:9)
- 320. If we believe Jesus as the Christ, we can cry out, "Abba, Father." to God.(Rm 8:14-17)
- 321. All creation eagerly waits for the world evangelization. (Rm 8:19-22)
- 322. Even we, ourselves eagerly wait for the world evangelization within ourselves. (Rm 8:23)
- 323. The Holy Spirit makes intercession for the saints according to the will of God.(Rm 8:26-27)
- 324. Those who believe Jesus as the Christ; God justified and glorified them. (Rm 8:28-30)
- 326. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? (Rm 8:31-39)
- 327. The great sorrow and continual grief in our heart; Our National evangelization (Rm 9:1-5)
- 328. Those who believe Jesus as the Christ are the children of the promise, Abraham's seed (Rm 9:6-13)
- 329. Salvation is the sovereignty of God (Rm 9:14-18)
- 330. God's righteousness, Christ (Rm 10:3-7)

- 331. If you believe Jesus as the Christ, you will be saved.(Rm 10:8-13)
- 332. How shall they hear without a preacher who preaches Jesus as the Christ! (Rm 10:14-15)
- 333. The Israelites did not believe in Jesus as the Christ, so the Gospel goes to the Gentiles. (Rm 10:16-21)
- 334. When the fullness of the Gentiles has come in, the remnant of Israel will return to the Mighty God. (Rm 11:25-27)
- 335. You present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is your reasonable service. (Rm 12:1)
- 338. For now, our salvation is near (Rm 13:11-14)
- 339. If we live, we live to the Lord; and if we die, we die to the Lord (Rm 14:6-9)
- 340. For the kingdom of God is not eating and drinking, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit. (Rm 14:17-21)
- 341. Purpose of the Bible Records (Rm 15:4-6)
- 343. Christ who received Jews and Gentiles (Rm 15:8-12)
- 344. Christ, Who Called Us and Paul for Gentile Evangelization (Rm 15:15-16)
- 345. Christ, the revelation of the mystery kept secret since the world began (Rm 16:25-27)

302. Definition of the Gospel (Rom 1:2-4)

Titus 1:2, Rom 16:25, Lk 1:69-70, Mt 1:1, Jn 7:42, 2 Sam 7:12, 2 Tim 2:8, Rev 22:16, Acts 13:33-35, Acts 2:36

The gospel is a promise made in advance through the prophets concerning the Son of God who will do the work of Christ. (Rom 1:2, Titus 1:2, Rom 16:25, Lk 1:69-70)

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

Lk 1:69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David;
70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:

Christ came as a descendant of David. (Rom 1:3, Mt 1:1, Jn 7:42, 2 Sam 7:12, 2 Tim 2:8, Rev 22:16)

Rom 1:3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

Jn 7:42 Hath not the scripture said, That Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?

2 Sam 7:12 And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.

2 Tim 2:8 Remember that Jesus Christ of the seed of David was raised from the dead according to my gospel:

Rev 22:16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.

By resurrecting Jesus, God confirmed to us that Jesus is the Son of God and the Christ. (Rom 1:4, Acts 13:33-35, Acts 2:36)

Rom 1:4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

Acts 13:33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

The gospel is that Jesus is the Christ and the Son of God.

303. For obedience to the faith among all nations for His name (Rom 1:5)
Rom 16:26, Rom 9:24-26, Gal 3:8, Gen 12:3

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would also call the Gentiles as His children. (Rom 9:24-26, Gal 3:8, Gen 12:3)

Rom 9:24 Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles?

25 As he saith also in Osee, I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved.

26 And it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living God.

Gal 3:8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed.

Gen 12:3 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

Our mission is to get all Gentiles to believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 1:5, Rom 16:26)

Rom 1:5 By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name:

Rom 16:26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

305. The gospel of Christ is the power of God to salvation for everyone who believes (Rom 1:16)
1 Cor 1:18,24, Rom 10:9, Rom 5:9, 1 Th 5:9

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ is the power of God for salvation to all who believe in it. (Rom 1:16, 1 Cor 1:18,24)

Rom 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

1 Cor 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

God gives salvation to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 10:9, Rom 5:8-9, 1 Thess 5:9)

Rom 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

1 Thess 5:9 For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ,

306. The just shall live by faith that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 1:17)
Hab 2:4, Rom 3:20-21, Rom 9:30-33, Phil 3:9, Gal 3:11, Heb 10:38

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the righteous would live by faith. (Hab 2:4)

Hab 2:4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

The law convicts us of sin. In addition to the law, the righteousness of God has been revealed, and it is the Christ of which the law and the prophets testified. (Rom 3:20-21)

Rom 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

We are justified by God by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 1:17, Phil 3:9, Gal 3:11, Heb 10:38, Rom 9:30-33)

Rom 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Phil 3:9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

Gal 3:11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.

Heb 10:38 Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.

Rom 9:30 What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith.

31 But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness.

32 Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;

33 As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

308. There is none righteous, no, not one (Rom 3:9-18)

Ps 5:9, Ps 10:7, Isa 59:7, Ps 36:1, Ps 53:1-3, Ecc 7:20, Rom 3:23, Gal 3:22, Rm 11:32

There is no one righteous in the world. (Ps 53:1-3, Ecc 7:20, Rom 3:9-18, Ps 5:9, Ps 10:7, Isa 59:7, Ps 36:1)

Ps 53:1 The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. Corrupt are they, and have done abominable iniquity: there is none that doeth good.

2 God looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were any that did understand, that did seek God.

3 Every one of them is gone back: they are altogether become filthy; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

Ecc 7:20 For there is not a just man upon earth, that doeth good, and sinneth not.

Rom 3:9 What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin;

10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

13 Their throat is an open sepulchre; with their tongues they have used deceit; the poison of asps is under their lips:

14 Whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness:

15 Their feet are swift to shed blood:

16 Destruction and misery are in their ways:

17 And the way of peace have they not known:

18 There is no fear of God before their eyes.

Ps 5:9 For there is no faithfulness in their mouth; their inward part is very wickedness; their throat is an open sepulchre; they flatter with their tongue.

Ps 10:7 His mouth is full of cursing and deceit and fraud: under his tongue is mischief and vanity.

Isa 59:7 Their feet run to evil, and they make haste to shed innocent blood: their thoughts are thoughts of iniquity; wasting and destruction are in their paths.

Ps 36:1 The transgression of the wicked saith within my heart, that there is no fear of God before his eyes.

So no one comes to the glory of God. (Rom 3:23)

Rom 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

God has imprisoned everyone under sin so that they may be saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 3:22, Rom 11:32)

Gal 3:22 But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe.

Rom 11:32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.

309. The Christ, the righteousness of God apart from the law is revealed (Rom 3:19-22)
Gal 2:16, Acts 13:38-39, Acts 10:43

The law convicts us of sin. God made all people to convict of sin so that they could be justified by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 3:19-22, Gal 2:16, Acts 13:38-39, Act 10:43)

Rom 3:19 Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.

20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

Acts 13:38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

Act 10:43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

310. Christ, who is God's grace and God's righteousness (Rom 3:23-26)
Eph 2:8, Titus 3:7, Mt 20:28, Eph 1:7, 1 Tim 2:6, Heb 9:12, 1 Pt 1:18-19

God revealed His grace and righteousness through Christ. God made Jesus the propitiation for our sins and justified those who believed in Him as the Christ. (Rom 3:23-26)

Rom 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

We are saved by the grace of God, who gave His only begotten Son to us. (Eph 2:8, Titus 3:7)

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Titus 3:7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

Jesus became God's propitiation sacrifice to accomplish God's righteousness. (Eph 1:7, 1 Tim 2:6, Heb 9:12, 1 Pt 1:18-19)

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

1 Tim 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

Heb 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

1 Pt 1:18 Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers;

19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

311. Abraham Justified by Faith of Christ (Rom 4:1-3)
Rom 4:6-9, Ps 32:1, Jn 8:56, Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16

Abraham was justified by faith in the coming Christ before he was circumcised. (Rom 4:1-3, 6-9, Ps 32:1)

Rom 4:1 What shall we say then that Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, hath found?
2 For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God.
3 For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness.
6 Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works,
7 Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered.
8 Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin.
9 Cometh this blessedness then upon the circumcision only, or upon the uncircumcision also? for we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness.

Ps 32:1 Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered.

Abraham believed and rejoiced in the coming of Christ, the seed of Abraham that God had promised. (Jn 8:56, Gen 22:18, Gal 3:16)

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

312. Abraham showed that we are righteous by only faith in Christ (Rom 4:9-25)

Rom 4:9 Cometh this blessedness then upon the circumcision only, or upon the uncircumcision also? for we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness.

10 How was it then reckoned? when he was in circumcision, or in uncircumcision? Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision.

11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also:

12 And the father of circumcision to them who are not of the circumcision only, but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham, which he had being yet uncircumcised.

13 For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith.

14 For if they which are of the law be heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect:

15 Because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, there is no transgression.

16 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,

17 (As it is written, I have made thee a father of many nations,) before him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were.

18 Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be.

19 And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sarah's womb:

20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God;

21 And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

22 And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness.

23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him;

24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

313. Therefore, having been justified by faith of Jesus as the Christ, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ (Rom 5:1-11)

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

3 And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience;

4 And patience, experience; and experience, hope:

5 And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.

6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.

7 For scarcely for a righteous man will one die: yet peradventure for a good man some would even dare to die.

8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

11 And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.

314. Therefore, as through Adam's offense judgment came to all men, resulting in condemnation, even so through Christ the free gift came to all men, resulting in justification of life. (Rom 5:12-21)

Rom 5:12 Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:

13 (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law.

14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.

15 But not as the offence, so also is the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many.

16 And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offences unto justification.

17 For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.)

18 Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life.

19 For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.

20 Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound:

21 That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.

315. Our old man was crucified with Christ, but We are alive to God in Christ Jesus our Lord (Rom 6:1-14)
2 Cor 5:17

Rom 6:1 What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound?

2 God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein?

3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

7 For he that is dead is freed from sin.

8 Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him:

9 Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him.

10 For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God.

11 Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.

12 Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof.

13 Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God.

14 For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.

2 Cor 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

316. Now having been set free from sin, and having become slaves of God, you have your fruit to holiness, and the end, everlasting life.(Rom 6:16-23)

Rom 6:16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?

17 But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you.

18 Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.

19 I speak after the manner of men because of the infirmity of your flesh: for as ye have yielded your members servants to uncleanness and to iniquity unto iniquity; even so now yield your members servants to righteousness unto holiness.

20 For when ye were the servants of sin, ye were free from righteousness.

21 What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed? for the end of those things is death.

22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life.

23 For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

317. There is no condemnation for those who are in Jesus Christ, for the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has set us free from the law of sin and death. (Rom 8:1-2)

Rom 8:34, Rom 8:39

Rom 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Rom 8:34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

Rom 8:39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

318. I have been crucified with Christ; it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me. (Rom 8:5-11)
Gal 5:24, Gal 2:20

Rom 8:5 For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit.

6 For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace.

7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.

8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.

9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

10 And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness.

11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

Gal 5:24 And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

319. Now if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he is not His.(Rom 8:9)
Acts 2:36-38, Acts 5:30-32, 1 Cor 3:16, 1 Jn 3:24

When we believe in Jesus as the Christ, the Holy Spirit comes upon us. (Acts 2:36-38, Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

When the Holy Spirit comes upon us, we become Christ's, and we become God's temple. (Rom 8:9, 1 Cor 3:16, 1 Jn 3:24)

Rom 8:9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

1 Cor 3:16 Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?

1 Jn 3:24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.

320. If we believe Jesus as the Christ, we can cry out, "Abba, Father." to God. (Rom 8:14-17)
Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1, Gal 4:4-6, Eph 1:5, Gal 3:26, Gal 4:7

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we become children of God. (Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1, Eph 1:5, Gal 3:26)

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Eph 1:5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

Gal 3:26 For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

Because God is our Father, we can call God Abba, Father. (Rom 8:14-16, Gal 4:4-6)

Rom 8:14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.

15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,
5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

Because we are God's children, we are the heirs of God. In other words, we are the people who will evangelize the world. (Rom 8:17, Gal 4:7)

Rom 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

Gal 4:7 Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

321. All things are waiting for the appearance of all the sons of God, namely, world evangelization. (Rom 8:19-22)
Gen 3:17, Isa 11:6-9

All things were cursed because of the fall of man. (Gen 3:17)

Gen 3:17 And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life;

All things want the gospel to be preached all over the world, and they too want to be restored by the return of Christ. (Rom 8:19-22)

Rom 8:19 For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God.

20 For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who hath subjected the same in hope,

21 Because the creature itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God.

22 For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now.

When Jesus Christ comes again, all things will be restored. (Isa 11:6-9)

Isa 11:6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.

9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

322. Even we, ourselves eagerly wait for the world evangelization within ourselves. (Rom 8:23)
Mt 24:14, Col 3:4, 2 Cor 5:2

Inwardly we too await the redemption of our bodies. It means that we, too, are waiting for world evangelization inwardly. (Rom 8:23, 2 Cor 5:2)

Rom 8:23 And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body.

2 Cor 5:2 For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven:

The end of the world will come only when the world is evangelized, and only then will Christ return. (Mt 24:14, Col 3:4)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

323. The Holy Spirit makes intercession for the saints according to the will of God.(Rom 8:26-27)
Jn 6:29, Jn 6:39, Acts 1:8, Act 4:31, Jn 16:13, Jn 14:26

We do not know what to pray for. So the Holy Spirit sighs and prays for us according to the will of God. (Rom 8:26-27)

Rom 8:26 Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.

27 And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.

The will of God is to believe in Jesus, the one whom God has sent, as the Christ. (Jn 6:29)

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Also, God's will is to find all of God's children. That is, world evangelization. (Jn 6:39)

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

The Holy Spirit enables us to know more and more that Jesus is the Christ, and to spread the gospel and evangelize the world. (Jn 16:13, Jn 14:26, Acts 4:31, Acts 1:8)

Jn 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Acts 4:31 And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

324. These who believe Jesus as the Christ; God justified and glorified them.(Rom 8:29-30)

2 Tim 1:9

Rom 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

2 Tim 1:9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,

326. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? (Rom 8:31-39)

Ps 44:22

Ps 44:22 Yea, for thy sake are we killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter.

Rom 8:31 What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us?

32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?

33 Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth.

34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

327. The great sorrow and continual grief in our heart; Our National evangelization (Rom 9:1-5)
Rom 10:1

Rom 9:1 I say the truth in Christ, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Ghost,
2 That I have great heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart.
3 For I could wish that myself were accursed from Christ for my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh:
4 Who are Israelites; to whom pertaineth the adoption, and the glory, and the covenants, and the giving of the law,
and the service of God, and the promises;
5 Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever.
Amen.

Rom 10:1 Brethren, my heart's desire and prayer to God for Israel is, that they might be saved.

328. Those who believe Jesus as the Christ are the children of the promise, Abraham's seed (Rom 9:6-13)
1 Jn 5:1, Jn 1:12, Gal 3:29, Gal 4:28

Abraham's physical children are not God's children. The children of God's promise are the children of God. The children of God's promise are those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 9:6-13, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 1:12)

Rom 9:6 Not as though the word of God hath taken none effect. For they are not all Israel, which are of Israel:
7 Neither, because they are the seed of Abraham, are they all children: but, In Isaac shall thy seed be called.
8 That is, They which are the children of the flesh, these are not the children of God: but the children of the promise are counted for the seed.
9 For this is the word of promise, At this time will I come, and Sarah shall have a son.
10 And not only this; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, even by our father Isaac;
11 (For the children being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth;)
12 It was said unto her, The elder shall serve the younger.
13 As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we are the descendants of Abraham. And we are the heirs of Abraham. (Gal 3:29, Gal 4:28)

Gal 3:29 And if ye be Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.

Gal 4:28 Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are the children of promise.

329. Salvation is the sovereignty of God (Rom 9:14-18)

Ex 33:19, Ps 3:8, Ps 62:7, Jonah 2:9, Eph 2:8

God has mercy on those who are to be saved and saves them by making them believe in Jesus as the Christ. Salvation is not received through our zeal or our will. (Rom 9:14-16, Ex 33:19, Eph 2:8)

Rom 9:14 What shall we say then? Is there unrighteousness with God? God forbid.

15 For he saith to Moses, I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion.

16 So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth mercy.

Ex 33:19 And he said, I will make all my goodness pass before thee, and I will proclaim the name of the Lord before thee; and will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will shew mercy on whom I will shew mercy.

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Salvation belongs to God. (Ps 3:8, Ps 62:7, Jonah 2:9)

Ps 3:8 Salvation belongeth unto the Lord: thy blessing is upon thy people. Selah.

Ps 62:7 In God is my salvation and my glory: the rock of my strength, and my refuge, is in God.

Jonah 2:9 But I will sacrifice unto thee with the voice of thanksgiving; I will pay that that I have vowed. Salvation is of the Lord.

Even the wicked are made evil by God. (Rom 9:17-18)

Rom 9:17 For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might shew my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth.

18 Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and whom he will he hardeneth.

330. God's righteousness, Christ (Rom 10:1-7)
Heb 5:8-9

The Jews do not know God's righteousness, Christ, and try to establish their own righteousness. (Rom 10:1-3)

Rom 10:1 Brethren, my heart's desire and prayer to God for Israel is, that they might be saved.
2 For I bear them record that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge.
3 For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.

Christ is the end of the law, fulfilling the law to all who believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 10:4)

Rom 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Who can ascend to heaven? Who else would go down to hell? Christ alone rose from the dead and ascended into heaven. (Rom 10:6-7)

Rom 10:6 But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, Say not in thine heart, Who shall ascend into heaven? (that is, to bring Christ down from above:)
7 Or, Who shall descend into the deep? (that is, to bring up Christ again from the dead.)

We come to righteousness and salvation through faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 10:8-10)

Rom 10:8 But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach;
9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.
10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

Jesus, the Christ, is the source of salvation. (Heb 5:8-9)

Heb 5:8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;
9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

331. If you believe Jesus as the Christ, you will be saved. (Rom 10:8-13)
Acts 2:36

Rom 10:8 But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach;

9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

332. How shall they hear without a preacher who preaches Jesus as the Christ! (Rom 10:14-15)
Acts 8:31-35, Lk 24:25-27, Lk 24:44-45

People don't know unless we explain the Old Testament and explain that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 8:31-35, Rom 10:14-15)

Acts 8:31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

Rom 10:14 How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?

15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

Even the disciples who were with Jesus did not know that Jesus was the Christ. Eventually, the resurrected Jesus explained the Old Testament to his disciples, showing that he was the Christ. (Lk 24:25-27, Lk 24:44-45)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

Lk 24:44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

333. The Israelites did not believe in Jesus as the Christ, so the Gospel goes to the Gentiles. (Rom 10:16-21)
Acts 13:46, Acts 18:5-6, Acts 28:23-28

Rom 10:16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

18 But I say, Have they not heard? Yes verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world.

19 But I say, Did not Israel know? First Moses saith, I will provoke you to jealousy by them that are no people, and by a foolish nation I will anger you.

20 But Esaias is very bold, and saith, I was found of them that sought me not; I was made manifest unto them that asked not after me.

21 But to Israel he saith, All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

6 And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook his raiment, and said unto them, Your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean; from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

24 And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not.

25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers,

26 Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive:

27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it.

334. When the fullness of the Gentiles has come in, the remnant of Israel will return to the Mighty God. (Rom 11:25-27)

Lk 21:24, Isa 59:20-21, Isa 27:9, Jer 31:33

In the Old Testament, it was promised that God would forgive and restore Israel from their sins. (Isa 59:20-21, Isa 27:9, Jer 31:33)

Isa 59:20 And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression in Jacob, saith the Lord.
21 As for me, this is my covenant with them, saith the Lord; My spirit that is upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.

Isa 27:9 By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up.

Jer 31:33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

When the Gentile times are fulfilled, the remnant of Israel will return to God. (Lk 21:24, Rom 11:25-27)

Lk 21:24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

Rom 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.

26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

27 For this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.

335. You present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable to God, which is your reasonable service. (Rom 12:1)
Eph 1:4-5, Col 1:22, Gal 2:20

God has saved us in Christ so that we may be found blameless before God. (Rom 12:1, Eph 1:4-5, Col 1:22)

Rom 12:1 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.

Col 1:22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreprouvable in his sight:

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

Now we live by faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:20)

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

338. For now our salvation is near (Rom 13:11-14)
1 Cor 7:29-31, 1 Pt 4:7

The hour of Christ's coming has come. Live preparing for that day. (Rom 13:11-14, 1 Cor 7:29-31, 1 Pt 4:7)

Rom 13:11 And that, knowing the time, that now it is high time to awake out of sleep: for now is our salvation nearer than when we believed.

12 The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light.

13 Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying.

14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

1 Cor 7:29 But this I say, brethren, the time is short: it remaineth, that both they that have wives be as though they had none;

30 And they that weep, as though they wept not; and they that rejoice, as though they rejoiced not; and they that buy, as though they possessed not;

31 And they that use this world, as not abusing it: for the fashion of this world passeth away.

1 Pt 4:7 But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer.

339. If we live, we live to the Lord; and if we die, we die to the Lord

(Rom 14:6-9)

2 Cor 5:15, Gal 2:20, 1 Cor 6:19-20, Phil 1:20-21

Christ died and rose again so that we might live for Him. (Rom 14:6-9, 2 Cor 5:15, Gal 2:20)

Rom 14:6 He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord; and he that regardeth not the day, to the Lord he doth not regard it. He that eateth, eateth to the Lord, for he giveth God thanks; and he that eateth not, to the Lord he eateth not, and giveth God thanks.

7 For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself.

8 For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.

9 For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living.

2 Cor 5:15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

We must live to glorify God. (1 Cor 6:19-20)

1 Cor 6:19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

It is good for us to live for Christ. (Phil 1:20-21)

Phil 1:20 According to my earnest expectation and my hope, that in nothing I shall be ashamed, but that with all boldness, as always, so now also Christ shall be magnified in my body, whether it be by life, or by death.

21 For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain.

340. For the kingdom of God is not eating and drinking, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.
(Rom 14:17-21)

2 Tim 2:22, Heb 12:14

The kingdom of God is peace, edification, and not making our brothers a stumbling block in order to preach the gospel. (Rom 14:17-21, 2 Tim 2:22, Heb 12:14)

Rom 14:17 For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.

18 For he that in these things serveth Christ is acceptable to God, and approved of men.

19 Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another.

20 For meat destroy not the work of God. All things indeed are pure; but it is evil for that man who eateth with offence.

21 It is good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor any thing whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak.

2 Tim 2:22 Flee also youthful lusts: but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

Heb 12:14 Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord:

341. Purpose of the Bible Records (Rom 15:3-6)
Jn 5:39, 2 Tim 3:15-16, Jn 20:31

Christ suffered and died not to please himself, but to please God, that is, that we might live. (Rom 15:3)

Rom 15:3 For even Christ pleased not himself; but, as it is written, The reproaches of them that reproached thee fell on me.

The Old Testament was written to give us faith and instruction. That is, it was written in order to glorify God by imitation of Christ and faith in Christ. (Rom 15:4-6)

Rom 15:4 For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope.

5 Now the God of patience and consolation grant you to be likeminded one toward another according to Christ Jesus:
6 That ye may with one mind and one mouth glorify God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.

The Old Testament describes receiving eternal life through Christ. That Christ is Jesus. (Jn 5:39, 2 Tim 3:15-16)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:

The New Testament records that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that we are saved through faith in Jesus Christ. (Jn 20:31)

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

In conclusion, the Bible explains that we are saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ.

343. Christ who received Jews and Gentiles (Rom 15:8-12)
Ps 18:49, Deut 32:43, Ps 117:1, Isa 11:10

By being circumcised, Jesus revealed the truthfulness of God in the promises of Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Rom 15:8)

Rom 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

Also, by completing the Old Testament law, Jesus made it possible for Gentiles who believe in Jesus to be the Christ to dwell in God's mercy. (Rom 15:9-12)

Rom 15:9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

So Gentiles who believe in Jesus as the Christ can rejoice in God with the Jews in Christ. (Ps 18:49, Deut 32:43, Ph 117:1, Isa 11:10)

Ps 18:49 Therefore will I give thanks unto thee, O Lord, among the heathen, and sing praises unto thy name.

Deut 32:43 Rejoice, O ye nations, with his people: for he will avenge the blood of his servants, and will render vengeance to his adversaries, and will be merciful unto his land, and to his people.

Ps 117:1 O praise the Lord, all ye nations: praise him, all ye people.

Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

344. Christ, Who Called Us and Paul for Gentile Evangelization (Rom 15:15-16)
Acts 9:15, Eph 3:7-8, Rom 1:5, Acts 26:15-18, Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

God called Paul to evangelize the Gentiles. (Acts 9:15, Eph 3:7-8, Rom 1:5, Rom 15:15-16, Acts 26:15-18)

Acts 9:15 But the Lord said unto him, Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel:

Eph 3:7 Whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working of his power.

8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;

Rom 1:5 By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name:

Rom 15:15 Nevertheless, brethren, I have written the more boldly unto you in some sort, as putting you in mind, because of the grace that is given to me of God,

16 That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.

Acts 26:15 And I said, Who art thou, Lord? And he said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest.

16 But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister and a witness both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in the which I will appear unto thee;

17 Delivering thee from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee,

18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

God has called us to evangelize the Gentiles and the whole world. (Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

345. Christ, the revelation of the mystery kept secret since the world began (Rom 16:25-27)
1 Jn 1:1-2, Gen 3:15, Eph 3:3-4, Col 1:26-27, Col 2:2, 1 Pt 1:20-21, Rom 1:2

God began to communicate the mystery of Christ to us through the prophet Moses. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Since the world began, God has delivered to us the revelation of the mystery of God through the writings of the prophets. Now this revelation has come to us. The Christ prophesied by the prophets is Jesus. (Rom 1:2, Rom 16:25-27, 1 Jn 1:1-2, Col 1:26-27, 1 Pt 1:20-21)

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1 Pt 1:20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,

21 Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God.

God made Paul realize the revelation of God. In other words, Paul realized that Jesus was the Christ. (Eph 3:3-4)

Eph 3:3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words,

4 Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)

Christ is the mystery of God. In other words, the mystery of God's saving work is contained in Christ. (Col 2:2)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

- 346. Saints hoping for the Lord's return while they are alive (1 Co 1:7)
- 347. For Christ did not send me to baptize, but to preach the gospel (1 Co 1:7)
- 348. Christ, who is the power of God and the wisdom of God (1 Co 1:18-24)
- 349. It pleased God through the foolishness of the message preached to save those who believe. (1 Co 1:21)
- 350. He who glories, let him glory in the Lord. (1 Co 1:26-31)
- 351. For I determined not to know anything among you except Jesus Christ and Him crucified. (1 Co 2:1-5)
- 352. God has revealed the wisdom of God, Christ to us through His Spirit. (1 Co 2:7-10)
- 353. Our foundation is Jesus Christ. (1 Co 3:10-11)
- 354. We are the temple of God. (1 Co 3:16-17)
- 355. We who preach Christ, the mystery of God (1 Co 4:1)
- 356. What Paul taught everywhere in every church (1 Co 4:17)
- 357. Therefore purge out the old leaven, that you may be a new lump since you truly are unleavened. (1 Co 5:7-8)
- 358. The body is for the Lord (1 Co 6:13-15)
- 359. All things and we are from God and Jesus Christ. (1 Co 8:6)
- 360. For brothers whom Christ died for (1 Co 8:10-13)
- 361. Gospel preaching is unavoidable our job. (1 Co 9:16)
- 362. I have made myself a servant to all, that I might win the more (1 Co 9:18-27)
- 362-2. To obtain the crown of righteousness (1 Cor 9:24-27)
- 363. Christ, who guided all our fathers (1 Co 10:1-4)
- 364. Flee from idolatry (1 Co 10:6-14)
- 365. Seek the profit of many so that they may be saved. (1 Co 10:31-33)
- 366. Reason of Communion in Commemoration of Christ: To proclaim the Lord's death till He comes (1 Co 11:23-26)
- 368. The reality of love: God and Christ (1 Co 13:8-12)
- 369. The gospel which Paul preached to us: Christ died for our sins and was buried and rose again the third day according to the Scriptures (1 Co 15:1-4)
- 370. Christ, who is the firstfruit of the resurrection (1 Co 15:20-23)

372. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men the most pitiable. (1 Co 15:19)

373. And as we have borne the image of the man of dust, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly Man. (1 Co 15:45-49)

374. At The Last Trumpet (1 Co 15:51-58)

346. Saints hoping for the Lord's return while they are alive (1 Co 1:7)
1 Thess 1:10, James 5:8-9, 1 Pt 4:7, 1 Jn 2:18, 1 Cor 7:29-31, Rev 22:20

The early church members waited for Jesus to come back while they were still alive. (1 Cor 1:7, 1 Thess 1:10)

1 Cor 1:7 So that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ:

1 Thess 1:10 And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.

The apostles also said that the coming of Jesus Christ was near. (James 5:8-9, 1 Pt 4:7, 1 Jn 2:18, 1 Cor 7:29-31)

James 5:8 Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh.

9 Grudge not one against another, brethren, lest ye be condemned: behold, the judge standeth before the door.

1 Pt 4:7 But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer.

1 Jn 2:18 Little children, it is the last time: and as ye have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time.

1 Cor 7:29 But this I say, brethren, the time is short: it remaineth, that both they that have wives be as though they had none;

30 And they that weep, as though they wept not; and they that rejoice, as though they rejoiced not; and they that buy, as though they possessed not;

31 And they that use this world, as not abusing it: for the fashion of this world passeth away.

Jesus also promised that He would come soon. (Rev 22:20)

Rev 22:20 He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

347. For Christ did not send me to baptize, but to preach the gospel (1 Co 1:17)
Rom 1:1-4, Mt 16:16, Acts 5:42, Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5

We have been chosen by God to preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 1:1-4)

Rom 1:1 Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ, called to be an apostle, separated unto the gospel of God,
2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)
3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;
4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

Christ also sent us to preach the gospel. (1 Cor 1:17, Acts 5:42)

1 Cor 1:17 For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

The gospel is that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God. (Mt 16:16)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

Paul preached the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5)

Acts 9:22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

348. Christ, who is the power of God and the wisdom of God (1 Co 1:18-24)
Isa 29:14, Rom 1:16, Col 2:2-3, Job 12:13

The Old Testament prophesied that God would raise up His wisdom.(Isa 29:14)

Isa 29:14 Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

Christ is the wisdom of God and the power of God. Christ is the wisdom of God that God wants to save us. God saved us through the work of Christ. Also, Christ is the power of God for salvation to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (1 Cor 1:18-24, Rom 1:16)

1 Cor 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

19 For it is written, I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent.

20 Where is the wise? where is the scribe? where is the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world?

21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.

22 For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom:

23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Rom 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

All the secrets of God are hidden in Christ. (Job 12:13, Col 2:2-3)

Job 12:13 With him is wisdom and strength, he hath counsel and understanding.

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

349. It pleased God through the foolishness of the message preached to save those who believe. (1 Co 1:21)
1 Cor 1:18, 23-24, Lk 10:21, Rom 10:9

God saved believers through evangelism. Evangelism is preaching that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Cor 1:21)

1 Cor 1:21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.

Evangelism is preaching that Jesus accomplished all the work of Christ on the cross. (1 Cor 1:18,23-24, Rom 10:9)

1 Cor 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Rom 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

God has hidden the secret of evangelism from the wise. (Lk 10:21)

Lk 10:21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.

350. He who glories, let him glory in the Lord. (1 Co 1:26-31)
Jer 9:23-24, Gal 6:14, Phil 3:3

Before God we have nothing to boast of. We should boast only in Christ. (1 Cor 1:26-31, Jer 9:23-24)

1 Cor 1:26 For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called:

27 But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty;

28 And base things of the world, and things which are despised, hath God chosen, yea, and things which are not, to bring to nought things that are:

29 That no flesh should glory in his presence.

30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

31 That, according as it is written, He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

Jer 9:23 Thus saith the Lord, Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty man glory in his might, let not the rich man glory in his riches:

24 But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I am the Lord which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these things I delight, saith the Lord.

We have nothing to boast of except in Christ. (Gal 6:14, Phil 3:3)

Gal 6:14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

Phil 3:3 For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.

351. For I determined not to know anything among you except Jesus Christ and Him crucified. (1 Co 2:1-5)
Gal 6:14, 1 Cor 1:23-24

When Paul failed to preach in Athens, he decided not to preach anything other than that Jesus was the Christ and that Jesus accomplished all the work of Christ on the cross. (1 Cor 2:1-5, Gal 6:14)

1 Cor 2:1 And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God.

2 For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified.

3 And I was with you in weakness, and in fear, and in much trembling.

4 And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power:

5 That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God.

Gal 6:14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

It is the power of God and the wisdom of God that Jesus accomplished all the work of Christ on the cross. (1 Cor 1:23-24)

1 Cor 1:23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

352. God has revealed the wisdom of God, Christ to us through His Spirit. (1 Co 2:7-10) Rom 11:32-33, Job 11:7, Mt 13:35, Col 1:26-27, Mt 16:16-17, Jn 14:26, Jn 16:13

God's wisdom is to lead everyone to Christ. How wonderful is the wisdom of God? (Rom 11:32-33, Job 11:7)

Rom 11:32 For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all.

33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! how unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out!

Job 11:7 Canst thou by searching find out God? canst thou find out the Almighty unto perfection?

The wisdom of God that has been hidden from before the foundation of the world is Christ. (Mt 13:35, Col 1:26-27)

Mt 13:35 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying, I will open my mouth in parables; I will utter things which have been kept secret from the foundation of the world.

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

God made Peter realize that Jesus is the Christ through the Holy Spirit. (Mt 16:16-17)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

God revealed the wisdom of God, Christ, through the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit makes us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Cor 2:7-10, Jn 14:26, Jn 16:13)

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.

10 But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

353. Our foundation is Jesus Christ. (1 Co 3:10-11)
Isa 28:16, Mt 16:18, Eph 2:20, Acts 4:11-12, 2 Cor 11:4

It was foretold in the Old Testament that those who believe in Christ, who is a solid foundation stone, will not be in a hurry. (Isa 28:16)

Isa 28:16 Therefore thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

The foundation of our faith is that Jesus is the Christ. There is no other basis. (Mt 16:16,18, Acts 4:11-12, Eph 2:20)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

Satan deceives us into preaching a different Jesus than the foundation that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Cor 11:4)

2 Cor 11:4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.

354. We are the temple of God. (1 Co 3:16-17)
1 Cor 6:19, 2 Cor 6:16, Eph 2:22

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, the Holy Spirit dwells in us. So we become the temple of God. (1 Cor 3:16-17, 1 Cor 6:19, 2 Cor 6:16, Eph 2:22)

1 Cor 3:16 Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?
17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are.

1 Cor 6:19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

2 Cor 6:16 And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.

Eph 2:22 In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

355. We who preach Christ, the mystery of God (1 Co 4:1)
Col 1:26-27, Col 2:2, Rom 16:25-27

The mystery of God is Christ. Christ appeared. That is Jesus. (Col 1:26-27)

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

We must make people aware of Christ, the mystery of God. We also need to make people realize that Jesus is the Christ. (Col 2:2)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

The gospel, which was hidden since the world began, and now revealed, is that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 16:25-27)

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

356. What Paul taught everywhere in every church (1 Co 4:17)
1 Cor 1:17-18, 23-24, 2 Tim 3:15, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 19:8-10

What Paul taught in each church was that Jesus had accomplished the work of Christ on the cross. (1 Cor 1:17-18,23-24)

1 Cor 1:17 For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect.

18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Paul explained to Timothy that the Old Testament describes salvation through Christ and that Christ is Jesus. (2 Tim 3:15)

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

So Paul taught in each church that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (1 Cor 4:17, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 19:8-10)

1 Cor 4:17 For this cause have I sent unto you Timotheus, who is my beloved son, and faithful in the Lord, who shall bring you into remembrance of my ways which be in Christ, as I teach every where in every church.

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 19:8 And he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of God.

9 But when divers were hardened, and believed not, but spake evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus.

10 And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus, both Jews and Greeks.

357. Therefore purge out the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, since you truly are unleavened. (1 Co 5:7-8)
2 Cor 5:17, Mt 16:11-12, Ex 12:19-24, Rom 8:1-2, Rom 12:1-2

In the Old Testament, the blood of the Passover Lamb was able to bring us out of Egypt. They ate unleavened bread for seven days after the Exodus. This prophesied that Christ would be sacrificed for us like the Passover lamb. And through that sacrifice, we become new, unleavened creations. (Ex 12:19-24)

Ex 12:19 Seven days shall there be no leaven found in your houses: for whosoever eateth that which is leavened, even that soul shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether he be a stranger, or born in the land.

20 Ye shall eat nothing leavened; in all your habitations shall ye eat unleavened bread.

21 Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, Draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the passover.

22 And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the bason, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that is in the bason; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house until the morning.

23 For the Lord will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side posts, the Lord will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you.

24 And ye shall observe this thing for an ordinance to thee and to thy sons for ever.

The Passover Lamb, Christ, was sacrificed for us. Therefore, we are new creatures in Christ. (1 Cor 5:7-8, 2 Cor 5:17)

1 Cor 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us:

8 Therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, neither with the leaven of malice and wickedness; but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.

2 Cor 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

Throw away the old leaven that has affected us. (Mt 16:11-12)

Mt 16:11 How is it that ye do not understand that I spake it not to you concerning bread, that ye should beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees?

12 Then understood they how that he bade them not beware of the leaven of bread, but of the doctrine of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees.

In Christ we are completely set free from the law of sin and death. Now we must live a life for the glory of God, not a life of sin. (Rom 8:1-2, Rom 12:1-2)

Rom 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Rom 12:1 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.

2 And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

358. The body is for the Lord (1 Co 6:13-15)
1 Cor 6:19-20, 1 Thess 4:3-5, 2 Cor 5:15

Our bodies are temples of the Holy Spirit. So we must live a life that glorifies God. (1 Cor 6:13-15, 19-20, 1 Thess 4:3-5)

1 Cor 6:13 Meats for the belly, and the belly for meats: but God shall destroy both it and them. Now the body is not for fornication, but for the Lord; and the Lord for the body.

14 And God hath both raised up the Lord, and will also raise up us by his own power.

15 Know ye not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and make them the members of an harlot? God forbid.

19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

1 Thess 4:3 For this is the will of God, even your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication:

4 That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour;

5 Not in the lust of concupiscence, even as the Gentiles which know not God:

We are saved so that we may live for Christ. (2 Cor 5:15)

2 Cor 5:15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

359. All things and we are from God and Jesus Christ. (1 Co 8:6)

Gen 1:1, Gen 1:26-27, Mal 2:10, Eph 4:6, Acts 10:36, 1 Cor 15:28, Col 3:11, Heb 1:2, Jn 1:3, Col 1:15-17, Rev 4:11

God and Jesus Christ made us. (Gen 1:26-27, Mal 2:10)

Gen 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

Mal 2:10 Have we not all one father? hath not one God created us? why do we deal treacherously every man against his brother, by profaning the covenant of our fathers?

God and Jesus Christ are Lord of all. (Eph 4:6, Acts 10:36, 1 Cor 15:28)

Eph 4:6 One God and Father of all, who is above all, and through all, and in you all.

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

1 Cor 15:28 And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.

God and Jesus Christ created everything. (Gen 1:1, Rev 4:11, 1 Cor 8:6, Heb 1:2, Jn 1:3, Col 1:15-17)

Gen 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

Rev 4:11 Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.

1 Cor 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Jn 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

360. For brothers whom Christ died for (1 Co 8:10-13)
Rom 14:13, 21, 2 Cor 6:3, Acts 20:33-35, 1 Cor 9:7, 1-15

We must not act to diminish the faith of our brethren. (1 Cor 8:10-13, Rom 14:13,21, 2 Cor 6:3)

1 Cor 8:10 For if any man see thee which hast knowledge sit at meat in the idol's temple, shall not the conscience of him which is weak be emboldened to eat those things which are offered to idols;
11 And through thy knowledge shall the weak brother perish, for whom Christ died?
12 But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ.
13 Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend.

Rom 14:13 Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in his brother's way.
21 It is good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor any thing whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak.

2 Cor 6:3 Giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed:

Paul did not live a life that prevented his brothers from growing in their faith. Also, although Paul had the right to seek help from the saints, he did not burden the saints because he earned money by working. (Acts 20:33-35, 1 Cor 9:1-15)

Acts 20:33 I have coveted no man's silver, or gold, or apparel.
34 Yea, ye yourselves know, that these hands have ministered unto my necessities, and to them that were with me.
35 I have shewed you all things, how that so labouring ye ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.

1 Cor 9:1 Am I am not an apostle? am I not free? have I not seen Jesus Christ our Lord? are not ye my work in the Lord?
2 If I be not an apostle unto others, yet doubtless I am to you: for the seal of mine apostleship are ye in the Lord.
3 Mine answer to them that do examine me is this,
4 Have we not power to eat and to drink?
5 Have we not power to lead about a sister, a wife, as well as other apostles, and as the brethren of the Lord, and Cephas?
6 Or I only and Barnabas, have not we power to forbear working?
7 Who goeth a warfare any time at his own charges? who planteth a vineyard, and eateth not of the fruit thereof? or who feedeth a flock, and eateth not of the milk of the flock?
8 Say I these things as a man? or saith not the law the same also?
9 For it is written in the law of Moses, thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Doth God take care for oxen?
10 Or saith he it altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, this is written: that he that ploweth should plow in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope.
11 If we have sown unto you spiritual things, is it a great thing if we shall reap your carnal things?
12 If others be partakers of this power over you, are not we rather? Nevertheless we have not used this power; but suffer all things, lest we should hinder the gospel of Christ.
13 Do ye not know that they which minister about holy things live of the things of the temple? and they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar?
14 Even so hath the Lord ordained that they which preach the gospel should live of the gospel.
15 But I have used none of these things: neither have I written these things, that it should be so done unto me: for it were better for me to die, than that any man should make my glorying void.

361. Gospel preaching is unavoidable our job. (1 Co 9:16)
Jer 20:9, Rom 1:14,

We cannot endure unless we preach the gospel. (1 Cor 9:16, Jer 20:9)

1 Cor 9:16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

Jer 20:9 Then I said, I will not make mention of him, nor speak any more in his name. But his word was in mine heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was weary with forbearing, and I could not stay.

Also, we are indebted to the gospel. (Rom 1:14)

Rom 1:14 I am debtor both to the Greeks, and to the Barbarians; both to the wise, and to the unwise.

362. I have made myself a servant to all, that I might win the more
(1 Co 9:18-23)

Paul became the servant of all people in order to save more people through the gospel.

1 Co 9:18 What is my reward then? Verily that, when I preach the gospel, I may make the gospel of Christ without charge, that I abuse not my power in the gospel.

19 For though I be free from all men, yet have I made myself servant unto all, that I might gain the more.

20 And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law;

21 To them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ,) that I might gain them that are without law.

22 To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all men, that I might by all means save some.

23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with you.

362-2. To obtain the crown of righteousness (1 Cor 9:24-27)
Phil 2:16, Phil 3:14, 2 Tim 4:7-8

Paul tells us to run for the crown of righteousness. In other words, do your best to preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ.

1 Cor 9:24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.
25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible.

26 I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air:

27 But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

Phil 2:16 Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.

Phil 3:14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

2 Tim 4:7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

363. Christ, who guided all our fathers (1 Co 10:1-4)
Deut 8:3, Neh 9:15,20-21, Ps 78:24, Jn 6:32-33, 35, Ps 78:12-16

Even in the Old Testament, Christ led the nation of Israel with God. (1 Cor 10:1-4, Ps 78:12-16)

1 Cor 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;
2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;
3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat;
4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

Ps 78:12 Marvellous things did he in the sight of their fathers, in the land of Egypt, in the field of Zoan.
13 He divided the sea, and caused them to pass through; and he made the waters to stand as an heap.
14 In the daytime also he led them with a cloud, and all the night with a light of fire.
15 He clave the rocks in the wilderness, and gave them drink as out of the great depths.
16 He brought streams also out of the rock, and caused waters to run down like rivers.

Christ, together with God, provided food for the nation of Israel. (Neh 9:15,20-21, Ps 78:24-29)

Neh 9:15 And gavest them bread from heaven for their hunger, and broughtest forth water for them out of the rock for their thirst, and promisedst them that they should go in to possess the land which thou hadst sworn to give them.
20 Thou gavest also thy good spirit to instruct them, and withheldest not thy manna from their mouth, and gavest them water for their thirst.
21 Yea, forty years didst thou sustain them in the wilderness, so that they lacked nothing; their clothes waxed not old, and their feet swelled not.

Ps 78:24 And had rained down manna upon them to eat, and had given them of the corn of heaven.
25 Man did eat angels' food: he sent them meat to the full.
26 He caused an east wind to blow in the heaven: and by his power he brought in the south wind.
27 He rained flesh also upon them as dust, and feathered fowls like as the sand of the sea:
28 And he let it fall in the midst of their camp, round about their habitations.
29 So they did eat, and were well filled: for he gave them their own desire;

The food that God gave to the Israelites in the wilderness is the shadow of Christ. The true food that God gives is Christ. (Deut 8:3, Jn 6:32-33,35)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jn 6:32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.
33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.
35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

364. Flee from idolatry (1 Co 10:5-14)

In the Old Testament, the nation of Israel was cursed as a result of idolatry. The events of the Old Testament are our mirrors. Avoid idolatry, for God only gives you the temptation you can bear and provides a way of escape.

1 Co 10:5 But with many of them God was not well pleased: for they were overthrown in the wilderness.

6 Now these things were our examples, to the intent we should not lust after evil things, as they also lusted.

7 Neither be ye idolaters, as were some of them; as it is written, The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play.

8 Neither let us commit fornication, as some of them committed, and fell in one day three and twenty thousand.

9 Neither let us tempt Christ, as some of them also tempted, and were destroyed of serpents.

10 Neither murmur ye, as some of them also murmured, and were destroyed of the destroyer.

11 Now all these things happened unto them for examples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come.

12 Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall.

13 There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.

14 Wherefore, my dearly beloved, flee from idolatry.

365. Seek the profit of many so that they may be saved. (1 Co 10:31-33)
1 Cor 9:19-22

1 Co 10:31 Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.

32 Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the church of God:

33 Even as I please all men in all things, not seeking mine own profit, but the profit of many, that they may be saved.

1 Cor 9:19 For though I be free from all men, yet have I made myself servant unto all, that I might gain the more.

20 And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law;

21 To them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ,) that I might gain them that are without law.

22 To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all men, that I might by all means save some.

366. Reason of Communion in Commemoration of Christ: To proclaim the Lord's death till He comes (1 Co 11:23-26)
Mt 26:26-28

We celebrate the Lord's Supper to commemorate and proclaim that Jesus accomplished the work of Christ by dying on the cross.

1 Co 11:23 For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread:

24 And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me.

25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, this cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.

26 For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come.

Mt 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body.

27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it;

28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

368. The reality of love: God and Christ (1 Co 13:8-12)

1 Jn 4:8, 1Jn 4:10, 16-17, Jn 3:16, Jn 15:13, Eph 5:2, 1 Jn 3:16, Rom 5:8

God is love. And that love made His only begotten Son a propitiation for us. (1 Jn 4:8,10,16-17, Jn 3:16)

1 Jn 4:8 He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love.

10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

16 And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.

17 Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Christ is love. He gave His life to save us. (Jn 15:13, Eph 5:2, 1 Jn 3:16, Rom 5:8)

Jn 15:13 Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

Eph 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.

1 Jn 3:16 Hereby perceive we the love of God, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

God and Christ are the substance of love. On that day we will see God and Jesus. (1 Cor 13:8-12)

1 Cor 13:8 Charity never faileth: but whether there be prophecies, they shall fail; whether there be tongues, they shall cease; whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away.

9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.

10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.

11 When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.

12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known.

369. The gospel which Paul preached to us: Christ died for our sins and was buried and rose again the third day according to the Scriptures (1 Co 15:1-4)
Rom 1:4, Ps 22:15, Isa 53:5-12, Acts 3:14-15, 18, 1 Pt 1:10-11, Ps 16:9-10, Hos 6:2, Jona 1:17, Jona 2:10, Mt 12:39-40, Lk 24:25-27

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would die for our sins. (1 Pt 1:10-11, Isa 53:5-12, Jonah 1:17)

1 Pt 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Jonah 1:17 Now the Lord had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah. And Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would rise after His death. (Ps 16:9-10, Hos 6:2, Jonah 2:10, Mt 12:39-40)

Ps 16:9 Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope.

10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Hos 6:2 After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.

Jonah 2:10 And the Lord spake unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land.

Mt 12:39 But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas:

40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

According to the Old Testament prophecies of Christ's death and resurrection, Jesus died and rose again the third day. (1 Cor 15:1-4, Rom 1:4, Acts 3:14-15, Lk 24:25-27)

1 Cor 15:1 Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;

2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.

3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

Rom 1:4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

Acts 3:14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament.

370. Christ, who is the firstfruit of the resurrection (1 Co 15:20-23)
1 Pt 1:3, Jn 11:25, 1 Thess 4:16-17

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ will be resurrected after death. (Jn 11:25)

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

We who believe in Jesus as the Christ have the hope of resurrection. (1 Pt 1:3)

1 Pt 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

When Christ returns, we too will be resurrected. (1 Cor 15:20-23, 1 Thess 4:16-17)

1 Cor 15:20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.

22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

1 Thess 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

372. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men the most pitiable. (1 Co 15:19-20)
Rev 5:4, 2 Cor 1:8-9, 1 Cor 4:9

Paul has been ministering and living all his life for the resurrection in Christ. (1 Cor 15:19-20, 2 Cor 1:8-9, 1 Cor 4:9)

1 Cor 15:19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.
20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

2 Cor 1:8 For we would not, brethren, have you ignorant of our trouble which came to us in Asia, that we were pressed out of measure, above strength, insomuch that we despaired even of life:

9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead:

1 Cor 4:9 For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men.

John also looked to salvation in Christ and lived his life. So he wept a lot because he couldn't find anyone to open the book of life. (Rev 5:4)

Rev 5:4 And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon.

373. And as we have borne the image of the man of dust, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly Man. (1 Co 15:45-49)

Jn 5:24, Jn 6:57-58, Phil 3:20-21, Col 3:4, 2 Cor 3:18, 1 Jn 3:2

Those who believe in Jesus as the Son of God and the Christ, whom God has sent, have eternal life. (Jn 5:24, Jn 6:57-58)

Jn 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

Jn 6:57 As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.

58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever.

When Christ comes again, we are transformed into the likeness of Christ's glorious body. (Phil 3:20-21, 1 Cor 15:45-49, Col 3:4, 2 Cor 3:18, 1 Jn 3:2)

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:

21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

1 Cor 15:45 And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam was made a quickening spirit.

46 Howbeit that was not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual.

47 The first man is of the earth, earthy; the second man is the Lord from heaven.

48 As is the earthy, such are they also that are earthy: and as is the heavenly, such are they also that are heavenly.

49 And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

2 Cor 3:18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

1 Jn 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

374. Everything will change at the last trumpet, so always be diligent in the work of the Lord.(1 Co 15:51-58)
Mt 24:31, 2 Cor 5:1-4, Isa 25:8, Rev 21:4

God will gather His elect at the last trumpet, and will change all things and annihilate death forever. We are victorious through Jesus Christ. (Mt 24:31, 1 Cor 15:51-57, Isa 25:8, Rev 21:4)

Mt 24:31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

1 Cor 15:51 Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed,
52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.

53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.

54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.

55 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?

56 The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law.

57 But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.

Rev 21:4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

Therefore, strive to spread the gospel. (1 Cor 15:58)

1 Cor 15:58 Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.

2 Corinthians

Bible

- 375. Christ's Remaining Suffering: The work of evangelism (2 Co 1:5-10)
- 376. We boast of you who truly believe in Jesus as Christ. (2 Co 1:14)
- 377. God's promises are fulfilled in Christ. (2 Co 1:20)
- 378. God gives the Holy Spirit to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (2 Co 1:21-22)
- 379. For until this day Moses's veil remains unlifted in the reading of the Old Testament (2 Co 3:12-18)
- 380. Christ, who is the image of God (2 Co 4:4)
- 381. God, who has shone in our hearts to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ (2 Co 4:6)
- 382. Christ, who is our treasure (2 Co 4:7)
- 383. For the life of Jesus to be manifested in our mortal flesh (2 Co 4:8-11)
- 384. But to live for Christ (2 Co 5:15)
- 386. Christ, who has reconciled us to God (2 Co 5:18-19)
- 388. God who made Christ be sin for saving us (2 Co 5:21)
- 389. Behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation. (2 Co 6:1-2)
- 390. Bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ (2 Co 10:4-5)
- 391. We are jealous to betroth you to one husband, Christ. (2 Co 11:2)
- 392. Satan, who prevents us from coming to Christ (2 Co 11:3)
- 393. Another Jesus whom Paul has not preached (2 Co 11:4)
- 394. Paul's labor for the Gospel (2 Co 11:23-28)
- 395. I do not seek yours, but you. (2 Co 12:14-15)

375. Christ's Remaining Suffering: The work of evangelism (2 Co 1:5-10)
2 Cor 4:10-11, Phil 3:10, Col 1:24, 1 Pt 4:13, 1 Cor 4:9, 11-13

Paul suffered many hardships while preaching the gospel. He even suffered enough to die. But all those sufferings were Christ's remaining suffering. (2 Cor 1:5-10, 2 Cor 4:10-11, 1 Cor 4:9,11-13)

2 Cor 1:5 For as the sufferings of Christ abound in us, so our consolation also aboundeth by Christ.

6 And whether we be afflicted, it is for your consolation and salvation, which is effectual in the enduring of the same sufferings which we also suffer: or whether we be comforted, it is for your consolation and salvation.

7 And our hope of you is stedfast, knowing, that as ye are partakers of the sufferings, so shall ye be also of the consolation.

8 For we would not, brethren, have you ignorant of our trouble which came to us in Asia, that we were pressed out of measure, above strength, insomuch that we despaired even of life:

9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead:

10 Who delivered us from so great a death, and doth deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver us;

2 Cor 4:10 Always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body.

11 For we which live are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our mortal flesh.

1 Cor 4:9 For I think that God hath set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men.

11 Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no certain dwellingplace;

12 And labour, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it:

13 Being defamed, we intreat: we are made as the filth of the world, and are the offscouring of all things unto this day.

Paul rejoiced in the suffering he suffered while preaching the gospel and wanted to participate in it. (Phil 3:10, Col 1:24)

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

Col 1:24 Who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up that which is behind of the afflictions of Christ in my flesh for his body's sake, which is the church:

Rejoice to the extent that you partake of Christ's sufferings. (1 Pt 4:13)

1 Pt 4:13 But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.

376. We boast of you who truly believe in Jesus as Christ. (2 Co 1:14)
Phil 2:16, 1 Thess 2:19

Those to whom we have evangelized become our pride on the day of the Lord Jesus.

2 Co 1:14 As also ye have acknowledged us in part, that we are your rejoicing, even as ye also are our's in the day of the Lord Jesus.

Phil 2:16 Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.

1 Thess 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?

377. God's promises are fulfilled in Christ. (2 Co 1:19-20)
Rom 1:2, Gal 3:16, Rom 10:4, Rom 15:8-12

God made promises about His Son through the prophets in the Old Testament. (Rom 1:2)

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

It is Christ that God promised to Abraham and his descendants. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

The law given by God was also fulfilled in Christ. (Rom 10:4)

Rom 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

It was in Christ that God called both the Israelites and the Gentiles. (Rom 15:8-12)

Rom 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to thee among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.

10 And again he saith, Rejoice, ye Gentiles, with his people.

11 And again, Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud him, all ye people.

12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

All of God's promises have been fulfilled in Christ. So we glorify God through Christ. (2 Cor 1:19-20)

2 Cor 1:19 For the Son of God, Jesus Christ, who was preached among you by us, even by me and Silvanus and Timotheus, was not yea and nay, but in him was yea.

20 For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.

378. God gives the Holy Spirit to those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (2 Co 1:21-22)
Acts 5:30-32, Jn 14:16, Jn 15:26, Rom 8:15-16, Rom 5:5

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Jn 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

Rom 8:15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

Rom 5:5 And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.

379. For until this day Moses's veil remains unlifted in the reading of the Old Testament (2 Co 3:12-18)
Isa 6:10, Isa 29:10, Rom 11:7-8, 2 Cor 4:4, Rom 10:4, Gal 3:23-25, Lk 24:25-27, 44-45

The Old Testament prophesied that the people of Israel would become dull in their hearts and would not understand the word of God. (Isa 6:10, Isa 29:10)

Isa 6:10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

Isa 29:10 For the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered.

Moses wrote the Pentateuch to represent Christ. However, Jews are still looking for Moses when reading the Old Testament. (2 Cor 3:12-18, Rom 11:7-8)

2 Cor 3:12 Seeing then that we have such hope, we use great plainness of speech:

13 And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not stedfastly look to the end of that which is abolished:

14 But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same vail untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.

15 But even unto this day, when Moses is read, the vail is upon their heart.

16 Nevertheless when it shall turn to the Lord, the vail shall be taken away.

17 Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.

18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

Rom 11:7 What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.

8 (According as it is written, God hath given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;) unto this day.

The law written by Moses leads us to Christ. (Gal 3:23-25)

Gal 3:23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

25 But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster.

The whole Old Testament describes Christ, and that Christ is Jesus. (Lk 24:25-27, 44-45)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: 26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory? 27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

Satan deceives unbelievers into not realizing that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Cor 4:4)

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

380. Christ, who is the image of God (2 Co 4:4)

Phil 2:6, Col 1:15, Heb 1:3

Christ is the image of God. In other words, Christ is like God. That is, Christ is the only begotten Son of God.

2 Co 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Phil 2:6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

381. God, who has shone in our hearts to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ (2 Co 4:6)

Gen 1:3, Jn 1:4,9, Lk 1:78-79

God gave light at the creation of the heavens and the earth. (Gen 1:3)

Gen 1:3 And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.

God has given us Christ, who is the true light, so that we can know God. (2 Cor 4:6, Jn 1:4,9)

2 Cor 4:6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

Jn 1:4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men.

9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

The light of Christ has shone upon us in darkness and the shadow of death. (Lk 1:78-79)

Lk 1:78 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us,

79 To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.

382. Christ, who is our treasure (2 Co 4:7)
1 Pt 2:6, Mt 13:44-46

We have a treasure, Christ. All the great power of God is in Christ. (2 Cor 4:7, 1 Pt 2:6)

2 Cor 4:7 But we have this treasure in earthen vessels, that the excellency of the power may be of God, and not of us.

1 Pt 2:6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.

Christ is the treasure to be bought by selling all we have. (Mt 13:44-46)

Mt 13:44 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.

45 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls:

46 Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.

383. For the life of Jesus to be manifested in our mortal flesh (2 Co 4:8-11)
2 Cor 1:8-9, 2 Cor 7:5, Phil 3:10-11, Rom 8:17-18, 35-36, 2 Cor 4:16-18

Paul suffered enough to death while preaching the gospel. (2 Cor 1:8-9, 2 Cor 7:5)

2 Cor 1:8 For we would not, brethren, have you ignorant of our trouble which came to us in Asia, that we were pressed out of measure, above strength, insomuch that we despaired even of life:

9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead:

2 Cor 7:5 For, when we were come into Macedonia, our flesh had no rest, but we were troubled on every side; without were fightings, within were fears.

But Paul rejoiced to share in the sufferings of Christ. (Phil 3:10-11)

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

Even if we die for the gospel, we will be resurrected like Christ. (2 Cor 4:8-11)

2 Cor 4:8 We are troubled on every side, yet not distressed; we are perplexed, but not in despair;

9 Persecuted, but not forsaken; cast down, but not destroyed;

10 Always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body.

11 For we which live are always delivered unto death for Jesus' sake, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our mortal flesh.

Nothing can separate us from the love of Christ. (Rom 8:35-36)

Rom 8:35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.

The present sufferings for the sake of the gospel cannot be compared with the glory we will receive in the future. (2 Cor 4:16-18, Rom 8:17-18)

2 Cor 4:16 For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day.

17 For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory;

18 While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.

Rom 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

18 For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.

384. But to live for Christ (2 Co 5:15)
Gal 2:20, Rom 6:6, Col 3:1-3

God raised us up for Christ and for the preaching of the gospel.

2 Co 5:15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

Rom 6:6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

Col 3:1 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.

2 Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.

3 For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

386. Christ, who has reconciled us to God (2 Co 5:18-19)
Rom 5:10, Eph 2:14-18, Col 1:19-20, 1 Cor 1:17

By the death of Christ, we, who were enemies with God, were reconciled to God. (Rom 5:10, Eph 2:14-18, Col 1:19-20)

Rom 5:10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

Eph 2:14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

Col 1:19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;

20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

Also, God has given us the office of reconciliation and has entrusted us with the word of reconciliation. (2 Cor 5:18-19, 1 Cor 1:17)

2 Cor 5:18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

1 Cor 1:17 For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect.

388. God who made Christ be sin for saving us (2 Co 5:21)
Isa 53:5-6, 10-12, Mt 27:46, Gal 3:13

The Old Testament prophesied that God would bear our sins on Christ in order to save us. (Isa 53:5-6,10-12)

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

As prophesied about Christ in the Old Testament, Jesus took upon Himself our sins, was rejected by God, and died. (Mt 27:46, 2 Cor 5:21, Gal 3:13)

Mt 27:46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

2 Cor 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

389. Behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation. (2 Co 6:1-2)
Lk 4:16-19, Isa 61:1, Isa 52:7, Isa 55:6, Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7, Acts 5:42, 1 Thess 5:2-3

The Old Testament tells us that the time when Christ came to preach the gospel is the day of grace and salvation.
And the Old Testament tells us to listen to the voice of Christ. (Isa 61:1, Isa 52:7-10, Isa 55:6, Heb 3:7-8, Heb 4:7)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

8 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing: for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

9 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem: for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

10 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Isa 55:6 Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near:

Heb 3:7 Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, To day if ye will hear his voice,
8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:

Heb 4:7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.

Christ has come and preached the gospel of Christ. Now we are preaching the gospel of Christ, that Jesus is the Christ. (Lk 4:16-19, Acts 5:42)

Lk 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ must be heard now, the time of grace and salvation. You never know when the Lord will come again. (2 Co 6:1-2, 1 Thess 5:2-3)

2 Co 6:1 We then, as workers together with him, beseech you also that ye receive not the grace of God in vain.
2 (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)

1 Thess 5:2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.

3 For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.

390. Bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ (2 Co 10:4-5)
1 Cor 1:19, Isa 29:14, 1 Cor 3:19, Job 5:13, Isa 2:11-12

The Old Testament prophesied that God would destroy all wisdom and understanding. (1 Cor 1:19, Isa 29:14, 1 Cor 3:19, Job 5:13)

1 Cor 1:19 For it is written, I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent.

Isa 29:14 Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

1 Cor 3:19 For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. For it is written, He taketh the wise in their own craftiness.

Job 5:13 He taketh the wise in their own craftiness: and the counsel of the froward is carried headlong.

The Old Testament prophesied that in the day of the Lord the high would be humbled, the proud would yield, and the Lord alone would be exalted. (Isa 2:11-12)

Isa 2:11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

12 For the day of the Lord of hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and lofty, and upon every one that is lifted up; and he shall be brought low:

Submit to Christ all that opposes the knowledge of God. (2 Cor 10:4-5)

2 Cor 10:4 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;)

5 Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;

391. We are jealous to betroth you to one husband, Christ. (2 Co 11:2)
Hos 2:19-20, Eph 5:31-32, Rev 19:7

The Old Testament prophesied that God would marry us. (Hos 2:19-20)

Hos 2:19 And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.
20 I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord.

The church is the bride of Christ. (Eph 5:31-32)

Eph 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.
32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

We will participate in the wedding supper of the Lamb as the bride of Christ on the day of Christ. (2 Cor 11:2, Rev 19:7)

2 Cor 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

392. Satan deceives us from turning to Christ(2 Co 11:3)
Gen 3:1-6, Jn 8:44, Rev 12:9

Satan deceived Eve into disobeying God's Word. (Gen 3:1-6)

Gen 3:1 Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?

2 And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:

3 But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.

4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:

5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

Even now, Satan is deceiving us so that we cannot turn to Christ. (2 Cor 11:3, Jn 8:44, Rev 12:9)

2 Cor 11:3 But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

Jn 8:44 Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

Rev 12:9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

393. Another Jesus whom Paul has not preached (2 Co 11:4)
Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5, Gal 1:6-9

The gospel Paul preached is that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament is Jesus. (Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5)

Acts 9:22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

However, there was a gospel that preached differently about Jesus. The other gospels will be cursed. (2 Cor 11:4, Gal 1:6-9)

2 Cor 11:4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:
7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

394. Paul's labor for the Gospel (2 Co 11:23-28)

1 Cor 15:10, 2 Cor 6:3-5, Acts 16:22-23, Acts 21:31-32, Acts 14:5-7, Acts 9:23-23, Acts 13: 50, Acts 14:19-22, 1 Cor 4:11-13, 2 Cor 11:32-33, Phil 4:12-13

Paul labored more for the gospel than all the apostles. (1 Cor 15:10)

1 Cor 15:10 But by the grace of God I am what I am: and his grace which was bestowed upon me was not in vain; but I laboured more abundantly than they all: yet not I, but the grace of God which was with me.

Paul suffered a lot while preaching the gospel. (2 Cor 6:3-5, Acts 16:22-23, Acts 21:31-32, Acts 14:5-7, Acts 9:23-23, Acts 13: 50, Acts 14:19-22, 1 Cor 4:11-13, 2 Cor 11:32-33, Phil 4:12-13)

2 Cor 6:3 Giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed:

4 But in all things approving ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses,

5 In stripes, in imprisonments, in tumults, in labours, in watchings, in fastings;

Acts 16:22 And the multitude rose up together against them: and the magistrates rent off their clothes, and commanded to beat them.

23 And when they had laid many stripes upon them, they cast them into prison, charging the jailor to keep them safely:

Acts 21:31 And as they went about to kill him, tidings came unto the chief captain of the band, that all Jerusalem was in an uproar.

32 Who immediately took soldiers and centurions, and ran down unto them: and when they saw the chief captain and the soldiers, they left beating of Paul.

Acts 14:5 And when there was an assault made both of the Gentiles, and also of the Jews with their rulers, to use them despitefully, and to stone them,

6 They were ware of it, and fled unto Lystra and Derbe, cities of Lycaonia, and unto the region that lieth round about:

7 And there they preached the gospel.

Acts 9:23 And after that many days were fulfilled, the Jews took counsel to kill him:

Acts 13: 50 But the Jews stirred up the devout and honourable women, and the chief men of the city, and raised persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and expelled them out of their coasts.

Acts 14:19 And there came thither certain Jews from Antioch and Iconium, who persuaded the people, and having stoned Paul, drew him out of the city, supposing he had been dead.

20 Howbeit, as the disciples stood round about him, he rose up, and came into the city: and the next day he departed with Barnabas to Derbe.

21 And when they had preached the gospel to that city, and had taught many, they returned again to Lystra, and to Iconium, and Antioch,

22 Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.

1 Cor 4:11 Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no certain dwellingplace;

12 And labour, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it:

13 Being defamed, we intreat: we are made as the filth of the world, and are the offscouring of all things unto this day.

2 Cor 11:32 In Damascus the governor under Aretas the king kept the city of the damascenes with a garrison, desirous to apprehend me:

33 And through a window in a basket was I let down by the wall, and escaped his hands.

Phil 4:12 I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need.

13 I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.

395. I do not seek yours, but you. (2 Co 12:14-15)
Acts 20:33-34, Gal 4:19, 1 Thess 2:19, Phil 4:1

Paul earned the money he needed to preach the gospel. He did not burden the saints with finances. (Act 20:33-35)

Act 20:33 I have coveted no man's silver, or gold, or apparel.

34 Yea, ye yourselves know, that these hands have ministered unto my necessities, and to them that were with me.

35 I have shewed you all things, how that so labouring ye ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.

Because what Paul wanted was not wealth, but that the souls of the saints would grow in Christ. (2 Cor 12:14-15, Gal 4:19, Phil 4:1, 1 Thess 2:19)

2 Cor 12:14 Behold, the third time I am ready to come to you; and I will not be burdensome to you: for I seek not yours but you: for the children ought not to lay up for the parents, but the parents for the children.

15 And I will very gladly spend and be spent for you; though the more abundantly I love you, the less I be loved.

Gal 4:19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you,

Phil 4:1 Therefore, my brethren dearly beloved and longed for, my joy and crown, so stand fast in the Lord, my dearly beloved.

1 Thess 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?

Galatians

Bible

396. Christ, who gave Himself for our sins, that He might deliver us from this present evil age according to the will of our God and Father (Gal 1:4)
397. One who preaches any other gospel to you than what we have preached to you, let him be accursed. (Gal 1:6-9)
398. Do I seek to please men or God? (Gal 1:10)
399. The gospel which Paul preached among the Gentiles (Gal 2:2)
400. A man is justified by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:16)
401. For I through the law died to the law that I might live to God. (Gal 2:19)
403. Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? (Gal 3:2-9)
404. Christ, God's promise to Abraham (Gal 3:16-17)
405. The law, which was four hundred and thirty years later, cannot annul the covenant that was confirmed before by God in Christ (Gal 3:16-17)
406. You are all one in Christ Jesus. (Gal 3:28)
407. The reason God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law (Gal 4:4-5)
408. God became our father by the Spirit of Christ. (Gal 4:6-7)
409. I labor in birth again until Christ is formed in you (Gal 4:19)
410. We are not children of the law but children of promise. (Gal 4:21-31)
411. You who attempt to be justified by law; you have fallen from the grace of Christ. (Gal 5:4)
412. Walk in the Spirit (Gal 5:16)
413. I should boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ. (Gal 5:16)
414. From now on let no one trouble me, for I bear in my body the marks of the Lord Jesus. (Gal 6:17)

396. Christ, who gave Himself for our sins, that He might deliver us from this present evil age according to the will of our God and Father (Gal 1:4)

Jn 3:16, Mt 20:28, 1 Tim 2:5-6, Heb 10:9-10

Gal 1:4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father:

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Mt 20:28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

Heb 10:9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

397. One who preaches any other gospel to you than what we have preached to you, let him be accursed. (Gal 1:6-9)
Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5, 2 Cor 11:4, Gal 5:6-12, 1 Cor 16:22

The gospel Paul preached is that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament is Jesus. (Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:5)

Acts 9:22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

However, the saints could not distinguish the true gospel from other gospels. (2 Cor 11:4, Gal 5:6-9)

2 Cor 11:4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.

Gal 5:6 For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; but faith which worketh by love.

7 Ye did run well; who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?

8 This persuasion cometh not of him that calleth you.

9 A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump.

Cursed is he who preaches another gospel. (Gal 1:6-9, Gal 5:10-12)

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:

7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

Gal 5:10 I have confidence in you through the Lord, that ye will be none otherwise minded: but he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be.

11 And I, brethren, if I yet preach circumcision, why do I yet suffer persecution? then is the offence of the cross ceased.

12 I would they were even cut off which trouble you.

Cursed also be he who does not love Christ. (1 Cor 16:22)

1 Cor 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

398. Do I seek to please men or God? (Gal 1:10)

1 Thess 2:4, Gal 6:12-14, Jn 5:44

We must preach the true gospel that Jesus is the Christ. We must not preach gospels to please people. (Gal 1:10, 1 Thess 2:4)

Gal 1:10 For do I now persuade men, or God? or do I seek to please men? for if I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ.

1 Thess 2:4 But as we were allowed of God to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but God, which trieth our hearts.

If we seek the glory of man, we cannot believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 5:44)

Jn 5:44 How can ye believe, which receive honour one of another, and seek not the honour that cometh from God only?

399. The gospel which Paul preached among the Gentiles (Gal 2:2)
Acts 13:44-49

Paul told the Jews and Gentiles gathered in the city that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. Most Jews refuted Paul. But the Gentiles understood, and many Gentiles believed in Jesus as the Christ.

Gal 2:2 And I went up by revelation, and communicated unto them that gospel which I preach among the Gentiles, but privately to them which were of reputation, lest by any means I should run, or had run, in vain.

Acts 13:44 And the next sabbath day came almost the whole city together to hear the word of God.

45 But when the Jews saw the multitudes, they were filled with envy, and spake against those things which were spoken by Paul, contradicting and blaspheming.

46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

49 And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.

400. A man is justified by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:16)
1 Jn 5:1, Rom 1:17, Hab 2:4, Gal 3:2, Acts 5:32, Rom 3:23-26, 28,
Rom 4:5, Rom 5:1, Eph 2:8, Phil 3:9

The Old Testament prophesied that the righteous would live by faith. (Hab 2:4)

Hab 2:4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

Righteousness from God can be obtained through faith in Jesus Christ, from beginning to end. (Rom 1:17, 1 Jn 5:1, Rom 3:23-26,28, Rom 4:5, Phil 3:9)

Rom 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Rom 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;

24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

28 Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law.

Rom 4:5 But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.

Phil 3:9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

By the grace of God, we have come to believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Eph 2:8)

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Receiving the Holy Spirit is not by works of the law, but through faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 3:2, Acts 5:30-32)

Gal 3:2 This only would I learn of you, Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

401. Now we do not live to keep the law, but we live by faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:19-20)
Rom 8:1-2, Rom 6:14, Rom 6:4,6-7, 14, Rom 8:3-4, 10, Rom 14:7-9, 2 Cor 5:15

We are set free from the law of sin by the Holy Spirit in Jesus Christ. Now we do not follow the law, but follow the Spirit to fulfill the law. (Rom 8:1-4)

Now we do not live to keep the law, but we live by faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:19-20, Rom 6:4,6-7,14, Rom 7:4)

Gal 2:19 For I through the law am dead to the law, that I might live unto God.

20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

7 For he that is dead is freed from sin.

14 For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.

Rom 7:4 Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God.

We live for Christ. (Rom 14:7-9, 2 Cor 5:15)

Rom 14:7 For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself.

8 For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.

9 For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living.

2 Cor 5:15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

403. Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? (Gal 3:2-9)
Gal 3:14, Acts 5:30-32, Acts 11:17, Gal 2:16, Eph 1:13

We have received the Holy Spirit by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Gal 3:2-5,14, Acts 5:30-32, Acts 11:16-17, Eph 1:13)

Gal 3:2 This only would I learn of you, Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?
3 Are ye so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are ye now made perfect by the flesh?
4 Have ye suffered so many things in vain? if it be yet in vain.
5 He therefore that ministereth to you the Spirit, and worketh miracles among you, doeth he it by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?
14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.
31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.
32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Acts 11:16 Then remembered I the word of the Lord, how that he said, John indeed baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost.
17 Forasmuch then as God gave them the like gift as he did unto us, who believed on the Lord Jesus Christ; what was I, that I could withstand God?

Eph 1:13 In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

A person is justified only by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (Gal 2:16)

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ receive the blessing of Abraham. (Gal 3:6-9)

Gal 3:6 Even as Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness.
7 Know ye therefore that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham.
8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, saying, In thee shall all nations be blessed.
9 So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham.

404. Christ, God's promise to Abraham (Gal 3:16)
Gen 22:18, Gen 26:4, Mt 1:1,16

In the Old Testament, God promised Abraham that all nations would be blessed through Abraham's seed. (Gen 22:18, Gen 26:4)

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Gen 26:4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed;

That seed is Christ. The Christ came to this earth. The Christ is Jesus. (Gal 3:16, Mt 1:1,16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

Mt 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.
16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

405. The law, which was four hundred and thirty years later, cannot annul the covenant that was confirmed before by God in Christ. (Gal 3:16-17)

Gal 3:18-26

God promised Abraham that He would send Christ. And 400 years later, God gave the law to the people of Israel. (Gal 3:16-18)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

17 And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.

18 For if the inheritance be of the law, it is no more of promise: but God gave it to Abraham by promise.

As the Israelites continued to sin, God gave them the law to make them aware of their sins. Ultimately, the law convinces us of our sins and leads us to Christ, who has solved our sins. (Gal 3:19-25)

Gal 3:19 Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.

20 Now a mediator is not a mediator of one, but God is one.

21 Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.

22 But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe.

23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

25 But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster.

406. You are all one in Christ Jesus. (Gal 3:28-29)

Jn 17:11, Rom 3:22, Rom 10:12, Col 3:10-11, 1 Cor 12:13

In Christ we are one even though we are different peoples. (Gal 3:28, Jn 17:11, 1 Cor 12:13)

Gal 3:28 There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for ye are all one in Christ Jesus.

Jn 17:11 And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to thee. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom thou hast given me, that they may be one, as we are.

1 Cor 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

If you believe in Jesus as the Christ, you will receive righteousness without discrimination from God. (Rom 3:22, Rom 10:12, Col 3:10-11)

Rom 3:22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

Rom 10:12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

Col 3:10 And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:
11 Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.

Also, in Christ, we are the descendants of Abraham and the sons of God who will receive the blessing of Abraham. (Gal 3:29)

Gal 3:29 And if ye be Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.

407. The reason God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law (Gal 4:4-5)

Ex 21:23-25, Phil 2:6-8, Gal 3:13, Rom 8:3, Gen 3:15, Mt 1:25, Jn 20:31, 1 Jn 5:1, Gal 3:26, Mt 20:28, 1 Jn 4:9-10

In the Old Testament, the same thing was required as a price for wrongdoing. (Ex 21:23-25)

Ex 21:23 And if any mischief follow, then thou shalt give life for life,

24 Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot,

25 Burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.

According to the prophecies of Christ in the Old Testament, Jesus was born as a man, descended from a woman.
(Gen 3:15, Mt 1:25)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Mt 1:25 And knew her not till she had brought forth her firstborn son: and he called his name Jesus.

Although Jesus is God, the reason Jesus came to this earth as a man was to become a ransom for man's sins. We must die for our sins. But Jesus, who came as a man, died in our place. (Rom 8:3, Gal 4:4-5, Phil 2:6-8, Gal 3:13, Mt 20:28, 1 Jn 4:9-10)

Rom 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,
5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

Phil 2:6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

7 But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men:

8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

Mt 20:28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

1 Jn 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Now, if we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we are saved and become sons of God. (1 Jn 5:1, Jn 20:31, Gal 3:26)

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

Gal 3:26 For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

408. God has sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying out, "Abba, Father!" (Gal 4:6-7)
1 Jn 5:1, Jn 1:12, Rom 8:15-16

Believing that Jesus is the Christ, the Holy Spirit has come into our hearts. So we call God our Father. We also receive an inheritance from God.

Gal 4:6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.
7 Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Rom 8:15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

409. I labor in birth again until Christ is formed in you (Gal 4:19)
Jn 6:39, 2 Cor 11:2, 2 Pt 3:18, Col 1:28, Rom 8:29, Mt 28:18-20

Paul labored in birth again until Christ is formed in us. (Gal 4:19)

Gal 4:19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you,

We must grow in the knowledge of Christ. (2 Pt 3:18, Col 1:28)

2 Pt 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

Col 1:28 Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus:

The true image of Christ is Jesus, the only begotten Son. Jesus did not miss any of those whom God had entrusted to him. To be conformed to the image of the Son means that we too, as sons of God, seek those whom God has entrusted to us. Jesus also commands us to seek out those whom God has entrusted to us. (Rom 8:29, Jn 6:39, Mt 28:18-20)

Rom 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

410. We are not children of the law but children of promise. (Gal 4:21-31)
Rom 9:7-8, Gal 3:23-25, 29

The children of the law are not the children of Abraham, but the children of the promise are the children of Abraham. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are the children of the promise and will be the heirs of Abraham. (Gal 4:21-31, Rom 9:7-8, Gal 3:29)

Gal 4:21 Tell me, you who desire to be under the law, do you not hear the law? 22 For it is written that Abraham had two sons: the one by a bondwoman, the other by a freewoman. 23 But he who was of the bondwoman was born according to the flesh, and he of the freewoman through promise, 24 which things are symbolic. For these are [a]the two covenants: the one from Mount Sinai which gives birth to bondage, which is Hagar— 25 for this Hagar is Mount Sinai in Arabia, and corresponds to Jerusalem which now is, and is in bondage with her children— 26 but the Jerusalem above is free, which is the mother of us all. 27 For it is written:

“Rejoice, O barren,
You who do not bear!
Break forth and shout,
You who are not in labor!
For the desolate has many more children
Than she who has a husband.”

28 Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are children of promise. 29 But, as he who was born according to the flesh then persecuted him who was born according to the Spirit, even so it is now. 30 Nevertheless what does the Scripture say? “Cast out the bondwoman and her son, for the son of the bondwoman shall not be heir with the son of the freewoman.” 31 So then, brethren, we are not children of the bondwoman but of the free.

Rom 9:7 nor are they all children because they are the seed of Abraham; but, “In Isaac your seed shall be called.” 8 That is, those who are the children of the flesh, these are not the children of God; but the children of the promise are counted as the seed.

Gal 3:29 And if you are Christ’s, then you are Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.

The law is the tutor that leads us to Christ. Christ has come to us, and we are no longer under the law. (Gal 3:23-25)

Gal 3:23 But before faith came, we were kept under guard by the law, [a]kept for the faith which would afterward be revealed. 24 Therefore the law was our [b]tutor to bring us to Christ, that we might be justified by faith. 25 But after faith has come, we are no longer under a tutor.

411. You who attempt to be justified by law; you have fallen from the grace of Christ. (Gal 5:4)
Rom 3:20, Rom 9:31-32, Rom 10:3-4, Gal 2:21

No one can be justified by works of the law. (Rom 3:20)

Rom 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

Israel, who obeyed the law, did not come to the law, but stumbled upon a stone to be struck. (Rom 9:31-32)

Rom 9:31 But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness.
32 Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;

After all, they did not obey the righteousness of God. The righteousness of God is to believe in Jesus as the Christ. With this God has fulfilled the law for us. (Rom 10:3-4)

Rom 10:3 For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.

4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

If men seek to be justified by their works, Christ died in vain. (Gal 5:4, Gal 2:21)

Gal 5:4 Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.

Gal 2:21 I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.

412. Walk in the Spirit (Gal 5:16)

Gal 5:22-23, 25, Acts 1:8, Jn 14:26, Jn 16:13-14

Walk in the Spirit. Then you will bear the fruit of the Spirit. (Gal 5:16, Gal 5:22-25)

Gal 5:16 This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh.

Gal 5:22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,

23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

24 And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.

25 If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.

Also, the Holy Spirit will make us deeply aware that Jesus is the Christ, and will allow us to tell the world that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 14:26, Jn 16:13-14, Acts 1:8)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

14 He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

413. I should boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ. (Gal 6:14)
Gal 5:24, 1 Cor 1:18, Phil 3:3, 1 Jn 2:15-17, Gal 2:20, Col 2:20

We have nothing to boast about except the cross of Jesus. So our worldly lusts must be crucified. (Gal 6:14, Phil 3:3)

Gal 6:14 But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

Phil 3:3 For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.

The cross of Christ is the power of God. (1 Cor 1:18)

1 Cor 1:18 For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

The lusts of the world are not of God, they pass away. But there are those who do the will of God forever. (1 Jn 2:15-17)

1 Jn 2:15 Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him.

16 For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.

17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.

We died on the cross with Christ. Now Christ lives in us, and we live for Christ. (Gal 2:20, Col 2:20)

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

Col 2:20 Wherefore if ye be dead with Christ from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are ye subject to ordinances,

414. From now on let no one trouble me, for I bear in my body the marks of the Lord Jesus. (Gal 6:17)
2 Cor 4:10, Phil 3:10-14

Paul suffered because the saints were deceived by a gospel other than the gospel of Christ. Paul asks the saints not to torment him because he only wants to preach the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Gal 6:17)

Gal 6:17 From henceforth let no man trouble me: for I bear in my body the marks of the Lord Jesus.

Paul preached the gospel of Christ even through the sufferings of death and believed that he would be resurrected like Christ. (2 Cor 4:10, Phil 3:10-14)

2 Cor 4:10 Always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body.

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,

14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

Ephesians**Bible**

- 415. God has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ. (Eph 1:3)
- 416. God makes us sons of God through Christ (Eph 1:4-7)
- 417. The mystery of God's will, Christ (Eph 1:9)
- 418. One all things in Christ, both which are in heaven and which are on earth—in Him. (Eph 1:10)
- 419. We who first trusted in Christ should be to the praise of God's glory. (Eph 1:11-14)
- 420. After you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation; in whom also, having believed, you were sealed with the Holy Spirit of promise (Eph 1:13)
- 421. God may give to you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of Him (Eph 1:17-19)
- 422. God raised Christ from the dead. (Eph 1:20)
- 423. God put all things under Christ's feet (Eph 1:20-22)
- 424. Christ, who is head over all things to the church (Eph 1:22-23)
- 425. God, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (Eph 2:1-6)
- 426. We are His workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works, (Eph 2:10)
- 427. By grace you have been saved through faith (Eph 2:8-9)
- 428. Christ is our peace. (Eph 2:11-22)
- 429. The mystery of Christ that Paul understand (Eph 3:4-5)
- 430. I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ. (Eph 3:6-8)
- 432. We come unto God by faith in Christ. (Eph 3:12)
- 433. You should be rooted and grounded in love of Christ. (Eph 3:14-19)
- 434. We all come to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God. (Eph 4:13-15)
- 435. You put on the new man which was created according to God, in true righteousness and holiness.(Eph 4:20-24)
- 436. This is a great mystery, but I speak concerning Christ and the church. (Eph 5:28-33)
- 437. Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. (Eph 6:10-18)
- 438. I may open my mouth boldly to make known the mystery of the gospel. (Eph 6:19-20)

415. God has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ. (Eph 1:3)
James 1:17, 2 Pt 1:3, Eph 1:7-9

All blessings come from God. (James 1:17)

James 1:17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.

God gives us all spiritual blessings in Christ. (Eph 1:3, 1 Pt 1:2-3, Eph 1:7-9)

Eph 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:

1 Pt 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;
8 Wherein he hath abounded toward us in all wisdom and prudence;

9 Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself:

416. God makes us sons of God through Jesus Christ (Eph 1:4-7)

Jn 1:12, Jn 3:16, 1 Jn 5:1, Rom 3:24

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.

7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Rom 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

417. The Mystery of God's Plan of Our Salvation, Christ (Eph 1:9)
Rom 16:25-26, Col 1:26-27, Col 2:2, 1 Jn 1:1-2

The mystery that God prepared from before the foundation of the world to save us is Christ.

Eph 1:9 Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself:

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,
26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

418. One all things in Christ, both which are in heaven and which are on earthâ€”in Him. (Eph 1:10)
Col 3:11, 1 Cor 15:27, Phil 2:10-11

God has united all things in Christ. (Eph 1:10, Col 3:11)

Eph 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

Col 3:11 Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.

God made all things subject to Christ. Also, God has made every tongue confess that Jesus is the Christ, to the glory of God. (1 Cor 15:27, Phil 2:10-11)

1 Cor 15:27 For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him.

Phil 2:10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

419. God has chosen us from the beginning to believe in Jesus as the Christ and to be sealed by the Holy Spirit. (Eph 1:11-14)

Isa 46:10, 2 Thess 2:13-14, 1 Pt 2:9, 2 Tim 1:9

God foretells what He will accomplish. (Isa 46:10)

Isa 46:10 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

God has chosen us from the beginning to believe in Jesus as the Christ and to be sealed by the Holy Spirit. (Eph 1:11-13, 2 Thess 2:13-14, 2 Tim 1:9)

Eph 1:11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will:

12 That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ.

13 In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

2 Thes 2:13 But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth:

14 Whereunto he called you by our gospel, to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ.

2 Tim 1:9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,

We are sealed with the Holy Spirit to praise God and to preach the gospel of Christ. (Eph 1:14, 1 Pt 2:9)

Eph 1:14 Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.

1 Pt 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

420. When we heard the gospel that Jesus was the Christ, we believed and received the seal of the Holy Spirit. (Eph 1:13)

Ezk 36:27, Acts 5:30-32, 2 Cor 1:21-22

It was prophesied in the Old Testament that God would give us the Holy Spirit to keep God's law. (Ezk 36:27)

Ezk 36:27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.

When we hear that Jesus is the Christ and believe in Him as the Christ, the Holy Spirit comes upon us. (Acts 5:30-32, Eph 1:13, 2 Cor 1:20-22)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

Eph 1:13 In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

2 Cor 1:20 For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.

21 Now he which stablisheth us with you in Christ, and hath anointed us, is God;

22 Who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.

421. God may give to you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of Him (Eph 1:17-19)
Jn 6:28-29, Jn 14:6, Jn 6: 39-40, Col 1:9

It is God's work to believe that Christ, the one sent by God, is Jesus. Also, when we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we can come to know God. (Eph 1:17, Jn 6:28-29, Jn 14:6)

Eph 1:17 That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him:

Jn 6:28 Then said they unto him, What shall we do, that we might work the works of God?

29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Also, the reason God has called us is to save those whom God has entrusted to us. (Eph 1:18, Jn 6:39-40, Col 1:9)

Eph 1:18 The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Col 1:9 For this cause we also, since the day we heard it, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that ye might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding;

422. God confirmed that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament by raising Jesus from the dead. (Eph 1:20)

Acts 2:23-36, 2 Cor 13:4, Rom 4:24

Eph 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

Acts 2:23 Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:

24 Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it.

25 For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved:

26 Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope:

27 Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

28 Thou hast made known to me the ways of life; thou shalt make me full of joy with thy countenance.

29 Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day.

30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;

31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.

32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.

34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand,

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Rom 4:24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

We who believe in Jesus as the Christ will also be resurrected. (2 Cor 13:4)

2 Cor 13:4 For though he was crucified through weakness, yet he liveth by the power of God. For we also are weak in him, but we shall live with him by the power of God toward you.

423. God put all things under Christ's feet (Eph 1:21-22)

Isa 9:6-7, Lk 1:31-33, Phil 2:9-10, Ps 8:6, Mt 28:18, 1 Cor 15:27-28

God promised to send Christ to rule the earth. (Isa 9:6-7, Ps 8:6)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

Ps 8:6 Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet:

That Christ is Jesus. (Lk 1:31-33)

Lk 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

God made all things kneel before Jesus, the Christ. (Phil 2:9-10, Mt 28:18, 1 Cor 15:27-28)

Phil 2:9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

1 Cor 15:27 For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him.

28 And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.

424. Christ, head of the church, supreme in all things (Eph 1:22-23)
Eph 4:12, 15-16, Rom 12:5, Col 1:18, Col 2:19

Christ is the head of the church. As the church, we must follow Christ and grow through Christ.

Eph 1:22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,
23 Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.

Eph 4:12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:
15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ:
16 From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

Rom 12:5 So we, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another.

Col 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.

Col 2:19 And not holding the Head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increaseth with the increase of God.

425. God, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (Eph 2:1-6)
Col 2:13, Rom 6:4-5

Eph 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;
2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:
3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.
4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,
5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)
6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.
5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

426. God has made us alive, that Christ, the saving grace of God, might be revealed to generations.(Eph 2:7)
Acts 1:8, Mt 28:19-20, Mk 16:15

Eph 2:7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Mt 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

427. By grace you have been saved through faith (Eph 2:8-9)
2 Tim 1:9, Rom 4:16, Jn 1:12-13, 1 Jn 5:1, Rom 3:24, Gal 2:16

We are saved by the grace of God by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Eph 2:8-9, Jn 1:12-13, Rom 3:24)

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:
9 Not of works, lest any man should boast.

Jn 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

13 Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

Rom 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

This salvation was prepared by God from eternity. (2 Tim 1:9)

2 Tim 1:9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,

If you are saved by the law, it is not grace. To become the grace of God, we are saved through faith in Christ. (Rom 4:16, Gal 2:16)

Rom 4:16 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

428. Christ is our peace. (Eph 2:11-18)
Col 1:20-22, 1 Cor 12:13

Christ abrogated the law, making peace between Jews and Gentiles. Christ also made them peace with God. (Eph 2:11-18)

Eph 2:11 Wherefore remember, that ye being in time past Gentiles in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands;

12 That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world:

13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.

14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;

16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

17 And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh.

18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

Christ has made all things and us at peace with God. (Col 1:20-22)

Col 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled

22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unproveable in his sight:

Christ has made us one body through the Holy Spirit. (1 Cor 12:13)

1 Cor 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

429. The mystery of Christ that Paul understand (Eph 3:4-5)
Col 1:26-27, Col 2:2, 1 Cor 2:7-10, 1 Jn 1:1-2

What Paul wrote earlier is that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament is Jesus. The apostles and prophets of the early church were able to understand this mystery through the Holy Spirit. (Eph 3:3-5, 1 Cor 2:7-10)

Eph 3:3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words,
4 Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)
5 Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit;

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:
8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.
9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.
10 But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

The mystery that Jesus is the Christ, long hidden, is now revealed to the saints. (Col 1:26-27, 1 Jn 1:1-2)

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:
27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;
2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

We must understand the mystery of Christ throughout the Bible. (Col 2:2)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

430. God has given us grace to spread the riches of Christ to the Gentiles. (Eph 3:6-8)
Gal 3:28-29, Rom 15:16, Rom 1:5, Rom 15:18, Col 1:27

God gave Paul the grace to evangelize the Gentiles. (Rom 1:5, Rom 15:16,18)

Rom 1:5 By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name:

Rom 15:16 That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.

18 For I will not dare to speak of any of those things which Christ hath not wrought by me, to make the Gentiles obedient, by word and deed,

God has given us grace so that we may share the riches of Christ with the Gentiles. (Eph 3:6-8, Col 1:27)

Eph 3:6 That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:

7 Whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working of his power.

8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

The Gentiles also receive the blessings of Abraham's descendants in Christ. (Gal 3:28-29)

Gal 3:28 There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for ye are all one in Christ Jesus.

29 And if ye be Christ's, then are ye Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise.

432. We come boldly to God by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Eph 3:12)
Jn 14:6, Heb 4:14-16, Heb 10:19-20

Jesus is the way to meet God. Jesus accomplished the work of Christ on the cross so that we can come boldly to God.

Eph 3:12 In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.

16 Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,

20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

433. Realize the riches of Christ's love. (Eph 3:14-19)
Jn 17:3, Eph 3:3-5, Eph 1:9, 17-18, Eph 4:13

The Old Testament describes the riches of Christ's love. Nor do we know how wide, long, high, and deep its abundance is. We need to realize more and more the riches of Christ's love. (Eph 3:14-19)

Eph 3:14 For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ,
15 Of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named,
16 That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man;
17 That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love,
18 May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height;
19 And to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God.

In Christ are hidden all the secrets of God. (Eph 3:3-5, Eph 1:17-19)

Eph 3:3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words,
4 Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)
5 Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit;

Eph 1:17 That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him:
18 The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,
19 And what is the exceeding greatness of his power to us-ward who believe, according to the working of his mighty power,

By knowing Christ, we must grow to the stature of Christ. (Eph 4:13)

Eph 4:13 Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:

434. The more you know Christ, the more you may grow in Him. (Eph 4:13-15)
Phil 3:8, Col 2:2, Col 1:28

The knowledge of Christ is the noblest in the world. (Phil 3:8)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

Christ is the mystery of God. (Col 2:2)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

More come to know Christ and grow in Him. (Eph 4:13-15, Col 1:28)

Eph 4:13 Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:

14 That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive;

15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ:

Col 1:28 Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus:

435. You put on the new man which was created according to God, in true righteousness and holiness. (Eph 4:20-24)
2 Cor 5:17, Col 3:10, Rom 12:2, Rom 6:4,6, Rom 7:6, 2 Pt 1:4, Rom 13:14, Eph 2:10

We are new people in Christ. (2 Cor 5:17)

2 Cor 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

God has resurrected us with Christ to give us new life. (Rom 6:4,6, 2 Pt 1:4, Eph 2:10)

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

2 Pt 1:4 Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.

Eph 2:10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

Therefore put on the new man in righteousness and holiness of truth. (Rom 7:6, Eph 4:20-24, Col 3:10, Rom 12:2, Rom 13:14)

Rom 7:6 But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.

Eph 4:20 But ye have not so learned Christ;

21 If so be that ye have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus:

22 That ye put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts;

23 And be renewed in the spirit of your mind;

24 And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.

Col 3:10 And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:

Rom 12:2 And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

Rom 13:14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

436. This is a great mystery, but I speak concerning Christ and the church. (Eph 5:28-33)
Rev 19:7, 2 Cor 11:2

God has made us marry so that we can understand Christ, our bridegroom. So are the others. (Eph 5:28-33, 2 Cor 11:2)

Eph 5:28 So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself.

29 For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church:

30 For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones.

31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

33 Nevertheless let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself; and the wife see that she reverence her husband.

2 Cor 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

On the day of Christ we will meet Christ our Bridegroom. (Rev 19:7)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

437. Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. (Eph 6:10-18)
2 Cor 10:4, Isa 59:17, 1 Thess 5:8, Isa 52:7, 1 Jn 5:4, 1 Thess 5:17, Col 4:2

Eph 6:10 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might.

11 Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

12 For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

13 Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.

14 Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness;

15 And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace;

16 Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.

17 And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:

18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

2 Cor 10:4 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;)

Isa 59:17 For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and an helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloak.

1 Thess 5:8 But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

1 Jn 5:4 For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.

1 Thess 5:17 Pray without ceasing.

Col 4:2 Continue in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving;

438. I may open my mouth boldly to make known the mystery of the gospel. (Eph 6:19-20)
Acts 4:29, Col 4:3,

We should pray that we will be able to boldly say that Jesus is the Christ in all circumstances.

Eph 6:19 And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel,

20 For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

Acts 4:29 And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak thy word,

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

Philippians

Bible

439. God who will complete our salvation until the day of Jesus Christ (Phil 1:6)
440. I pray for you. (Phil 1:9-11)
441. Only that in every way, whether in pretense or in truth, Christ is preached; and in this I rejoice, yes, and will rejoice. (Phil 1:12-18)
442. Now Christ will be magnified in my body, whether by life or by death. (Phil 1:20-21)
444. Christ, who is in the form of God (Phil 2:5-6)
446. Every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. (Phil 2:9-11)
447. I may rejoice in the day of Christ. (Phil 2:13-17)
448. We are the circumcision, who worship God in the Spirit, rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh (Phil 3:3)
449. I count all things loss for the excellence of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord. (Phil 3:7-14)
450. For our citizenship is in heaven, from which we also eagerly wait for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, (Phil 3:20-21)
451. Be anxious for nothing, but in everything by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your requests be made known to God; (Phil 4:6-7)
452. I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me. (Phil 4:11-13)

439. God who will complete our salvation until the day of Jesus Christ (Phil 1:6)
Jn 6:40,44, Rom 8:38-39, Heb 7:25, 1 Cor 1:8

God keeps and saves us in Christ until the day of Christ. (Phil 1:6, Jn 6:40, Rom 8:38-39)

Phil 1:6 Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Rom 8:38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,
39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

Christ also keeps us and saves us until the day of Christ. (Heb 7:25, 1 Cor 1:8)

Heb 7:25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

1 Cor 1:8 Who shall also confirm you unto the end, that ye may be blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.

440. I pray for you. (Phil 1:9-11)
Col 1:9-12, 2 Pt 3:18, Jn 6:29, Jn 5:39, Lk 10:41-42, Gal 5:22-23

Paul prayed for the saints like this:

Paul prayed that the saints would grow in knowing God's will and knowing God. (Col 1:9-10, Phil 1:9-10)

Col 1:9 For this cause we also, since the day we heard it, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that ye might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding;
10 That ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God;

Phil 1:9 And this I pray, that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and in all judgment;
10 That ye may approve things that are excellent; that ye may be sincere and without offence till the day of Christ.

The will of God is to believe that the Christ is Jesus, whom God has sent, and to save all those whom God has entrusted to us. (Jn 6:29,39-40)

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.
39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.
40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.
2 Pt 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

Paul prayed that the saints would be full of the fruit of righteousness and glorify God. (Phil 1:11, Gal 5:22-23)

Phil 1:11 Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.

Gal 5:22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,
23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

441. Only that in every way, whether in pretense or in truth, Christ is preached; and in this I rejoice, yes, and will rejoice. (Phil 1:12-18)

Although Paul was imprisoned, he was able to preach the gospel to those who visited him. Some saints preached the gospel more boldly because of Paul's imprisonment. The Jewish Christians who were jealous of Paul also preached the gospel competitively. Paul rejoiced because the gospel was being preached in one way or another.

Phil 1:12 But I would ye should understand, brethren, that the things which happened unto me have fallen out rather unto the furtherance of the gospel;

13 So that my bonds in Christ are manifest in all the palace, and in all other places;

14 And many of the brethren in the Lord, waxing confident by my bonds, are much more bold to speak the word without fear.

15 Some indeed preach Christ even of envy and strife; and some also of good will:

16 The one preach Christ of contention, not sincerely, supposing to add affliction to my bonds:

17 But the other of love, knowing that I am set for the defence of the gospel.

18 What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached; and I therein do rejoice, yea, and will rejoice.

442. Now Christ will be magnified in my body, whether by life or by death. (Phil 1:20-21)
Rom 14:8, 1 Cor 10:31, Eph 6:19-20, Acts 21:13, Col 1:24

Paul, who was in prison, wanted to preach the gospel, regardless of whether the outcome of his trial was release or death. (Phil 1:20-21, Eph 6:19-20)

Phil 1:20 According to my earnest expectation and my hope, that in nothing I shall be ashamed, but that with all boldness, as always, so now also Christ shall be magnified in my body, whether it be by life, or by death.
21 For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain.

Eph 6:19 And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel,
20 For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

Paul suffered many hardships while preaching the gospel and passed many obstacles to death. Paul was ready to die for the sake of preaching the gospel. (Rom 14:8, Acts 21:13, Col 1:24)

Rom 14:8 For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.

Acts 21:13 Then Paul answered, What mean ye to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.

Col 1:24 Who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up that which is behind of the afflictions of Christ in my flesh for his body's sake, which is the church:

444. Christ, who is in the form of God (Phil 2:5-8)
2 Cor 4:4, Col 1:15, Heb 1:2-3

Christ is in the form of God. (Phil 2:5-6, 2 Cor 4:4, Col 1:15, Heb 1:2-3)

Phil 2:5 Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:

6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

But Christ became obedient to God to the point of death in order to save us. (Phil 2:7-8)

Phil 2:7 But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men:

8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

446. Every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. (Phil 2:9-11)
Mt 28:18, Ps 68:18, Ps 110:1, Isa 45:23, Rom 14:11, Eph 1:21-22, Rev 5:13

The Old Testament prophesied that God would bring all men to the knees to Christ. (Ps 68:18, Ps 110:1, Isa 45:23)

Ps 68:18 Thou hast ascended on high, thou hast led captivity captive: thou hast received gifts for men; yea, for the rebellious also, that the Lord God might dwell among them.

Ps 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Isa 45:23 I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear.

God gave Jesus all authority. That is, Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Mt 28:18)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

God made all knees bow to Jesus. (Phil 2:9-11, Rom 14:11, Eph 1:21-22)

Phil 2:9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

Rom 14:11 For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God.

Eph 1:21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

On the day of Christ all things will give praise to God and to Jesus Christ. (Rev 5:13)

Rev 5:13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.

447. I may rejoice in the day of Christ. (Phil 2:16)
2 Cor 1:14, Gal 2:2, 1 Thess 2:19

Those to whom we have preached the gospel and have come to believe that Jesus is the Christ are our pride in the day of Christ. Our lives should not be in vain without this pride.

Phil 2:16 Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.

2 Cor 1:14 As also ye have acknowledged us in part, that we are your rejoicing, even as ye also are our's in the day of the Lord Jesus.

1 Thess 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?

Gal 2:2 And I went up by revelation, and communicated unto them that gospel which I preach among the Gentiles, but privately to them which were of reputation, lest by any means I should run, or had run, in vain.

448. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are true circumcision and true Jews. (Phil 3:3)
Col 2:11, Rom 2:29, Jn 4:24, Rom 7:6

Phil 3:3 For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.

We have been circumcised by Christ by believing that Jesus is the Christ. That is, the Holy Spirit has come into our hearts. (Col 2:11, Rom 2:29)

Col 2:11 In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ:

Rom 2:29 But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.

Now we worship God with the Holy Spirit, not the Law. (Rom 7:6, Jn 4:24)

Rom 7:6 But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.

Jn 4:24 God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

449. I count all things loss for the excellence of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord. (Phil 3:7-14)
Mt 13:44, 1 Cor 2:2, Eph 1:19-20, 1 Pt 4:13, Acts 26:6-8, 1 Cor 9:24, 2 Tim 4:7, Heb 3:1

Paul wanted to know Christ more, knowing that the knowledge of Christ is the noblest. (Phil 3:7-9, Mt 13:44, 1 Cor 2:2, Heb 3:1)

Phil 3:7 But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ.

8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:

Mt 13:44 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man hath found, he hideth, and for joy thereof goeth and selleth all that he hath, and buyeth that field.

1 Cor 2:2 For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified.

Heb 3:1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;

Paul was not afraid of being persecuted while preaching the gospel. Because Paul knew there was a resurrection. (Phil 3:10-11, 1 Pt 4:13, Acts 26:6-8)

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

1 Pt 4:13 But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.

Acts 26:6 And now I stand and am judged for the hope of the promise made of God, unto our fathers:

7 Unto which promise our twelve tribes, instantly serving God day and night, hope to come. For which hope's sake, king Agrippa, I am accused of the Jews.

8 Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that God should raise the dead?

Paul was caught by Christ and did his best to fulfill the mission of evangelism entrusted to him by Christ. (Phil 3:12-14, 1 Cor 9:24, 2 Tim 4:7)

Phil 3:12 And now I stand and am judged for the hope of the promise made of God, unto our fathers:

7 Unto which promise our twelve tribes, instantly serving God day and night, hope to come. For which hope's sake, king Agrippa, I am accused of the Jews.

8 Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that God should raise the dead?

1 Cor 9:24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.

2 Tim 4:7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:

450. For our citizenship is in heaven, from which we also eagerly wait for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, (Phil 3:20-21)

Rom 8:23, 1 Jn 3:2

We await the return of Christ. When Christ comes again, our bodies will be changed to be like the body of Christ's glory.

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:
21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

Rom 8:23 And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body.

1 Jn 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

451. Be anxious for nothing, but in everything by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your requests be made known to God; (Phil 4:6-7)

Jn 14:27, Col 3:15, Ps 55:22, Mt 6:28-34, 1 Pt 5:7

Do not be anxious about anything, but seek first his kingdom and his righteousness. That is, you must preach the gospel of Christ. Then the peace of Christ will keep you. (Mt 6:28-34, Phil 4:6-7, Jn 14:27, Col 3:15)

Mt 6:28 And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin:

29 And yet I say unto you, That even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.

30 Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which to day is, and to morrow is cast into the oven, shall he not much more clothe you, O ye of little faith?

31 Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

32 (For after all these things do the Gentiles seek:) for your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.

Phil 4:6 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.

7 And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.

Jn 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

Col 3:15 And let the peace of God rule in your hearts, to the which also ye are called in one body; and be ye thankful.

Leave all your worries on God. God takes care of us. (Ps 55:22, 1 Pt 5:7)

Ps 55:22 Cast thy burden upon the Lord, and he shall sustain thee: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved.

1 Pt 5:7 Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you.

452. I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me. (Phil 4:11-13)

1 Cor 4:11-13, 2 Cor 6:9-10, 2 Cor 12:7-9, 2 Tim 4:17

Paul faced many difficulties while preaching the gospel. But Paul made it clear that in Christ, no difficulties can stop the preaching of the gospel.

Phil 4:11 Not that I speak in respect of want: for I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content.

12 I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need.

13 I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.

1 Cor 4:11 Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no certain dwellingplace;

12 And labour, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it:

13 Being defamed, we intreat: we are made as the filth of the world, and are the offscouring of all things unto this day.

2 Cor 6:9 As unknown, and yet well known; as dying, and, behold, we live; as chastened, and not killed;

10 As sorrowful, yet alway rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and yet possessing all things.

2 Cor 12:7 And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure.

8 For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me.

9 And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may rest upon me.

2 Tim 4:17 Notwithstanding the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and that all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion.

- 453. Prayer for you (Col 1:9-12)
- 454. He has delivered us from the power of darkness and conveyed us into the kingdom of the Son of His love. (Col 1:13-14)
- 455. Christ is the image of the invisible God. (Col 1:15)
- 456. All things were created through Christ and for Christ. (Col 1:16-17)
- 457. Christ is the head of the church. (Col 1:18)
- 458. the Father that in Christ all the fullness should dwell (Col 1:19)
- 459. to reconcile all things to God through Christ's blood, shed on the cross (Col 1:20-23)
- 460. Christ, who is the hope of glory (Col 1:27)
- 461. Christ, who will appear richly to the gentiles (Col 1:27)
- 462. The mystery of God who appeared, Christ (Col 1:26-27)
- 463. Christ, who is the mystery of God (Col 2:2-3)
- 464. Beware lest anyone cheat you through philosophy and empty deceit, not according to Christ. (Col 2:8-10)
- 465. buried with Him in baptism, in which you also were raised with Him through faith in the working of God, who raised Him from the dead. (Col 2:11-12)
- 466. Christ made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them in the cross. (Col 2:13-15)
- 467. Which are a shadow of things to come, but the substance is of Christ. (Col 2:16-17)
- 468. If then you were raised with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ is, (Col 3:1-4)
- 469. Christ who is our life (Col 3:3-4)
- 470. When Christ who is our life appears, (Col 3:4)
- 471. Christ is all and in all. (Col 3:11)
- 472. Praying also for us, that God would open to us a door for the word, to speak the mystery of Christ, (Col 4:3-4)

453. Prayer for you (Col 1:9-12)

Jn 6:29,39-40, Eph 1:17-19, Mk 4:8,20, Rom 7:4, 2 Pt 1:2, Col 3:16-17, 2 Pt 3:18

Paul prayed for the saints to know God's will and to know God. (Col 1:9-12)

Col 1:9 For this cause we also, since the day we heard it, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that ye might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding;

10 That ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God;

11 Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness;

12 Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light:

God's will is to believe in Jesus as the Christ and to save all those whom God has entrusted to us. (Jn 6:29,39-40)

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Paul prayed for the saints to know God and Christ. (Eph 1:17-19, 2 Pt 1:2, Col 3:16, 2 Pt 3:18)

Eph 1:17 That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him:

18 The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,

19 And what is the exceeding greatness of his power to us-ward who believe, according to the working of his mighty power,

2 Pt 1:2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,

Col 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

2 Pt 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

454. He has delivered us from the power of darkness and conveyed us into the kingdom of the Son of His love. (Col 1:13-14)

Gen 3:15, Eph 2:1-7, 1 Jn 3:8, Col 2:15, Jn 5:24

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would deliver us through Christ. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

We were dead in our sins and trespasses, and we were in the power of darkness. (Eph 2:1-3)

Eph 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;

2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:

3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

The God of mercy loves us and has made us alive together with Christ when we were to die in our trespasses. (Eph 2:4-7)

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:

7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

God has forgiven all our sins and has crucified all the documents of sin against us. (Col 2:13-14)

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

Jesus destroyed the works of the devil and gained victory through the cross. (1 Jn 3:8, Col 2:15)

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Col 2:15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ have passed from death to life. (Jn 5:24, Col 1:13-14)

Jn 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

Col 1:13 Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:

14 In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:

455. Christ is the image of the God. (Col 1:15)
2 Cor 4:4, Heb 1:3, Jn 1:18, Jn 14:9

Jesus, the Christ, is like God.

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

Jn 1:18 No man hath seen God at any time, the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

Jn 14:9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father?

456. All things were created through Christ and for Christ. (Col 1:16-17)
Rev 3:14, Jn 1:3, Heb 1:1-2, 1 Cor 8:6, Eph 1:10, Phil 2:10

Jesus, the Christ, created all things. (Col 1:16-17, Rev 3:14, Jn 1:3, Heb 1:1-2, 1 Cor 8:6)

Col 1:16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:
17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

Rev 3:14 And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God;

Jn 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

Heb 1:1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,
2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

1 Cor 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

All things exist for Christ's sake. (Eph 1:10, Phil 2:10)

Eph 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

Phil 2:10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

457. Jesus, the Christ is the head of the church. (Col 1:18)
Eph 1:20-23, Eph 4:15-16

God made all things subject to Jesus, the Christ, and made Jesus the head of the church. (Col 1:18, Eph 1:20-23)

Col 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.

Eph 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

23 Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.

We, who believe in Jesus as the Christ, are the church. Christ makes us, the church, grow. (Eph 4:15-16)

Eph 4:15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ:

16 From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

458. The Father that in Christ all the fullness should dwell (Col 1:19)
Col 2:9, Eph 3:18-19, Eph 4:10

God was pleased to reveal all of God to Jesus the Christ. (Col 1:19, Col 2:9)

Col 1:19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;

Col 2:9 For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.

When we come to a deep realization of Christ, all the fullness of God comes upon us. (Eph 3:18-19)

Eph 3:18 May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height;
19 And to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God.

459. God made all things peace with God through the blood of Christ on the cross. (Col 1:20-23)
Jn 19:30, Rom 5:1, Eph 2:16, 2 Cor 5:18

Jesus accomplished all the work of Christ by dying on the cross. (Jn 19:30)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Now we are justified by faith in Jesus as the Christ and have peace with God. (Col 1:20-23, Rom 5:1, Eph 2:16, 2 Cor 5:18)

Col 1:20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.

21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled

22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreprouvable in his sight:

23 If ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard, and which was preached to every creature which is under heaven; whereof I Paul am made a minister;

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

Eph 2:16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

2 Cor 5:18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

460. Christ, who is the hope of glory (Col 1:27)

1 Tim 1:1, Lk 2:25-32, Acts 28:20, Ps 39:7, Ps 42:5, Ps 71:5, Jer 17:13,
Acts 28:20, Rom 15:12

God is our hope. (Ps 39:7, Ps 71:5, Jer 17:13)

Ps 39:7 And now, Lord, what wait I for? my hope is in thee.

Ps 71:5 For thou art my hope, O Lord God: thou art my trust from my youth.

Jer 17:13 O Lord, the hope of Israel, all that forsake thee shall be ashamed, and they that depart from me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken the Lord, the fountain of living waters.

Jesus is the hope of Israel, the Christ. (Lk 2:25-32, Acts 28:20)

Lk 2:25 And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him.

26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Ghost, that he should not see death, before he had seen the Lord's Christ.

27 And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to do for him after the custom of the law,

28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed God, and said,

29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word:

30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,

31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people;

32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

Acts 28:20 For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see you, and to speak with you: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain.

Jesus, the Christ, is our hope. (Col 1:27, 1 Tim 1:1)

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1 Tim 1:1 Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the commandment of God our Saviour, and Lord Jesus Christ, which is our hope;

461. Christ, who will appear richly to the gentiles (Col 1:27)
Eph 3:6, Isa 42:6, Is 45:22, Isa 49:6, Isa 52:10, Isa 60:1-3,
Ps 22:27, Ps 98:2-3, Acts 13:46-49

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that God would bring salvation to the Gentiles. (Isa 45:22, Isa 52:10, Ps 22:27, Ps 98:2-3)

Isa 45:22 Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else.

Isa 52:10 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Ps 22:27 All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the Lord: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before thee.

Ps 98:2 The Lord hath made known his salvation: his righteousness hath he openly shewed in the sight of the heathen.

3 He hath remembered his mercy and his truth toward the house of Israel: all the ends of the earth have seen the salvation of our God.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would bring salvation to the Gentiles through Christ. (Isa 42:6, Isa 49:6, Isa 60:1-3)

Isa 42:6 I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

Isa 60:1 Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon thee.

2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the Lord shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.

3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

Many Gentiles believed in Jesus as the Christ and were saved. (Col 1:27, Eph 3:6, Acts 13:46-49)

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

Eph 3:6 That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:

Acts 13:46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.

47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

49 And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.

462. The mystery of God who appeared is that Jesus is the Christ. (Col 1:26-27)
1 Jn 1:1-2, 1 Cor 2:7-8, 2 Tim 1:9-10, Rom 16:25-26, Eph 3:9-11

The secret that God had hidden from before the foundation of the world was revealed. It is that Jesus is the Christ. (Col 1:26-27, 1 Jn 1:1-2, Rom 16:25-26)

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

Even before the foundation of the world, God prepared to save us through Jesus, the Christ. (2 Tim 1:9-10, Eph 3:9-11)

2 Tim 1:9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,

10 But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel:

Eph 3:9 And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ:

10 To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God,

11 According to the eternal purpose which he purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord:

Had they known that Jesus was the Christ, the Jews would not have killed him. (1 Cor 2:7-8)

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

463. Christ, who is the mystery of God (Col 2:2-3)
Col 1:27, 1 Cor 1:24,30, Isa 11:1-2, 1 Cor 2:7-8

It was foretold in the Old Testament that God would put all of God's mysteries into Christ. (Isa 11:1-2)

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

Jesus, the Christ, is the mystery and wisdom of God. (Col 2:2-3, Col 1:27, 1 Cor 1:24,30, 1 Cor 2:7-8)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;
3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1 Cor 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.
30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:
8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

464. Beware lest anyone cheat you through philosophy and empty deceit, not according to Christ. (Col 2:8)
1 Tim 6:20, Eph 5:6, Mt 15:2, Col 2:20, Gal 4:3,

The world is deceiving us with philosophy and vain deceit to keep us from following Christ. We must not be deceived by this deceit, but follow Christ alone.

Col 2:8 Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.

1 Tim 6:20 O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding profane and vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called:

Eph 5:6 Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience.

Mt 15:2 Why do thy disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? for they wash not their hands when they eat bread.

Col 2:20 Wherefore if ye be dead with Christ from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are ye subject to ordinances,

Gal 4:3 Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world:

465. We are buried with Christ, and we are raised with him. (Col 2:11-12)
Rom 6:4-11, Gal 5:24

We were buried with Christ and raised up with him by believing that Jesus is the Christ. Therefore, we must no longer be slaves to sin.

Col 2:11 In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ:

12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

7 For he that is dead is freed from sin.

8 Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him:

9 Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him.

10 For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God.

11 Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Gal 5:24 And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.

466. Christ made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them in the cross. (Col 2:13-15)
Gen 3:15, Eph 2:16, Isa 53:12, Heb 2:14, 1 Jn 3:8

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die on the cross and destroy Satan. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus, the Christ, annihilated the enmity on the cross and triumphed. (Col 2:13-15, Eph 2:16, Heb 2:14, 1 Jn 3:8)

Col 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;

14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

Eph 2:16 And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

467. Which are a shadow of things to come, but the substance is of Christ. (Col 2:16-17)
Heb 8:5, Heb 10:1, Heb 9:9-12

The law is but a shadow of the coming Christ. Ultimately, the Old Testament seeks to represent Christ.

Col 2:16 Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days:

17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.

Heb 8:5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, See, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

Now Christ, the substance of the law, has come and made eternal redemption with His own blood. (Heb 9:9-12)

Heb 9:9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

468. If then you were raised with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ is, (Col 3:1-4)
Mt 6:33, Phil 3:20, Heb 7:19, Heb 10:23, Heb 12:1-2, Rev 22:20

Now our real life is in Christ. Therefore, we must seek Christ. (Col 3:1-4)

Col 3:1 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.

2 Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.

3 For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

We must seek Christ, the righteousness of God, and strive to spread the gospel. (Mt 6:33)

Mt 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

Our true hope is Jesus Christ. We must hope and wait for Him. (Phil 3:20, Heb 7:19, Heb 10:23)

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:

Heb 7:19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

Heb 10:23 Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;)

Our forefathers also waited and looked to Christ. Like them, we must look to Jesus, the Christ. (Heb 12:1-2)

Heb 12:1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,

2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

Jesus, the Christ, is coming soon. (Rev 22:20)

Rev 22:20 He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

469. Christ who is our life (Col 3:3-4)

Gen 1:26-27, Gen 2:7, 2 Cor 4:4, Jn 11:25, Jn 14:6

We are created in the image of God. (Gen 1:26-27)

Gen 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

The true image of God is Christ. That is, we are made by Christ. (2 Cor 4:4)

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

In other words, Christ became our life and we were made. (Gen 2:7)

Gen 2:7 And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

Christ is our present life and our eternal life. (Jn 11:25, Jn 14:6, Col 3:3-4)

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Col 3:3 For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

470. When Christ who is our life appears, (Col 3:4)
Phil 3:20-21, 1 Jn 3:2,

When Christ, our life, comes again, we will be transformed into the likeness of Christ's glorious body.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:
21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

1 Jn 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

471. Believing in Jesus as the Christ alone is the standard of salvation for all. (Col 3:11)
Rom 10:11-13

Not circumcised or uncircumcised, Jews or Gentiles, but only those who believe in Jesus as the Christ are saved.

Col 3:11 Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.

Rom 10:11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

472. Praying also for us, that God would open to us a door for the word, to speak the mystery of Christ, (Col 4:3-4)
Mk 1:38-39, Mk 3:14, Acts 5:42, 1 Cor 1:21, Titus 1:3, Eph 3:3-4, Eph 6:19-20

Evangelism is preaching that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament.

Paul asked the saints to pray so that God could open the door of evangelism to him and tell them that Jesus is the Christ. (Col 4:3-4, Eph 6:19-20)

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

4 That I may make it manifest, as I ought to speak.

Eph 6:19 And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel,

20 For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

Jesus came to this earth to reveal that He is the Christ. In other words, Jesus came to this earth for evangelism. (Mk 1:38-39)

Mk 1:38 And he said unto them, Let us go into the next towns, that I may preach there also: for therefore came I forth.

39 And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out devils.

Jesus sent his disciples to evangelize. (Mk 3:14)

Mk 3:14 And he ordained twelve, that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach,

The early church members evangelized whenever they met. (Acts 5:42)

Acts 5:42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

God saves people through evangelism. (1 Cor 1:21, Titus 1:3)

1 Cor 1:21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.

Titus 1:3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

Paul explained to each church that Jesus was the Christ. (Eph 3:3-4)

Eph 3:3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words,

4 Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)

473. O Lord, come! (1 Thess 1:10)

474. Not as pleasing men, but God who tests our hearts (1 Thess 2:4-6)

475 Our labor and toil; for laboring night and day, that we might not be a burden to any of you, we preached to you the gospel of God. (1 Thess 2:9)

476. You are our glory and joy. (1 Thess 2:19-20)

477. Night and day praying exceedingly that we may see your face and perfect what is lacking in your faith (1 Thess 3:10-13)

478. The Lord's coming and the resurrection of the dead (1 Thess 4:13-18)

479. Therefore let us not sleep, as others do, but let us watch and be sober. (1 Thess 5:2-9)

480. Rejoice always! (1 Thess 5:16-22)

481. He who calls you is faithful, who also will do it. (1 Thess 5:24)

473. O Lord, come! (1 Thess 1:10)
Titus 2:13, Rev 3:11, 1 Cor 11:26, 1 Cor 16:22

The Thessalonian church members eagerly awaited the coming of Jesus, the Christ. (1 Thess 1:10)

1 Thess 1:10 And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.

While preaching the gospel, we must eagerly await the coming of Jesus, the Christ. (1 Cor 11:26, Titus 2:13)

1 Cor 11:26 For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come.

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

Jesus has promised to come to us soon. (Rev 3:11)

Rev 3:11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.

If you do not love the Lord and wait for His coming, you will be cursed. (1 Cor 16:22)

1 Cor 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

474. Not as pleasing men, but God who tests our hearts (1 Thess 2:4-6)
Gal 1:10, Acts 4:18-20, Jn 5:41,44

We must not preach to please people's hearts. We must preach only the gospel that pleases God, that is, that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Thess 2:4-6, Gal 1:10)

1 Thess 2:4 But as we were allowed of God to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but God, which trieth our hearts.

5 For neither at any time used we flattering words, as ye know, nor a cloke of covetousness; God is witness:

6 Nor of men sought we glory, neither of you, nor yet of others, when we might have been burdensome, as the apostles of Christ.

Gal 1:10 For do I now persuade men, or God? or do I seek to please men? for if I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ.

Even when we preach the gospel, we must accurately proclaim that Jesus is the Christ, even if people do not want to hear it. (Acts 4:18-20)

Acts 4:18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus.

19 But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto you more than unto God, judge ye.

20 For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.

Many people do not preach the gospel of God's glory, that is, that Jesus is the Christ, but only their own glory. (Jn 5:44)

Jn 5:44 How can ye believe, which receive honour one of another, and seek not the honour that cometh from God only?

475. Our labor and toil; for laboring night and day, that we might not be a burden to any of you, we preached to you the gospel of God. (1 Thess 2:9)

Acts 18:3, Acts 20:34, 1 Cor 4:12, 2 Cor 11:9, 2 Thess 3:8-9

Paul preached the gospel to the saints while working so as not to burden them.

1 Thess 2:9 For ye remember, brethren, our labour and travail: for labouring night and day, because we would not be chargeable unto any of you, we preached unto you the gospel of God.

Acts 18:3 And because he was of the same craft, he abode with them, and wrought: for by their occupation they were tentmakers.

Acts 20:33 I have coveted no man's silver, or gold, or apparel.

34 Yea, ye yourselves know, that these hands have ministered unto my necessities, and to them that were with me.

1 Cor 4:12 And labour, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it:

2 Cor 11:9 And when I was present with you, and wanted, I was chargeable to no man: for that which was lacking to me the brethren which came from Macedonia supplied: and in all things I have kept myself from being burdensome unto you, and so will I keep myself.

2 Thess 3:8 Neither did we eat any man's bread for nought; but wrought with labour and travail night and day, that we might not be chargeable to any of you:

9 Not because we have not power, but to make ourselves an ensample unto you to follow us.

476. You are our glory and joy. (1 Thess 2:19-20)
2 Cor 1:14, Phil 4:1, Phil 2:16

When Jesus comes, the saints who hear the gospel through us and believe that Jesus is the Christ become our joy and pride.

1 Thess 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?
20 For ye are our glory and joy.

2 Cor 1:14 As also ye have acknowledged us in part, that we are your rejoicing, even as ye also are our's in the day of the Lord Jesus.

Phil 4:1 Therefore, my brethren dearly beloved and longed for, my joy and crown, so stand fast in the Lord, my dearly beloved.

Will we have anything to boast about when Jesus comes? (Phil 2:16)

Phil 2:16 Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.

477. Night and day praying exceedingly that we may see your face and perfect what is lacking in your faith (1 Thess 3:10-13)

1 Thess 2:17, Rom 1:13

Paul knew that the Thessalonian church members lacked faith. So he wanted to go quickly to them and convey deeply the mystery that Jesus is the Christ.

1 Thess 3:10 Night and day praying exceedingly that we might see your face, and might perfect that which is lacking in your faith?

11 Now God himself and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you.

12 And the Lord make you to increase and abound in love one toward another, and toward all men, even as we do toward you:

13 To the end he may stablish your hearts unblameable in holiness before God, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all his saints.

1 Thess 2:17 But we, brethren, being taken from you for a short time in presence, not in heart, endeavoured the more abundantly to see your face with great desire.

Rom 1:13 Now I would not have you ignorant, brethren, that oftentimes I purposed to come unto you, (but was let hitherto,) that I might have some fruit among you also, even as among other Gentiles.

478. The Lord's coming and the resurrection of the dead (1 Thess 4:13-18)
1 Cor 15:51-54, Mt 24:30, 2 Thess 1:7, 1 Cor 15:21-23, Col 3:4

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would destroy death forever. (Isa 25:8, Hos 13:14)

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.

Hos 13:14 I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy plagues; O grave, I will be thy destruction: repentance shall be hid from mine eyes.

Jesus will come in the clouds with the angels. (Mt 24:30, 1 Thess 1:7)

Mt 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

1 Thess 1:7 So that ye were ensamples to all that believe in Macedonia and Achaia.

When the Lord comes, the dead will be resurrected first, and the living will be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. (1 Thess 4:13-18)

1 Thess 4:13 But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope.

14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep.

16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

18 Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

When Jesus comes, we are transformed into incorruption. (1 Cor 15:51-55, 1 Cor 15:21-23, Col 3:4)

1 Cor 15:51 Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed,

52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.

53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.

54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.

55 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?

1 Cor 15:21 e also the resurrection of the dead.

22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

479. Therefore let us not sleep, as others do, but let us watch and be sober. (1 Thess 5:2-9)

Mt 24:14, Mt 24:36, Acts 1:6-7, 2 Pt 3:10, Mt 24:43, Lk 12:40, Rev 3:3, Rev 16:15, Mt 25:13

The end will come after the gospel has been preached all over the world. (Mt 24:14)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

We do not know when the Lord will come. (Mt 24:36, Mt 25:13, Acts 1:6-7)

Mt 24:36 But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Mt 25:13 Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.

Acts 1:6 When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?

7 And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.

The day of the Lord will come like a thief. We should be sober and watchful. In other words, the gospel will be spread rapidly throughout the world. And we will never know when the gospel was preached all over the world. Therefore, you must be awake. (Mt 24:41-44, Lk 12:40, 1 Thess 5:2-9, 1 Pt 3:10, Rev 3:3, Rev 16:15)

Mt 24:41 Two women shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

42 Watch therefore: for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come.

43 But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up.

44 Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh.

Lk 12:40 Be ye therefore ready also: for the Son of man cometh at an hour when ye think not.

1 Thess 5:2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.

3 For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.

4 But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief.

5 Ye are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness.

6 Therefore let us not sleep, as do others; but let us watch and be sober.

7 For they that sleep sleep in the night; and they that be drunken are drunken in the night.

8 But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.

9 For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ,

1 Pt 3:10 For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile:

Rev 3:3 Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee.

Rev 16:15 Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame.

480. Rejoice always! (1 Thess 5:16-22)

1 Thess 5:16 Rejoice evermore.

17 Pray without ceasing.

18 In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.

19 Quench not the Spirit.

20 Despise not prophesyings.

21 Prove all things; hold fast that which is good.

22 Abstain from all appearance of evil.

481. He who calls you is faithful, who also will do it.(1 Thess 5:24)

Phil 1:6, Num 23:19, 1 Thes 2:12, Rom 8:37-39, 1 Cor 1:9, 1 Pt 5:10, Jn 6:39-40, Jn 10:28-29, Jude 1:24-25

God is faithful. (Num 23:19, 1 Cor 1:9)

Num 23:19 God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?

1 Cor 1:9 God is faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.

The God who called us will surely save us. (1 Thess 5:24, Phil 1:6, Jude 1:24-25)

1 Thess 5:24 Faithful is he that calleth you, who also will do it.

Phil 1:6 Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:

Jude 1:24 Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present you faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy,

25 To the only wise God our Saviour, be glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen.

Even now, God strengthens us and gives us victory. (1 Pt 5:10, Rom 8:37-39)

1 Pt 5:10 But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.

Rom 8:37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

God will allow all those who have entrusted us to hear the gospel of salvation. (Jn 6:39-40, Jn 10:28-29)

Jn 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

Jn 10:28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.

29 My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.

482. The evidence of the righteous judgment of God (2 Thess 1:4-10)

483. Let no one deceive you by any means for that Day (2 Thess 2:1-12)

484. Therefore, brethren, stand fast and hold the traditions which you were taught, whether by word or our letter. (2 Thess 2:15)

482. Evidence to be glorified in God's righteous judgment - the patience and faith of the saints (2 Thess 1:4-10)

The perseverance and faith of the persecuted saints are proof that they will be glorified in God's righteous judgment. (2 Thess 1:4-5)

2 Thess 1:4 So that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations that ye endure:

5 Which is a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that ye may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which ye also suffer:

When Jesus comes, those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ will be punished, and the saints will share in the glory of God. (2 Thess 1:6-10)

2 Thess 1:6 Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you;

7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels,

8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:

9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;

10 When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.

483. Let no one deceive you by any means for that Day (2 Thess 2:1-12)

Some deceive the saints that the Lord has already returned. (2 Thess 2:1-2)

2 Thess 2:1 Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him,

2 That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand.

But the Lord comes after the Antichrist appears. (2 Thess 2:3)

2 Thess 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

When the Antichrist becomes active, he will entice people with great power to prevent them from hearing the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Thess 2:4-10)

2 Thess 2:4 Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.

5 Remember ye not, that, when I was yet with you, I told you these things?

6 And now ye know what withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time.

7 For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way.

8 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming:

9 Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders,

10 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.

Jesus will come and kill the Antichrist. (2 Thess 2:8)

2 Thes 2:8 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming:

And those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will be judged. (2 Thess 2:11-12)

2 Thess 2:11 And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie:

12 That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

484. Therefore, brethren, stand fast and hold the traditions which you were taught, whether by word or our letter. (2 Thess 2:15)

1 Cor 15:3, Eph 3:2-4, Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:4-5

Paul told the Thessalonian believers to keep what Paul taught in words and letters. (2 Thess 2:15, 1 Cor 15:3, Eph 3:2-4)

2 Thess 2:15 Therefore, brethren, stand fast, and hold the traditions which ye have been taught, whether by word, or our epistle.

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

Eph 3:2 If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward:

3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words,

4 Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ)

Paul testified to the people that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament, and he also taught this to the saints by word and letter. (Acts 9:22, Acts 17:2-3, Acts 18:4-5)

Acts 9:22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is very Christ.

Acts 17:2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.

Acts 18:4 And he reasoned in the synagogue every sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.

5 And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews that Jesus was Christ.

- 485. You may command certain people not to teach false doctrines any longer (1 Tim 1:3-7)
- 486. The purpose of the law (1 Tim 1:8)
- 487. The glorious gospel of the blessed God (1 Tim 1:11)
- 488. The glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to us. (1 Tim 1:11)
- 489. Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners. (1 Tim 1:15)
- 490. God desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth. (1 Tim 2:4)
- 491. For there is one God and one Mediator between God and men, the Man Christ Jesus, (1 Tim 2:5)
- 492. The hidden truth, Christ who was manifested in the flesh (1 Tim 3:16)
- 493. Until I come, devote yourself to the public reading of Scripture, to preaching and to teaching. (1 Tim 4:13)
- 494. If anyone teaches otherwise and does not agree to the sound instruction of our Lord Jesus Christ and to godly teaching, (1 Tim 6:3-5)

485. You may command certain people not to teach false doctrines any longer (1 Tim 1:3-7)
Rom 16:17, 2 Cor 11:4, Gal 1:6-7, 1 Tim 6:3-5

The church should not teach anything other than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. Many people try to teach the saints other than this gospel. (1 Tim 1:3-7, Rom 16:17)

1 Tim 1:3 As I besought thee to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that thou mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine,
4 Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith: so do.
5 Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:
6 From which some having swerved have turned aside unto vain jangling;
7 Desiring to be teachers of the law; understanding neither what they say, nor whereof they affirm.

Rom 16:17 Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned; and avoid them.

Saints are easily deceived by other gospels. (2 Cor 11:4, Gal 1:6-7)

2 Cor 11:4 For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:
7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

If we do not interpret the Bible as Jesus is the Christ, we lose the truth and quarrels arise within the church. (1 Tim 6:3-5)

1 Tim 6:3 If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness;
4 He is proud, knowing nothing, but doting about questions and strifes of words, whereof cometh envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings,
5 Perverse disputings of men of corrupt minds, and destitute of the truth, supposing that gain is godliness: from such withdraw thyself.

486. The purpose of the law (1 Tim 1:8)
Rom 7:7, Gal 3:24

The purpose of the law is to convince us of our sin so that we can believe in Jesus as the Christ for the forgiveness of our sins.

1 Tim 1:8 But we know that the law is good, if a man use it lawfully;

Rom 7:7 What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.

Gal 3:24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

487. The glorious gospel of the blessed God (1 Tim 1:11)
Mk 1:1, Jn 20:31, Isa 61:1-3, 2 Cor 4:4, Col 1:26-27

It is a lesson from God that the law convicts us of sin so that we may receive righteousness through faith in Jesus as the Christ. (1 Tim 1:11)

1 Tim 1:11 According to the glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to my trust.

The gospel of glory is that Jesus is the Christ and that by believing in this we are saved. (Mk 1:1, Jn 20:31)

Mk 1:1 The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God;

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

The gospel of glory is the good news of God given to us. (Isa 61:1-3)

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that he might be glorified.

Satan does not allow this gospel of glory to shine on people. (2 Cor 4:4)

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

This gospel of glory was hidden from before the foundation of the world, but now it has been revealed. (Col 1:26-27)

Col 1:26 Even the mystery which hath been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints:

27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

488. The glorious gospel of the blessed God "which was committed to us" (1 Tim 1:11)
1 Tim 2:6-7, Titus 1:3, Rom 15:16, 1 Cor 4:1, 2 Cor 5:18-19, 1 Cor 9:16, 1 Thess 2:4

God has entrusted us to preach the gospel of glory.

1 Tim 1:11 According to the glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to my trust.

1 Tim 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

7 Whereunto I am ordained a preacher, and an apostle, (I speak the truth in Christ, and lie not;) a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and verity.

Titus 1:3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

Rom 15:16 That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.

1 Cor 4:1 Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God.

2 Cor 5:18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

If we do not preach this gospel even though we know it, we will be cursed. (1 Cor 9:16)

1 Cor 9:16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

We should not preach the words that please people, but that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Thess 2:4)

2 Thess 2:4 Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.

489. Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners. (1 Tim 1:15)
Isa 53:5-6, Isa 61:1, Mt 1:16, 21, Mt 9:13,

All must accept sincerely that Christ Jesus came into the world to save them. (1 Tim 1:15)

1 Tim 1:15 This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would come and die for us and give us true freedom. (Isa 53:5-6, Isa 61:1)

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isa 61:1 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

That Christ came to this earth. That is Jesus. (Mt 1:16,21)

Mt 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins.

Jesus, the Christ, died in our place to save us. (Rom 5:8)

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

490. God desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth. (1 Tim 2:4)
Jn 3:16-17, Ezk 18:23,32, Titus 2:11, 2 Pt 3:9, Acts 4:12

God desires all men to be saved. (1 Tim 2:4, Titus 2:11, 2 Pt 3:9)

1 Tim 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

Titus 2:11 For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men,

2 Pt 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

God wants the wicked to repent and be saved. (Ezk 18:23,32)

Ezk 18:23 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

32 For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: wherefore turn yourselves, and live ye.

But God sent only Christ as the way of salvation. People must believe in Jesus as the Christ to be saved. (Jn 3:16-17, Acts 4:11-12)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

Acts 4:11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

491. For there is one God and one Mediator between God and men, the Man Christ Jesus, (1 Tim 2:5)
Jn 14:6, Heb 9:15, Heb 8:6, Acts 4:12

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Heb 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

Heb 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

492. The hidden truth, Christ who was manifested in the flesh (1 Tim 3:16)
Jn 1:14, Rom 1:3, 1 Jn 1:1-2, Col 1:23, Mk 16:19, Acts 1:8-9

Christ was hidden and revealed to us in the flesh. (1 Tim 3:16, Jn 1:14, Rom 1:3, 1 Jn 1:1-2)

1 Tim 3:16 And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Rom 1:3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh;

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ has been and will be preached in all nations. (Col 1:23, Acts 1:8)

Col 1:23 If ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard, and which was preached to every creature which is under heaven; whereof I Paul am made a minister;

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Jesus, the Christ, ascended into heaven. (Mk 16:19, Acts 1:9)

Mk 16:19 So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

Acts 1:9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.

493. Until I come, devote yourself to the public reading of Scripture, to preaching and to teaching. (1 Tim 4:13)
Lk 4:14-15, Acts 13:14-39, Col 4:16, 1 Thess 5:27

Paul made the church read the Old Testament and Paul's letters continuously. Paul also made church leaders continue to teach the saints through these things that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (1 Tim 4:13, Col 4:16, 1 Thess 5:27)

1 Tim 4:13 Till I come, give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine.

Col 4:16 And when this epistle is read among you, cause that it be read also in the church of the Laodiceans; and that ye likewise read the epistle from Laodicea.

1 Thess 5:27 I charge you by the Lord that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren.

In the synagogue, Jesus opened the Old Testament and taught the Jews about Christ. (Lk 4:14-15)

Lk 4:14 And Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit into Galilee: and there went out a fame of him through all the region round about.

15 And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of all.

Paul also explained the Old Testament that the Jews had read in the synagogue, testifying that Jesus was the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. (Acts 13:14-39)

Acts 13:14 But when they departed from Perga, they came to Antioch in Pisidia, and went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and sat down.

15 And after the reading of the law and the prophets the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, Ye men and brethren, if ye have any word of exhortation for the people, say on.

16 Then Paul stood up, and beckoning with his hand said, Men of Israel, and ye that fear God, give audience.

17 The God of this people of Israel chose our fathers, and exalted the people when they dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt, and with an high arm brought he them out of it.

18 And about the time of forty years suffered he their manners in the wilderness.

19 And when he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Chanaan, he divided their land to them by lot.

20 And after that he gave unto them judges about the space of four hundred and fifty years, until Samuel the prophet.

21 And afterward they desired a king: and God gave unto them Saul the son of Cis, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years.

22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave their testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

24 When John had first preached before his coming the baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel.

25 And as John fulfilled his course, he said, Whom think ye that I am? I am not he. But, behold, there cometh one after me, whose shoes of his feet I am not worthy to loose.

26 Men and brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth God, to you is the word of this salvation sent.

27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled them in condemning him.

28 And though they found no cause of death in him, yet desired they Pilate that he should be slain.

29 And when they had fulfilled all that was written of him, they took him down from the tree, and laid him in a sepulchre.

30 But God raised him from the dead:

31 And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses unto the people.

32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,

33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the

second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

494. Do not allow the church to teach anything but the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (1 Tim 6:3-5)
1 Tim 1:3-4, Gal 1:6-9

1 Tim 6:3 If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness;

4 He is proud, knowing nothing, but doting about questions and strifes of words, whereof cometh envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings,

5 Perverse disputings of men of corrupt minds, and destitute of the truth, supposing that gain is godliness: from such withdraw thyself.

1 Tim 1:3 As I besought thee to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that thou mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine,

4 Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith: so do.

If you preach any other gospel than the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, be cursed. (Gal 1:6-9)

Gal 1:6 I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:

7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ.

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.

9 As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.

496. The Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus (2 Tim 3:15)

497. Do not be ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, but share with me in the sufferings for the gospel according to the power of God (2 Tim 1:8)

498 God's own purpose and grace which was given to us in Christ Jesus before time began (2 Tim 1:9-10)

499. You, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. And the things that you have heard from me among many witnesses, commit these to faithful men who will be able to teach others also. (2 Tim 2:1-2)

500. You therefore must endure hardship as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. (2 Tim 2:3-6)

501. Remember that Jesus Christ, of the seed of David, was raised from the dead according to my gospel, (2 Tim 2:8)

502. For which I suffer trouble as an evildoer, even to the point of chains; but the word of God is not chained. (2 Tim 2:9)

503. Therefore I endure all things for the sake of the elect, that they also may obtain the salvation which is in Christ Jesus with eternal glory. (2 Tim 2:10)

504. For if we died with Him, We shall also live with Him. (2 Tim 2:11)

505. If we endure, We shall also reign with Him. (2 Tim 2:12)

507. If we are faithless, He remains faithful; He cannot deny Himself. (2 Tim 2:13)

508. What happens in the last days (2 Tim 3:1-7)

510. The knowledge of the truth, Christ (2 Tim 3:7)

511. The old testament, which is able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus (2 Tim 3:14-15)

512. Preach the word! Be ready in season and out of season. (2 Tim 4:1-2)

513. Finally, there is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous Judge, will give to me on that Day (2 Tim 4:7-8)

496. The Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus (2 Tim 3:15)

Lk 24:27,44-45, Jn 5:39, Acts 28:23

The Old Testament prophesies that salvation can be obtained through Christ. That Christ is Jesus. (2 Tim 3:15)

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

The Old Testament is a prophecy of Christ. Jesus explained to his disciples that the prophecy about Christ had been fulfilled in him. (Jn 5:39, Lk 24:27,44-45)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Lk 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

Paul also testified that the Christ described in the Old Testament was Jesus. (Acts 28:23)

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

497. Do not be ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, but share with me in the sufferings for the gospel according to the power of God (2 Tim 1:8)

2 Tim 1:11-12, Mk 8:38, Lk 9:26, Rom 1:16, Rom 8:17, 2 Tim 2:3,9, 2 Tim 4:5

Whosoever shall be ashamed of Jesus and His words shall be ashamed, when the Son of man comes. (Mk 8:38, Lk 9:26)

Mk 8:38 Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.

Lk 9:26 For whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come in his own glory, and in his Father's, and of the holy angels.

Because Paul preached the gospel that Jesus is the Christ, he suffered suffering and was imprisoned. In those days, when the saints told people that Jesus was the Christ, they were persecuted. Such persecution is shameful in the eyes of others. But Paul was not ashamed of this. Also, Paul asked Timothy to continue preaching the gospel without being ashamed even if he was persecuted while preaching the gospel. (2 Tim 1:8,11-12, Rom 1:16, Rom 8:17, 2 Tim 2:3,9, 2 Tim 4:5)

2 Tim 1:8 Be not thou therefore ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me his prisoner: but be thou partaker of the afflictions of the gospel according to the power of God;

11 Whereunto I am appointed a preacher, and an apostle, and a teacher of the Gentiles.

12 For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day.

Rom 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

Rom 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

2 Tim 2:3 Thou therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ.

9 Wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, even unto bonds; but the word of God is not bound.

2 Tim 4:5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

498 God's own purpose and grace which was given to us in Christ Jesus before time began (2 Tim 1:9-10)
Eph 2:8, Eph 1:9-14, Rom 16:26, 1 Pt 1:18-20

From all eternity, God has decreed to save us through Christ. (2 Tim 1:9-10)

2 Tim 1:9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,
10 But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel:

We are saved by the grace of God through faith in Jesus as the Christ. (Eph 2:8)

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

God has foreordained that we should glorify God in Christ. (Eph 1:9-14)

Eph 1:9 Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself:

10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will:

12 That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ.

13 In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

14 Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.

Christ appeared, written by the prophets at the command of God. Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 16:26, 1 Pt 1:18-20)

Rom 16:26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

1 Pt 1:18 Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers;

19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,

499. The things that you have heard from me among many witnesses, commit these to faithful men who will be able to teach others also. (2 Tim 2:1-2)

Acts 11:26, Acts 15:35, Acts 18:11, Acts 28:30-31, 1 Cor 4:17, Col 1:28, 1 Tim 4:13,16, 2 Tim 4:2

Paul deeply taught that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament in each church and wherever he was. (Acts 11:26, Acts 15:35, Acts 18:11, Acts 28:30-31)

Acts 11:26 And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.

Acts 15:35 Paul also and Barnabas continued in Antioch, teaching and preaching the word of the Lord, with many others also.

Acts 18:11 And he continued there a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them.

Acts 28:30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him, 31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

Paul had Timothy teach the Saints again what Paul had taught them. (1 Cor 4:17, 1 Tim 4:13,16)

1 Cor 4:17 For this cause have I sent unto you Timotheus, who is my beloved son, and faithful in the Lord, who shall bring you into remembrance of my ways which be in Christ, as I teach every where in every church.

1 Tim 4:13 Till I come, give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine.

16 Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee.

We are to teach and preach throughout the Bible that Jesus is the Christ. Through this teaching, we are built up whole in Christ. (2 Tim 4:2, Col 1:28)

2 Tim 4:2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.

Col 1:28 Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus:

500. You therefore must endure hardship as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. (2 Tim 2:3-6)
2 Tim 1:8, 2 Tim 4:5, 1 Cor 9:7, 1 Cor 9:9-10,23-25

At that time, when the saints preached that Jesus was the Christ, they were persecuted by the Jews. Paul told Timothy to continue preaching the gospel even in the midst of suffering. (2 Tim 2:3-5, 2 Tim 4:5)

2 Tim 2:3 Thou therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ.

4 No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of this life; that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier.

5 And if a man also strive for masteries, yet is he not crowned, except he strive lawfully.

2 Tim 4:5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

God supplies the needs of those who preach the gospel. (2 Tim 2:6, 1 Cor 9:7, 9-10)

2 Tim 2:6 The husbandman that laboureth must be first partaker of the fruits.

1 Cor 9:7 Who goeth a warfare any time at his own charges? who planteth a vineyard, and eateth not of the fruit thereof? or who feedeth a flock, and eateth not of the milk of the flock?

9 For it is written in the law of Moses, thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Doth God take care for oxen?

10 Or saith he it altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, this is written: that he that ploweth should plow in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope.

We must do our best to spread the gospel. (1 Cor 9:23-25)

1 Cor 9:23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with you.

24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.

25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible.

501. Remember that Jesus Christ, of the seed of David, was raised from the dead according to my gospel, (2 Tim 2:8)

Heb 12:2, Gal 3:13-14, Acts 2:36, Rom 1:4, Phil 2:5-11

Jesus died on the cross for us. (Gal 3:13-14)

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

God raised Jesus from the dead as proof that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 2:36, Rom 1:4)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Rom 1:4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead:

Now let us look deeply into Jesus, the Christ. (2 Tim 2:8, Heb 12:2)

2 Tim 2:8 Remember that Jesus Christ of the seed of David was raised from the dead according to my gospel:

Heb 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

Let's also obey God's word and preach the gospel, so that every tongue confesses Jesus Christ as Lord, giving glory to God. (Phil 2:5-11)

Phil 2:5 Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:

6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

7 But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men:

8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;

11 And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

502. For which I suffer trouble as an evildoer, even to the point of chains; but the word of God is not chained. (2 Tim 2:9)

Isa 40:8, Isa 55:11, 1 Pt 1:24-25, Acts 28:30-31

The gospel that Jesus is the Christ is never bound. (1 Pt 1:24-25, Isa 40:8, Isa 55:11)

1 Pt 1:24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:

25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

Isa 40:8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

Isa 55:11 So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.

Even though Paul is in prison, the gospel that Jesus is the Christ does not stop. (2 Tim 2:9, Acts 28:30-31)

2 Tim 2:9 Wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, even unto bonds; but the word of God is not bound.

Acts 28:30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,
31 Preaching the kingdom of God, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

503. Therefore I endure all things for the sake of the elect, that they also may obtain the salvation which is in Christ Jesus with eternal glory. (2 Tim 2:10)

Rom 8:18, 2 Cor 4:17, 1 Pt 5:10

2 Tim 2:10 Therefore I endure all things for the elect's sakes, that they may also obtain the salvation which is in Christ Jesus with eternal glory.

Rom 8:18 For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.

2 Cor 4:17 For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory;

1 Pt 5:10 But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.

504. For if we died with Him,
We shall also live with Him. (2 Tim 2:11)
Rom 6:2-8, Gal 2:20

We have already died on the cross with Christ. It is Christ who lives in us now. Also we will be resurrected with Christ on the day of Christ.

2 Tim 2:11 It is a faithful saying: For if we be dead with him, we shall also live with him:

Rom 6:2 God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein?

3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

7 For he that is dead is freed from sin.

8 Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him:

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

505. If we endure, We shall also reign with Him. If we deny Him, He also will deny us. (2 Tim 2:12)

Rom 8:17, 1 Pt 4:13, Mt 10:22, Rev 5:10, Rev 20:4-6, Rev 22:5

Mt 10:33, Lk 9:26, 2 Pt 2:1-3, Jude 1:4

The early church members were persecuted by the Jews because they believed and preached Jesus as the Christ. Since we are God's children, we will of course be persecuted for saying that Jesus is the Christ. We must overcome this persecution. Then you will be glorified with Christ. (2 Tim 2:12, Rom 8:17, 1 Pt 4:13, Mt 10:22)

2 Tim 2:12 If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us:

Rom 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

1 Pt 4:13 But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.

Mt 10:22 And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved.

And we will reign with Christ. (Rev 5:10, Rev 20:4-6, Rev 22:5)

Rev 5:10 And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.

Rev 20:4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

5 But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.

6 Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.

Rev 22:5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.

But if we deny Christ, Christ will also deny us. (Mt 10:33, Lk 9:26)

Mt 10:33 But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven.

Lk 9:26 For whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come in his own glory, and in his Father's, and of the holy angels.

In the last days, false prophets will arise to deceive the saints into not believing that Jesus is the Christ for their own benefit. (2 Pt 2:1-3, Jude 1:4)

2 Pt 2:1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.

2 And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of.

3 And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not.

Jude 1:4 For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.

507. If we are faithless,
He remains faithful;
He cannot deny Himself. (2 Tim 2:13)
Jn 3:16-17, 1 Cor 1:9,19, 1 Cor 10:13, 2 Cor 1:18, Num 23:19,
Heb 10:23, Mal 3:6, Deut 7:9, Isa 55:11

God always keeps His promises to us. (Num 23:19, Deut 7:9, Isa 55:11, Mal 3:6)

Num 23:19 God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?

Deut 7:9 Know therefore that the Lord thy God, he is God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations;

Isa 55:11 So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.

Mal 3:6 For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

God kept His promise to save us by sending His Son to this earth. (Jn 3:16-17)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

God keeps all his promises to us in Christ. (1 Cor 1:9, 1 Cor 10:13, 2 Cor 1:18, Heb 10:23)

1 Cor 1:9 God is faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.

1 Cor 10:13 There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.

2 Cor 1:18 But as God is true, our word toward you was not yea and nay.

Heb 10:23 Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;)

508. What happens in the last days (2 Tim 3:1-7)
Lk 14:26, 1 Tim 6:10, Rom 1:30, 1 Tim 1:19,

In the last days, people love other things more than God. (2 Tim 3:1-7, 1 Tim 6:10)

2 Tim 3:1 This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come.

2 For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy,

3 Without natural affection, trucebreakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good,

4 Traitors, heady, highminded, lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God;

5 Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away.

6 For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts,

7 Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.

1 Tim 6:10 For the love of money is the root of all evil: which while some coveted after, they have erred from the faith, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows.

People do not like to have God in their hearts, so they become more evil. (Rom 1:28-31)

Rom 1:28 And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient;

29 Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers,

30 Backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents,

31 Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful:

We cannot be disciples of Christ unless we love Christ above all things. (Lk 14:26)

Lk 14:26 If any man come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple.

510. The knowledge of the truth, Christ (2 Tim 3:6-7)
Jn 14:6, Jn 8:32, 1 Tim 2:4-6

Studying the Bible a lot does not lead to the knowledge of the truth. We must learn that Jesus is the Christ through the Bible.

2 Tim 3:6 For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts,
7 Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jn 8:32 And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

1 Tim 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.
5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;
6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

511. The old testament, which is able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus (2 Tim 3:14-15)

Jn 20:31, Jn 5:39, Lk 24:25-27, 44-45

The Old Testament prophesies of the coming Christ and salvation through him. That Christ is Jesus. (2 Tim 3:14-15, Jn 5:39, Lk 24:25-27,44-45)

2 Tim 3:14 But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned them;

15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

The New Testament testifies that Christ has come and that Christ is Jesus. (Jn 20:31)

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

512. Preach the word! Be ready in season and out of season. (2 Tim 4:1-2)
2 Tim 4:5, Acts 20:24, Titus 1:2-3, Col 4:3, Phil 1:15-18

God revealed the word of God through evangelism. Evangelism is testifying that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. He entrusted this evangelism to us. (Titus 1:2-3)

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;
3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

We must always preach the gospel, out of season or out of season. (2 Tim 4:1-2,5)

2 Tim 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;
2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long suffering and doctrine.
5 But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

To proclaim that Jesus is the Christ is more precious than our lives, and we live for this. (Acts 20:24, Col 4:3)

Acts 20:24 But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might finish my course with joy, and the ministry, which I have received of the Lord Jesus, to testify the gospel of the grace of God.

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

We rejoice when it is proved that Jesus is the Christ in any way. (Phil 1:15-18)

Phil 1:15 Some indeed preach Christ even of envy and strife; and some also of good will:
16 The one preach Christ of contention, not sincerely, supposing to add affliction to my bonds:
17 But the other of love, knowing that I am set for the defence of the gospel.
18 What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached; and I therein do rejoice, yea, and will rejoice.

513. Finally, there is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous Judge, will give to me on that Day (2 Tim 4:7-8)

1 Cor 9:24-25, James 1:12, 1 Pt 5:4, Rev 2:10

We must do our best to spread the gospel. When the Lord comes, He will give us the crown of life.

2 Tim 4:7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

1 Cor 9:24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.

25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible.

James 1:12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.

1 Pt 5:4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

Rev 2:10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.

Titus

Bible

514. But has in due time manifested His word through preaching (Titus 1:2-3)

515. The word of God may not be blasphemed. (Titus 2:1-10)

516. The blessed hope, Christ (Titus 2:13)

517. Our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ (Titus 2:13)

518. The salvation work of the Trinity God (Titus 3:4-7)

514. But has in due time manifested His word through preaching (Titus 1:2-3)
1 Cor 1:21, Rom 1:16, Col 4:3

Evangelism is testifying that Jesus is the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament. God revealed His Word through evangelism. (Titus 1:2-3)

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;
3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

Evangelism seems foolish, but it is the power of God. (1 Cor 1:21, Rom 1:16)

1 Cor 1:21 For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.

Rom 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

Through evangelism and teaching, we must communicate deeply that Jesus is the Christ. (Col 4:3)

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

515. The word of God may not be blasphemed. (Titus 2:1-10)

Evangelism must not be hindered by our wrong behavior.

Titus 2:1 But speak thou the things which become sound doctrine:

2 That the aged men be sober, grave, temperate, sound in faith, in charity, in patience.

3 The aged women likewise, that they be in behaviour as becometh holiness, not false accusers, not given to much wine, teachers of good things;

4 That they may teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children,

5 To be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed.

6 Young men likewise exhort to be sober minded.

7 In all things shewing thyself a pattern of good works: in doctrine shewing uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity,

8 Sound speech, that cannot be condemned; that he that is of the contrary part may be ashamed, having no evil thing to say of you.

9 Exhort servants to be obedient unto their own masters, and to please them well in all things; not answering again;

10 Not purloining, but shewing all good fidelity; that they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things.

516. The blessed hope: resurrection and eternal life (Titus 2:13)

Titus 1:2, Col 1:5, Phil 3:20-21, 2 Thess 2:16, Titus 3:6-7, 1 Pt 1:3, 1 Jn 3:2-3

When Jesus Christ comes again, we will be resurrected and have eternal life.

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;

Col 1:5 For the hope which is laid up for you in heaven, whereof ye heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel;

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:
21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

2 Thess 2:16 Now our Lord Jesus Christ himself, and God, even our Father, which hath loved us, and hath given us everlasting consolation and good hope through grace,

Titus 3:6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;

7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

1 Pt 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

1 Jn 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

3 And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.

517. Our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ (Titus 2:13)
Jn 1:1-2,14, Isa 9:6, Acts 20:28, Rom 9:5, 1 Jn 5:20

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would give his only begotten son to this earth and that this only begotten son would be called God. (Isa 9:6)

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Jesus is God as the Son of God.

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Acts 20:28 Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.

Rom 9:5 Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.

1 Jn 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

518. The salvation work of the Trinity God (Titus 3:4-7)

Titus 3:4 But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared,
5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;
6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;
7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

God the Father promised to send His only begotten Son, and according to that promise, He sent His only begotten Son to this earth to do the work of Christ to save us. (Gen 3:15, Jn 3:16, Rom 8:32, Eph 2:4-5,7)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Rom 8:32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,
5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)
7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

God the Son, Jesus came to this earth as the only begotten Son of God and accomplished the work of Christ on the cross. And God resurrected him to prove that Jesus was the Christ. (Mt 1:16, Jn 1:14, 1 Jn 1:1-2, Heb 9:26,28, Acts 2:36, Rom 4:23-24, 1 Jn 5:1)

Mt 1:16 And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

1 Jn 1:1-2 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;
2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Heb 9:26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.
28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Rom 4:23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him;
24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

The Holy Spirit has made us realize and believe that Jesus is the Christ. And he comes into us and accomplishes world evangelization through us. (Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Joel 2:28-29,32, Acts 2:16-18,21, Acts 5:32)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

Joel 2:28 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.

32 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the Lord hath said, and in the remnant whom the Lord shall call.

Acts 2:16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

Acts 5:32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

- 521. God's Son, Christ (Heb 1:2)
- 522. God Has Appointed Heir Of All Things To His Son. (Heb 1:2)
- 523. Creator, Christ (Heb 1:2)
- 524. Christ, The Exact Representation Of God's Being (Heb 1:3)
- 525. About His Son (Heb 1:5-13)
- 526. God also testifies Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 2:4)
- 527. The Holy Spirit testifies Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 2:4)
- 528. Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels, for the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor (Heb 2:6-10)
- 529. Christ, who sanctifies us. (Heb 2:11)
- 531. Christ, who calls us brethren (Heb 2:11-12)
- 532. Christ, who destroys the devil then calls us the children (Heb 2:13-16)
- 533. Christ, who is a merciful and faithful High Priest in things pertaining to God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people. (Heb 2:17)
- 534. Consider the Apostle and High Priest of our confession, Christ Jesus, (Heb 3:1)
- 535. Christ, who has been counted worthy of more glory than Moses (Heb 3:2-6)
- 536. Christ, who built God's house (Heb 3:3-4)
- 537. They could not enter in because of unbelief. (Heb 3:18-19)
- 539. Today, If you will hear His voice, do not harden your hearts. (Heb 4:7)
- 540. Christ, who gives the true rest (Heb 4:8-11)
- 541. Christ, who is a great High Priest (Heb 4:14-16)
- 542. Christ, God made a promise to Abraham (Gen 22:16-18)
- 543. Christ, the priest who rose according to the order of Melchizedek because perfection was not through the Levitical priesthood (Heb 7:11-17)
- 544. Christ, who is the better hope than the law (Heb 7:11-12, 18-19)
- 545. Christ, who became the priest with an oath by God (Heb 7:20-22)
- 546. Christ, who is the forever priesthood (Heb 7:23-25)
- 547. Jesus has become a surety of a better covenant. (Heb 7:22)
- 548. The High Priest, Christ, who is the substance of the copy and shadow of the heavenly things (Heb

- 8:1-5)
549. Christ, who is the new covenant (Heb 8:7-13)
550. The Holy Spirit indicating this, that the way into the Holiest of All was not yet made manifest while the first tabernacle was still standing. (Heb 9:8)
551. The first tabernacle was imposed until the time of reformation by Christ. (Heb 9:9-12)
552. Christ entered the Most Holy Place once for all with His own blood, having obtained eternal redemption. (Heb 9:11-12)
553. For where there is a testament, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. (Heb 9:16-22)
554. Once at the end of the ages, Christ has appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of Himself. (Heb 9:23-26)
555. Christ, who will appear a second time, apart from sin, for salvation to those who eagerly wait for Him (Heb 9:28)
556. Christ, who has perfected forever those who are being sanctified by one offering (Heb 10:1-14)
557. Holy Spirit, who is testifying to Christ (Heb 10:15-18)
558. The veil is Christ's flesh. (Heb 10:19-20)
559. The penalty for those who deny the covenant blood of Christ (Heb 10:28-29)
561. For yet a little while Christ will come, do not cast away your confidence and endurance. (Heb 10:32-39)
562. My just one shall live by faith. (Heb 10:38)
563. For by faith in Christ the elders obtained a good testimony.
564. Abel's sacrifice by faith in Christ, the Lamb Of God to come (Heb 11:4)
565. God is pleased with those who believe and seek Christ. (Heb 11:6)
566. Noah who preached the Christ, the ark of salvation (Heb 11:7)
567. By faith, Abraham went to Canaan where Christ will come. (Heb 11:8-10)
568. They did not see Christ; they only saw and welcomed Him from a distance. (Heb 11:13)
569. They were longing for a better country—a heavenly one, where they will live with Christ forever (Heb 11:13-16)
570. By faith, Abraham offered Isaac as a sacrifice. Then he saw the death of Christ and His resurrection. (Heb 11:17-19)
571. By faith Isaac blessed Jacob with Canaan, the land of coming of Christ (Heb 11:20)
572. Jacob predicted Christ will come through Judah (Heb 11:21)
573. Joseph believed to be buried in Canaan, the land of coming of Christ (Heb 11:22)

- 574. Moses, who esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt (Heb 11:24-27)
- 575. Moses, who believed in Christ as the Passover lamb (Heb 11:28)
- 576. All were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea, (Heb 11:29)
- 577. People who overcame the world by faith of coming Christ. (Heb 11:32-40)
- 578. Looking unto Jesus, the author and finisher of our faith, (Heb 12:2)
- 579. Let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which so easily ensnares us, and let us run with endurance the race that is set before us, (Heb 12:1)
- 580. We are receiving a kingdom which cannot be shaken, (Heb 12:18-29)
- 581. Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever. (Heb 13:8)
- 582. Therefore Jesus also, that He might sanctify the people with His own blood, suffered outside the gate. (Heb 13:9-12)
- 583. Therefore by Him let us continually offer the sacrifice of praise to God, that is, the fruit of our lips, giving thanks to His name. (Heb 13:15)
- 584. Now may the God of peace who brought up our Lord Jesus from the dead, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, (Heb 13:20)

521. God's Son, Jesus (Heb 1:2)

Mt 16:16, Mt 14:33, Heb 3:6, Heb 4:14, Heb 5:8, Heb 7:28

Jesus is the Son of God. (Mt 14:33, Heb 1:2, Heb 4:14)

Mt 14:33 Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth thou art the Son of God.

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

Jesus, the Son of God, came to this earth to accomplish the work of Christ. That is why we call Jesus as Christ. (Mt 16:16, Heb 3:6)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

Heb 3:6 But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

In obedience to the word of God, Jesus accomplished all the work of Christ by dying on the cross. (Heb 5:8, Heb 7:28, Jn 19:30)

Heb 5:8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

Heb 7:28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

522. God Has Appointed Heir Of All Things To His Son. (Heb 1:2)

Ps 2:7-9, Ps 89:27-29, Mt 28:18, Acts 2:36, Acts 10:36, Eph 1:10, Dan 7:13-14, Col 1:15-17

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

The Old Testament prophesied that God would entrust everything to the Son of God. (Ps 2:7, Ps 89:27-29, Dan 7:13-14)

Ps 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

Ps 89:27 Also I will make him my firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth.

28 My mercy will I keep for him for evermore, and my covenant shall stand fast with him.

29 His seed also will I make to endure for ever, and his throne as the days of heaven.

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

As the Son of God, Jesus had all authority in heaven and on earth. Jesus is Lord of all. (Mt 28:18, Acts 2:36, Acts 10:36)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

Everything in the world will be united in Christ. (Eph 1:10)

Eph 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

Also, Jesus created the world with God. (Col 1:15-17)

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

523. Jesus Christ the Creator (Heb 1:2)
Jn 1:1-3,14, 1 Cor 8:6, Col 1:16-17

Jesus, the Christ, created all things with God in the beginning.

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

1 Cor 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

Col 1:16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

524. Christ, The Exact Representation Of God's Being (Heb 1:3)
Col 1:15, 2 Cor 4:4, Jn 14:9, Rom 9:5, 1 Jn 5:20

Jesus, the Christ, is identical with God. Also, Jesus came in the flesh and is the God we can see.

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

Col 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Jn 14:9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father?

Rom 9:5 Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.

1 Jn 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

525. About His Son (Heb 1:5-13)

Heb 1:5 (Ps 2:7, 2 Sam 7:14), Heb 1:6 (1 Pt 3:22), Heb 1:7, Heb 1:8,9 (Ps 45:6), Heb 1:10 (Ps 102:25), Heb 1:11-12 (Ps 102:26-27) Heb 1:13-14 (Ps 110:1)

The author of Hebrews explained how superior the Son of God is to the angels.

An angel cannot be a son of God. But Jesus is the Son of God, and God is his Father. (Heb 1:5, Ps 2:7, 2 Sam 7:14)

Heb 1:5 For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son?

Ps 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

2 Sam 7:14 I will be his father, and he shall be my son. If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men:

All angels worship the Son of God, Jesus. (Heb 1:6, 1 Pt 3:22)

Heb 1:6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.

1 Pt 3:22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

Jesus, the Son of God, uses angels as ministers. (Heb 1:7, Ps 104:4)

Heb 1:7 And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.

Ps 104:4 Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire:

Jesus, the Son of God, has completed the work of Christ and rules over all things. (Heb 1:8-9, Ps 45:6-7)

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.

9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

Ps 45:6 Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre.

7 Thou lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness: therefore God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

Jesus, the Son of God, made all things. (Heb 1:10, Ps 102:25)

Heb 1:10 And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands:

Ps 102:25 Of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the work of thy hands.

The Son of God, Jesus is eternal. (Heb 1:11-12, Ps 102:26-27)

Heb 1:11 They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment;

12 And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.

Psalms 102:26 They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed:

27 But thou art the same, and thy years shall have no end.

Jesus, the Son of God, sits and reigns at the right hand of God. Angels work to help God's children. (Heb 1:13-14, Ps 110:1)

Heb 1:13 But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?

14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

Psalms 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

526. God also testifies Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 2:4)

Mk 16:16-17, Jn 10:38, Acts 2:22, Acts 3:11-16, Acts 14:3, Acts 19:11-12, Rom 15:18-19

God gave Jesus signs and miracles to testify that Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 2:3, Jn 10:38, Acts 2:22, Mt 16:16-17)

Heb 2:3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him;

Jn 10:38 But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works: that ye may know, and believe, that the Father is in me, and I in him.

Acts 2:22 Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know:

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.

God performed miracles on the apostles who testified that Jesus was the Christ, and testified to people that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 3:11-16, Acts 14:3, Acts 19:11, Rom 15:18-19)

Acts 3:11 And as the lame man which was healed held Peter and John, all the people ran together unto them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly wondering.

12 And when Peter saw it, he answered unto the people, Ye men of Israel, why marvel ye at this? or why look ye so earnestly on us, as though by our own power or holiness we had made this man to walk?

13 The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, hath glorified his Son Jesus; whom ye delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let him go.

14 But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;

15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

16 And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom ye see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.

Acts 14:3 Long time therefore abode they speaking boldly in the Lord, which gave testimony unto the word of his grace, and granted signs and wonders to be done by their hands.

Acts 19:11 And God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul:

Rom 15:18 For I will not dare to speak of any of those things which Christ hath not wrought by me, to make the Gentiles obedient, by word and deed,

19 Through mighty signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God; so that from Jerusalem, and round about unto Illyricum, I have fully preached the gospel of Christ.

527. The Holy Spirit testifies Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 2:4)
Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Acts 2:33,36, Acts 5:30-32,

God gives the Holy Spirit as a gift to those who believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 2:4, Acts 2:33,36, Acts 5:30-32)

Heb 2:4 God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will?

Acts 2:33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

The Holy Spirit makes us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, 1 Cor 12:3)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

1 Cor 12:3 Wherefore I give you to understand, that no man speaking by the Spirit of God calleth Jesus accursed: and that no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost.

528. Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels, for the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor
(Heb 2:6-10)
Ps 8:4-8

Although Jesus is higher than the angels, He was made lower than the angels for a short time by dying on the cross for us.

Heb 2:6 But one in a certain place testified, saying, What is man, that thou art mindful of him? or the son of man that thou visitest him?

7 Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands:

8 Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him.

9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

10 For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.

Ps 8:4 What is man, that thou art mindful of him? and the son of man, that thou visitest him?

5 For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour.

6 Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet:

7 All sheep and oxen, yea, and the beasts of the field;

8 The fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea, and whatsoever passeth through the paths of the seas.

529. Christ, who sanctify us (Heb 2:11)
Ex 31:13, Lev 20:8, Lev 21:5, Lev 22:9,16,32

God promised in the Old Testament that if we keep His commandments, He will sanctify us. (Ex 31:13, Lev 20:8, Lev 22:9,32)

Ex 31:13 Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you.

Lev 20:8 And ye shall keep my statutes, and do them: I am the Lord which sanctify you.

Lev 22:9 They shall therefore keep mine ordinance, lest they bear sin for it, and die therefore, if they profane it: I the Lord do sanctify them.

32 Neither shall ye profane my holy name; but I will be hallowed among the children of Israel: I am the Lord which hallow you,

God sanctified us by sacrificing Jesus for us. (Heb 2:11)

Heb 2:11 For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren,

531. Jesus, who calls us brethren (Heb 2:11-12)
Mt 12:50, Mk 3:35, Lk 8:21, Rom 8:29, Ps 22:22

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would proclaim the gospel of salvation to His brethren. (Ps 22:22)

Ps 22:22 I will declare thy name unto my brethren: in the midst of the congregation will I praise thee.

God sanctified us by making Jesus do the work of Christ and made us brothers and sisters of the Christ Jesus. (Heb 2:11-12, Rom 8:29)

Heb 2:11 For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren,

12 Saying, I will declare thy name unto my brethren, in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto thee.

Rom 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

Those who do God's will, that is, those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, are the brothers of Jesus. (Jn 6:29, Mt 12:50, Mk 3:35, Lk 8:21)

Jn 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Mt 12:50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father which is in heaven, the same is my brother, and sister, and mother.

Mk 3:35 For whosoever shall do the will of God, the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother.

Lk 8:21 And he answered and said unto them, My mother and my brethren are these which hear the word of God, and do it.

532. Christ, who destroys the devil then calls us the children (Heb 2:13-16)
Isa 8:17-18, Gen 3:15, 1 Jn 3:8, Rev 12:10

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would destroy the devil by dying on the cross. (Gen 3:15)

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

The Old Testament prophesied that Christ would make us His children. (Isa 8:17-18)

Isa 8:17 And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.
18 Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of hosts, which dwelleth in mount Zion.

By dying on the cross for us, Jesus destroyed the devil and made us His children. (Heb 2:13-16, 1 Jn 3:8, Rev 12:10)

Heb 2:13 And again, I will put my trust in him. And again, Behold I and the children which God hath given me.
14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;
15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.
16 For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Rev 12:10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.

533. Christ, who is a merciful and faithful High Priest in things pertaining to God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people (Heb 2:17)

1 Sam 2:35, Rom 8:3, Rom 3:25, Heb 3:1, Heb 4:14, Heb 5:5-10, Heb 7:28, Heb 8:1, Heb 9:11-12, 1 Jn 2:1-2

Christ means the anointed one. In the Old Testament, kings, priests, and prophets were anointed.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would raise up a faithful priest and establish him as an eternal priest. (1 Sam 2:35)

1 Sam 2:35 And I will raise me up a faithful priest, that shall do according to that which is in mine heart and in my mind: and I will build him a sure house; and he shall walk before mine anointed for ever.

God made Jesus, the Son of God, bear our sins. And God made Jesus the propitiation sacrifice. (Rom 8:3, Rom 3:25)

Rom 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

Rom 3:25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

Jesus became the high priest and sacrificed himself so that he died to save us. (Heb 2:17, Heb 3:1, Heb 4:14, Heb 5:5-10, Heb 7:28)

Heb 2:17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

Heb 3:1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 7:28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

534. Consider that Apostle and High Priest of our confession, Christ Jesus (Heb 3:1)
Heb 12:2, Heb 4:14, Heb 10:23, Phil 3:10-14, Deut 8:3, Jn 6:32-35

We need to deeply understand the work of Christ that Jesus did. (Heb 3:1, Heb 12:2)

Heb 3:1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;

Heb 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

We must also firmly believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 4:14, Heb 10:23)

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

Heb 10:23 Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;)

Also, we must preach that Jesus is the Christ, even if we suffer for the sake of preaching the gospel. (Phil 3:10-14)

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,

14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

In addition, we must deeply understand that Jesus is the Christ throughout the Bible. The entire Bible is the word of life that reveals that Jesus is the Christ. (Deut 8:3, Jn 6:32-35)

Deut 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

Jn 6:32 Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.

33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.

35 And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

535. Christ, who has been counted worthy of more glory than Moses (Heb 3:2-6)
Ex 34:29-35, 2 Cor 3:7,13-16

Moses was faithful as a leader of the people of Israel. But Jesus was faithful to God as the one who created and established the nation of Israel. So, of course, Jesus, the Christ, is more exalted than Moses. (Heb 3:2-6)

Heb 3:2 Who was faithful to him that appointed him, as also Moses was faithful in all his house.
3 For this man was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, inasmuch as he who hath builded the house hath more honour than the house.
4 For every house is builded by some man; but he that built all things is God.
5 And Moses verily was faithful in all his house, as a servant, for a testimony of those things which were to be spoken after;
6 But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

Moses covered the vanishing glory of his face with a veil. Yet, the Jews still do not see Christ Jesus, the eternal glory, because of the veil of Moses. (Ex 34:29-35, 2 Cor 3:7,13-16)

Ex 34:29 And it came to pass, when Moses came down from mount Sinai with the two tables of testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses wist not that the skin of his face shone while he talked with him.
30 And when Aaron and all the children of Israel saw Moses, behold, the skin of his face shone; and they were afraid to come nigh him.
31 And Moses called unto them; and Aaron and all the rulers of the congregation returned unto him: and Moses talked with them.
32 And afterward all the children of Israel came nigh: and he gave them in commandment all that the Lord had spoken with him in mount Sinai.
33 And till Moses had done speaking with them, he put a vail on his face.
34 But when Moses went in before the Lord to speak with him, he took the vail off, until he came out. And he came out, and spake unto the children of Israel that which he was commanded.
35 And the children of Israel saw the face of Moses, that the skin of Moses' face shone: and Moses put the vail upon his face again, until he went in to speak with him.

2 Cor 3:7 But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not stedfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which glory was to be done away:
13 And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not stedfastly look to the end of that which is abolished:
14 But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same vail untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.
15 But even unto this day, when Moses is read, the vail is upon their heart.
16 Nevertheless when it shall turn to the Lord, the vail shall be taken away.

536. Christ, who built God's house (Heb 3:3-4)

2 Sam 7:13, Zech 6:12-13, Acts 20:28, Eph 2:20-22, 1 Tim 3:15, 1 Pt 2:4-5

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would build the eternal house of God. (2 Sam 7:13, Zech 6:12-13)
2 Sam 7:13 He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.

Zech 6:12 And speak unto him, saying, Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying, Behold the man whose name is The Branch; and he shall grow up out of his place, and he shall build the temple of the Lord:

13 Even he shall build the temple of the Lord; and he shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon his throne; and he shall be a priest upon his throne: and the counsel of peace shall be between them both.

Christ not only created the nation of Israel, but also built the eternal house of God, the church, with his own blood.
(Heb 3:3-4, Acts 20:28, Eph 2:20-22, 1 Tim 3:15, 1 Pt 2:4-5)

Heb 3:3 For this man was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, inasmuch as he who hath builded the house hath more honour than the house.

4 For every house is builded by some man; but he that built all things is God.

Acts 20:28 Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

21 In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord:

22 In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

1 Tim 3:15 But if I tarry long, that thou mayest know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.

1 Pt 2:4 To whom coming, as unto a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious,
5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

537. They could not enter in because of unbelief. (Heb 3:18-19)

Heb 4:2, Ex 5:21, Ex 14:11, Ex 15:24, Ex 17:2-3, Ex 32:1, Num 11:4, Num 14:2,22-23, Heb 11:31, Deut 30:20, Rom 10:16-17

The Israelites who did not enter the land of Canaan in the Old Testament could not enter the land of Canaan, the land where Christ would come, because they did not believe in God's covenant. (Heb 3:18)

Heb 3:18 And to whom sware he that they should not enter into his rest, but to them that believed not?

Even now, those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ cannot enter the rest of God. (Heb 4:2-3, Rom 10:16,18)

Heb 4:2 For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.

3 For we which have believed do enter into rest, as he said, As I have sworn in my wrath, if they shall enter into my rest: although the works were finished from the foundation of the world.

Rom 10:16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

18 But I say, Have they not heard? Yes verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world.

The people of Israel did not believe in God to lead them. So they could not enter the land of Canaan in the end. (Num 14:22-23, Ex 5:21, Ex 14:11, Ex 15:24, Ex 17:2-3, Ex 32:1, Num 11:4, Num 14:2)

Num 14:22 Because all those men which have seen my glory, and my miracles, which I did in Egypt and in the wilderness, and have tempted me now these ten times, and have not hearkened to my voice;

23 Surely they shall not see the land which I sware unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that provoked me see it:

Ex 5:21 And they said unto them, The Lord look upon you, and judge; because ye have made our savour to be abhorred in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of his servants, to put a sword in their hand to slay us.

Ex 14:11 And they said unto Moses, Because there were no graves in Egypt, hast thou taken us away to die in the wilderness? wherefore hast thou dealt thus with us, to carry us forth out of Egypt?

Ex 15:24 And the people murmured against Moses, saying, What shall we drink?

Ex 17:2 Wherefore the people did chide with Moses, and said, Give us water that we may drink. And Moses said unto them, Why chide ye with me? wherefore do ye tempt the Lord?

3 And the people thirsted there for water; and the people murmured against Moses, and said, Wherefore is this that thou hast brought us up out of Egypt, to kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?

Ex 32:1 And when the people saw that Moses delayed to come down out of the mount, the people gathered themselves together unto Aaron, and said unto him, Up, make us gods, which shall go before us; for as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.

Num 11:4 And the mixt multitude that was among them fell a lusting: and the children of Israel also wept again, and said, Who shall give us flesh to eat?

Num 14:2 And all the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron: and the whole congregation said unto them, Would God that we had died in the land of Egypt! or would God we had died in this wilderness!

Those who firmly believed in God's covenant entered the land of Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Heb 11:31, Deut 30:20)

Heb 11:31 By faith the harlot Rahab perished not with them that believed not, when she had received the spies with peace.

Deut 30:20 That thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey his voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto him: for he is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord swore unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.

539. Today, if you will hear His voice, do not harden your hearts. (Heb 4:7)
Ps 95:7, 2 Cor 3:14, Jn 12:37-41, Isa 53:1-12, Acts 10:36-43

The Old Testament tells us not to harden our hearts when Christ comes and preaches the word. (Heb 4:7)

Heb 4:7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, To day, after so long a time; as it is said, To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.

Christ came to this earth to deliver the Word of God to us. (Ps 95:7)

Ps 95:7 For he is our God; and we are the people of his pasture, and the sheep of his hand. To day if ye will hear his voice,

But the Jews do not know that the Old Testament describes Christ, so they are looking for Moses when they read the Old Testament. (2 Cor 3:14)

2 Cor 3:14 But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same vail untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.

Also, when Christ came, the Jews did not believe in Christ and killed Him. (Jn 12:37-41, Isa 53:1-12)

Jn 12:37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:

38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed?

39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,

40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.

41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

Isa 53:1 Who hath believed our report? and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 10:36-43)

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)
37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;
38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.
39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree:
40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;
41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before God, even to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead.
42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead.
43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

540. Christ, who gives the true rest (Heb 4:8-11)
Jos 22:4, Mt 11:28, Jn 14:27, Jn 16:33

In the Old Testament, God promised to give the people of Israel rest. (Jos 22:4)

Jos 22:4 And now the Lord your God hath given rest unto your brethren, as he promised them: therefore now return ye, and get you unto your tents, and unto the land of your possession, which Moses the servant of the Lord gave you on the other side Jordan.

The rest that God promised to give to the people of Israel is Christ, not the land of Canaan. (Heb 4:8-11)

Heb 4:8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day.

9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God.

10 For he that is entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from his.

11 Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.

Jesus, the Christ, gives us true rest. (Mt 11:28, Jn 14:27, Jn 16:33)

Mt 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

Jn 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

Jn 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

Also, Jesus prepares an eternal resting place in heaven for us. (Jn 14:2-3)

Jn 14:2 In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.

3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.

541. Jesus, who is a great High Priest (Heb 4:14-16)
Heb 2:17, Heb 5:8-10, Heb 6:20, Heb 7:26, Heb 9:11-12

Jesus became the great high priest to atone for our sins. (Heb 4:14-16, Heb 2:17)

Heb 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession.

15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.

16 Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.

Heb 2:17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

Jesus is not of the priestly tribe of Levi, but he is a high priest according to the order of Melchizedek. (Heb 5:8-10, Heb 6:20)

Heb 5:8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 6:20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

Because Jesus is eternal, He is the eternal High Priest. As our eternal High Priest, Jesus died once for all to atone for our sins, so we no longer have to offer sacrifices. (Heb 7:21-27, Heb 9:11-12)

Heb 7:21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord swear and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)

22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

23 And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death:

24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood.

25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

26 For such an high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens;

27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

542. Christ, God made a promise to Abraham (Heb 6:13-15)
Gen 22:16-18, Jn 8:56, Gal 3:16

God promised Abraham that He would multiply Abraham's seed. The seed is Christ.

Heb 6:13 For when God made promise to Abraham, because he could swear by no greater, he sware by himself,
14 Saying, Surely blessing I will bless thee, and multiplying I will multiply thee.
15 And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise.

Gen 22:16 And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son:
17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

543. Christ, the priest who rose according to the order of Melchizedek because perfection was not through the Levitical priesthood (Heb 7:11-17)

Heb 8:7-13, Heb 10:1, Heb 5:5-6, Heb 7:28, Heb 9:9-12, Heb 7:24-25,

We could not attain perfection through the priesthood of the tribe of Levi. Jesus, of the tribe of Judah, has become the eternal priest who perfects us forever according to the order of Melchizedek. (Heb 7:11-17, Heb 5:5-6, Heb 7:24-25,28)

Heb 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar.

14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest,

16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life.

17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

Heb 7:24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood.

25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

The law given through Moses, God's first covenant, is not perfect. This law will become obsolete and perish. But Christ, God's new covenant, is without blemish, completely solves our sins, and is with us forever. (Heb 8:7-13)

Heb 8:7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

The Old Testament law is a shadow of the coming Christ. The law is our ordinance until Christ comes. Now Christ has come to take away our sins once and for all. (Heb 10:1, Heb 9:9-12)

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

Heb 9:9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the

time of reformation.

11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

544. Christ, who is the better hope than the law (Heb 7:11-12, 18-19)
Gal 3:23-24, Gal 2:16,21, Rom 10:4, Rom 3:21-22, Gal 3:22

Through the sacrifice, the Israelites were temporarily forgiven of their sins and were able to meet God indirectly. But now we have eternal forgiveness of our sins and direct encounter with God through Christ, who is a better hope than the law. (Heb 7:11-12,18-19)

Heb 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.

19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

The law is leading us to Christ. In other words, the law convinces us that we are sinners and makes us believe in Christ for the forgiveness of our sins. We are made righteous by believing that Jesus is the Christ. We cannot become righteous by keeping the law. (Gal 3:23-24, Gal 2:16,21)

Gal 3:23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

21 I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.

God has imprisoned everyone under sin through the law. And God justified people by making them believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Rom 10:4, Rom 3:21-22, Gal 3:22)

Rom 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Rom 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

Gal 3:22 But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe.

545. Jesus, who became the priest with an oath by God (Heb 7:20-22)
Ps 110:4, Heb 7:17

By oath, God confirmed Jesus as the priest in Christ's ministry. (Heb 7:20-22, Ps 110:4, Heb 7:17)

Heb 7:20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest:

21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)

22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

Ps 110:4 The Lord hath sworn, and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek.

Heb 7:17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

546. Jesus, who is the forever priesthood (Heb 7:23-25)
Heb 7:28, Heb 5:6, Heb 1:8-12, Heb 5:8-9

The Levitical priests eventually die. But because Jesus is forever, He will serve as a priest forever to save us completely. (Heb 7:23-25, Heb 7:28, Heb 5:6)

Heb 7:23 And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death:

24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood.

25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

Heb 7:28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

Heb 5:6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

In obedience to the word of God, Jesus died on the cross to complete the work of the high priest, thereby saving all who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Heb 5:8)

Heb 5:8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

547. Jesus has become a surety of a better covenant. (Heb 7:22)

Heb 7:19, Heb 8:6-13, Heb 9:11-15, Lk 22:20

God led the nation of Israel through the Law in the Old Testament. But the law can make no one perfect. So God prepared a better covenant guarantee, Christ. (Heb 7:22, Heb 7:19, Heb 8:6-13, Heb 9:11-15)

Heb 7:22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

Heb 7:19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

Heb 8:6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh:

14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

Jesus is the Christ, the new covenant. (Lk 22:20)

Lk 22:20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.

548. The High Priest, Jesus, who is the substance of the copy and shadow of the heavenly things (Heb 8:1-5)
Ex 25:9,40, Ex 26:30, Ex 27:8, Acts 7:44, Heb 9:23-26, Heb 10:1

Moses saw what was in heaven and built the tabernacle. (Heb 8:1-5, Ex 25:9,40, Ex 26:30, Ex 27:8, Acts 7:44)

Heb 8:1 Now of the things which we have spoken this is the sum: We have such an high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens;

2 A minister of the sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle, which the Lord pitched, and not man.

3 For every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices: wherefore it is of necessity that this man have somewhat also to offer.

4 For if he were on earth, he should not be a priest, seeing that there are priests that offer gifts according to the law:

5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, See, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount

Ex 25:9 According to all that I shew thee, after the pattern of the tabernacle, and the pattern of all the instruments thereof, even so shall ye make it.

40 And look that thou make them after their pattern, which was shewed thee in the mount.

Ex 26:30 And thou shalt rear up the tabernacle according to the fashion thereof which was shewed thee in the mount.

Ex 27:8 Hollow with boards shalt thou make it: as it was shewed thee in the mount, so shall they make it.

Acts 7:44 Our fathers had the tabernacle of witness in the wilderness, as he had appointed, speaking unto Moses, that he should make it according to the fashion that he had seen.

We cannot be made whole by sacrifices through the tabernacle on earth. (Heb 10:1)

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

In the tabernacle on earth, people must be cleansed with the blood of animals. But to enter the tabernacle in heaven, we must be cleansed by the blood of Christ the High Priest. Christ made us whole by offering Himself as a sacrifice once for all. (Heb 9:23-26)

Heb 9:23 It was therefore necessary that the patterns of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these.

24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us:

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

549. Christ, who is the new covenant (Heb 8:7-13)
Jer 31:31, Heb 7:11-12, Mk 14:24, Jn 19:30

The Old Testament law is not perfect. So God made a new covenant. (Heb 8:7-13, Jer 31:31, Heb 7:11-12)

Heb 8:7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest.

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.

Jer 31:31 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah:

Heb 7:11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.

By shedding his blood on the cross, Jesus fulfilled the work of Christ, the new covenant. (Mk 14:24, Jn 19:30)

Mk 14:24 And he said unto them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

550. The Holy Spirit indicating this, that the way into the Holiest of All was not yet made manifest while the first tabernacle was still standing. (Heb 9:8)

Heb 10:19-20, Jn 14:6, Mt 27:50-51, Mk 15:37-38, Lk 23:45-46

Heb 9:8 The Holy Ghost this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing:

By tearing the veil, which is his body, and completing the work of Christ, Jesus opened the way to the sanctuary. (Heb 10:19, Mt 27:50-51, Mk 15:37-38, Lk 23:45-46, Jn 14:6)

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,

Mt 27:50 Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

51 And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent;

Mk 15:37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.

38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom.

Lk 23:45 And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst.

46 And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

551. The first tabernacle was imposed until the time of reformation by Christ. (Heb 9:9-12)
Heb 10:1, Heb 7:19

The Old Testament law is a parable of the work of Christ. So the law cannot make us perfect. Now Christ has come as High Priest and has made eternal redemption with His own blood.

Heb 9:9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;

10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.

11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

Heb 7:19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

552. Christ entered the Most Holy Place once for all with His own blood, having obtained eternal redemption. (Heb 9:11-12)

Heb 9:24-26, Heb 10:14, Heb 7:27

As High Priest, Jesus accomplished eternal redemption once and for all with His own blood. (Heb 9:11-12, Heb 10:14)

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

So we don't have to offer a sacrifice to God every year to have our sins forgiven. (Heb 9:24-26, Heb 7:27)

Heb 9:24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us:

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

Heb 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

553. For where there is a testament, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. (Heb 9:16-22)
Heb 8:8, Mk 14:24, Gen 15:8-10,17, Ex 24:4-8, Ps 50:5

God gave Abraham a covenant, and as a symbol of the fulfillment of that covenant, God passed through the pieces of meat. Later, when Christ died, this covenant was fulfilled. (Gen 15:8-10,17)

Gen 15:8 And he said, Lord God, whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?

9 And he said unto him, Take me an heifer of three years old, and a she goat of three years old, and a ram of three years old, and a turtledove, and a young pigeon.

10 And he took unto him all these, and divided them in the midst, and laid each piece one against another: but the birds divided he not.

17 And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

In the Old Testament, Moses read God's covenant and shed the blood of a sacrifice to receive the forgiveness of the people's sins. (Ex 24:4-8, Ps 50:5)

Ex 24:4 And Moses wrote all the words of the Lord, and rose up early in the morning, and builded an altar under the hill, and twelve pillars, according to the twelve tribes of Israel.

5 And he sent young men of the children of Israel, which offered burnt offerings, and sacrificed peace offerings of oxen unto the Lord.

6 And Moses took half of the blood, and put it in basons; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the altar.

7 And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the audience of the people: and they said, All that the Lord hath said will we do, and be obedient.

8 And Moses took the blood, and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant, which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words.

Ps 50:5 Gather my saints together unto me; those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice.

Just as a will is effective that the testator must die, so Christ must die for the new covenant to be effective. (Heb 9:16-22)

Heb 9:16 For where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator.

17 For a testament is of force after men are dead: otherwise it is of no strength at all while the testator liveth.

18 Whereupon neither the first testament was dedicated without blood.

19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people,

20 Saying, This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you.

21 Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry.

22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

God promised Christ, the new covenant. And God made the new covenant into effect by shedding Jesus, the Christ, on the cross. (Heb 8:8, Mk 14:24)

Heb 8:8 For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:

Mk 14:24 And he said unto them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.

554. Once at the end of the ages, Christ has appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of Himself. (Heb 9:23-26)
1 Jn 3:5, Heb 7:27, Heb 9:12

In the Old Testament, the high priests first offered sacrifices for their own sins, and daily sacrifices were made for the sins of the people. But because Jesus was without sin, He was sacrificed once for all to take away our sins forever.

Heb 9:23 It was therefore necessary that the patterns of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these.

24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us:

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others;

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

1 Jn 3:5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.

Heb 7:27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

Heb 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

555. Christ, who will appear a second time, apart from sin, for salvation to those who eagerly wait for Him (Heb 9:28)

1 Cor 1:7, Phil 3:20, Titus 2:13, Mt 16:27, Mt 24:14, Jn 14:3, 1 Cor 15:23, 1 Thess 4:14-17, 2 Thess 1:7, Rev 3:11, Rev 19:11-16

We wait for Christ to work out our salvation. (Heb 9:28, 1 Cor 1:7, Phil 3:20, Titus 2:13, Mt 16:27)

Heb 9:28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

1 Cor 1:7 So that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ:

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

Mt 16:27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.

When Jesus, the Christ, comes again, the living will receive Christ in the air, and the dead will be resurrected. (1 Cor 15:23, 1 Thess 4:14-17)

1 Cor 15:23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

1 Thess 4:14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep.

16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

Jesus, the Christ, is coming soon and must come to judge the world. (Rev 3:11, Rev 19:11-16)

Rev 3:11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.

Rev 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.

12 His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself.

13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

14 And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.

15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.

16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, King Of Kings, And Lord Of Lords.

556. Christ, who has perfected forever those who are being sanctified by one offering (Heb 10:1-14)
Ps 40:6-7

In the Old Testament, the sacrifice according to the law was not perfect, and it was foretold that Christ would come.
(Ps 40:6-7)

Ps 40:6 Sacrifice and offering thou didst not desire; mine ears hast thou opened: burnt offering and sin offering hast thou not required.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come: in the volume of the book it is written of me,

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Jesus Christ sanctified us by offering His body once for all. (Heb 10:1-14)

Heb 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect.

2 For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins.

3 But in those sacrifices there is a remembrance again made of sins every year.

4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins.

5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:

6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure.

7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.

8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;

9 Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:

12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;

13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

557. The Holy Spirit testifies of Christ. (Heb 10:15-18)
Jer 31:33-34, Acts 5:30-32, Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God's law would be written in our hearts. (Jer 31:33-34)

Jer 31:33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.
34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

The Holy Spirit has come upon those who believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.
31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.
32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

The Holy Spirit makes us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

Jn 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

The Holy Spirit has come into our hearts to make us understand in our hearts the Word of God, that Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 10:15-18)

Heb 10:15 Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,
16 This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;
17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.
18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

558. The veil is Christ's flesh. (Heb 10:19-20)
Mt 27:50-51, Mk 15:37-38, Jn 14:6, Eph 3:11-12

Jesus tore the veil, his body, and opened the way to meet God. (Mt 27:50, Mk 15:37, Heb 10:19-20, Jn 14:6)

Mt 27:50 Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

Mk 15:37 And Jesus cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost.

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,
20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

From eternity it had been prophesied to send Christ, the way to meet God. Now we can come to God confidently by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Eph 3:11-12)

Eph 3:11 According to the eternal purpose which he purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord:
12 In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him.

559. The penalty for those who deny the covenant blood of Christ (Heb 10:28-29)
Lev 10:1-2, Isa 63:10, Jn 16:7-9, Rom 2:8, Rev 21:8

In the Old Testament, those who did not obey the law of Moses died. (Lev 10:1, Isa 63:10)

Lev 10:1 And Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took either of them his censer, and put fire therein, and put incense thereon, and offered strange fire before the Lord, which he commanded them not.

Isa 63:10 But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them.

Jesus, the Son of God, shed His blood to sanctify us, and those who do not believe in this will be severely punished. (Heb 10:28-29)

Heb 10:28 He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses:

29 Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?

The Holy Spirit will come and rebuke those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 16:7, Rom 2:8)

Jn 16:7 Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.

Rom 2:8 But unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath,

Those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ will go to Hell. (Rev 21:8)

Rev 21:8 But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.

561. For yet a little while Christ will come, do not cast away your confidence and endurance. (Heb 10:32-39)
Hab 2:3-4, Rev 22:20

Christ is coming soon and surely. Never give up your faith that Jesus is the Christ. We will live by faith that Jesus is the Christ.

Heb 10:32 But call to remembrance the former days, in which, after ye were illuminated, ye endured a great fight of afflictions;

33 Partly, whilst ye were made a gazingstock both by reproaches and afflictions; and partly, whilst ye became companions of them that were so used.

34 For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.

35 Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward.

36 For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.

37 For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.

38 Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.

39 But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.

Hab 2:3 For the vision is yet for an appointed time, but at the end it shall speak, and not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not tarry.

4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

Rev 22:20 He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

562. My just one shall live by faith. (Heb 10:38)

Hab 2:3-4, Rom 1:17, Gal 3:11, Jn 20:31, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 3:16

We must believe to the end that Jesus is the Christ. We must believe that Jesus is the Christ to live. (Heb 10:38, Hab 2:3-4, Rom 1:17, Gal 3:11)

Heb 10:38 Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.

Hab 2:3 For the vision is yet for an appointed time, but at the end it shall speak, and not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not tarry.

4 Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.

Rom 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Gal 3:11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.

When we believe that Jesus is the Christ, we have life and become children of God. (Jn 20:31, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 3:16)

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

563. For by faith in Christ the elders obtained a good testimony.(Heb 11:1-2)
Heb 11:24-26, Jn 8:56, Acts 3:25, Gal 3:16, Lk 24:25-27, Lk 24:44

The ancestors of faith in the Old Testament were saved by believing that Christ would come. (Heb 11:1-2, Heb 11:24-26)

Heb 11:1 Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.
2 For by it the elders obtained a good report.

Heb 11:24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter;
25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;
26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.

The offspring of the covenant God promised to Abraham is Christ. (Acts 3:25, Gal 3:16, Jn 8:56)

Acts 3:25 Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

The forefathers of faith in the Old Testament did not know who the coming Christ was. The Christ explained in the Old Testament and prophesied to come is Jesus. (Lk 24:25-27,44)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:
26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?
27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.
44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

564. Abel's sacrifice by faith in Christ, the Lamb Of God to come (Heb 11:4)
Gen 4:4, Ex 12:3,7, Ex 29:38, Isa 53:7, Jn 1:29,36, Rev 22:1-5

Abel offered a sacrifice to God through faith in Christ who would come as the Lamb of God. (Heb 11:4, Gen 4:4)

Heb 11:4 By faith Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaketh.

Gen 4:4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering:

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die like a Lamb for our sins. (Ex 12:3,7, Ex 29:38, Isa 53:7)

Ex 12:3 Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them every man a lamb, according to the house of their fathers, a lamb for an house:

7 And they shall take of the blood, and strike it on the two side posts and on the upper door post of the houses, wherein they shall eat it.

Ex 29:38 Now this is that which thou shalt offer upon the altar; two lambs of the first year day by day continually.

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

Jesus is the Christ who came as the Lamb of God. (Jn 1:29,36)

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

We will see Jesus, the Lamb of God, in heaven. (Rev 22:1-5)

Rev 22:1 And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

3 And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him:

4 And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads.

5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.

565. God is pleased with those who believe and seek Christ. (Heb 11:6)
Heb 1:1-3, Heb 7:25, Heb 12:1-2

Man cannot meet God. But through Jesus Christ, who is the same as God, we can know that God truly exists. We can also come to God by believing that Jesus is the Christ. (Heb 11:6, Heb 1:-3, Heb 7:25, Jn 14:6)

Heb 11:6 But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

Heb 1:1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,
2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;
3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

Heb 7:25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

So, the forefathers of faith in the Old Testament waited and sought Christ. Now that we know that Jesus is the Christ, let us look deeply into Jesus the Christ. (Heb 12:1-2)

Heb 12:1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,

2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

566. Noah who preached the Christ, the ark of salvation (Heb 11:7)
2 Pt 2:5, Jn 3:18, Jn 5:22, 1 Pt 3:20-22

Noah warned that those who did not obey God's word would be judged. To obey God's Word is to believe in the coming Christ. (Heb 11:7, 2 Pt 2:5)

Heb 11:7 By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith.

2 Pt 2:5 And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly;

What Noah's Flood signified was the baptism of dying with Christ and rising again with Christ. The flood is a sign of salvation for those who believe in Jesus as the Christ, and a sign of destruction for those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ. (1 Pt 3:20-22)

1 Pt 3:20 Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.

21 The like figure whereunto even baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:

22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

Those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ have already been judged and will be judged forever. (Jn 3:18, Jn 5:22)

Jn 3:18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

Jn 5:22 For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:

567. By faith, Abraham went to Canaan where Christ will come. (Heb 11:8-10)
Gen 12:1,5,7, Jn 8:56, Acts 7:2-4, Mt 2:6, Mic 5:2

God commanded Abraham to go to Canaan, the land where Christ would come. And Abraham went to the land of Canaan as he had commanded. (Gen 12:1,5,7, Acts 7:2-4)

Gen 12:1 Now the Lord had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will shew thee:

5 And Abram took Sarai his wife, and Lot his brother's son, and all their substance that they had gathered, and the souls that they had gotten in Haran; and they went forth to go into the land of Canaan; and into the land of Canaan they came.

7 And the Lord appeared unto Abram, and said, Unto thy seed will I give this land: and there builded he an altar unto the Lord, who appeared unto him.

Acts 7:2 And he said, Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken; The God of glory appeared unto our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran,

3 And said unto him, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and come into the land which I shall shew thee.

4 Then came he out of the land of the Chaldaeans, and dwelt in Charran: and from thence, when his father was dead, he removed him into this land, wherein ye now dwell.

By faith, Abraham went to Canaan, the land where Christ would come, and even though he went to the land of Canaan, he did not build a house, but built a tent and waited for the coming of Christ. (Heb 11:8-10)

Heb 11:8 By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went.

9 By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise:

10 For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God.

Abraham rejoiced at the thought of Christ who would come as the descendant of Isaac while giving birth to Isaac in the land of Canaan. (Jn 8:56)

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

The Christ came to Bethlehem in the land of Canaan. That Christ is Jesus. (Mic 5:2, Mt 2:6)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Mt 2:6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

568. They did not see Christ; they only saw and welcomed Him from a distance. (Heb 11:13)
Heb 11:39, Heb 11:24-27, Rom 4:13, Gal 3:16, Jn 8:56

The forefathers of faith did not see Christ, but believed that He would come and welcomed Him from afar. (Heb 11:13, Heb 11:39)

Heb 11:13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.

Heb 11:39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise:

Moses suffered for the sake of the Christ who was to come, and although he could not see Christ, he endured it as if seeing Christ. (Heb 11:24-27)

Heb 11:24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter;
25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;
26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.
27 By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.

Abraham was not justified by the law made 430 years later, but by faith in the coming Christ. (Rom 4:13)

Rom 4:13 For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith.

The promise of descendants that God made to Abraham is Christ. (Gal 3:16)

Gal 3:16 Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ.

When Isaac was born, Abraham rejoiced at the thought of Christ, who would come as the descendant of Isaac. (Jn 8:56)

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

569. They were longing for a better countryâ€”a heavenly one, where they will live with Christ forever (Heb 11:13-16)

Col 3:4, Heb 11:10, Heb 13:14, Jn 14:2, Rev 21:2

Heb 11:13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.

14 For they that say such things declare plainly that they seek a country.

15 And truly, if they had been mindful of that country from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have returned.

16 But now they desire a better country, that is, an heavenly: wherefore God is not ashamed to be called their God: for he hath prepared for them a city.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

Heb 11:10 For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God.

Heb 13:14 For here have we no continuing city, but we seek one to come.

Jesus has prepared a place for us to live in heaven. (Jn 14:2)

Jn 14:2 In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.

We will live forever with Christ, our husband in heaven. (Rev 21:2)

Rev 21:2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.

570. By faith, Abraham offered Isaac as a sacrifice, Then he saw the death of Christ and His resurrection. (Heb 11:17-19)

Rom 4:20-25, Jn 8:56, Lk 24:25-27

Heb 11:17 By faith Abraham, when he was tried, offered up Isaac: and he that had received the promises offered up his only begotten son,

18 Of whom it was said, That in Isaac shall thy seed be called:

19 Accounting that God was able to raise him up, even from the dead; from whence also he received him in a figure.

When Abraham offered Isaac as a sacrifice, he believed that God would raise Isaac back because of Christ, who would come as a descendant of Isaac. In other words, Abraham believed in the coming Christ. God counted those who believed in Jesus Christ as righteousness just as he counted Abraham's faith as righteousness. (Rom 4:20-25, Jn 8:56)

Rom 4:20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God;

21 And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

22 And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness.

23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him;

24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

After all, the Old Testament describes Christ and prophesied that Christ would come. That Christ is Jesus. (Lk 24:25-27)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

571. By faith, Isaac blessed Jacob with Canaan, the land of coming of Christ (Heb 11:20)
Gen 27:27-29, Ex 3:8, Phil 2:10-11, Mt 2:6, Mic 5:2

The field blessed by the Lord means the land of Canaan. Isaac blessed Jacob, believing that the promise of many descendants and the land of Canaan, which he had received from Abraham, would be fulfilled in his posterity, although he did not get it during his lifetime. (Heb 11:20, Gen 27:27-29)

Heb 11:20 By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau concerning things to come.

Gen 27:27 And he came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, See, the smell of my son is as the smell of a field which the Lord hath blessed:

28 Therefore God give thee of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of corn and wine:

29 Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee: cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee.

God promised to lead the nation of Israel to Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Ex 3:8)

Ex 3:8 And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites.

As prophesied in the Old Testament, Christ came to Bethlehem, the land of Canaan. That Christ is Jesus. (Mic 5:2, Mt 2:6)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Mt 2:6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

572. Jacob predicted Christ will come through Judah (Heb 11:21)
Gen 49:8-10, Num 24:13-17, Mt 1:3, Rev 5:5

The prophet Balaam prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of Jacob. (Num 24:13-17)

Num 24:13 If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the commandment of the Lord, to do either good or bad of mine own mind; but what the Lord saith, that will I speak?

14 And now, behold, I go unto my people: come therefore, and I will advertise thee what this people shall do to thy people in the latter days.

15 And he took up his parable, and said, Balaam the son of Beor hath said, and the man whose eyes are open hath said:

16 He hath said, which heard the words of God, and knew the knowledge of the most High, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open:

17 I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth.

Jacob prophesied that Christ would come as a descendant of Judah. (Heb 22:21, Gen 49:8-10)

Heb 11:21 By faith Jacob, when he was a dying, blessed both the sons of Joseph; and worshipped, leaning upon the top of his staff.

Gen 49:8 Judah, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before thee.

9 Judah is a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up?

10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Christ came to this earth as a descendant of Judah. That Christ is Jesus. (Mt 1:3, Rev 5:5)

Mt 1:3 And Judas begat Phares and Zara of Thamar; and Phares begat Esrom; and Esrom begat Aram;

Rev 5:5 And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

573. Joseph wanted to be buried in Canaan, the land of coming of Christ (Heb 11:22)
Gen 50:24-26, Ex 13:19, Josh 24:32, Mt 2:6, Mic 5:2

On his deathbed, Joseph commanded the Israelites to bury himself in Canaan, the land where Christ would come.
(Heb 11:22, Gen 50:24-26)

Heb 11:22 By faith Joseph, when he died, made mention of the departing of the children of Israel; and gave commandment concerning his bones.

Gen 50:24 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I die: and God will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land unto the land which he sware to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

25 And Joseph took an oath of the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones from hence.

26 So Joseph died, being an hundred and ten years old: and they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt.

When Moses left Egypt, he brought the skull of Joseph to bury it in Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Ex 13:19)

Ex 13:19 And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him: for he had straitly sworn the children of Israel, saying, God will surely visit you; and ye shall carry up my bones away hence with you.

The Israelites buried the bones of Joseph in Canaan, the land where Christ would come. (Jos 24:32)

Jos 24:32 And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem, in a parcel of ground which Jacob bought of the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem for an hundred pieces of silver: and it became the inheritance of the children of Joseph.

As the Old Testament prophesied, Christ came to Bethlehem, the land of Canaan. That Christ is Jesus. (Mic 5:2, Mt 2:6)

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Mt 2:6 And thou Bethlehem, in the land of Juda, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.

574. Moses, who esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt (Heb 11:24-27)
Ex 2:11-15

Although Moses was the son of Pharaoh's princess, he knew that he was a Hebrew. Moses was also taught as a child by his parents about the coming Christ. So when he saw the Egyptian beating his brother, the Hebrew, he couldn't bear to see him, so he struck the Egyptian and killed him. In the end, Moses fled from Pharaoh and went to the land of Midian. (Ex 2:11-15)

Ex 2:11 And it came to pass in those days, when Moses was grown, that he went out unto his brethren, and looked on their burdens: and he spied an Egyptian smiting an Hebrew, one of his brethren.

12 And he looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no man, he slew the Egyptian, and hid him in the sand.

13 And when he went out the second day, behold, two men of the Hebrews strove together: and he said to him that did the wrong, Wherefore smitest thou thy fellow?

14 And he said, Who made thee a prince and a judge over us? intendest thou to kill me, as thou killedst the Egyptian? And Moses feared, and said, Surely this thing is known.

15 Now when Pharaoh heard this thing, he sought to slay Moses. But Moses fled from the face of Pharaoh, and dwelt in the land of Midian: and he sat down by a well.

Moses counted reproach for Christ's sake as a greater riches than all the treasures of Egypt. (Heb 11:24-27)

Heb 11:24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter;

25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;

26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.

27 By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.

575. Moses, who believed in Christ as the Passover lamb (Heb 11:28)
Ex 12:13-14, Rev 15:3, Jn 1:29,36, Rev 5:6, Rev 7:17

Moses and the Israelites were able to escape from Egypt by sprinkling the blood of the Passover lamb by God's command. (Heb 11:28, Ex 12:13-14)

Heb 11:28 Through faith he kept the passover, and the sprinkling of blood, lest he that destroyed the firstborn should touch them.

Ex 12:13 And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you, when I smite the land of Egypt.
14 And this day shall be unto you for a memorial; and ye shall keep it a feast to the Lord throughout your generations; ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever.

After Moses left Egypt, he sang the song of the Lamb and praised God. That is, Moses knew that Christ would come as the Lamb of God. (Rev 15:3)

Rev 15:3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints.

The Lamb of God came to this earth to take away the sins of the world. That is Jesus. (Jn 1:29,36)

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

As the Lamb of God, Jesus died to forgive our sins. (Rev 5:6)

Rev 5:6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.

We believe that Jesus, the Lamb of God, will be our shepherd and we will live with him forever in heaven. (Rev 7:17)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

576. All were baptized with Moses in the cloud and in the sea, (Heb 11:29)
Ex 14:22,27, 1 Cor 10:1-2, Rom 6:3-5, Jude 1:5

When the Israelites left Egypt, they crossed the Red Sea like dry land in faith in God. (Heb 11:29, Ex 14:22,27)

Heb 11:29 By faith they passed through the Red sea as by dry land: which the Egyptians assaying to do were drowned.

Ex 14:22 And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry ground: and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left.

27 And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and the Lord overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea.

The Israelites' crossing of the Red Sea under the clouds was a foreshadowing of the baptism they would receive with Christ. (1 Cor 10:1-2)

1 Cor 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that ye should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea;

2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;

By baptism we died with Christ Jesus and received new life. (Rom 6:3-5)

Rom 6:3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

577. People who overcame the world by faith of the coming Christ. (Heb 11:32-40)
Lk 24:25-27,44, Mt 11:13-14, Rom 1:2, Acts 28:23, Heb 12:1-2

Although the forefathers of faith in the Old Testament did not meet Christ, they overcame the world and endured the world's sufferings by believing in the coming Christ. (Heb 11:32-40)

Heb 11:32 And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets:
33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions.
34 Quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, turned to flight the armies of the aliens.
35 Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:
36 And others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings, yea, moreover of bonds and imprisonment:
37 They were stoned, they were sawn asunder, were tempted, were slain with the sword: they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins; being destitute, afflicted, tormented;
38 (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth.
39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise:
40 God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect.

The Old Testament describes the coming of Christ. (Lk 24:25-27, Rom 1:2, Acts 28:23)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:
26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?
27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

Now that we have learned faith through the forefathers of faith in the Old Testament, let us believe in Jesus, the Christ who has come to this earth, and look deeply. (Heb 12:1-2)

Heb 12:1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,
2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

578. Looking unto Jesus, the author and finisher of our faith, (Heb 12:2)
Phil 3:8-9,12, Jn 17:3, 1 Jn 5:20

We believe that Jesus is the Christ. Jesus will make our faith more perfect. So, we need to look deeply at Jesus who is the Christ. (Heb 12:2)

Heb 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

Nothing in the world can compare to knowing Jesus Christ. (Phil 3:8-9,12)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,
9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:
12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

Eternal life is to know the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom He have sent. (Jn 17:3, 1 Jn 5:20)

Jn 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

1 Jn 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

579. Let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which so easily ensnares us, and let us run with endurance the race that is set before us, (Heb 12:1)

Heb 12:2-4,12-13, Phil 3:12-14, 1 Cor 9:24-27, 1 Tim 6:12

We have countless witnesses who tell us what faith is. Now, let's deeply believe that Jesus is the Christ and do our best for the world evangelization that God has entrusted to us.

Heb 12:1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,

2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

3 For consider him that endured such contradiction of sinners against himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds.

4 Ye have not yet resisted unto blood, striving against sin.

12 Wherefore lift up the hands which hang down, and the feeble knees;

13 And make straight paths for your feet, lest that which is lame be turned out of the way; but let it rather be healed.

Phil 3:12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,

14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

1 Cor 9:24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.

25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible.

26 I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air:

27 But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

1 Tim 6:12 Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses.

580. We are receiving a kingdom which cannot be shaken, (Heb 12:18-29)

The ancient ancestors were punished by God for not obeying God's warnings on earth. At that time the Word of God shook the earth, but in the future God will shake everything that shakes. But since we have been given a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us please God.

Heb 12:18 For ye are not come unto the mount that might be touched, and that burned with fire, nor unto blackness, and darkness, and tempest,

19 And the sound of a trumpet, and the voice of words; which voice they that heard intreated that the word should not be spoken to them any more:

20 (For they could not endure that which was commanded, And if so much as a beast touch the mountain, it shall be stoned, or thrust through with a dart:

21 And so terrible was the sight, that Moses said, I exceedingly fear and quake:)

22 But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels,

23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect,

24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.

25 See that ye refuse not him that speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused him that spake on earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from him that speaketh from heaven:

26 Whose voice then shook the earth: but now he hath promised, saying, Yet once more I shake not the earth only, but also heaven.

27 And this word, Yet once more, signifieth the removing of those things that are shaken, as of things that are made, that those things which cannot be shaken may remain.

28 Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear:

29 For our God is a consuming fire.

581. Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever. (Heb 13:8)
Ps 102:26-27, Mal 3:6, Isa 44:6, Rev 22:13

God is the same forever. (Ps 102:26-27, Isa 44:6, Mal 3:6, Rev 22:13)

Ps 102:26 They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed:

27 But thou art the same, and thy years shall have no end.

Isa 44:6 Thus saith the Lord the King of Israel, and his redeemer the Lord of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God.

Mal 3:6 For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Rev 22:13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

Jesus is the same forever like God.+ (Heb 13:8, Rev 1:17-18, Rev 2:8)

Heb 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.

Rev 1:17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:

18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.

Rev 2:8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;

583. Therefore by Him let us continually offer the sacrifice of praise to God, that is, the fruit of our lips, giving thanks to His name.(Heb 13:15)

It is no longer offered to God by the priests, but through Christ. (Heb 13:15, 1 Pt 2:5, 1 Pt 4:11)

Heb 13:15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

1 Pt 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

1 Pt 4:11 If any man speak, let him speak as the oracles of God; if any man minister, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

Now we must continue to offer sacrifices of praise to God through Christ. (Eph 5:19-20, Col 3:16-17)

Eph 5:19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;

20 Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;

Col 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

584. Now may the God of peace who brought up our Lord Jesus from the dead, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, (Heb 13:20)
Jn 10:11, 1 Pt 5:3-4, Isa 63:10-14, Heb 9:19-20, Ex 24:8

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that God would rescue and lead God's people through Christ the True Shepherd. (Isa 63:10-14)

Isa 63:10 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

Also in the Old Testament it was foretold that our sins would be forgiven through the blood of the eternal covenant. (Heb 9:19-20, Ex 24:8)

Heb 9:19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people,
20 Saying, This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you.

Ex 24:8 And Moses took the blood, and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant, which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words.

Jesus is the Great Shepherd, the Christ, who raised us from the dead with his own blood. (Heb 13:20, Jn 10:11, 1 Pt 5:3)

Heb 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant,

Jn 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

1 Pt 5:3 Neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being examples to the flock.

585. My brethren, count it all joy when you fall into various trials, (James 1:2-4)
586. If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask of God, (Jam 1:5)
587. Let the lowly brother glory in his exaltation, but the rich in his humiliation, because as a flower of the field he will pass away. (Jam 1:9-11)
588. Blessed is the man who endures temptation; (Jam 1:12)
591. The Perfect Law of Liberty (James 1:25)
592. Our glorious Lord, Jesus Christ (James 2:1)
593. So Speak, And So Act, As Those Who Are To Be Judged By The Law Of Freedom (James 2:12)
594. Faith Also, If It Has No Works, Is Dead, Being By Itself. (James 2:17)
595. The Wisdom From Above (James 3:17)595. The Wisdom From Above (James 3:17)
596. The Holy Spirit Loves Us Until He Envy (James 4:4-5)
597. Come Close To God And He Will Come Close To You (James 4:8)
598. The lawgiver and judge are God alone.(James 4:12)
599. Therefore Be Patient, Brothers And Sisters, Until The Coming Of The Lord.(James 5:7-11)
600. Those who turn sinners from the error of their way (James 5:19-20)

585. My brethren, count it all joy when you fall into various trials, (James 1:2-4)
1 Cor 10:13, 1 Pt 1:5-6, Ecc 1:10, 2 Cor 5:17

God allows us to be tested to make us whole. (James 1:2-4; 1 Corinthians 10:13)

James 1:2 My brethren, count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations;

3 Knowing this, that the trying of your faith worketh patience.

4 But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

1 Corinthians 10:13 There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.

God also protects us when we are tempted because we believe in Jesus as the Christ. (1 Peter 1:5)

1 Peter 1:5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

God allows us to be tempted to come to know Christ daily. Christ is the Word of God and the bread of our life.
(Deuteronomy 8:3, John 1:14, John 6:48)

Deuteronomy 8:3 And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

John 6:48 I am that bread of life.

586. If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask of God, who gives to all liberally and without reproach, and it will be given to him. (Jam 1:5)

Prov 2:3-6, Prov 1:20-23, Prov 8:1,22-26,35-36, Mt 4:17,23

When we ask God for wisdom, God gives us wisdom. (James 1:5)

James 1:5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.

The Old Testament proverb says that wisdom spreads the gospel in the streets. It is also said that if you listen to the voice of this wisdom, you will come to know God. (Prov 1:20-23, Prov 2:2-6)

Prov 1:20 Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets:

21 She crieth in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she uttereth her words, saying,
22 How long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? and the scorers delight in their scorning, and fools hate knowledge?

23 Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

Prov 2:2 So that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding;

3 Yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding;

4 If thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures;

5 Then shalt thou understand the fear of the Lord, and find the knowledge of God.

6 For the Lord giveth wisdom: out of his mouth cometh knowledge and understanding.

This wisdom in Proverbs refers to Christ who was with God. He who obtains this wisdom finds life. (Prov 8:1,22-26,35-36)

Prov 8:1 Doth not wisdom cry? and understanding put forth her voice?

22 The Lord possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old.

23 I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was.

24 When there were no depths, I was brought forth; when there were no fountains abounding with water.

25 Before the mountains were settled, before the hills was I brought forth:

26 While as yet he had not made the earth, nor the fields, nor the highest part of the dust of the world.

35 For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the Lord.

36 But he that sinneth against me wrongeth his own soul: all they that hate me love death.

Jesus is the true wisdom of God, the Christ. (Mt 4:17,23)

Mt 4:17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.

587. Let the lowly brother glory in his exaltation, but the rich in his humiliation, because as a flower of the field he will pass away. (Jam 1:9-11)

James 1:11, Isa 40:8, Lk 14:8-9, Mt 23:10

We must not exalt ourselves. The height we thought we were will disappear like grass. Only the word of God will stand forever. (James 1:9-11, Isa 40:8)

James 1:9 Let the brother of low degree rejoice in that he is exalted:

10 But the rich, in that he is made low: because as the flower of the grass he shall pass away.

11 For the sun is no sooner risen with a burning heat, but it withereth the grass, and the flower thereof falleth, and the grace of the fashion of it perisheth: so also shall the rich man fade away in his ways.

Isa 40:8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

The only one high is Christ. (Lk 14:8-9, Mt 23:10)

Lk 14:8 When thou art bidden of any man to a wedding, sit not down in the highest room; lest a more honourable man than thou be bidden of him;

9 And he that bade thee and him come and say to thee, Give this man place; and thou begin with shame to take the lowest room.

Mt 23:10 Neither be ye called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ.

588. Blessed is the man who endures temptation; for when he has been approved, he will receive the crown of life which the Lord has promised to those who love Him. (Jam 1:12)
Heb 10:36, Jam 5:11, 1 Pt 3:14-15, 1 Pt 4:14, 1 Cor 9:24-27

God's will is to believe in Jesus as the Christ and to proclaim Jesus as the Christ. Blessed are those who endure the temptation brought about by this. Because they will receive the crown of life. (James 1:12, Heb 10:36, 1 Pt 3:14-15, 1 Pt 4:14)

James 1:12 2 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.

Heb 10:36 For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.

1 Pt 3:14 But and if ye suffer for righteousness' sake, happy are ye: and be not afraid of their terror, neither be troubled;

15 But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear:

1 Pt 4:14 If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified.

We can see the results of Job's patience in the Old Testament and believe that greater blessings will be given to us than the results. (James 5:11)

James 5:11 Behold, we count them happy which endure. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.

Now that the crown of life is reserved for us, let's do our best to spread the gospel. (1 Cor 9:24-27)

1 Cor 9:24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.
25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible.

26 I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air:

27 But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

591. The Perfect Law of Liberty (James 1:25)

Jer 31:33, Ps 19:7, Jn 8:32, Rom 8:2, 2 Cor 3:17, Ps 2:12, Jn 8:38-40

God's law gives life to our souls. (Ps 19:7)

Ps 19:7 The law of the Lord is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the Lord is sure, making wise the simple.

God promised in the Old Testament to put His laws in our hearts. (Jer 31:33)

Jer 31:33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

The perfect law that sets you free is the gospel of Christ. This gospel sets us free and enables us to do God's will. (James 1:25, Jn 8:32, Rom 8:2, 2 Cor 3:17)

James 1:25 But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.

Jn 8:32 And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

Rom 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

2 Cor 3:17 Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.

Blessed is he who kisses Christ, the Son of God. (Ps 2:12)

Ps 2:12 Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in him.

592. Our glorious Lord, Jesus Christ (James 2:1)
Lk 2:32, Jn 1:14, Heb 1:3, 1 Cor 2:8

Jesus Christ is the Lord of glory of Israel and of all Gentiles. (James 2:1, Lk 2:32, 1 Cor 2:8)

James 2:1 My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with respect of persons.

Lk 2:32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

1 Cor 2:8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

Jesus is God, the Son of God. (Jn 1:14, Heb 1:3)

Jn 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

593. So Speak, And So Act, As Those Who Are To Be Judged By The Law Of Freedom (James 2:12)
James 2:8, Jn 13:34, Jn 15:13, Mt 5:44, Rom 5:8

We will be judged by the law of liberty, the gospel of Christ. (James 2:12)

James 2:12 So speak ye, and so do, as they that shall be judged by the law of liberty.

The supreme law that Christ commanded is love that saves the soul. (James 2:8, Jn 13:34, Jn 15:13, Mt 5:44)

James 2:8 If ye fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well:

Jn 13:34 A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.

Jn 15:13 Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

Mt 5:44 But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you;

God gave for us the love of killing His Son to save us. Christ gave us the love to lay down his life in order to save us. (Rom 5:8)

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

594. Faith Also, If It Has No Works, Is Dead, Being By Itself. (James 2:17)
Jn 15:4-5, Jn 8:56, James 2:21, Heb 11:31, James 2:25

If people say they believe that Jesus is the Christ, but do not act of faith, they do not believe. (James 2:17)

James 2:17 Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone.

Christ is our lifeline. Apart from Christ, nothing can be done. (Jn 15:4-5)

Jn 15:4-5 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me.

5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.

Abraham could offer Isaac to God because he believed that Christ would come as a descendant of Isaac. That is, he believed that God would raise Isaac back to life because of Christ. (James 2:21, Jn 8:56)

James 2:21 Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar?

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

Rahab the prostitute also believed that Christ would come to the land of Canaan through rumors and hid the spies. (Heb 11:31, James 2:25)

Heb 11:31 By faith the harlot Rahab perished not with them that believed not, when she had received the spies with peace.

James 2:25 Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way?

595. The Wisdom From Above (James 3:17)

1 Cor 2:6-7, 1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:2-3, Prov 1:2, Prov 8:1,22-31

James 3:17 But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.

The true wisdom of God is Christ Himself. (1 Cor 2:6-7, 1 Cor 1:24)

1 Cor 2:6 Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought:

7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

1 Cor 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Christ is the mystery of God, in whom all wisdom and knowledge are hidden. (Col 2:2-3)

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

The wisdom of God prophesied in the Old Testament Proverbs came to this earth, and that person is Jesus. (Prov 1:2, Prov 8:1, Prov 8:22-31)

Prov 1:2 To know wisdom and instruction; to perceive the words of understanding;

Prov 8:1 Doth not wisdom cry? and understanding put forth her voice?

Prov 8:22 The Lord possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old.

23 I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was.

24 When there were no depths, I was brought forth; when there were no fountains abounding with water.

25 Before the mountains were settled, before the hills was I brought forth:

26 While as yet he had not made the earth, nor the fields, nor the highest part of the dust of the world.

27 When he prepared the heavens, I was there: when he set a compass upon the face of the depth:

28 When he established the clouds above: when he strengthened the fountains of the deep:

29 When he gave to the sea his decree, that the waters should not pass his commandment: when he appointed the foundations of the earth:

30 Then I was by him, as one brought up with him: and I was daily his delight, rejoicing always before him;

31 Rejoicing in the habitable part of his earth; and my delights were with the sons of men.

596. The Holy Spirit Loves Us Until He Envy (James 4:4-5)
Ex 20:5, Ex 34:14, Zech 8:2

When we love the world, the Holy Spirit within us is jealous of what we love. Because the Holy Spirit loves us. (James 4:4-5)

James 4:4 Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.
5 Do ye think that the scripture saith in vain, The spirit that dwelleth in us lusteth to envy?

God is a jealous God. We must not love anything other than God. (Ex 20:5, Ex 34:14, Zech 8:2)

Ex 20:5 Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

Ex 34:14 For thou shalt worship no other god: for the Lord, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God:

Zech 8:2 Thus saith the Lord of hosts; I was jealous for Zion with great jealousy, and I was jealous for her with great fury.

597. Come Close To God And He Will Come Close To You (James 4:8)
Lev 10:3, Deut 4:7, Ps 73:28, Isa 29:13, Mt 27:50-51, Jn 14:6, Heb 7:19

We must draw near to God. That is a blessing for us. (James 4:8, Jer 10:3, Deut 4:7, Ps 73:28)

James 4:8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.

Jer 10:3 For the customs of the people are vain: for one cutteth a tree out of the forest, the work of the hands of the workman, with the axe.

Deut 4:7 For what nation is there so great, who hath God so nigh unto them, as the Lord our God is in all things that we call upon him for?

Ps 73:28 But it is good for me to draw near to God: I have put my trust in the Lord God, that I may declare all thy works.

People do not know how to draw near to God. People only tried to draw near to God by the commandments of men. (Isa 29:13)

Isa 29:13 Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:

Jesus is the only way man can get closer to God. He opened the way to meet God by Jesus dying for us on the cross. (Mt 27:50-51, Jn 14:6, Heb 7:19)

Mt 27:50 Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

51 And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent;

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Heb 7:19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.

598. The lawgiver and judge are God alone.(James 4:12)
Isa 33:22, Heb 12:23, Rom 14:4, 1 Cor 4:5

James 4:12 There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy: who art thou that judgest another?

Isa 33:22 For the Lord is our judge, the Lord is our lawgiver, the Lord is our king; he will save us.

Heb 12:23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect,

Rom 14:4 Who art thou that judgest another man's servant? to his own master he standeth or falleth. Yea, he shall be holden up: for God is able to make him stand.

1 Cor 4:5 Therefore judge nothing before the time, until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts: and then shall every man have praise of God.

599. Therefore Be Patient, Brothers And Sisters, Until The Coming Of The Lord.(James 5:7-11)
Rom 13:11, Heb 11:35-39, 1 Cor 16:22, Rev 22:20

We may suffer when we proclaim that Jesus is the Christ. We must endure this suffering until the Lord comes.
(James 5:7-11)

James 5:7 Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.

8 Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh.

9 Grudge not one against another, brethren, lest ye be condemned: behold, the judge standeth before the door.

10 Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience.

11 Behold, we count them happy which endure. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.

The forefathers of faith in the Old Testament suffered persecution because they believed and preached the coming Christ. But they endured the persecution to the point of death. (Heb 11:35-39)

Heb 11:35 Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:

36 And others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings, yea, moreover of bonds and imprisonment:

37 They were stoned, they were sawn asunder, were tempted, were slain with the sword: they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins; being destitute, afflicted, tormented;

38 (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth.

39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise:

Now the day of the Lord's return is near. We must love the Lord more. (Rom 13:11, 1 Cor 16:22, Rev 22:20)

Rom 13:11 And that, knowing the time, that now it is high time to awake out of sleep: for now is our salvation nearer than when we believed.

1 Cor 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

Rev 22:20 He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

600. Those who turn sinners from the error of their way (James 5:19-20)
Ezk 3:21, Dan 12:3

Whoever tells the unbelievers that Jesus is the Christ so that they may be saved will shine like the stars in the sky forever.

James 5:19 Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him;
20 Let him know, that he which converteth the sinner from the error of his way shall save a soul from death, and shall hide a multitude of sins.

Ezk 3:21 Nevertheless if thou warn the righteous man, that the righteous sin not, and he doth not sin, he shall surely live, because he is warned; also thou hast delivered thy soul.

Dan 12:3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.

1Peter

Bible

- 601. The Works Of The Trinity God (1 Pt 1:2)
- 602. God Who Raised Jesus Christ From The Dead (1 Pt 1:3)
- 603. Christ, who is the living hope (1 Pt 1:3)
- 604. Though you have not seen Him, you love Him, and though you do not see Him now, but believe (1 Pt 1:8)
- 605. obtaining as the outcome of your faith, the salvation of your souls. (1 Pt 1:9)
- 606. Christ, who the prophets prophesied, searched and inquired, (1 Pt 1:10-11)
- 608. The Scriptures that were written by the Holy Spirit through the prophets (1 Pt 1:12)
- 609. You were redeemed with the precious blood of Christ. (1 Pt 1:18-19)
- 610. For He was foreknown before the foundation of the world, but has appeared in these last times for the sake of you (1 Pt 1:20)
- 611. This is the word which by the gospel was preached to you. (1 Pt 1:23-25)
- 612. Desire the pure milk of the word (1 Pt 2:2)
- 613. Christ, who is the living stone (1 Pt 2:4-8)
- 614. You are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God's own possession,(1 Pt 2:9)
- 615. Christ, who let us die to sin and live for righteousness (1 Pt 2:24)
- 616. Christ, Shepherd and Guardian of our souls (1 Pt 2:25)
- 617. Always being ready to make a defense to everyone who asks you to give an account for the hope that is in you, (1 Pt 3:15)
- 618. We were saved by being baptized with Christ (1 Pt 3:20-21)
- 619. Christ, who is at the right hand of God, having gone into heaven (1 Pt 3:22)
- 620. The end of all things is near; therefore, be of sound judgment and sober spirit for the purpose of prayer. (1 Pt 4:7)
- 621. In all things, God may be glorified through Jesus Christ (1 Pt 4:11)
- 622. Rejoice inasmuch as you participate in the sufferings of Christ (1 Pt 4:13)
- 623. Resist the devil! (1 Pt 5:8-9)

601. The Works Of The Trinity God (1 Pt 1:2)

1 Pt 1:20, Gen 3:15, Jn 3:16, Acts 2:17, Acts 5:32, Heb 10:19-20, Heb 9:26, 28

1 Pt 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

God the Father promised to send Christ before the foundation of the world to save us. (1 Pt 1:20, Gen 3:15)

1 Pt 1:20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,

Gen 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

God the Father sent that Christ to this earth. (Jn 3:16)

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

The Holy Spirit has made us realize and believe that Jesus is the Christ. (Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13)

Jn 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Jn 15:26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:

Jn 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.

God the Holy Spirit came upon those who believed in Jesus as the Christ. (Acts 2:17, Acts 5:30-32)

Acts 2:17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

God the Son, Jesus accomplished all the work of Christ by dying on the cross for us. In other words, Jesus destroyed Satan's works, forgave all our sins, and opened the way to meet God. (Jn 19:30, Heb 19:19-20, Heb 9:26,28, Jn 14:6, 1 Jn 3:8)

Jn 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Heb 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,

20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

Heb 9:26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the

world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

1 Jn 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

602. God Who Raised Jesus Christ From The Dead (1 Pt 1:3)

Acts 2:32, Acts 3:15, Acts 4:10, Acts 5:30, Acts 10:40, Acts 13:30, Acts 13:34-38

God showed us that Jesus is the Christ by raising him from the dead.

1 Pt 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

Acts 2:32 This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.

Acts 3:15 And killed the Prince of life, whom God hath raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses.

Acts 4:10 Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom ye crucified, whom God raised from the dead, even by him doth this man stand here before you whole.

Acts 5:30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

Acts 10:40 Him God raised up the third day, and shewed him openly;

Acts 13:30 But God raised him from the dead:

Acts 13:34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David.

35 Wherefore he saith also in another psalm, Thou shalt not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption:

37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

603. Christ, who is the living hope (1 Pt 1:3)
1 Cor 15:20-23, Titus 3:6-7

God showed us that Jesus is the Christ by resurrecting Jesus. Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ will be resurrected like Jesus.

1 Pt 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

1 Cor 15:20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.

22 For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.

23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

Titus 3:6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;

7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

604. Though you have not seen Him, you love Him, and though you do not see Him now, but believe (1 Pt 1:8)
2 Tim 4:8, Heb 11:24-27, Jn 8:56, Eph 6:24, 1 Cor 16:22

Even the forefathers of faith did not see Christ, but they loved Him. (Heb 11:24-27, Jn 8:56)

Heb 11:24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter;
25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;
26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.
27 By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.

Jn 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

Even we who believe that Jesus is the Christ cannot see him now, but we love him. (1 Pt 1:8, Eph 6:24)

1 Pt 1:8 Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory:

Eph 6:24 Grace be with all them that love our Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity. Amen.

Cursed are those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ and do not love Him. However, the crown of righteousness is reserved for those who believe that Jesus is the Christ, love Jesus, and long for His return. (1 Cor 16:22, 2 Tim 4:8)

1 Cor 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

2 Tim 4:8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

605. obtaining as the outcome of your faith, the salvation of your souls. (1 Pt 1:9)
1 Jn 5:1, Rom 6:22, Ps 62:1, Heb 10:39

If we believe in Jesus as the Christ, we will eventually be saved.

1 Pt 1:9 Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.

1 Jn 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Rom 6:22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life.

Heb 10:39 But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.

606. Christ, who the prophets prophesied, searched and inquired, (1 Pt 1:10-11)
Lk 24:25-27, 44-45, Mt 26:24, Acts 3:18, Acts 26:22-23, Acts 28:23

The Old Testament prophets diligently studied when Christ would suffer and be resurrected to save us. (1 Pt 1:10-11)

1 Pt 1:10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.

The Old Testament explains and prophesies about Christ. That Christ is Jesus. (Lk 24:25-27,44-45, Mt 26:24, Acts 3:18)

Lk 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

Mt 26:24 The Son of man goeth as it is written of him: but woe unto that man by whom the Son of man is betrayed! it had been good for that man if he had not been born.

Acts 3:18 But those things, which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

Paul explained the Old Testament and testified that the Christ who was to come was Jesus. (Acts 26:22-23, Acts 28:23)

Acts 26:22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:

23 That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

Acts 28:23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening.

608. The Scriptures that were written by the Holy Spirit through the prophets (1 Pt 1:12)
2 Tim 3:16, 2 Pt 1:21, 2 Sam 23:2, 2 Tim 3:15, Jn 20:31

The Old Testament prophets, with the help of the Holy Spirit, wrote the Bible for us. (1 Pt 1:12, 2 Tim 3:16, 2 Pt 1:21, 2 Sam 23:2)

1 Pt 1:12 Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

2 Tim 3:16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:

2 Pt 1:21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

2 Sam 23:2 The Spirit of the Lord spake by me, and his word was in my tongue.

The Bible explains that people are saved by believing in Jesus as the Christ. (2 Tim 3:15, Jn 20:31)

2 Tim 3:15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

Jn 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

609. You were redeemed with precious blood of Christ. (1 Pt 1:18-19)
Heb 9:12, Jn 1:29, 1 Tim 2:6, Gal 3:13, Rom 3:24, Eph 1:7, Rev 5:9

1 Pt 1:18 Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers;
19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

Heb 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

1 Tim 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

Rom 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

Rev 5:9 And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;

610. For He was foreknown before the foundation of the world, but has appeared in these last times for the sake of you (1 Pt 1:20)

1 Jn 1:1-2, Acts 2:23, Rom 16:25-26, 2 Tim 1:9, Gal 4:4-5

Christ was foretold from before the foundation of the world, and has appeared for us in these last days. (1 Pt 1:20, 1 Jn 1:1-2, Rom 16:25-26, Gal 4:4-5)

1 Pt 1:20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith.

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,
5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

Christ died on the cross for us according to God's plan long ago. (Acts 2:23, 2 Tim 1:9)

Acts 2:23 Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:

2 Tim 1:9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,

611. This is the word which by the gospel was preached to you. (1 Pt 1:23-25)
Mt 16:16, Acts 2:36, Acts 3:18,20, Acts 4:12, Acts 5:29-32

Peter says that the eternal Word of God spoken of in the Old Testament is the gospel he preached. (1 Pt 1:23-25)

1 Pt 1:23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.

24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:

25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

Peter was the first to understand the gospel that Jesus is the Christ. (Mt 16:16)

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

After Peter believed that Jesus was the Christ, he preached only the gospel that Jesus was the Christ. (Acts 2:36, Acts 3:18,20, Acts 4:12, Acts 5:29-32)

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made the same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 3:18 But those things, which God before had shewed by the mouth of all his prophets, that Christ should suffer, he hath so fulfilled.

20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Acts 5:29 Then Peter and the other apostles answered and said, We ought to obey God rather than men.

30 The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.

31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.

612. Desire the pure milk of the word (1 Pt 2:2)

Heb 12:2, Jn 5:39, Lk 24:27,44, 1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:2, Col 3:1-3

We must deeply believe that Jesus is the Christ through the Word of God, which is the spiritual milk. Through this faith we are saved. (1 Pt 2:2, Heb 12:2)

1 Pt 2:2 As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:

Heb 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

We must deeply understand that the Christ prophesied in the Old Testament is Jesus. (Jn 5:39, Lk 24:27,44)

Jn 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Lk 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

Christ is the power of God, the wisdom of God, and the mystery of God. In Christ are hidden all the blessings of God. (1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:2, Col 3:1-3)

1 Cor 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

Col 3:1 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.

2 Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.

3 For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

613. Christ, who is the living stone (1 Pt 2:4-8)
Isa 28:16, Ps 118:22, Isa 8:14

In the Old Testament, it is prophesied that those who believe in Christ, the living stone, will live, and those who do not will stumble upon that stone. (Isa 28;16, Ps 118:22, Isa 8:14)

Isa 28:16 Therefore thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

Ps 118:22 The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner.

Isa 8:14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

Jesus is the Christ, the living stone, prophesied in the Old Testament. (1 Pt 2:4-8)

1 Pt 2:4 To whom coming, as unto a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious,
5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.

7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,

8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.

614. You are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God's own possession,(1 Pt 2:9)
Ex 19:5-6, Acts 1:8, Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15, Isa 52:7

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ become royal priests. (1 Pt 2:9, Ex 19:5-6)

1 Pt 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

Ex 19:5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine:

6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.

Now, as royal priests, we proclaim to the world that Jesus is the Christ. (Isa 52:7, Acts 1:8, Mt 28:18-20, Mk 16:15)

Isa 52:7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Mk 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

615. Christ, who let us die to sin and live for righteousness (1 Pt 2:24)
2 Cor 5:15, Gal 2:20, Rom 6:11, Rom 7:6

Jesus paid for our sins by dying on the cross. Now we are dead and Christ lives in us. Now we must live for Jesus and for evangelism.

1 Pt 2:24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

2 Cor 5:15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

Gal 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

Rom 6:11 Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Rom 7:6 But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.

616. Christ, Shepherd and Guardian of our souls (1 Pt 2:25)
Isa 40:10-11, Ezk 34:23, Jn 10:11,14-15

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would be our true Shepherd and lead us. (Isa 40;10-11, Ezk 34:23)

Isa 40;10 Behold, the Lord God will come with strong hand, and his arm shall rule for him: behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

11 He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young.

Ezk 34:23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd.

Jesus is the true Shepherd, the Christ, who gave himself up to save us. (Jn 10:11,14-15, 1 Pt 2:25)

Jn 10:11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.

1 Pt 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

617. Always being ready to make a defense to everyone who asks you to give an account for the hope that is in you, (1 Pt 3:15)

Acts 28:20, Col 1:27, 1 Tim 1:1, Titus 1:2, 1 Pt 1:3, Eph 6:19

Christ is our hope. (Acts 28:20, Col 1:27, 1 Tim 1:1)

Acts 28:20 For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see you, and to speak with you: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain.

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

1 Tim 1:1 Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ by the commandment of God our Saviour, and Lord Jesus Christ, which is our hope;

We who believe in Jesus as the Christ have the hope of eternal life. (Titus 1:2, 1 Pt 1:3)

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;

1 Pt 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

We must always be ready to preach Christ, our hope. (1 Pt 3:15, Eph 6:19)

1 Pt 3:15 But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear:

Eph 6:19 And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel,

618. We were saved by being baptized with Christ (1 Pt 3:20-21)
Rom 6:3-4, Gal 3:27, Col 2:12

In baptism we die with Christ and are raised with Christ.

1 Pt 3:20 Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.

21 The like figure whereunto even baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:

Rom 6:3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

Gal 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

Col 2:12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

619. Christ, who is at the right hand of God, having gone into heaven (1 Pt 3:22)

Ps 110:1, Rom 8:34, Mk 16:19, Col 3:1, Heb 1:3, Mt 28:18, 1 Cor 15:24, Eph 1:20-21

Christ ascended into heaven and sits at the right hand of God. (Ps 110:1, Rom 8:34, Mk 16:19, Col 3:1, Heb 1:3)

Ps 110:1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.

Rom 8:34 Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

Mk 16:19 So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

Col 3:1 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:

Christ, who sits at the right hand of God, rules all things. (1 Pt 3:22, Mt 28:18, 1 Cor 15:24, Eph 1:20-21)

1 Pt 3:22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

1 Cor 15:24 Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.

Eph 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:

620. The end of all things is near; therefore, be of sound judgment and sober spirit for the purpose of prayer. (1 Pt 4:7)

Rom 13:11-14, 1 Cor 7:29, James 5:8-9, 1 Jn 2:18

1 Pt 4:7 But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer.

Rom 13:11 And that, knowing the time, that now it is high time to awake out of sleep: for now is our salvation nearer than when we believed.

12 The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light.

13 Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying.

14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

1 Cor 7:29 But this I say, brethren, the time is short: it remaineth, that both they that have wives be as though they had none;

James 5:8 Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh.

9 Grudge not one against another, brethren, lest ye be condemned: behold, the judge standeth before the door.

1 Jn 2:18 Little children, it is the last time: and as ye have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time.

621. In all things God may be glorified through Jesus Christ (1 Pt 4:11)

Rom 16:27, Eph 5:20, Jude 1:25

1 Pt 4:11 If any man speak, let him speak as the oracles of God; if any man minister, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

Rom 16:27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

Eph 5:20 Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;

Jude 1:25 To the only wise God our Saviour, be glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen.

622. Rejoice inasmuch as you participate in the sufferings of Christ (1 Pt 4:13)
Mt 5:11, Col 1:24, Acts 5:41, 2 Cor 1:5, Phil 3:10-11

Rejoice if you suffer because of believing and preaching that Jesus is the Christ. Christ will comfort us and our joy will be great in heaven.

1 Pt 4:13 But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.

Mt 5:11 Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake.

Col 1:24 Who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up that which is behind of the afflictions of Christ in my flesh for his body's sake, which is the church:

Acts 5:41 And they departed from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for his name.

2 Cor 1:5 For as the sufferings of Christ abound in us, so our consolation also aboundeth by Christ.

Phil 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

623. Resist the devil ! (1 Pt 5:8-9)

2 Cor 4:4, 1 Jn 3:8, James 4:7, Eph 4:27, Eph 6:11

The devil deceives us so that we don't realize that Jesus is the Christ. (2 Cor 4:4)

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

Jesus came to this earth and destroyed the works of the devil. (1Jn 3:8)

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Therefore, we must resist the devil so that he cannot take advantage of it. (1Pt 5:8-9, James 4:7, Eph 6:11)

1Pt 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

9 Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.

James 4:7 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

Eph 6:11 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

- 624. The righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ (2 Pt 1:1)
- 625. Grace and peace be multiplied to you in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord, (2 Pt 1:2)
- 626. The coming of our Lord Jesus Christ (2 Pt 1:16)
- 627. Christ, who received honor and glory from God the Father (2 Pt 1:17)
- 628. The words that were spoken beforehand by the holy prophets and apostles (2 Pt 3:2)
- 629. The Lord is not willing for any to perish, but for all to come to repentance.(2 Pt 3:9)
- 630. The day of the Lord will come like a thief, (2 Pt 3:10)
- 631. Looking for and hastening the coming of the day of God (2 Pt 3:12)
- 632, Grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord (2 Pt 3:18)

624. the righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ (2 Pt 1:1)
Mt 3:15, Jn 1:29, Rom 1:17, Rom 3:21-22,25-26, Rom 5:1

The revelation of God's righteousness was foretold in the Old Testament. (Rom 1:17, Rom 3:21)

Rom 1:17 For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.

Rom 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

Jesus is the Christ who accomplished the righteousness of God by taking on the sins of the world. (Mt 3:15, Jn 1:29)

Mt 3:15 And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness. Then he suffered him.

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

The righteousness of God has been fulfilled for those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 3:22,25-26, Rom 5:1, 2 Pt 1:1)

Rom 3:22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

25 Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;

26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

2 Pt 1:1 Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ:

625. Grace and peace be multiplied to you in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord, (2 Pt 1:2)
Hos 2:20, Hos 6:3, Jn 17:3,25, Phil 3:8, 2 Pt 1:8, 2 Pt 2:20, 2 Pt 3:18, 1 Jn 5:20, Jn 17:21

The Old Testament tells us to strive to know the Lord. (Hos 6:3)

Hos 6:3 Then shall we know, if we follow on to know the Lord: his going forth is prepared as the morning; and he shall come unto us as the rain, as the latter and former rain unto the earth.

When we deeply know that Jesus is the Christ, we come to know God more. (Jn 17:3,25, 1Jn 5:20, Jn 17:21)

Jn 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.
25 O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee: but I have known thee, and these have known that thou hast sent me.

1 Jn 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

Jn 17:21 That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me.

The more we know God and Jesus, the more grace and peace we receive. (2 Pt 1:2)

2 Pt 1:2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,

The knowledge of Christ Jesus is the noblest. (Phil 3:8)

Phil 3:8 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,

We are to grow in the knowledge of Christ. (2 Pt 3:18)

2 Pt 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

626. The coming of our Lord Jesus Christ (2 Pt 1:16)
Acts 1:11, Mt 24:30, Mk 14:62, 1 Thess 4:16-17, Rev 1:7

The Lord Jesus Christ is coming again with power and great glory.

2 Pt 1:16 For we have not followed cunningly devised fables, when we made known unto you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of his majesty.

Acts 1:11 Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.

Mt 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

Mk 14:62 And Jesus said, I am: and ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

1 Thess 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

Rev 1:7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.

627. Christ, who received honor and glory from God the Father (2 Pt 1:17)
Mt 3:16-17, Mt 17:5, Ps 2:7-9, Ps 8:5, Heb 2:9-10, Eph 1:20-22

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would send his Son to the ministry of Christ. (Ps 2:7-9)

Ps 2:7 I will declare the decree: the Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.
8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.
9 Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would cause Christ to die for us and give him glory and honor. (Ps 8:5)

Ps 8:5 For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels, and hast crowned him with glory and honour.

As the Son of God, Jesus became the Lamb of God and received honor and glory from God. (2 Pt 1:17, Mt 3:16-17, Mt 17:5)

2 Pt 1:17 For he received from God the Father honour and glory, when there came such a voice to him from the excellent glory, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Mt 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:
17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Mt 17:5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

Jesus is the Christ who received glory and honor from God by dying on the cross for us. (Heb 2:9-10)

Heb 2:9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.
10 For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.

God raised Jesus from the dead and exalted Him above every name. (Eph 1:20-22)

Eph 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,
21 Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:
22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

628. The words that were spoken beforehand by the holy prophets and apostles (2 Pt 3:2) Rom 1:2, Lk 1:70-71, Acts 3:20-21, Acts 13:32-33, Rom 3:21-22, Rom 16:25-26

2 Pt 3:2 That ye may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour:

This gospel had already foretold through the Old Testament prophets that the Son of God would come to save us. (Rom 1:2, Lk 1:70, Acts 3:20-21, Acts 13:32-33)

Rom 1:2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

Lk 1:70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:

Acts 3:20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

Acts 13:32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers,

33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.

Christ has come, witnessed by the law and the prophets. That Christ is Jesus. The righteousness of God comes to all who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (Rom 3:21-22, Rom 16:25-26)

Rom 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

Rom 16:25 Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

629. The Lord is not willing for any to perish, but for all to come to repentance.(2 Pt 3:9)
Ezk 18:23,32, Ezk 33:11, 1 Tim 2:4

2 Pt 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

Ezk 18:23 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

32 For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord God: wherefore turn yourselves, and live ye.

Ezk 33:11 Say unto them, As I live, saith the Lord God, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways; for why will ye die, O house of Israel?

1 Tim 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

630. The day of the Lord will come like a thief, (2 Pt 3:10)
Mt 24:42, 1 Thess 5:2, Rev 3:3, Rev 16:15

The end of the world will come when the gospel is preached all over the world. (Mt 24:14)

Mt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

However, we do not know exactly when world evangelization will occur. So the day of the Lord will come like a thief. We will always have to be awake. (2 Pt 3:10, Mt 24:42, 1 Thess 5:2, Rev 3:3, Rev 16:15)

2 Pt 3:10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

Mt 24:42 Watch therefore: for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come.

1 Thess 5:2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.

Rev 3:3 Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee.

Rev 16:15 Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame.

631. Looking for and hastening the coming of the day of God (2 Pt 3:12)
Col 3:4, 1 Cor 1:7-8, Titus 2:13, Lk 12:36, Jude 1:21

2 Pt 3:12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

1 Cor 1:7 So that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ:
8 Who shall also confirm you unto the end, that ye may be blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

Lk 12:36 And ye yourselves like unto men that wait for their lord, when he will return from the wedding; that when he cometh and knocketh, they may open unto him immediately.

Jude 1:21 Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.

632, Grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord (2 Pt 3:18)

2 Pt 1:2, Phil 3:8, Jn 17:3, Jn 20:31, 1 Cor 1:24, Eph 1:10, Eph 3:8, Col 1:27, Col 2:2

We must grow in the knowledge of Christ. The more we come to know Christ, the more grace and peace we have. (2 Peter 3:18, 2 Pet 1:2)

2 Pt 3:18 but grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

To Him be the glory both now and forever. Amen.

2 Pt 1:2 Grace and peace be multiplied to you in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord,

To know Jesus Christ is eternal life and the highest knowledge. Christ is the power, wisdom, and mystery of God. (Jn 20:31, Jn 17:3, Phil 3:8, 1 Cor 1:24, Col 2:2)

Jn 20:31 but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in His name.

Jn 17:3 and this is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent.

Phil 3:8 Yet indeed I also count all things loss for the excellence of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them as rubbish, that I may gain Christ

1 Cor 1:24 but to those who are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God.

Col 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;

Everything is united in Christ. (Eph 1:10)

Eph 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

We must bring this mystery of Christ to the Gentiles. (Eph 3:8, Col 1:27)

Eph 3:8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;

Col 1:27 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:

- 633. Christ, the Word of life that was manifested (1 Jn 1:1-2)
- 634. Christ, who is the eternal life (1 Jn 1:2)
- 636. Christ, who is the Advocate (1 Jn 2:1-2)
- 637. You know Him, Christ who has been from the beginning.(1 Jn 2:12-14)
- 638. You have overcome the evil one (1 Jn 2:13-14)
- 640. Who is the liar? It is whoever denies that Jesus is the Christ. (1Jn 2:22-23)
- 641. The promise which God Himself made to us: eternal life. (1 Jn 2:25)
- 642. You have no need for anyone to teach you; but as His anointing teaches you about all things (1 Jn 2:27)
- 643. When Christ appears, we will be like Him (1 Jn 3:2)
- 644. Christ, who appeared to destroy the works of the devil (1 Jn 3:8)
- 645. His commandment is to believe Jesus as the Christ and love one another as His commandment. (1 Jn 3:23)
- 646. The love of God, Christ (1 Jn 4:9-10)
- 647. Christ, who is the Savior of the world (1 Jn 4:14)
- 648. Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God remains in him, and he in God. (1 Jn 4:15)
- 649. This is the victory that has overcome the world: our faith. (1 Jn 5:4-5)
- 650. Christ, who came by water and blood (1 Jn 5:6-8)
- 651. The testimony of God is this, that He has testified concerning His Son. (1 Jn 5:9-10)

633. Christ, the Word of life that was manifested (1 Jn 1:1-2)
Jn 1:1,14, Rev 19:13, 1 Jn 4:9

It is Jesus Christ who is the manifestation of the Word of God in the flesh. (1 Jn 1:1-2, Jn 1:1,14, Rev 19:13)

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

In order to save us, God sent Jesus, the Word of God, to this earth to do the work of Christ. (1 Jn 4:9)

1 Jn 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

634. Christ, who is the eternal life (1 Jn 1:2)
Jn 14:6, Jn 1:4, 1 Jn 5:20, Jn 11:25, 1 Jn 5:12

Jesus is our eternal life. (1 Jn 1:2, Jn 14:6, Jn 1:4)

1 Jn 1:2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

Jn 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Jn 1:4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men.

Those who believed in Jesus as the Christ received eternal life. (1 Jn 5:20, Jn 11:25, 1 Jn 5:12)

1 Jn 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

Jn 11:25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

1 Jn 5:12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

636. Christ, who is the Advocate (1 Jn 2:1-2)

1 Tim 2:5-6, Heb 7:28, Heb 8:1,6, Heb 9:15, Heb 12:24, Job 19:25

Jesus Christ became the propitiation for our sins and became our Advocate and Mediator before God.

1 Jn 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

Heb 7:28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

Heb 8:1 Now of the things which we have spoken this is the sum: We have such an high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens;

6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.

Heb 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

Heb 12:24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.

Job 19:25 For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth:

637. You know Him, Christ who has been from the beginning. (1 Jn 2:12-14)
Jn 1:1-3,14, 1 Jn 1:1-2

Jesus, the Christ, was from the beginning. (1 John 2:12-14)

1 John 2:12 I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake.

13 I write unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because ye have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because ye have known the Father.

14 I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one.

Jesus, the Christ who existed from the beginning and created all things, came to this earth. (John 1:1-3, 1 John 1:1-2)

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 The same was in the beginning with God.

3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

638. You have overcome the evil one (1 Jn 2:13-14)
Jn 16:33, Lk 10:17-18, Col 2:15, 1 Jn 3:8

Jesus, the Christ, has overcome the world. (John 16:33, Col 2:15, 1 John 3:8)

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

Col 2:15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

So we who believe in Jesus as the Christ overcome the world. (1 John 2:13-14, Luke 10:17-18)

1 John 2:13 I write unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because ye have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because ye have known the Father.
14 I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one.

Luke 10:17 And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.

18 And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

640. Who is the liar? It is whoever denies that Jesus is the Christ. (1Jn 2:22-23)

1 Jn 5:1, Jn 14:6-7, Mt 10:33, Jn 17:3, 1 Jn 4:15, Lk 10:16, 2 Jn 1:7, Jn 15:23, Jn 5:23, Jn 8:19

Those who deny that Jesus is the Christ are liars and antichrists. (1 John 2:22-23, 2 John 1:7)

1 John 2:22 Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son.

23 Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also.

2 John 1:7 For many deceivers are entered into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. This is a deceiver and an antichrist.

Jesus is the Christ. (1 John 5:1)

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

No one can meet God except through Jesus. (John 14:6-7, Matthew 10:33)

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

7 If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him.

Matthew 10:33 But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven.

To believe that Jesus is the Christ and that He is the Son of God is eternal life. (John 17:3, 1 John 4:15)

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

1 John 4:15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.

To not believe that Jesus is the Christ is to forsake God. (Luke 10:16, John 15:23, John 5:23, John 8:19)

Luke 10:16 He that heareth you heareth me; and he that despiseth you despiseth me; and he that despiseth me despiseth him that sent me.

John 15:23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.

John 5:23 That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.

John 8:19 Then said they unto him, Where is thy Father? Jesus answered, Ye neither know me, nor my Father: if ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also.

641. The promise which God Himself made to us: eternal life. (1 Jn 2:25)

Jn 17:2-3, Titus 1:2-3, Jn 3:14-16, Jn 5:24, Jn 6:40,47,51,54, Rom 6:23, 1 Jn 1:2, 1 Jn 5:11,13,20

God has promised to give us eternal life. (1 John 2:25, Titus 1:2-3)

1 John 2:25 And this is the promise that he hath promised us, even eternal life.

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;

3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ have eternal life.

Jn 17:2 As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Jn 3:14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:

15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Jn 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

Jn 6:40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.

47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

Rom 6:23 For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

1 Jn 1:2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

1 Jn 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.

13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

642. You have no need for anyone to teach you; but as His anointing teaches you about all things (1 Jn 2:27)
Jer 31:33, Jn 14:26, Jn 15:26, Jn 16:13-14, 1 Cor 2:12, Heb 8:11, 1 Jn 2:20

In the Old Testament it was foretold that God would write His law in our hearts. (Jeremiah 31:33)

Jeremiah 31:33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.

When the Holy Spirit, whom God and Jesus Christ will send, come upon us, he will teach us everything. In particular, the Holy Spirit makes us realize that Jesus is the Christ. (1 John 2:27, John 14:26, John 16:13-14, 1 Corinthians 2:12, 1 John 2:20)

1 John 2:27 ut the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.

John 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

John 16:13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.
14 He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you.

1 Corinthians 2:12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.

1 John 2:20 But ye have an unction from the Holy One, and ye know all things.

643. When Christ appears, we will be like Him (1 Jn 3:2)
Phil 3:21, Col 3:4, 2 Cor 3:18, 1 Cor 13:12, Rev 22:4

When Christ returns to earth, we will be transformed into the likeness of Christ's glorious body. (1 John 3:2, Phil 3:21, Col 3:4, 2 Cor 3:18)

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

Phil 3:21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

Col 3:4 When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.

2 Cor 3:18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

And when Christ comes again, we will know Him fully. (1 Corinthians 13:12, Revelation 22:4)

1 Corinthians 13:12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known.

Revelation 22:4 And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads.

644. Christ, who appeared to destroy the works of the devil (1 Jn 3:8)
Gen 3:15, Heb 2:14, Jn 16:11

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come and crush Satan's head. (Genesis 3:15)

Genesis 3:15 And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Jesus came to this earth as the Christ and destroyed the works of Satan. (1 John 3:8, Hebrews 2:14, John 16:11)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Hebrews 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

John 16:11 Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.

645. His commandment is to believe Jesus as the Christ and love one another as His commandment. (1 Jn 3:23)
Jn 20:31, Jn 1:12, Jn 3:16, Jn 6:29, Jn 13:34, Jn 15:17

The commandment of God is to believe in Jesus as the Christ and the Son of God. (1 John 3:23, John 20:31, John 6:29)

1 John 3:23 And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.

John 20:31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.

John 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ become children of God and have eternal life. (John 1:12, John 3:16)

John 1:12 but as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Also, like Jesus, we must love to save the soul. (John 13:34, John 15:17)

John 13:34 A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.

John 15:17 These things I command you, that ye love one another.

646. God's love for us, Christ (1 Jn 4:9-10)
Jn 3:16, Rom 5:8

God loved us so much that He sent His only begotten Son to die in order to save us.

1 Jn 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.

Jn 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

647. Christ, who is the Savior of the world (1 Jn 4:14)

Jn 4:42, Jn 3:17, 1 Jn 4:9, 1 Jn 2:2, Lk 2:11, Acts 5:31, Acts 13:23

Jesus came to this earth as the Savior of the world. (1 John 5:14, John 4:42, John 3:17, 1 John 4:9, Luke 2:11, Acts 13:23)

1 John 5:14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us:

John 4:42 And said unto the woman, Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard him ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world.

John 3:17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

1 John 4:9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.

Luke 2:11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

Acts 13:23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

Jesus is the Christ who became the propitiation for our sins and forgave our sins. (1 John 2:2, Acts 5:31)

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

648. Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God remains in him, and he in God. (1 Jn 4:15)
Mt 14:33, Mt 16:16, 1 Jn 5:1, Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 2:23, 1 Jn 5:10,12,
Rom 10:9

Jesus is the Son of God. (1 John 4:15, Matthew 14:33, Matthew 16:16, 1 John 5:10-12, 1 John 2:23)

1 John 4:15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.

Matthew 14:33 Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth thou art the Son of God.

Matthew 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

1 John 5:10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son.

11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.

12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

1 John 2:23 Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also.

Jesus came to this earth to do the work of Christ. Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ become children of God. (John 5:1, John 1:12)

John 5:1 After this there was a feast of the Jews; and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.

John 1:12 ut as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

649. This is the victory that has overcome the world: our faith. (1 Jn 5:4-5)
Jn 16:33, Rom 8:37-39, 1 Cor 15:57, 1 Jn 2:13-14, 1 Jn 4:4

Jesus overcame the world by destroying the works of the devil. (John 16:33)

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Son of God and the Christ overcomes the world. (1 John 5:4-5, Romans 8:37-39, 1 Corinthians 15:57, 1 John 2:13-14, 1 John 4:4)

1 John 5:4 For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.

5 Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God?

Romans 8:37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

1 Corinthians 15:57 But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 John 2:13 I write unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because ye have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because ye have known the Father.

14 I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one.

1 John 4:4 Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world.

650. Christ, who came by water and blood (1 Jn 5:6-8)
Mt 3:16-17, Jn 1:33, Jn 19:30, Heb 9:14

God and the Holy Spirit testify that Jesus is the Christ. (1 John 5:6-8, Matthew 3:16-17, John 1:33)

1 John 5:6 This is he that came by water and blood, even Jesus Christ; not by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit that beareth witness, because the Spirit is truth.
7 For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.
8 And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.

Matthew 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:
17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

John 1:33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

Jesus did the work of Christ by shed His blood on the cross to forgive our sins. (John 19:30, Hebrews 9:14)

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

Hebrews 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

651. The testimony of God is this, that He has testified concerning His Son. (1 Jn 5:9-10)
Mt 3:16-17, Mt 17:5, Jn 1:33-34, Jn 12:28-30, Jn 5:37, Jn 8:18

God testifies that Jesus is the Son of God. (1 John 5:9-10, Matthew 3:16-17, Matthew 17:5, John 1:33-34, John 5:37, John 8:18)

1 John 5:9 If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son.

10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son.

Matthew 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

17 And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Matthew 17:5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

John 1:33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

34 And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God.

John 5:37 And the Father himself, which hath sent me, hath borne witness of me. Ye have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape.

John 8:18 I am one that bear witness of myself, and the Father that sent me beareth witness of me.

Jesus, the Son of God, glorified God by doing the work of Christ for us. (John 12:28-30)

John 12:28 Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.

29 The people therefore, that stood by, and heard it, said that it thundered: others said, An angel spake to him.

30 Jesus answered and said, This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes.

Revelation

Bible

- 653. Christ, the faithful witness (Rev 1:5)
- 654. Christ, the firstborn of the dead (Rev 1:5)
- 655. Christ, the ruler of the kings of the earth (Rev 1:5)
- 656. Christ, who made us into a kingdom, priests to His God and Father (Rev 1:6)
- 657. Christ, who is coming with the clouds, (Rev 1:7)
- 658. Christ, who is the Son of Man (Rev 1:13)
- 659. Christ, who is the High Priest (Rev 1:13)
- 660. Christ, who is the first and the last (Rev 1:17)
- 661. Christ, who has the keys of death and of Hades. (Rev 1:18)
- 662. Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life. (Rev 2:10)
- 663. Christ, who searches the minds and hearts (Rev 2:23)
- 664. Christ, who is the morning star (Rev 2:28)
- 665. Those whose name is written in the book of life (Rev 3:5)
- 666. Christ, who has the key of David (Rev 3:7)
- 668. If anyone hears My voice and opens the door (Rev 3:20)
- 669. Christ, who is the Lion from the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has overcome so as to be able to open the scroll and its seven seals. (Rev 5:5)
- 670. Christ, the Lamb that was slain (Rev 5:6)
- 672. Christ, who received power and riches and wisdom, and strength and honor and glory and blessing (Rev 5:12)
- 674. Salvation belongs to our God who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb! (Rev 7:10)
- 675. Christ, who leads us to living fountains of waters, and God, who wipes away every tear from our eyes (Rev 7:16-17)
- 676. The gospel that God announced to His servants the prophets (Rev 10:7)
- 677. The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ; and He will reign forever and ever. (Rev 11:15)
- 678. The great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan (Rev 12:3-9)
- 679. Satan, who deceives the whole world (Rev 12:9)
- 680. The accuser of our brothers and sisters has been thrown down, (Rev 12:10-11)

- 681. The book of life of the Lamb who has been slaughtered (Rev 13:8)
- 682. The eternal gospel to preach to those who live on the earth, and to every nation, tribe, language, and people (Rev 14:6)
- 683. Christ, who harvests the saints (Rev 14:14-16)
- 684. Judgment against unbelievers (Rev 14:17-20)
- 685. The song of Moses, the song of the Lamb (Rev 15:3-4)
- 686. The Lamb will overcome them because He is Lord of lords and King of kings (Rev 17:14)
- 687. The marriage of the Lamb (Rev 19:7-9)
- 688. Christ, who is the Word of God (Rev 19:13)
- 689. Those who had been beheaded because of their testimony of Jesus and because of the word of God (Rev 20:4)
- 690. The end of Satan and those who are not recorded in the book of life (Rev 20:10-15)
- 691. God will wipe away every tear from their eyes. (Rev 21:4)
- 692. The Lord God the Almighty and the Lamb are its temple (Rev 21:22)
- 693. The glory of God has illuminated it, and its lamp is the Lamb. (Rev 21:23)
- 694. The water of life, coming from the throne of God and of the Lamb (Rev 22:1-4)
- 695. Christ, who is coming quickly (Rev 22:20)

653. Christ, the faithful witness (Rev 1:5)

Rev 19:11, Mt 26:39,42, Lk 22:42, Mk 14:36, Jn 19:30

Jesus faithfully fulfilled the work of Christ entrusted to him by God. (Rev 1:5, Rev 19:11)

Rev 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

Rev 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.

The work God entrusted to Jesus was to complete the work of Christ by dying on the cross. (Matthew 26:39, 42, Luke 22:42, Mark 14:36)

Matthew 26:39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

42 He went away again the second time, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if this cup may not pass away from me, except I drink it, thy will be done.

Luke 22:42 Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.

Mark 14:36 And he said, Abba, Father, all things are possible unto thee; take away this cup from me: nevertheless not what I will, but what thou wilt.

Jesus faithfully fulfilled the work of Christ entrusted to him by God. (John 19:30)

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

654. Christ, the firstborn of the dead (Rev 1:5)
1 Cor 15:20, Col 1:18, Acts 26:23

Jesus Christ was the first to rise from the dead.

Rev 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

1 Cor 15:20 But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.

Col 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.

Acts 26:23 That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

655. Christ, the ruler of the kings of the earth (Rev 1:5)

Rev 17:14, Rev 19:16, Ps 89:27, Isa 55:4, Jn 18:37, 1 Tim 6:15

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send Christ to this earth to be the leader and commander of all peoples. (Psalm 89:27, Isaiah 55:4)

Psalm 89:27 Also I will make him my firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth.

Isaiah 55:4 Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people.

Jesus revealed that He is the Christ the King. (John 18:37)

John 18:37 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

Jesus is the Christ, the King of kings and Lord of lords. (Rev 1:5, Rev 17:14, Rev 19:16, 1 Timothy 6:15)

Rev 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,

Rev 17:14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

Rev 19:16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, King Of Kings, And Lord Of Lords.

1 Timothy 6:15 Which in his times he shall shew, who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords;

656. Christ, who made us into a kingdom, priests to His God and Father (Rev 1:6)
Ex 19:6, Isa 61:6, 1 Pt 2:9, Rev 5:10, Rev 20:6

Jesus redeemed us by dying on the cross for us and made us priests and the kingdom to God.

Rev 1:6 And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father; to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

Ex 19:6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.

Isa 61:6 But ye shall be named the Priests of the Lord: men shall call you the Ministers of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves.

1 Pt 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light;

Rev 5:10 And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.

Rev 20:6 Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.

657. Christ, who is coming with the clouds, (Rev 1:7)

Dan 7:13-14, Zech 12:10, Mt 24:30-31, Mt 26:64, 1 Thess 4:17

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that Christ would come again in the clouds with power and glory. (Dan 7:13-14)

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that those who pierced Christ would mourn when they see the coming Christ. (Zec 12:10)

Zec 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

Christ will come again in the clouds with power and glory. (Mt 24:30-31, Mt 26:64, 1 Thessalonians 4:17)

Mt 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Mt 26:64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

1 Thessalonians 4:17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

When Jesus Christ returns to this earth, those who did not believe in Jesus as the Christ will weep over the judgment they will receive. (Revelation 1:7)

Revelation 1:7 7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.

658. Christ, who is the Son of Man (Rev 1:13)

Rev 14:14, Dan 7:13-14, Dan 10:5,16, Acts 7:56, Ezk 1:26, Ezk 9:2

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would come in human form. (Daniel 7:13-14, Dan 10:5,16, Ezekiel 1:26)

Daniel 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

Dan 10:5 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz:

16 And, behold, one like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength.

Ezekiel 1:26 And above the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it.

Jesus is the Christ who came in human form to save us. (Acts 7:56, Rev 1:13, Rev 14:14)

Acts 7:56 And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.

Rev 1:13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.

Rev 14:14 And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle.

659. Christ, who is the High Priest (Rev 1:13)

Ex 28:4, Lev 16:4, Isa 6:1, Ex 28:8

In the Old Testament, the high priests wore clothes that were drawn to the feet and wore breastplates. (Ex 28:4, Lev 16:4, Ex 28:8)

Ex 28:4 And these are the garments which they shall make; a breastplate, and an ephod, and a robe, and a brodered coat, a mitre, and a girdle: and they shall make holy garments for Aaron thy brother, and his sons, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

Lev 16:4 He shall put on the holy linen coat, and he shall have the linen breeches upon his flesh, and shall be girded with a linen girdle, and with the linen mitre shall he be attired: these are holy garments; therefore shall he wash his flesh in water, and so put them on.

Ex 28:8 And the curious girdle of the ephod, which is upon it, shall be of the same, according to the work thereof; even of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would come as the true high priest. (Isa 6:1)

Isa 6:1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Jesus is the true High Priest who died for the forgiveness of our sins. (Rev 1:13)\

Rev 1:13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.

660. Christ, who is the first and the last (Rev 1:17)
Rev 2:8, Rev 22:13, Isa 41:4, Isa 44:6, Isa 48:12

God is the first and the last. (Isa 41:4, Isa 44:6, Isa 48:12)

Isa 41:4 Who hath wrought and done it, calling the generations from the beginning? I the Lord, the first, and with the last; I am he.

Isa 44:6 Thus saith the Lord the King of Israel, and his redeemer the Lord of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God.

Isa 48:12 Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I am he; I am the first, I also am the last.

Jesus Christ is also the first and the last. (Rev 1:17, Rev 2:8, Rev 22:13)

Rev 1:17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:

Rev 2:8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;

Rev 22:13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.

661. Christ, who has the keys of death and of Hades. (Rev 1:18)
Deut 32:39, 1 Cor 15:54-57,

The Old Testament prophesied that God would destroy death forever and wipe away our tears. (Isa 25:8, Hos 13:4)

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.

Hos 13:4 Yet I am the Lord thy God from the land of Egypt, and thou shalt know no god but me: for there is no saviour beside me.

God has all sovereignty. Our life and death are in God's hands. (Deut 32:39)

Deut 32:39 See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand.

Jesus conquered death by dying on the cross and resurrecting. Now Jesus has the key over death and gives victory to us who believe in Jesus Christ. (1 Corinthians 15:54-57, Rev 1:18)

1 Corinthians 15:54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.

55 O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?

56 The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law.

57 But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

Rev 1:18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.

662, Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life. (Rev 2:10)
1 Cor 9:23-25, James 1:12, Mt 10:22, Rev 12:11

Believe firmly that Jesus is the Christ and proclaim that Jesus is the Christ to death. Then we will receive the crown of life from Jesus Christ.

Rev 2:10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.

1 Cor 9:23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with you.

24 Know ye not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that ye may obtain.

25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible.

James 1:12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.

Mt 10:22 And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved.

Rev 12:11 And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

663. Christ, who searches the minds and hearts (Rev 2:23)

Ps 7:9, Ps 139:1, Jer 11:20, Jer 17:10, Rom 8:27, Prov 24:12, Acts 1:24, 1 Kings 8:39, Prov 21:2, 1 Thess 2:4

Only God examines the heart of man.

Ps 7:9 Oh let the wickedness of the wicked come to an end; but establish the just: for the righteous God trieth the hearts and reins.

Ps 139:1 O lord, thou hast searched me, and known me.

Jer 11:20 But, O Lord of hosts, that judgest righteously, that triest the reins and the heart, let me see thy vengeance on them: for unto thee have I revealed my cause.

Jer 17:10 But, O Lord of hosts, that judgest righteously, that triest the reins and the heart, let me see thy vengeance on them: for unto thee have I revealed my cause.

Rom 8:27 And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.

Prov 24:12 If thou sayest, Behold, we knew it not; doth not he that pondereth the heart consider it? and he that keepeth thy soul, doth not he know it? and shall not he render to every man according to his works?

Acts 1:24 And they prayed, and said, Thou, Lord, which knowest the hearts of all men, shew whether of these two thou hast chosen,

1 Kings 8:39 Then hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man according to his ways, whose heart thou knowest; (for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;)

Prov 21:2 Every way of a man is right in his own eyes: but the Lord pondereth the hearts.

1 Thess 2:4 But as we were allowed of God to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but God, which trieth our hearts.

Jesus also searches our hearts.

Rev 2:23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.

664. Christ, who is the morning star (Rev 22:16)

Rev 22:16, Lk 1:78, 2 Pt 1:19, Mal 4:2, Num 24:17, Jn 1:9

In the Old Testament, a star, Christ, was foretold as the descendant of Jacob. (Numbers 24:17)

Numbers 24:17 I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth.

In the Old Testament it was foretold that this star would heal us. (Mal 4:2)

Mal 4:2 But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.

Jesus is the bright morning star who saves us and heals us. (Luke 1:78, John 1:9, 2 Peter 1:19, Revelation 22:16)

Luke 1:78 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us,

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.

2 Peter 1:19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts:

Revelation 22:16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.

665. Those whose name is written in the book of life (Rev 3:5)

Mt 16:16,19, Jn 1:12, 1 Jn 5:1, Rev 13:8, Rev 17:8, Rev 20:12,15, Rev 21:27, Ps 69:28, Lk 10:20, Phil 4:3, Rom 8:38-39

The Old Testament tells us that those who have been saved have their names written in the book of life. (Psalm 69:28)

Psalm 69:28 Let them be blotted out of the book of the living, and not be written with the righteous.

Those who believe that Jesus is the Christ, their names are written in the book of life in heaven. (Matthew 16:16, 19, John 1:12, 1 John 5:1, Revelation 3:5, Luke 10:20, Philippians 4:3)

Matthew 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

19 And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

John 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

Revelation 3:5 He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.

Luke 10:20 Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.

Philippians 4:3 And I intreat thee also, true yokefellow, help those women which laboured with me in the gospel, with Clement also, and with other my fellowlabourers, whose names are in the book of life.

Those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ, their names are not written in the book of life in heaven. And they are thrown into the lake of fire. (Rev 13:8, Rev 17:8, Rev 20:12,15, Rev 21:27)

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Rev 17:8 The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.

Rev 20:12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

Rev 21:27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

666. Christ, who has the key of David (Rev 3:7)
Rev 5:5, Isa 22:22, Isa 9:7, Jer 23:5, Rev 1:18

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would give the key of David to Christ, whom he would send. It was also foretold that the Christ would rule the world for ever. (Isa 22:22, Isa 9:7)

Isa 22:22 And the key of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open.

Isa 9:7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that the Christ would come as a descendant of David. (Jeremiah 23:5)

Jeremiah 23:5 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.

The key of David is the key that can open the gates of heaven. Jesus is the Christ with the key of David. (Rev 1:18, Rev 3:7, Rev 5:5)

Rev 1:18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.

Rev 3:7 And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth;

Rev 5:5 And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

667. Christ, who is the Amen and the Origin of the creation of God (Rev 3:14)
2 Cor 1:20, Jn 1:3, Prov 8:22, Col 1:15-16

Christ is the source of creation and "Amen." (Revelation 3:14)

Revelation 3:14 And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God;

Every promise of God becomes "yes" in Christ. (2 Corinthians 1:20)

2 Corinthians 1:20 For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.

Christ created the heavens and the earth with God. (John 1:3, Colossians 1:15-16, Proverbs 8:22)

John 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

Colossians 1:15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:
16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

Proverbs 8:22 The Lord possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old.

668. If anyone hears My voice and opens the door (Rev 3:20)
Jn 1:12, Lk 12:36, Rev 19:9

Jesus reveals that he is the Christ and is knocking on the door of people's hearts. (Revelation 3:20)

Revelation 3:20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me.

When we accept in our hearts that Jesus is the Christ, we become children of God. (John 1:12, 1 John 5:1)

John 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

If we open our hearts and believe in Jesus as the Christ, we will participate in the wedding feast of the Lamb of God. (Luke 12:36, Revelation 19:9)

Luke 12:36 And ye yourselves like unto men that wait for their lord, when he will return from the wedding; that when he cometh and knocketh, they may open unto him immediately.

Revelation 19:9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

669. Christ, who is the Lion from the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has overcome so as to be able to open the scroll and its seven seals. (Rev 5:5)

Gen 49:9-10, Heb 7:14, Isa 11:1,10, Mt 1:1, Rev 22:16, Rev 6:1

It was prophesied in the Old Testament that Christ would come as a descendant of the tribe of Judah and David. (Gen 49:9-10, Isa 11:1,10)

Gen 49:9 Judah is a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up?

10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

Jesus is the Christ who came from the tribe of Judah and the descendant of David. (Heb 7:14, Matthew 1:1, Revelation 22:16)

Heb 7:14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood.

Matthew 1:1 The book of the generation of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham.

Revelation 22:16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.

Jesus, the Christ, will open the seven seals. (Rev 5:5, Rev 6:1)

Rev 5:5 And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

Rev 6:1 And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the noise of thunder, one of the four beasts saying, Come and see.

670. Christ, the Lamb that was slain (Rev 5:6)

Jn 1:29,36, Acts 8:31-32,34-35, 1 Pt 1:19, Rev 5:9,12, Isa 53:7

In the Old Testament it was foretold that Christ would die for us as a Lamb. (Isa 53:7)

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

Jesus is the Christ, the Lamb who died for our sins.

Rev 5:6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.

Jn 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

36 And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

Acts 8:31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

1 Pt 1:19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

Rev 5:9 And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;

12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

672. Christ, who received power and riches and wisdom, and strength and honor and glory and blessing (Rev 5:12) 1 Chr 29:10-11, 1 Cor 1:24, 2 Cor 8:9, 1 Cor 1:30, 1 Cor 2:8, James 2:1, Titus 2:13, Jn 1:14, Jn 2:11, Heb 2:9, Mt 24:30-31

Power and glory and victory and majesty and sovereignty belong to God. (1 Chronicles 29:10)

1 Chronicles 29:10 Wherefore David blessed the Lord before all the congregation: and David said, Blessed be thou, Lord God of Israel our father, for ever and ever.

Christ received from God power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise. (Revelation 5:12, 1 Corinthians 1:24, 1 Corinthians 2:8, James 2:1, Titus 2:13, John 1:14, John 2:11, Hebrews 2:9, Matthew 24:30-31)

Revelation 5:12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

1 Corinthians 1:24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

1 Corinthians 2:8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

James 2:1 My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with respect of persons.

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

John 2:11 This beginning of miracles did Jesus in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him.

Hebrews 2:9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.

Matthew 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Christ has become to us riches, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption. (2 Corinthians 8:9, 1 Corinthians 1:30)

2 Corinthians 8:9 For ye know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that ye through his poverty might be rich.

1 Corinthians 1:30 But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:

674. Salvation belongs to our God who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb! (Rev 7:10)
Rev 5:13, Rev 12:10, Ps 3:8, Isa 43:11, Jer 3:23, Hos 13:4, Rev 19:1

Salvation is only in God. (Isa 43:11, Psalm 3:8, Jer 3:23, Hos 13:4, Revelation 19:1)

Isa 43:11 I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no saviour.

Psalm 3:8 Salvation belongeth unto the Lord: thy blessing is upon thy people. Selah.

Jer 3:23 Truly in vain is salvation hoped for from the hills, and from the multitude of mountains: truly in the Lord our God is the salvation of Israel.

Hos 13:4 Yet I am the Lord thy God from the land of Egypt, and thou shalt know no god but me: for there is no saviour beside me.

Revelation 19:1 And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God:

Jesus Christ is God's only way of salvation. (Rev 7:10, Rev 12:10, John 14:6)

Rev 7:10 And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb.

Rev 12:10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

675. Christ, who leads us to living fountains of waters, and God, who wipes away every tear from our eyes (Rev 7:16-17)

Rev 21:6, Rev 22:1, Jn 4:14, Jn 7:38, Isa 49:10, Isa 25:8, Rev 21:3-4

The Old Testament prophesied that God would lead us to the fountain of the water of life and that He would wipe away our tears. (Isa 49:10, Isa 25:8)

Isa 49:10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.

Jesus Christ will give us springs of living water and God will wipe away our tears. (Rev 7:16-17, Rev 21:6, Rev 22:1, John 4:14, Rev 21:3-4)

Rev 7:16 They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat.
17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

Rev 21:6 And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.

Rev 22:1 And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

John 4:14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

Rev 21:3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.

4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

676. The gospel that God announced to His servants the prophets (Rev 10:7)
Jer 7:25-26 Jer 25:4 Dan 9:6 Heb 1:1, Lk 24:25-27,44-47

God preached the gospel, that is, the coming Christ, through his prophets. (Jeremiah 7:25-26, Jer 25:4, Dan 9:6, Hebrews 1:1)

Jeremiah 7:25 Since the day that your fathers came forth out of the land of Egypt unto this day I have even sent unto you all my servants the prophets, daily rising up early and sending them:

26 Yet they hearkened not unto me, nor inclined their ear, but hardened their neck: they did worse than their fathers.

Jer 25:4 And the Lord hath sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending them; but ye have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear.

Dan 9:6 Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land.

Hebrews 1:1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,

The prophets of God proclaimed the coming Christ. That Christ is Jesus. (Rev 10:7, Luke 24:25-27, 44-47)

Rev 10:7 But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished, as he hath declared to his servants the prophets.

Luke 24:25 Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:

26 Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behooved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

677. The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ; and He will reign forever and ever. (Rev 11:15)

Ps 2:2, Ps 10:16, Ps 145:13, Rev 12:10, Rev 19:6,16, Jn 12:31, 1 Jn 3:8, Dan 7:13-24,27, Ex 15:18, Mic 4:7, Lk 1:31-33

God is the eternal King, and He reigns forever in His kingdom. (Ps 10:16, Ps 145:13, Ex 15:18)

Ps 10:16 The Lord is King for ever and ever: the heathen are perished out of his land.

Ps 145:13 Thy kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and thy dominion endureth throughout all generations.

Ex 15:18 The Lord shall reign for ever and ever.

But the kings of the world have resisted God and his Christ. (Psalm 2:2)

Psalm 2:2 The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the Lord, and against his anointed, saying,

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that God would send Christ to this earth to destroy the king of the world. (Dan 7:13-27, Mic 4:7)

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

15 I Daniel was grieved in my spirit in the midst of my body, and the visions of my head troubled me.

16 I came near unto one of them that stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things.

17 These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth.

18 But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever.

19 Then I would know the truth of the fourth beast, which was diverse from all the others, exceeding dreadful, whose teeth were of iron, and his nails of brass; which devoured, brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with his feet;

20 And of the ten horns that were in his head, and of the other which came up, and before whom three fell; even of that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look was more stout than his fellows.

21 I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them;

22 Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.

23 Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.

24 And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.

25 And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.

26 But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy it unto the end.

27 And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him.

Mic 4:7 And I will make her that halted a remnant, and her that was cast far off a strong nation: and the Lord shall reign over them in mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever.

Jesus is the Christ who came to this earth and destroyed Satan, the ruler of the world. (John 12:31, 1 John 3:8)

John 12:31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.

1 John 3:8 e that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Jesus destroyed Satan and reigns forever. (Revelation 12:10, Luke 1:31-33, Revelation 11:15, Revelation 19:6, 16)

Revelation 12:10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.

Luke 1:31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name Jesus.

32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

Revelation 11:15 nd the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

Revelation 19:6 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth.

16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, King Of Kings, And Lord Of Lords.

678. The great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan (Rev 12:3-9)
1 Jn 3:8, Lk 10:17-18

Satan deceived the first man, Adam, and deceived everyone. (Genesis 3:1-5, John 8:44, Revelation 12:3-9)

Genesis 3:1 Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?
2 And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:
3 But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.
4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:
5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

John 8:44 Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.

Revelation 12:3 And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.
4 And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.
5 And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.
6 And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore days.
7 And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels,
8 And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven.
9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Jesus came to this earth as the true King and destroyed the works of Satan. (1 John 3:8)

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ can defeat Satan. (Luke 10:17-18)

Luke 10:17 And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.
18 And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

679. Satan, who deceives the whole world (Rev 12:9)

Rev 13:13-14, Rev 18:23, Rev 20:3, Mt 24:24, 2 Cor 11:3, Jn 12:31, 1 Jn 3:8, Rev 20:10

Satan deceives everyone until he goes to hell. (Rev 12:9, Rev 13:13, Rev 18:23, Rev 20:3)

Rev 12:9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Rev 13:13 And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men,

Rev 18:23 And the light of a candle shall shine no more at all in thee; and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride shall be heard no more at all in thee: for thy merchants were the great men of the earth; for by thy sorceries were all nations deceived.

Rev 20:3 And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

Satan deceives even believers. (Matthew 24:24, 2 Corinthians 11:3)

Matthew 24:24 For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

2 Corinthians 11:3 But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

Jesus cast out and destroyed Satan, the ruler of the world. (John 12:31, 1 John 3:8)

John 12:31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Satan will eventually be cast into hell and torment forever. (Revelation 20:10)

Revelation 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

680. The accuser of our brothers and sisters has been thrown down, (Rev 12:10-11)
Jn 12:31, Jn 16:33, Rom 8:37, Mt 28:18-19, Jn 17:2, Rom 16:20

Satan is cast out when Jesus, the Christ, comes again. (Rev 12:10, John 12:31)

Rev 12:10 10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.

John 12:31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.

Jesus overcame the world by doing the work of Christ. So we conquered the world. (John 16:33, Romans 8:37, Romans 16:20)

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

Romans 8:37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

Romans 16:20 And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. Amen.

After receiving authority from God to rule over all nations, Jesus commanded us to make disciples of all nations. (John 17:2, Matt 28:18-19)

John 17:2 As thou hast given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.

Matt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.
19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

681. The book of life of the Lamb who has been slaughtered (Rev 13:8)
Phil 4:3, Rev 3:5, Rev 20:12,15, Rev 21:27, Dan 12:1, Ex 32:32, Lk 10:20

In the Old Testament, it is written that all those whose names are written in the book of life in heaven will be saved. (Dan 12:1, Ex 32:32)

Dan 12:1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.

Ex 32:32 Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin--; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written.

Those who believe in Jesus as the Christ have their names written in the book of life in heaven. (Luke 10:20, Philippians 4:3, Revelation 3:5)

Luke 10:20 Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.

Philippians 4:3 And I intreat thee also, true yokefellow, help those women which laboured with me in the gospel, with Clement also, and with other my fellowlabourers, whose names are in the book of life.

Revelation 3:5 He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.

Only those whose names are written in the Lamb's book of life enter the kingdom of heaven. (Revelation 2:27)

Revelation 2:27 And he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers: even as I received of my Father.

Those who do not believe in Jesus as the Christ will not have their names written in the Lamb's book of life and will live as slaves to Satan and go to hell. (Rev 13:8, Rev 20:12,15)

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Rev 20:12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

682. The eternal gospel to preach to those who live on the earth, and to every nation, tribe, language, and people (Rev 14:6)

Mt 16:16, Mt 24:14, Mt 28:18-19, Mk 16:15, Acts 1:8

The eternal gospel to be preached to all nations, tribes, tongues, and peoples is that Jesus is the Christ. (Rev 14:6, Mt 16:16)

Rev 14:6 And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people,

Mt 16:16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

We must spread the everlasting gospel that Jesus is the Christ throughout the world. (Mt 28:18-19, Mark 16:15, Acts 1:8)

Mt 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

The end of the world comes when Jesus is the Christ preached throughout the world. (Matthew 24:14)

Matthew 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

683. Christ, who harvests the saints (Rev 14:14-16)
Hos 6:11, Mt 13:30,39, Mt 24:30-31, Mk 4:29, Jn 4:35

Now is the time to harvest people by proclaiming that Jesus is the Christ. (Mark 4:29, John 4:35)

Mark 4:29 But when the fruit is brought forth, immediately he putteth in the sickle, because the harvest is come.

John 4:35 Say not ye, There are yet four months, and then cometh harvest? behold, I say unto you, Lift up your eyes, and look on the fields; for they are white already to harvest.

Jesus will send his angels at the end of the world to harvest those whom God has ordained to give them eternal life.
(Mt 13:30, 39, Mt 24:30-31, Rv 14:14-16)

Mt 13:30 Let both grow together until the harvest: and in the time of harvest I will say to the reapers, Gather ye together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn.

39 The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels.

Mt 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Rev 14:14 And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle.

15 And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe.

16 And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped.

684. Judgment against unbelievers (Rev 14:17-20)
Joel 3:13, Rev 19:15

In the end times, unbelievers will be judged like grapes being trampled into a winepress.

Rev 14:17 And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle.

18 And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe.

19 And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God.

20 And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs.

Joel 3:13 Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe: come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great.

Rev 19:15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.

685. The song of Moses, the song of the Lamb (Rev 15:3-4)
Ex 15:1, Ps 98:1-2

In the Old Testament, Moses sang the song of the Lamb immediately after crossing the Red Sea, praising God. (Ex 15:1, Psalm 98:1-2)

Ex 15:1 Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto the Lord, and spake, saying, I will sing unto the Lord, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea.

Psalm 98:1 O sing unto the Lord a new song; for he hath done marvellous things: his right hand, and his holy arm, hath gotten him the victory.

2 The Lord hath made known his salvation: his righteousness hath he openly shewed in the sight of the heathen.

Moses knew that the coming Christ would become the Lamb of God to save us. (Rev 15:3-4)

Rev 15:3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints.

4 Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest.

686. The Lamb will overcome them because He is Lord of lords and King of kings (Rev 17:14) Rev 19:16, Jn 16:33, 1 Jn 3:8, Heb 2:14, 1 Cor 15:27

Jesus is King of kings and Lord of lords. (Rev 19:16, 1 Corinthians 15:27)

Rev 19:16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, King Of Kings, And Lord Of Lords.

1 Corinthians 15:27 For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him.

Jesus destroyed the devil and conquered the world by doing the work of Christ on the cross. (John 6:33, 1 John 3:8, Hebrews 2:14, Revelation 17:14)

John 6:33 For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

Hebrews 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

Revelation 17:14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.

687. The marriage of the Lamb (Rev 19:7-9) Rev 21:2,9, Mt 22:2, Mt 25:1, Lk 14:16-17, Lk 12:35-36, Jn 3:29, 2 Cor 11:2, Eph 5:23-25,31-32, Isa 61:10

In the Old Testament, it was foretold that Christ would save us and make us his bride. (Isa 61:10)

Isa 61:10 I will greatly rejoice in the Lord, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.

Heaven is the place where Christ, who saved us, receives us as his bride. (Matthew 22:2, Matthew 25:1, Luke 14:16-17, Luke 12:35-36)

Matthew 22:2 The kingdom of heaven is like unto a certain king, which made a marriage for his son,

Matthew 25:1 Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom.

Luke 14:16 Then said he unto him, A certain man made a great supper, and bade many:

17 And sent his servant at supper time to say to them that were bidden, Come; for all things are now ready.

Luke 12:35 Let your loins be girded about, and your lights burning;

36 And ye yourselves like unto men that wait for their lord, when he will return from the wedding; that when he cometh and knocketh, they may open unto him immediately.

Christ is our Bridegroom. (John 3:29, Ephesians 5:23-25,31-32)

John 3:29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled.

Ephesians 5:23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the saviour of the body.

24 Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in every thing.

25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it;

31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

We will participate in the marriage supper of the Lamb in heaven and become the bride of Christ. (Rev 19:7-9, Rev 21:2,9)

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.

9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

Rev 21:2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.

9 And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife.

688. Christ, who is the Word of God (Rev 19:13)
Jn 1:1,14, 1 Jn 1:1-2

Jesus, the Christ, is the Word of God and has appeared to us in human form.

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

Jn 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

1 Jn 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

689. Those who had been beheaded because of their testimony of Jesus and because of the word of God (Rev 20:4)
Rev 6:9, Mt 19:28-29, 2 Tim 2:11-12, 1 Cor 9:14, 1 Thess 2:2, 2 Tim 1:8, 2 Tim 2:9

Those who believe and preach that Jesus is the Christ sometimes suffer. (1 Thessalonians 2:2, 2 Tim 1:8, 2 Tim 2:9)

1 Thessalonians 2:2 But even after that we had suffered before, and were shamefully entreated, as ye know, at Philippi, we were bold in our God to speak unto you the gospel of God with much contention.

2 Tim 1:8 Be not thou therefore ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me his prisoner: but be thou partaker of the afflictions of the gospel according to the power of God;

2 Tim 2:9 Wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, even unto bonds; but the word of God is not bound.

Those who believe and preach that Jesus is the Christ and have suffered will reign with Christ. (Rev 20:4, Rev 6:9, Matt 19:28-29, 2 Tim 2:11-12, 1 Cor 9:14)

Rev 20:4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

Rev 6:9 And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held:

Matt 19:28 And Jesus said unto them, Verily I say unto you, That ye which have followed me, in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit in the throne of his glory, ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

29 And every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive an hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life.

2 Tim 2:11 It is a faithful saying: For if we be dead with him, we shall also live with him:

12 If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us:

1 Cor 9:14 Even so hath the Lord ordained that they which preach the gospel should live of the gospel.

690. The end of Satan and those who are not recorded in the book of life (Rev 20:10-15) Rev 19:20, Rev 14:10-11

Satan and those who do not believe that Jesus is the Christ will be thrown into the lake of fire and tormented forever.

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.

12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.

14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.

15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

Rev 19:20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.

Rev 14:10 The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb:

11 And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name.

691. God will wipe away every tear from their eyes. (Rev 21:4) Rev 7:17, Isa 25:8, Isa 35:10, Isa 51:11, Isa 65:19

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that God would take away our sorrow and wipe away our tears. (Isa 25:8, Isa 35:10, Isa 51:11, Isa 65:19)

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord God will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the Lord hath spoken it.

Isa 35:10 And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Isa 51:11 Therefore the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

Isa 65:19 And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

Jesus does the work of Christ to deliver us from death and lead us to the fountain of the water of life. And God will wipe away all our tears. (Rev 7:17, Rev 21:4)

Rev 7:17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.

Rev 21:4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

692. The Lord God the Almighty and the Lamb are its temple (Rev 21:22) Jer 3:16-17, Jn 2:19-21

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the ark of the covenant, a symbol of the temple, would never be mentioned again. (Jeremiah 3:16-17)

Jeremiah 3:16 And it shall come to pass, when ye be multiplied and increased in the land, in those days, saith the Lord, they shall say no more, The ark of the covenant of the Lord: neither shall it come to mind: neither shall they remember it; neither shall they visit it; neither shall that be done any more.

17 At that time they shall call Jerusalem the throne of the Lord; and all the nations shall be gathered unto it, to the name of the Lord, to Jerusalem: neither shall they walk any more after the imagination of their evil heart.

Jesus is the true temple. (John 2:19-21)

John 2:19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.

20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?

21 But he spake of the temple of his body.

God and the Christ are the true temple. (Revelation 21:22)

Revelation 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

693. The glory of God has illuminated it, and its lamp is the Lamb.(Rev 21:23)
Rev 22:5, Isa 60:19-20, Jn 1:9, Jn 8:12

In the Old Testament it was prophesied that we would no longer need the light of the sun and moon and that God would be our eternal light. (Isa 60:19-20)

Isa 60:19 The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the Lord shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory.

20 Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the Lord shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.

Jesus is the true light of the world. (John 1:9, John 8:12)

John 1:9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man

John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

The light of the sun and moon is no longer needed in heaven. Because God and Jesus Christ are our true light. (Rev 21:23, Rev 22:5)

Rev 21:23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

Rev 22:5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.

694. The water of life, coming from the throne of God and of the Lamb (Rev 22:1-4)
Rev 21:6, Ezk 47:1,9,12, Zech 14:11, Jn 7:38

In the Old Testament, it was prophesied that the water of life would flow out of the temple to save everything. (Eze 47:1,9,12)

Eze 47:1 Afterward he brought me again unto the door of the house; and, behold, waters issued out from under the threshold of the house eastward: for the forefront of the house stood toward the east, and the waters came down from under from the right side of the house, at the south side of the altar.

9 And it shall come to pass, that every thing that liveth, which moveth, whithersoever the rivers shall come, shall live: and there shall be a very great multitude of fish, because these waters shall come thither: for they shall be healed; and every thing shall live whither the river cometh.

12 And by the river upon the bank thereof, on this side and on that side, shall grow all trees for meat, whose leaf shall not fade, neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed: it shall bring forth new fruit according to his months, because their waters they issued out of the sanctuary: and the fruit thereof shall be for meat, and the leaf thereof for medicine.

The Holy Spirit, the river of living water, is poured out on those who believe in Jesus as the Christ. (John 7:38, Revelation 21:6)

John 7:38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

Revelation 21:6 And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.

From God and the Lamb Jesus Christ, the Holy Spirit, a river of water of life, will flow and heal everything. (Rev 22:1-4)

Rev 22:1 And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

3 And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him:

4 And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads.

695. Christ, who is coming quickly (Rev 22:20)
Rev 22:7,12, Rev 3:11, 1 Cor 16:22, 2 Pt 3:12

The Lord Jesus Christ is coming soon. In other words, world evangelization will happen quickly. (Rev 2:20, Rev 22:7,12, Rev 3:11, Matt 24:14)

Rev 2:20 Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols.

Rev 22:7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book.
12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

Rev 3:11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.

Matt 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

We should love Christ more and earnestly long for Christ to come again, and preach the gospel. (1 Corinthians 16:22, 2 Peter 3:12)

1 Corinthians 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha.

2 Peter 3:12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?